



**Word of God**

**Proclamations 0182 - 3628**

**Responsible for  
publication of this book**

**Wilhelm Wegers  
Am Alten Bach 89  
41470 Neuss  
Germany**

# **Reminder to endure ....**

## **Spiritual knowledge ....**

***B.D. 0182 from November 16th 1937,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

Behold, my child, everything you start incorporates the blessing that your thoughts are always turned towards the spirit and anyone who strives that way acts in agreement with the Highest Being. If you leave this path, innumerable possibilities will be lost to you .... Your life goes on but in part not as evaluated as is possible this way. And since it is not just for the salvation of your soul but for the soul of many of earth's children you have to endure .... Because you can be immensely effective on earth. We have no other means to impart spiritual knowledge to you in a better way, we can only use the laws given to us by our Lord and Saviour, and during our communication with you we exhaust every avenue for your benefit. And again it depends on your will to receive more and more .... The work on yourself .... the ever deepening union with God .... will also enable you to penetrate ever deeper into divine truths .... and by doing so you in turn give us the opportunity to pass on all the lessons as instructed by our Saviour.

Amen

# **Physical and psychological conflicts ... Deluded people ....**

***B.D. 0183 from November 16th 1937,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

Great and mighty is the Lord who created you but small and powerless is he who does not want to know Him. And therefore you may always trust in the Lord that He, in His power and glory, will protect you, His children, from what does not come from Him, when just a call .... an imploring thought for help gets in touch with Him. What He has created shall continue according to His will, and when you choose the kingdom of God you have to give up all earthly things which cling to you. Because only the human being is judged, not his possessions .... but when God beholds the hearts of people nothing remains hidden from His Fatherly eyes. And meekly you will follow wherever the Heavenly Father will lead you .... because He guides right who trusts in Him. Therefore praise the Lord Who, with divine love, gives everyone that place on earth which is helpful for his salvation. Those who strive for perfection have to serve .... and always be willing to

endure for the Lord. It is unspeakably bitter for those who plan their lives by themselves to be excluded from His Fatherly grace .... To those who believe that they don't need God's love, who believe that they alone are in charge of themselves and their destiny the Father remains distant until they too, in silent recognition of the Divinity, will ask for the love of the Father. Only then will they receive it and this in turn will release the grace by virtue of which the human being can now wrestle upwards ever higher. Vast physical and psychological conflicts still await these poor deluded people, because they can only be directed towards their Creator that way .... only in that way will they open their eyes and ears to their spiritual friends, to be finally guided by them onto the right path .... Hardly anyone comes close to the Heavenly Father without suffering .... You, My child, are granted the grace to know your Saviour close to you when you are full of love for Him .... your heart will rejoice for being allowed to stay in constant contact with Him but give Him everything you love and value .... and your life will be ever richer because the sun of grace will shine on you eternally ....

Amen

## **Trials ....**

***B.D. 0184 from November 17th 1937,***

## ***taken from Book No. 5/6***

Behold, my child, in all your adversities of life rests a profound purpose and in order to fulfil this you must patiently endure what the Lord places upon you. You are often moved by the desire to be close to your heavenly Father as a child, and this also involves the willing submission to His instructions. God sends these trials upon His children in order to draw them ever closer to Himself, for all these are touchstones on the earthly path and only their overcoming can advance you in your striving .... And nothing is ordained by the heavenly Father in His wisdom without purpose, even if people are unable to grasp it .... This is why all of you must submit yourselves to His orders with unquestioning trust in God, it will only be a blessing for you.

And now, my child, hear our teaching: When the Lord sends Words of salvation to His Own which are not accepted because they lack understanding .... the inner contact with their Creator .... He lets trials come upon them in order to convince them of His will .... for the human being so often deems himself able to avoid a higher Power .... before he has to admit that his destiny rests in other hands than in his own. And time and again the Lord, in His love, takes mercy upon His earthly children. To use the short time on earth correctly, that is, according to God's mind, by constantly striving for perfection is the Highest Good a person can call his own, since it only depends on his will. And God repeatedly

guides his thoughts into spiritual regions .... he is so often warned and informed of eternity .... if only he has the will to serve his Lord and Creator a little he is sure to find the right path by virtue of all spiritual beings which, for the sake of his protection, accompany him on his journey through life. To entrust oneself more to the inner voice and not to fight against thoughts pertaining to the beyond .... to life after death; such thoughts will come to everyone .... and these thoughts must become dear and familiar to you .... instead of frighten you such that you unwillingly reject them .... Anyone who, concerned about his soul's salvation, does whatever it takes to progress spiritually, will not be scared of physical death .... since he only looks upon it as an entrance into another life which will satisfy his heart's longing to be united with his Lord and Saviour. Therefore, pay no attention to the sorrow on earth .... it is merely the means to guide you on the right path which shall lead you to eternal peace.

Amen

## Old Testament ....

***B.D. 0185 from November 17th 1937,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

Your spiritual knowledge will grow if you willingly put your trust in us and stay devoted to your Saviour in

constant love. We are instructed to tell you about the teachings of the Old Testament. Before the Saviour became a human being, God gave His voice to His prophets and conveyed His commandments through them. They taught that the Messiah would come to bring Salvation to all mankind. Yet God, the Lord, never gave them the instruction to provide information about the sins of the Fathers .... Just like today, God has always proclaimed to people that they should live in faith and with love for the Creator. And yet people brought documents into being which intended to testify of the Lord's will .... It could be called presumptuous had such documents not been produced with the best of intention to thereby serve the Lord and Creator of heaven and earth.

And now, as a result of these teachings, people try to deny everything .... even the Words of the Lord Himself, Who had given them through His prophets for the benefit of people. Therefore, do not reject what is beyond your judgment .... Let God reign anew and accept what He sends to you in clear Words which will touch your hearts and which you will understand better than the Book of the Fathers. But this, too, is incorrect .... what you do not understand you should not judge .... Do not reject it, for in so doing you can reject much truth as well .... No house should be without the Word of God, yet even if the Old Book no longer provides anything of comfort to you, do not dismiss it .... times have changed and with it also people's way of speaking .... Do not renounce the Word of



God, instead, appeal to the Father for enlightened reading .... that you correctly understand what He gave to you through the prophets .... and that the teachings of truth should be imparted to you. Time and again the divine Father's love will find ways and means for His teachings to find a way into people's hearts .... and to protect you from error He will guide your thoughts, if only you **want** to understand and to receive **divine truths** from the Book of Books and not try to ascertain people's weaknesses and faults in a human way.

Only pure, virtuous, God-devoted thinking will vouch for the truthfulness of the Words which God lovingly conveys through His instruments to His earthly children. If this thinking is combined with earthly endeavour .... if it is not entirely focussed on the Heavenly Father, then every work created by human hand will no longer be purely divine but humanly misguided .... and this explains why so many spiritual investigators refuse to accept the spiritual teachings. Yet here again the fact applies that **science** is unable to fathom what is truth and what are wrong teachings .... the realisation only comes to those who take refuge with the Heavenly Father and appeal to Him for enlightenment. He will not refuse His grace to them and lead them onto the right path .... the path of realisation. Hence, confidently submit yourself to our Words and take notice of everything God bestows on you in order to reveal the pure truth to you ....

Amen

# **Pure truth .... Signs .... Wonders ....**

***B.D. 0186 from November 18th 1937,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

The time will come when it will be revealed to you what the Saviour in His love has intended for you. Then you must be able to love so very profoundly that no doubt can enter your heart. Our striving and efforts aim to convey such strength to you through proclamations that you will accept everything you are offered as pure truth. Notice that everything sent to you by the Lord will invigorate your spirit .... that in many an hour you had already been able to draw comfort from His Words .... that the Saviour only taught you such things which corresponded to your comprehension .... However, His Work will be concluded with such gifts which will guide you into the most profound truth and impart such spiritual knowledge to you that you will recognise the magnitude of His love and power thereby. Strive towards this profound faith which is the basis of your forthcoming activity.

And now be ready to receive: God's teachings exist forever and eternity, and the Lord always finds among humanity those who are of service to Him and help to spread His teachings. But the human ear and heart are

not always willing to accept them. All the miracles the Lord already has allowed to happen .... were only rarely recognised as such .... At the time of Christ many a miracle occurred, and even then only a few turned to Him, for the human being has become hardened through the influence of evil and believes more in him than in his Creator. Therefore blessed is the one whose heart is open to everything that comes from above .... who, in faith of the Saviour, places his work on earth in the service of the Lord. The Lord will enlighten all of them and give them strength to work according to His will for the salvation of the human children's souls .... Thus you, too, will experience constant progress and fulfil your purpose every day. The acceptance of the Words of God is your guarantee that the Lord is with you in His grace and blesses you. Accept everything humbly, willingly and devotedly and fulfil the commandments of the Lord .... and your faith will grow ever stronger and guide you into higher spheres.

Amen

**Hallowed halls ... Blessing  
of the work for spiritual  
beings ....**

## ***B.D. 0187 from November 18th 1937, taken from Book No. 5/6***

Thus begin in the name of God. All those your heart is looking for are present .... You have to fight against temptation again, this complicates your reception, but always stay in loving contact with us and you will be helped at all times.

Now try to follow us:

We carefully prepared what you shall receive and need only your attention. All those who derived blessings from our Words reside in hallowed halls. The same will be granted to you when you fight for your Saviour, for a life in splendour is prepared for His defenders .... Illuminated by the Saviour's love they only desire to behold the eternal light .... the Lord and Creator of Heaven and Earth, from face- to- face .... Countless souls implore you to help them in their adversity, to escape the control of evil forces. For all of these the path is still so long before they arrive where eternal bliss awaits them .... The opportunity is offered to you through tireless work on Earth to also redeem a large number of these poor souls, since you can point out to many, many people to lovingly work likewise for so many spiritual beings .... Through prayer and devout conduct on earth the strength of all beings keeps constantly growing .... none of you can assess the beneficial effect a way of life in spiritual striving has on the spiritual beings surrounding him .... just as many, which are still in contact with the beings on

earth through God's wisdom, partake in their earthly life and with hope and trepidation long that all should turn towards the divine Father .... After all, their activity in the beyond is to constantly care for these earthly children .... and their spiritual endeavour in the beyond also only ever concerns their entrusted earthly children's salvation of soul. The battle for such souls is often hard, and if you can helpfully intervene .... by imparting our teachings to your brothers and sisters on earth, countless beings will thank you for this, and therefore they follow your effort with constant concern and hope. Oh, if you humans could only roughly assess how many blessings you can provide with your work .... you would only serve the Saviour from now on and immerse yourselves in love for your fellow human beings .... and you would only ever strive towards the goal of creating eternal glories for yourselves.

Amen

## **Prayer ....**

***B.D. 0188 from November 19th 1937,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

We support you as well as we are able to do so, hence all your fear and worry are unnecessary, it only depends on your prayer .... if you always seek refuge in this you need not worry, for everyone's heartfelt prayer for

enlightenment will be answered. Dear child, spiritual forces want to temporarily make use of you, they want to bestow upon you sublime teachings of God's wisdom. Pay attention as to how they are given to you. For the Father has given His children one thing in the face of all adversities .... prayer .... What merciful evidence of His divine love is the being-allowed to beseech Him! .... He offers everyone the opportunity to receive help merely by sending heartfelt thoughts to Him at any time .... Compassionately the Father comes to meet each person who calls upon Him in his distress. Whoever amongst you wants to reject this grace loses every possibility that divine helpers will ease his activity on earth. Left to his own devices he will lack the right knowledge .... he will travel his path in life in error and spiritual darkness .... What God gave you through the blessing of prayer is of priceless value for you , after all, it establishes the contact between the heavenly Father and His earthly children. Only someone deluded would reject such means of grace .... Every child of God, however, will thank the Father for this immense merciful evidence of His love and gratefully accept what he is offered. The Lord wants to test you in prayer, because the formal prayers you use are not sufficient .... they do not penetrate to the Father as long as your heart does not speak .... It is only valuable and effective if you put all your childlike pleading into the prayer, be it in words or in thought .... You must always speak to God from the heart, then He will answer your prayer and give to you according to God's wisdom. For this reason you should trustingly hand all your worries over to

your Father, Who will answer your prayer such as it will benefit you for eternity .... And always submit to His will. For He alone knows what is good for you, and He will give to you such that it will be a blessing for you .... Always regard prayer as a blessing .... the bridge on which the Lord allows you to come to Him .... and use this opportunity as often as you can .... at the end of your days you will recognise how richly blessed your life on earth became through it.

Amen

## **Protection from error .... Admonition to pray ....**

***B.D. 0189 from November 19th 1937,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

You shall hear our teachings continually. Behold, God will give to you according to your will as it is good for you. You will always be able to hear His Word .... His loving instructions will be offered to you as long as your will is good and you want to serve the Lord, but always make sure that you will continue to fight for your faith, for it will become increasingly easier for you to receive the more steadfastly you believe. Ponder everything we give to you in your heart and you will notice that much

strength will flow to you if you allow the teachings to take proper effect in you .... Sometimes it might well seem to you as if you write down your own thoughts, yet always reject such ideas .... the protection around you does not permit that mistakes will enter your writing .... These teachings are intended for many people, and only pure truth shall arise through you .... therefore beware of such thoughts which only interfere with your composure and also actively impede our transmissions. Only one thing is essential, that you accept everything with profound faith .... that you utterly trust in your Saviour, Who will not let you live in error, and that you gratefully receive from His hand whatever He gives to you. Now be ready and listen: Once again a worker has arisen for the Lord in whom all of us pin great hopes. Once your heart has participated in this great act of mercy by our heavenly Father it will never want to let go of it again .... The pleasures of the world will no longer be able to beguile such a child, for it will live in God's grace, to live each day in His love is incomparably more valuable. The desire will soon arise to penetrate the spiritual world more deeply, and the earthly world with its enticements can no longer offer the child of God anything that is comparable to these blessings. And yet time after time the Father cautions not to slow down in prayer, for only through constant prayer will the grace and strength be repeatedly gained again, and only in this way can the human being carry on and attain the goal. Watch and pray! So that you will not succumb to the tempter who relentlessly seeks to alienate the human being from



divine striving. And through prayer you will always repel all evil surrounding you and only partake in the grace of the Lord. Therefore remain in prayer and call upon the Father for help with every thought, that He may bless your endeavour and give you strength to believe.

Amen

## **Effect on uninformed spiritual beings ...**

***B.D. 0190 from November 20th 1937,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

In the course of time the Lord permits us to give you the information that shall please you. In the realm of eternity many exist whom you, due to your striving, taught to think entirely differently. Silently and gently they appear close to you and pay attention to everything you do and think. And they, too, gradually begin to understand their situation and their purpose. Their thoughts and intentions now aim to integrate and to make contact with benign spiritual beings. Your activity on Earth has already become a blessing for them .... time and again they return to you and regard the possibility of your contact to the beyond in amazement. The ray of light you emanate as soon as our contact has been established attracts many

poor souls .... they are still earth-bound and wherever such ray is shining they congregate .... A loving thought granted by you to all of them will time and again give them hope and strength to start the work of improving themselves and to turn to the Deity in dawning realisation. What you already give to those is infinitely valuable and beneficial. Many a soul would like to come forward and entrust his worries and wishes to you, but the time for this has not come yet .... not for them, and neither do we want to disturb your peace. Just now we are acting according to the Lord by only giving you what is good for you and your peace of mind. However, were you able to see the group of those who follow your effort with hope and trepidation, it would already be enough to impel you into using the opportunity of making contact with us as often as you can. If only it were possible for us to often take such direct effect in the earthly children .... it would result in so much blessing! You may always turn to us with devout faith and trust .... countless souls anxiously worry that you might leave this path, and as far as our strength permits we will all helpfully stand by your side, therefore you can very confidently continue your work and need not worry that our support might ever be withdrawn from you. Our Lord and Saviour's love is beyond measure, and He will always provide His Own with refreshment and strength for their pilgrim's journey to their true home.

Amen

# **Scholars .... Rich and poor .... Pound ....**

***B.D. 0191 from November 20th 1937,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

In agreement with our Lord and Saviour we are giving you a proclamation today which shall enable you to also uphold to scholars that your endeavour is ordained by God and well-pleasing to Him. So many people fight a harsh and difficult struggle in order to exist, while good fortune falls into other people's lap, and they have little sympathy for the hardship and suffering of the former. If you believe that they were abandoned by the Lord then you should take a closer look and you will notice that where the human being has to fight for his daily life His commandments are far more likely to be fulfilled than where people are granted an easier fate ....

And thus you will notice that a troubled human being is far more likely to direct his thoughts such that they will lead to his salvation .... but that the person living a carefree life considers any idea of justification before the Heavenly Father inconvenient and will quickly reject it once it arises in him. If you compare this to how willingly Christ accepted His fate for love of humankind, because He thereby wanted to alleviate the suffering of the earthly children's course of life, then it follows, how

little the Lord wanted to burden you and how much he endeavoured to reduce this load by patiently taking the suffering of humankind upon Himself. The magnitude of His love was capable of enduring other beings' suffering, and in order to sacrifice Himself on behalf of others, the Lord let Himself be nailed to the cross. Consequently all those who .... meekly and patiently .... bear their suffering on earth are taking part in Christ's act of Salvation, for the human being will only achieve perfection through suffering .... thousands and thousands of souls will be saved for the eternal kingdom through suffering. The other person, however, who is not burdened by anything, will not gain many blessings from his life on earth, for he will close himself to all admonitions placed into his heart and remains far behind the former .... So if you wonder why the Lord takes such different care of His Own, why He lets one person mature through adversity and grief, but protects the other from heartache and problems then the Lord will answer this Himself:

'I gave everyone the pound so that he shall use it'. In the same way as the human being relates to God he will also receive .... 'Is there anyone amongst you at whose heart I haven't knocked? .... Is there anyone amongst you whom I have not approached in order to be admitted by him?' The poor man gives of the little he has .... but the rich man turns a deaf ear to the pleas of those who turn to him for help. And thus the Lord will be admitted by the poor but rejected by the rich whenever He desires to be admitted by him. Hence the Lord chooses who has been of faithful

service to Him and remains far away from those who obstinately refused to hear His call .... But soon you will experience how the Father protects His Own and informs them of His love .... Then you, too, will awaken, who have hesitated for so long to admit the Lord into your heart. For the time you were granted on this earth is short.  
(Break)

## Indications ....

***B.D. 0192 from November 21st 1937,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

(Continuation of B.D. 0191)

But now different forces take effect in the human heart, good argues against evil, and very frequently evil has indeed great power over the human being .... A person is far more inclined to accept what will distance him from the Lord, if his external circumstances in life don't prompt him to appeal for help from the Lord in heartfelt prayer. Thus the strength with which the human being would be able to resist the temptations of evil will steadily diminish and the tempter's power, his influence, grow ever more. Prayer is very often forgotten by a person whose life consists of barely any struggle for existence. In due course, these poor souls will completely harden their hearts to the beneficial

influences of the spiritual beings which are assigned to them for their protection.

This is why we most urgently suggest renouncing the world and its earthly pleasures, for only this will increase the strength to work for the salvation of the soul. All people blessed by earthly possessions have the urge of wanting to indulge themselves, which is a great danger, for the more they focus their intentions and endeavours on the world, the more they will distance themselves from the spiritual world .... and if they are made aware of the fact that the real purpose of life is actually another one, they merely try twice as hard to deaden such thoughts .... which intend to guide them onto the right path .... with earthly pleasures. They live their life as if they were able to live forever .... And yet every person will receive enough indications and they can see by the fate .... the sudden passing away of many a fellow human being .... how necessary it is to familiarise themselves with the thought of the beyond. The hour will come to everyone, early to some, late to others; and to have lived a long life without having grasped its meaning is indescribably painful ....

This is why the effort of gaining these souls is twice as hard but also commendable .... To draw such a soul away from the opponent requires much love and patience and loyal endurance. Anyone with the opportunity to influence such hearts should not neglect to do so .... although they certain will need infinitely more help on earth, because these poor souls' thoughts will ever more

deludedly turn away from spiritual matters.

Receiving the information is causing you difficulties; we will give you more when the time is right.

Amen

# **Enemies of the human race ... Battle ... ‘Victory is yours ....’**

***B.D. 0193 from November 21st 1937, taken from Book No. 5/6***

Make sacrifices to the Lord and He will reward you a thousand fold .... Countless enemies of spiritual teachings hide amongst people .... Nothing is sacred to them that is beyond human knowledge and ability, and they would like to destroy people's every striving for spiritual possessions. And wherever possible they teach that all life, all existence will expire with a person's physical death. And thereby they deprive him of all faith .... they prevent every spiritual point of view towards a higher being .... destroy faith in an afterlife, in a justification .... in fact in everything that is the actual meaning and purpose of the short time during which the human being has the grace to be embodied on earth. But a person with

such dismissive attitudes towards all divine things achieves even less than nothing in life .... for not only will his lifetime have passed entirely in vain for him .... he thereby has also fallen prey to the power of darkness, which will pull him increasingly more into ruin .... War has to be declared on these enemies of the human race with firm will and by every means now and at all times. After all, consider how they hold the weal or woe of the human soul in their hands .... Where no own incentive exists to escape this power humanity is in serious trouble. For it will never be able to distinguish between good and bad, it will indiscriminately acknowledge and endorse everything these advocates of the opponent want to make palatable to people with fine words .... and all this will result in nothing else in the end but a nation whose people live in error and reject God and His teachings. And this, in turn, will still divide itself in many factions, and there will be a groping and erring in the dark by all sides .... People try to destroy and describe as untrue and distorted what God has taught and what Christ on earth gave to humanity .... but you, His faithful followers, must not let this Highest Good go astray, you must work together in love and harmony .... in order to preserve people's bond with God and through this and prayer also the assurance that the Lord and Saviour will, at the right time, help each individual person who follows Him. Many a soul which acknowledges God as its Lord and Creator will stay behind, and your task on earth is to strengthen the faith of these souls and to grant them divine grace. Yet harsh battles will still precede your work, for where



the teaching of Christ is treated with hostility measures will also be taken against those who acknowledge this teaching and contend for Jesus Christ .... And in order to be equipped for these battles you will still have to appeal for much grace and strength from the heavenly Father .... but the Saviour Himself will stand by your side and 'Victory is yours ....' says the Lord .... for He blesses all those who proclaim His Word, and leads them to victory ....

Amen

## **Enforced teachings ....**

***B.D. 0194 from November 22nd 1937,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

Keep a faithful heart and God will be close to you at all times. And if God places upon you what appears to be unbearable, with His help and mercy you can overcome everything ....

And now listen: We will form a circle around you and start with our work, because the Lord has decided to inform you of the dangers of Christianity as it is taught on earth today. If at any time His Word had been understood in a way which intended to force others then this was a big mistake and error of the teachers .... Because the Lord does not want to pull any of His children closer to Him by

force but the children shall decide entirely of their own free will whether they accept their Heavenly Father or reject Him. We therefore consider every compulsion which the church or the servants of God want to exercise towards humanity as unwanted by God and not demanded by His teachings. For this reason such a church will collapse as it lacks the basic condition .... complete freedom of will.

Spiritual freedom cannot exist where it is stipulated to do this or that under threat of punishment; furthermore, the purpose could not be served even if the children of earth complied with such enforced stipulations. Therein rests the explanation as to why such churches will decay, although they also intend to lead the people to God. In recognition of the holiest basic condition, to shape the whole of human life by free will, many other stipulations are from the realm of error .... Any constraint is not wanted by God and is therefore only a hindrance for human beings on the way to eternity .... You may indeed teach His Words but you may not combine them with such terms which will place the human child into a position of constraint and which might give him a different image of God's kindness and love. Always make sure that you, the servants of God, pull your sheep with love towards the Father and teach them that they shall strive and ask for God's help, then their way towards the Father will become easier and nothing will frighten them .... while your doctrines place them into a condition of dependency, in which they are indeed at best trying to do

their duty while their inner spiritual devotion towards their Heavenly Father's heart is lacking .... Love and longing towards the Father shall come from the heart and should not be enforced under duress .... The human soul will then climb far higher and will progress much faster with the blessing of God, which it will desire of its own volition ....

Therefore try, wherever you can, to explain to people that they should not hold on to worldly teachings but to listen to the teachings of God deep within their hearts, which will tell them that they are children of God; and as children of God to increase the longing to return to the Heavenly Father should be the basis of true Christianity .... then the Father will show you the way in love and divine mercy ....

Amen

## **The Saviour's love .... Spiritual vision ....**

***B.D. 0195 from November 22nd 1937,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

Your striving is blessed by the Lord, and you shall hear His Word .... Within a few short hours the most precious things on earth can be taken away from you .... yet the

Lord's love remains with you forever, and to strive for this is worth many sacrifices, My child .... Your wish to refresh yourself at this eternal spring will be granted to you every day, just let your thoughts be with Him alone, then you will live a life on earth which is pleasing to Him .... Every day of your life shall be a constant prayer for the heavenly Father's love and your path on earth will be an easy one and, as a part of God Himself, you will return to Him when your time has come. The Lord speaks to you because of His greater than great love and what He gives to you in this love will lead you back to God again if you accept it with your heart .... Many threads will unravel themselves and the Lord will soon provide you with a clear idea of the creative process and activity in the spiritual world. You are being granted the opportunity to learn to behold the eternal kingdom with spiritual eyes. In order to be active there you must have achieved a high spiritual level on earth so that, when you enter the beyond, you will be able to integrate with the host of the diligently working spiritual beings. They all work according to God's wise counsel, and the labour of love they provide for less perfect spiritual beings already grants them a state of impossible to describe bliss .... Moreover, they are able to see and to feel as beings of light .... which is not comprehensible to you as yet .... so that, in union with the Saviour, they are able to stay in this abundance of light which gives them a feeling of immeasurable happiness. Only the love of the Lord Jesus will be able to guide you there, and through love for Him you will become His Own in eternity.

Amen

**‘The measure you use will  
be the measure you  
receive ....’**

***B.D. 0196 from November 23rd 1937,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

Thus begin, my child: If in every situation of life you remain conscious of the fact that you cannot achieve anything without the Father's help, you will always act right and keep your eyes towards the Father .... The measure you use will be the measure you receive .... This Word was given by the Lord to the children of earth and with it the commandment of love for God and one's neighbour .... We all know how difficult it is to fulfil it on earth, for love is still unknown to people in earthly life .... each person does not look upon his neighbour as his brother but is more likely to suspect him to be an opponent, and precisely because of this it requires a lot of love to show this fellow human being the love the Lord requires of you. You would certainly benefit if you made an effort to realise first of all that you are all God's children and that only love for one another should dwell in you, by virtue of which you should only ever treat each

other with kindness instead of treating each other with hostility or live indifferently next to each other .... It is the Father's law that you should receive the same measure as the measure you give to your fellow human beings. Everything you are given by the Father you should also give to your neighbour in the same way but always in the awareness that you are children amongst yourselves and that the Father's love aims to unite you. Therefore, let no one ever ask in vain and give where only the slightest appeal reaches your ear .... In earthly life the Father wants to give you the opportunity to practise neighbourly love, for love is the first and foremost commandment in the beyond .... everyone only works for another ....

And the love you neglected to give in earthly life will heavily burden you there; many a soul will long for the effect of love which will deliver him from the darkness .... all good deeds on earth are blessed by God, they will produce many different fruits in the beyond, for everyone will reap what he sows and will receive the reward of his love on earth from our Lord and Saviour in love again. For God is love, and to be allowed to live in His love is eternal beatitude ....

Amen

## **Globe ... Voice of**

# thunder ....

***B.D. 0197 from November 23rd 1937,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

And thus it is the Saviour's will that your knowledge should grow all the time .... You have little to fear in these days and can devote yourself to spiritual striving without worry; it will give you much strength as well as joy to receive the Words of the Lord. The sole purpose of all instructions is to maintain your contact with the heavenly Father. For this reason we encourage you increasingly more to remain faithful and not to slacken, after all, it will yield spiritual possessions for you which shall benefit you for eternity .... Behold, my child, we are all happy about your eagerness and gladly bestow you with gifts which the Saviour has prepared for you. Indeed, you will still often have to fight until you have entirely penetrated God's wisdom .... yet you will join the Saviour even more closely, for His love will not let go of those who are faithful to Him .... Once God has chosen to convey His teachings in full confidence to you, you must also justify this trust by fulfilling His will and serving Him at all times. In a short time day will dawn on the globe .... the Lord will walk through all places and give comfort and hope to His Own, and humanity will hear His voice of thunder when He wakes up all unbelievers and spiritual **sleepers**. But all those of you who seek comfort in the Lord will be safeguarded in His love. He will protect His

children from hardship, they will sense their Lord and Saviour close to them and faithfully entrust themselves to Him to save them from all dangers. Therefore you should all turn to your Father in Heaven with childlike trust so that He will protect you now and for all times.

Amen

## **Battle of light with darkness ....**

***B.D. 0198 from November 24th 1937,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

Listen, my child, it is God's will to instruct you of teachings which correspond to your thoughts and therefore I want to let you know today how very fond our Lord Jesus is of you and how much your dedication pleases Him .... If you ever feel a sense of abandonment, never be frightened .... for One is always close to you, your Saviour, Who will help you carry your every worry. Confidently travel your path of life until the end in this knowledge and don't be afraid! Not everyone is granted the same fate of being allowed to work physically and spiritually as the Lord and Saviour has intended for you .... yet if you always lift your eyes upwards you will be able to live up to both and constantly feel the Father's caring



hand. Listen to us, who stay close to you, and try to understand: In the beginning of the world all spirit was united .... it was a Being surrounded by the light of the eternal Sun .... Elements whizzed through the universe which shied away from the radiance and tried to destroy the divine light. During the battle of darkness against light countless atoms lost contact with the light and the elements of darkness declared war on those tiny bodies of light which went astray in the universe in order to extinguish their abundance of light, which each of these small and smallest beings sheltered, and to draw these beings into the sphere of influence of darkness .... thus, the battle between good and evil erupted, which will last for an unforeseeable time to come .... And God gave every being of light the freedom to turn according to its own will. Nevertheless, these beings will continue to fundamentally belong to the divine light, even if the battle lasts for millennia .... each one of the smallest components of the eternal Light will flow back to the origin of its purpose .... This is the cycle according to God's will, that every being should voluntarily turn to Him, with full use of its strength and supported by the love of the divine Father who generates all light, and thus find the path back to perfection and be permitted to stay close again to the heavenly Father .... the eternal Light.

Amen

## **Battle of light with**

# **darkness .... (Continuation of B.D. 0198)**

***B.D. 0199 from November 24th 1937,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

When your will applies to spiritual spheres you shall also receive the strength to pursue your goal. The assurance for your striving rests in your heart .... you will feel in your heart that your contact with the Saviour will result in the flow of divine grace and, happily and with inner peace, you will be able to look forward to the future. Where the Saviour seeks to help His Own every day will bring you blessings .... yet also thank the Lord for every day which instructs you of His Word .... And thus begin: Where beings of light argue with darkness no grain will go astray .... everything will arise anew, always aspiring to reach the light .... The smallest beings will stay in the universe and, depending on the duration of their life, will reshape themselves time and again .... until they finally reach a state in which they can freely use their own discretion to do as they like, yet always subject to the Creator's will. At the onset of their own freedom of will they are also responsible for their further course of life and development .... for the maturity of their soul .... It is their purpose to return to the eternal light from whence they originated, yet the time they take to accomplish this purpose has been left up to them .... Consequently, the

light beings struggle incessantly against the power of darkness. Those who emerge victoriously from this battle in turn contribute towards helping those who are weak, and the most effective weapon in the battle against the opponent is love ....

Amen

## **Battle of light with darkness .... (Continuation of B.D. 0199)**

***B.D. 0200 from November 25th 1937, taken from Book No. 5/6***

Oh, it is so pleasing for us to watch your endeavour! .... Anyone who strives towards the light like that cannot descend into darkness, therefore continue to receive our teachings so devotedly, after all, it benefits the salvation of your soul and that of many others. And thus today we want to give you the final conclusion to yesterday's work: Throughout short intervals of time and space numerous beings of light go through their period of development embodied in animal and plant life, and they, too, unconsciously strive time and again towards the light. After a long time, during which they continue to develop higher in various stages, they enter the last stage before

their spiritual rebirth .... the embodiment as a human being. At this stage the battle begins with the darkness, which would like to deprive this earthly being of its purpose and completely pull the soul down into obscurity. And since the human being has free will at this stage to make a personal choice for good or evil .... for light or darkness, this battle carries tremendous responsibility, for his apostasy from the heavenly Father, the eternal Light, would signify a struggle which would last for thousands of years again until this soul is finally also redeemed thanks to the never-ending help of the enlightened spiritual beings' love. Countless beings would strive more persistently were they aware of this responsibility .... yet the human being should find the path to God of his own accord, only then will he once again be able to become a part of that which he was at the beginning of the world .... Where God's omnipotence and love takes effect none of the tiny beings of light goes astray, this is why your attention is repeatedly drawn to the fact that, in infinity, every being takes its designated path, conducive to its development, in the care of the Father. The profundity of this law does not seem comprehensible to you, yet neither will you be able to grasp your heavenly Father's infinite magnitude before you have become what your purpose is .... to be as one with the divine Father ....

Amen

# **The Saviour's Words ....**

## **Storm clouds ....**

***B.D. 0201 from November 26th 1937,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

My dear child, what, indeed, should I deem more serious than protecting you from error? .... Accept all Words with faith in Me and don't be afraid of anything. A spiritual guard keeping all evil at bay will always be placed beside anyone of My Own who strives to hear My voice .... So continue wishing to hear the wisdom of God and spare no effort in order to receive it. Many thousands certainly try hard to penetrate a sphere which is still closed to them, however, they only want to ascertain it scientifically but not experience it in their heart .... and if their appeal for enlightenment does not arise from deep within their heart, then realisation will stay away. However, to My Own I will give understanding and speak to their hearts. My dear child, indescribable joys await you, and the suffering on earth is merely the ladder to the happiness intended for you, and all My children are guided by Me according to My wise plan. Particularly when you are in danger of failing I must let you fight in order to rise above yourselves, so that everyone will seek the Father of his own accord. Yet I will always support you with My grace .... Therefore, don't despair when you find it difficult .... but always let your thoughts fade out with the

prayer 'Dear Lord, stay close to Me with Your love and grace ....' When storm clouds threaten your spiritual horizon then each one of you, My faithful followers, will be faced with the task of bearing up against the imminent storm. These clouds are already taking shape and will cast their shadows upon all who are willing to serve Me .... By using all those who want to fight against spiritual life, the world will also try in short intervals to stop you who are seeking .... You will be forced to only work very quietly, yet then your effort must be even more determined .... After all, it is essential to still lead many more people out of the darkness into the light, who ask like you and appeal to Me for help. You will indeed accomplish much, since you will always have this .... you are active and work with Me .... and when your heart anxiously looks up above, you will never be left without comfort .... Accept what you are offered, and thank the heavenly Father every day for His love and kindness.

Amen

## **Demons are roaming the universe .... Prayer ....**

***B.D. 0202 from November 26th 1937,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

Demons are roaming the universe .... inciting people in all places to revolt against the commandments of God, and wherever the Father is implored for help they will be kept in check .... It is a wise law that the Lord governs the world .... that these demons will always have to face up to the Creator's will. Left to his own devices, a person would succumb to them were the Lord not to take pity on the profound adversity which surrounds the earthly human being .... and thus you should merely turn to Him for help. The earth will have to remain in prayer for an infinitely long time if it wants to release itself from the power of these dark forces .... So, do you need to worry, since you receive help in all adversity through prayer? .... At no time has the Father ever asked you to stop praying .... the grace you can thereby obtain is immeasurable .... The means is forever at your disposal; hence you should use it for your benefit and implore the Father from the bottom of your heart for deliverance from the powers of darkness. It is entirely up to you if you have to fight hard .... if you don't use prayer and don't entrust yourselves to the Father in your distress .... The Lord bestows His love and kindness upon each and every one, and therefore you should all make an effort to receive His grace. Thus you spend every day in glad anticipation of the teachings given to you and constantly enhance your knowledge regarding spiritual things. Always desire to receive the Word of God and your wish will be complied with on our part .... nevertheless, if you want to remain within the grace of the Lord you must always hand over your heart to Him and submit to His will. You must humbly accept from His hand what His love has

in store for you, for one day all pain and suffering will help your spirit's resurrection and you will praise God's wisdom for all eternity.

Amen

# **Straying souls in the expanse of ether ... Light and darkness ... Beyond ... Light ...**

***B.D. 0203 from November 27th 1937,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

Once again we are gathered around you to give you the bread of heaven, to strengthen you and to share the divine grace with you. As soon as we feel that you are yearning to hear the wisdom of God we are in contact with you and listen to every stirring of your heart. Thus begin: Behold, there is a chaotic disarray of seeking and straying souls in the expanse of ether, and the danger of loneliness is the worst that can happen to these souls .... but the Lord sends spiritual beings to them which do their best for these souls and try to point out to them that they must also strive for perfection in the beyond, that is where the first labour of love starts for these souls



already. By closely joining these benign spiritual beings they slowly strive towards the path of ascent .... God's goodness and love prevails everywhere, and in the slightest happenings and processes .... both on earth and in the beyond .... divine wisdom and divine guidance of all beings is always hidden .... The effect it has on these beings, on these seeking souls, as soon as a glimmer of realisation regarding their situation and their purpose comes to them, is indescribable. From then on, they tirelessly strive to ascend .... Tirelessly they devote themselves to all tasks expected of them and, in turn, try to help the still lesser informed souls. It is an activity of love for each other in order to reach the highest goal. If you begin to strive spiritually on earth, you will be greeted by the brightest light when you enter eternity, you will understand and know .... and you will be spared the straying in darkness with all its battles .... The closer you are to the Saviour on earth, the more radiant brightness will surround you one day. It will give you incredible satisfaction to know that you had already found the Lord during the battle of life and, without a second thought, you will take part in the work of love in the beyond and feel the innermost desire to always lead new souls to the Lord with tireless loving activity and to show them the path to the light. The life of the person who bears this in mind while he still lives on earth will be richly blessed, for his every thought, action and achievement will bear fruit in eternity, and every soul will benefit if it steadfastly strives upwards .... towards the eternal light.

Amen

# **Land of peace .... Gabriel ....**

***B.D. 0204 from November 27th 1937,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

We want to fulfil your prayers and instruct you in the teachings of Jesus Christ. Accept everything you are given in your heart and live accordingly. You will greatly benefit if you ceaselessly work to record it .... The time of receiving this grace won't be long, and in order to be able to work for our Lord and Saviour, you must have attained a high degree of faith and knowledge .... It depends solely on you as to whether this short time will be used well. Therefore, do not let any opportunity pass you by unused. The spiritual beings will always choose the form of their manner of speaking such that you will soon recognise who is imparting His teachings to you .... However, today you receive a proclamation which is intended to explain much and shall introduce you to an area which is still unfamiliar to you. So listen: Many souls of the deceased, straight after their death, enter a specifically designated land where no worry and trouble exist. An angel named Gabriel presides over this land, and he provides a peaceful and quiet existence for everyone. That is where many a tired soul gets to know silent solitude in contemplative reflection for the first time and, in a

manner of speaking, is compensated for its laboriously spent days on earth until, after having rested, it considers its purpose in the eternal kingdom .... The glimmer of the sunrise sends a gentle light across the entire valley, the eye constantly revels in the strands of outstanding beauty .... no shadow clouds this vision and no discord disturbs the passive observer in the midst of this splendour .... only singing and ringing surrounds him... And this rest strengthens the soul until it awakens from its reverie and feels the urge to become lovingly active .... Anyone having reached a degree on earth which enables him to enter this valley of peace, will be lovingly approached by the Lord and chosen for a wonderful task in the beyond. Oh, if only you all followed your hearts .... recognise the task you are meant to fulfil on earth in order to enter this valley .... just a glance into this land would let you endure anything on earth .... So pay heed: Every loyal follower of the Saviour who gives His heart to Him is promised **life** by the Lord .... yet what does life mean if you may not enjoy it in His presence? .... However, this land is merely a sample of the life close to the Saviour .... it is merely a transition from the bleak existence on earth to the illuminated realms of beatitude .... Words cannot describe the magnificence emanating from the Saviour's presence, and in order to be able to endure this brilliance the soul needs a period of transition amid indescribably beautiful pastures, which a human heart cannot imagine. My dear child, we would gladly let you have an insight into this land, but the Lord does not deem the time to be right for you as yet ....

therefore, with diligence and faithfulness and love for the Saviour you should devote yourself ever more to spiritual matters, so that we may instruct you ever more comprehensively in order to ease your path on earth and to keep your eyes looking heavenwards .... You are being granted an immeasurable grace through these proclamations .... Accept each one with devotion and remain grateful to the heavenly Father now and forever.

Amen

## **Firmament ....**

***B.D. 0205 from November 28th 1937,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

Oh, my child, behold the firmament .... in the splendour of its sparkling stars .... not one of them is independent of the Creator's will, not one can take a path other than that which the Lord has determined. All believers heed God's call each time they behold this wonder in the universe. If therefore the Lord harbours a great number of beings on every one of these stars you can form an impression of the infinity of the universe .... of the endless number of spiritual beings subject to His will .... and of His constant reign and activity regarding these beings, all of which are part of the eternal light. Oh, you won't believe how inconceivable it is for you human children .... you, who

cannot even form a remote concept for, if you could, the magnitude, the scale of the regions in the beyond, would overwhelm you .... Yet even the smallest event is arranged by the Father Himself, the tiniest being is cared for according to His will, and countless highly developed spiritual beings are supporting Him in order to accomplish everything that the plan of divine Creation comprises .... Words cannot describe this to you; faced by this momentous realisation you can only humbly bow down before the Lord's greatness and omnipotence .... in your present state on earth you are incapable of anything else. If the Lord bestows upon you the grace of having just the smallest insight into His reign, into His kingdom and His activity, you are inconceivably blessed already, for a child that takes no interest in such spiritual experiences will find it incomparably harder to accept God's obvious activity as long as it does not recognise God's will in even the smallest occurrence ....

Amen

## **Emissaries .... Prayer .... Admonition ....**

***B.D. 0206 from November 28th 1937,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

Great things are planned by the Lord and your thoughts shall be guided in the right direction, for only by constantly informing those who are willing to hear God's lessons, are we expressing God's will .... The Lord lets His messengers travel through the earthly valley working diligently .... wherever an earthly child can be found, whose love for the Lord makes it receptive for His teachings, it may take pleasure in God's grace and be already allowed to serve Him on earth in a labour of love for uninformed and erring fellow siblings. During this time of adversity, in which many a soul lives on earth, the Lord brings so much help through His servants, so that everyone in serious need of help can take hold of the Saviour's redeeming hand. His pleading prayer penetrates through to the Father and .... with a just little confidence that your prayer will be answered .... many helpful beings will guide you so that you will escape your soul's adversity .... so that you will become free from evil influences and without reservation accept what the Father prepares for you and sends to you through His messengers. Any person's serious prayers will be granted because the Father loves His children. Dear child, listen to what we want to say to you: Consider that everyone is intended to pursue his goal on earth in divine unity .... to become as one again with the Father, Who gave him life on earth in order to advance his spiritual development .... The Lord in His love informs you to look upon this goal, this striving, as the most important thing in life; not one of you should carelessly ignore that he must justify himself one day if he has not used his life correctly for

eternity. How bitterly he will have to regret it one day, and how far more difficult will his striving for perfection be in the beyond when he, entirely dependent on the loving activity of higher spiritual beings, must lift himself up through tireless work of improving himself .... When, in fact, you may draw grace upon grace on earth which is granted to you by the Saviour in abundance if only you appeal for it .... why don't you want to make an effort to partake of this grace? .... Therefore, accept all the teachings the Lord sends to you .... become strong in faith, live in love and pray .... pray all the time, then you will, richly blessed, fulfil your purpose in earthly life and make use of this life for eternity ....

Amen

## **Evil forces .... Earthly possessions .... Treasures for the beyond ....**

***B.D. 0207 from November 29th 1937,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

Behold, we all hear your supplications which give us great hope that we will be able to work in agreement with the Highest Being. You are constantly approached by forces intending to cause your downfall and trying to

divert your path .... all thoughts affecting you unpleasantly are whisperings of these forces which you must always only counteract with prayer. Spiritual obstacles are being placed in your way to prevent you from making contact with the above, but remember .... time and again you will receive help from our side in order to help you advance on this path. We experience the battle of these forces in eternity .... it is an unrelenting struggle against them, yet anyone who is protected by God will emerge victoriously from all dangers. And now we comply with your desire: The most impoverished person on earth is able to wrestle upwards towards God .... since realisation will often come to him through his suffering on earth far easier than to someone in possession of material wealth. You all harbour the desire for earthly goods .... each person regards them as the fulfilment of his wishes .... the goal of his endeavour on earth is to acquire possessions .... and yet, it is so foolish! You cannot make any use of these in eternity, everything stays behind and only the spiritual possessions you acquired will be regarded by the Lord. And woe to you if you leave your life on earth in spiritual poverty! .... You will have to struggle for a very long time in the beyond in order to climb higher step by step, your struggle will be the most laborious work .... And woe to you if you had not gathered treasures for yourselves in earthly life through works of love, which result in the grace of receiving love again, giving you the strength to work at improving yourselves. Here, in earthly life, you often lack realisation .... yet you are offered extensive



means to acquire it and for richly blessed activity on earth. But on the other side in the beyond you will lack these .... since you have come to the realisation there .... and you will have to struggle far harder in the beyond. Never rely on later on .... life on earth is only short and to enter the gate of death unprepared is bitter for every person .... During every hour of adversity the Saviour knocks at your door in order that you may grant Him admission .... don't let this voice pass you by unheeded .... always remember that every day could be your last one .... and to live in a way that this thought cannot scare you is what the Lord and Saviour time and again proclaims to you through His emissaries. Therefore listen to your heart and remain in God's grace.

Amen

## **Awakening from darkness .... Example .... References to activities ....**

***B.D. 0208 from November 29th 1937,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

Blessed be the name of the Lord forever and ever ....  
Wake up from your sleep, all of you who are still in  
spiritual darkness. The first signs of the dawning day are

appearing and the voice of the Father rings out .... and wherever it is heard faint fear creeps into their hearts and anyone not following this voice will hopelessly go astray .... When the first rays of the morning sun break through the darkness the time will have come for everyone to turn to the light .... for he who wanted to deny His Power will shudder and he who deemed himself powerful will tremble .... for neither will be able to claim for themselves 'The Lord bestows His grace upon the humble ....' for humility is unknown to all those who renounce Him today. The will to dominate is extremely strong and, in awareness of this, they inwardly resent subordinating themselves until the higher Power nevertheless puts an end to their activity .... The Lord in His greatness and kindness so often provides the evidence of His Power and His activity, yet people are so deluded .... they pay no attention to the telltale signs sent by the Lord in order to warn them .... everything has become commonplace to them, they keep their eyes and ears closed and, like the blind, keep groping in the dark until the Lord announces Himself .... Many messengers walk through all places .... a tiny grain remains wherever they have sown, and this tiny grain will grow and, nourished by the servants of the Saviour, it will spread and bear fruit one day when the time has come. Thus you should lovingly cultivate faith everywhere .... you should always remind people of the days of terror so that they will not blindly walk into their downfall .... into the downfall of the soul .... and where you were instructed from above you should come together and unite in

prayer .... Penetrating divine truth will always be denied to the researcher .... but the child of God which hands itself over to Jesus' heart and beseeches Him in ardent love is granted an insight into eternal wisdoms .... It will be instructed by the Saviour Himself and be able to accept bright and pure truths, and its life on earth will be a blessed one as long as it remains in the Lord. Always remain conscious of the fact that you are under the protection of the Lord if only you always sacrifice your every action and thought to Him in love .... if you trustingly hand yourself over to Him and devotedly and humbly subordinate yourself to His will. The Lord will help you in days of need, and thus you, too, shall help those who appeal for help for their soul in adversity. The Lord will lead such souls to you and it is your task to always give to them as you were given yourself.

Amen

**'I need you ....' 'I need you ....'**

***B.D. 0209 from November 30th 1937,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

Greetings to you in the name of the Father .... You must take the path He intended for you .... His protective hand will guide you in the right way. Only your love made you take this path, yet your spirit was united with us. If you

keep in contact with your Saviour, benign forces will always be by your side who seek to influence your thoughts so that everything you accomplish will be in harmony with the heavenly Father. Continue your path undeterred and accept the spiritual teachings offered to you with a grateful heart, for sooner or later the time will come when your heart will open itself to the eternal truths God intends to give to you when your faith has become unshakable. We are all waiting for this time, for it shall bring us many blessings .... Always remember this when daily events intend to cause you alarm .... 'I need you' .... the Lord calls out to you .... every being fulfils what He designed it to do .... therefore do not worry and listen to that which will restore your calm:

Your writings are received with great astonishment .... A breath of love and purity accompanies them, and that is what is judged and penetrates the heart. The Words softly linger in his ears and his thoughts are with you, and by accepting the Words of God he gives himself and us great pleasure. And yet, it will not be able to convince him and dissuade him from thinking that you picked up the spiritual knowledge from somewhere else and repeat it now, because he finds it inconceivable that God should give a gift like this to someone whose way of life does not concur with the doctrines of his church. His God-believing, devout disposition made him take the right path at all times and, inwardly united with the Saviour, he always gave the best to people .... However, if you want to serve the Saviour then leave everything trustingly to His

discretion .... Just as you became enlightened, He will work everywhere at the right time, yet everywhere in a different way. And just as He granted you fulfilment and comfort, He will also grant others what is beneficial to them. Behold, my child, eloquence often speaks words which are not in harmony with the Father's sacred teachings, and yet the Lord understands, since love for Him often arouses such fervour that its results contradict the pure teaching of Christ .... However, where good will prevails, no harm will come from it, after all, the Father protects His Own, who follow Him. However, from now on make sure that the teachings can be conveyed to you without interruption; it is an unparalleled blessing if you stay in permanent contact with us .... We give you the information according to the Saviour's will .... Restless work at improving yourself, limitless dedication to your Saviour and infinite love for Him will make you receptive for every spiritual influx, and wisdom and teachings of immeasurable spiritual value will flow to you .... The Lord will bless your work .... since you will remain in His grace as long as your heart is intimately inclined towards Him .... Therefore, continue on this path with a joyful heart, well guarded and guided by our protection.

Amen

**Font of love ... Dangers ...  
Power of love ....**

## ***B.D. 0210 from December 1st 1937, taken from Book No. 5/6***

Look within and realise that everything sent to you from God shall provide you with spiritual knowledge and an increasingly deeper bond with the heavenly Father. We only ever instruct those whose heart long for heavenly nourishment and whose willingness to help is pleasing to the Lord. Many a person carelessly walks past the font of Christ's love which would grant them refreshment and comfort .... yet thirst and hunger for this refreshment is unknown to them .... satisfying their worldly wishes is enough for them. For this reason we give all the more to those who strive for strength and support through the Lord Himself. It is a contradiction that God sends suffering to His Own in order to subsequently refresh them with His grace and love .... yet it is only a contradiction for those who do not understand the wisdom of God's actions and guidance .... Complete trust and utter devotion will impart such knowledge to you .... so that you will gladly forego everything else and only ever desire divine wisdom. Therefore, do not prematurely renounce something infinitely precious .... a goal will be set for you soon enough, for life is short. So join us ever more closely, and also pay attention today to the Words we give you with love: Your contention for truth is not without danger for you .... the adversary will send his temptations in equal measure in order to confront you with obstacles on the path you are taking .... and he will

not shy away from using any means if he can thereby reach his goal. Your inner battle gives evidence of the danger you are in .... Yet prayer will help you and no child can descend whose desire for the Father is as strong as yours .... You will feel the love in your heart, you will recognise that the spirit of love is only of divine origin when all thoughts are clear and pure and everyone makes an effort to take care of and to work for the other. The power of love is as yet not recognised by any of you, it transcends time and space, its origin is often incomprehensible and yet the inevitable result of correct realisation. And it revives with such strength that centuries will be unable to lessen it ....

Life on earth is just a short span of time in eternity; love, however, was effective even prior to that and will be effective for all eternity. In this way the Lord ensures that those of like mind shall be united on earth .... who acknowledge Jesus Christ as their Lord and want to serve Him with loving devotion .... and although they all take their different paths .... their activity of love brings them together, they give to each other out of this love and feel the heartfelt desire to show each one of their fellow human beings the way to the heavenly Father. Through blissfully absorbing spiritual knowledge, through active works of love, through constant striving for perfection, the human being attains a level which will enable him to adopt a shape of light after his departure and which will remove him from the heaviness of earth. Do you realise what grace it is .... to have overcome suffering and

worry? .... God takes your life in order to return it to you in undreamt of fullness of light and undreamt of beatitude .... Behold, my child, it is our constant endeavour to achieve this for you .... We would like to show you the way but are only able to teach you if your will accommodates it. Therefore you must do whatever you can to offer us the opportunity. We so dearly wish that you won't tire in your work .... that you will constantly pray and struggle for God's love and grace. The stronger the power of prayer, the more we are united with you and the deeper you will be affected by our Saviour's teachings, Who has prepared them for you in love. And if opposition should arise in you through dark powers, you should pray even more, so that you will at all times emerge from this battle victoriously.

Amen

## **Warning .... The Saviour's love ....**

***B.D. 0211 from December 2nd 1937,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

During an hour of silence you will experience the Lord's grace, Who will inform you of His will and assign your future activity to you. Dear child, always seek to keep



your heart pure, for only then will you receive the strength to diligently comply with your duty on earth .... If you are cautioned by the Father, you will find yourself facing a cliff, and then you should conscientiously try to know yourself and make an effort to improve so that you can flawlessly face your Creator .... in order to then receive clear and pure Words of truth. In this life everyone makes the great mistake of confiding insufficiently in the Saviour Who would like to grant him all His love .... Who would like to look after him and guide him through his whole life on earth. After all, anyone who appeals for the Saviour's love travels the long path through the earthly valley with Him; would this awareness not make anyone blissfully happy? What could be more pleasant than to avoid all obstacles of life guided by Him? ....(Break)

## **Warning against evil forces ....**

***B.D. 0212 from December 2nd 1937,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

Dear soul, why do you afflict me .... let it be sufficient for you .... Angels are messengers from God, sent to serve those who shall inherit beatitude .... Pointless ....

In writing I can give you more. Protect your heart from unbelief and look after your soul ....**E vil spiritual beings battle for it and would like to plunge you into ruin ....** remain faithful to the Lord **time and again** and long for Him. For even if your spirit is willing .... embittered opponents fight in the ranks of the enemy .... The Saviour Himself will help you, but do not leave the right path and always remain His child.

Amen

## **Spiritual protection .... Warning ....**

***B.D. 0213 from December 3rd 1937,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

Oh my dear child .... in the world the Lord has arranged that His servants are surrounded by spiritual protection .... without it you would have to perish, for you are constantly pursued by evil powers intent on pushing you off the path you are taking. It is a constant battle for your soul; nevertheless, the Father leads you out of all danger .... Lay your heart down at His feet and He will protect it now and forever. And when you experience the salvation of God .... when you are blessed to hear the Word of God, all demons shall disappear, for the blessing

of the Lord is upon His Own and those who want to harm them will perish. So listen to what we want to tell you: It is not the Father's will that you should waste your strength .... It is worthless for you to seek a connection which can give you far less than you are offered through your daily receptions. None of you can hear the host of angels rejoicing about a willing child .... However, if you let the grace pass you by, you will have deprived yourselves and will not be accepted so easily again, for the Lord's will has chosen all of you but you disregard His Words. However, much would be taken away from you, my child, were you to start all over again with that which showed you the right path in the beginning. Time and again the Lord admonishes all of you to remain faithful; time and again He lovingly draws you to Himself, therefore, hand your hearts over to Him and remain gladly and loyally devoted to Him .... But your dear friends shall be advised that only constant striving towards higher spheres will bring them close to the path again which they left for fear that it might harm them .... We make a sacrifice if it is for your highest good .... In hours of laborious communication we will gladly inform you of our endeavours and seek to introduce you to the kingdom of God; however, you must be willing and comply with our advice and admonitions. We cannot instruct anyone with a reluctant heart who fails to make innermost heartfelt contact with us and wants to accept our teachings. Yet we will give increasingly more and in greater depth to the child of God which trusts us .... whose prayer is granted by the Father and which ever

more willingly opens its heart and ears to our teachings .... If the Father bestows such grace upon you, then you should gratefully accept it, but don't ever allow yourselves to be set back when you struggled step by step on the path. Continue your path with God and look upwards, not backwards.

Amen

## **Submitting to the will of the Most High ....**

***B.D. 0214 from December 4th 1937,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

My dear child .... Holy is the will of the Lord, great and powerful .... and all shall bow down before Him. Conscious of His power, the human being hides his face from the Creator of Heaven and Earth .... and only immaturity of soul, delusion and arrogance let the human being become haughty .... Take care of your spirit so that you will realise how small you are compared to the Lord .... don't let any thoughts arise in you which separate you from the Father but make an effort to reach Him. And for this you need to pray .... Difficult days will ensue for the one whose spirit is incapable of submitting itself to the Deity .... When all indications in a person's life fail to

convince people of a guiding Fatherly hand, then the Father must intervene more severely so as not to lose one of His conceited children. It is, after all, beneficial for all of you if you accept your Father's teachings, for there is not one among you who would be able to enter everlasting peace without realisation .... and in order to gain realisation I repeatedly sent you new indications of divine activity .... And the fact that the Father's love is constantly concerned about you, that a ceaseless struggle for your souls takes place should be obvious to you if you merely open your eyes and ears for everything going on around you. What would be the point of all life around and inside of you if it did not correspond to a divine purpose .... is there anything in your existence which does not testify to His will? .... And if the thought instantly arises in you that God's Creation is a work of lawfully proceeding activity of nature .... then you merely use a different expression for the same thing ....

Everything that arose, everything that came into being, was created by a Power Which reigns over Heaven and Earth .... and you are all subject to this Power, no human will, regardless of how strong it is, can isolate itself, it is also subject to the one will .... the will of the Most High. Try to understand that you belong to God .... that you are a tiny part of this Deity, provided your striving has begun and you profess God .... Then not one of you will fight it, then all of you will also want to be as 'one' with your heavenly Father, and all of you will want to receive His grace and longingly turn to the One Who created you and destined you to wear the crown of life one day.

Amen

# The effects of God's Word ....

***B.D. 0215 from December 5th 1937,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

We actively participate in everything you do, and if it is for the glory of God, blessings and grace will ensue for you. As a result of your spiritual work we, too, have to fulfil ever new tasks .... since it is necessary to support all those who you are trying to win over .... and to assist them when they search and ponder and turn their thoughts to the beyond. We pay attention to their every stirring of heart .... and we aim to direct their thoughts towards the heavenly Father. Eager activity sets in wherever even the slightest thought is sent up .... This is why your cooperation is so longed for by all spiritual friends who, in turn, are entrusted with the souls of these earthly children .... and if you comply with the commandment of love, you share with them the Father's gift for you. The Lord commissions you, His daughter, to work for His glory, thus He gave you a ministry you must take care of .... Working on a small scale is often especially laborious and requires much patience, for where such thought had never before occurred to the human child the ground

must be prepared first before it can and wants to receive it .... Where the Saviour is present amongst you .... when you sincerely pray for His presence .... the activity will be twice as richly blessed and by the magic embracing you will feel that you are granted His love .... An air of piety descends upon everyone, at first unconsciously .... but then you will feel it increasingly stronger, and even if you want to resist the touch of love coming from the Word of God .... you cannot escape it. And if you let yourselves be affected by these currents flowing to you .... if you spend sincere thought on the Lord and Saviour, you soon will feel how your faith .... your love for the Saviour and your longing for the Father grows and that you draw blessing after blessing from it .... It is so beneficial to be active in love for fellow human beings. Abandoned are all those who received from the Father and rejected this gift .... To fulfil the commandments of God should be everyone's endeavour, and the Lord expects everyone to live a God-pleasing life in love .... but who lives like that on earth? Barely a few .... The Lord does not want to influence them forcefully by any means or it would be easy to make them comply .... However, if you resolve to obey His will out of love for Him you will remain blessed and from then on see your goal in the unity with God. The Word of God signifies your certain discovery of the path to ascent .... God's Word is your nourishment and refreshment at the same time .... it is your strength and power .... it is the never ceasing source of grace which Christ keeps at your disposal to draw from constantly. If you are instructed by God's messengers then you take part of the work in the

eternal universe, in regaining souls for the kingdom of God .... Whether on earth or in the beyond .... the love of God wrests the souls from darkness and any work for this purpose will be blessed by the Lord. So desire to hear the Word of God at all times, all of you who want to be of service to the Lord, let yourselves be refreshed .... let yourselves be strengthened and comforted, and come to the Father from Whom the eternal Word emanates. On earth He promises you eternal life, if you abide by His Word you will never ever know death. And all of you can achieve it by merely wanting it .... you need only ever stay within the Lord and the promise of Christ will come true .... for His is the kingdom, the power and the glory for ever and ever.

Amen

## **Human manifestation ....**

***B.D. 0216 from December 6th 1937,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

My dear child .... The Father's great goodness wants to reveal a big secret to you .... the secret of His human manifestation. Without the Lord's love you humans would never have been able to release yourselves from the guilt of sin and would have fallen increasingly deeper had the Father not taken mercy upon humanity and, in greater



than great love, sent His holiest child to earth in order to bring salvation to people from utmost adversity. No greater evidence of His divine love could the Lord ever have given to people than the fact that He sacrificed Himself .... that He took everyone's guilt upon Himself and, through suffering and crucifixion, acquired the grace for people to enter the kingdom of God again .... Far worse than the suffering on the cross was the guilt of sin which burdened His pure, divine head, and in unspeakable pain for the earthly children He offered the heavenly Father the greatest sacrifice .... He gave Himself for the suffering of earth .... The Father had sent His son to earth .... the holiest, highest, purest being Which was as one with the heavenly Father, accomplished this act out of most heartfelt love for humanity .... Everything in the universe must remain motionless in realisation of this most sacrosanct sacrifice ever made for the human race. The magnitude of His love must let everything fall silent in utter reverence .... And all those having been redeemed from deepest sin by the Lord must eternally sing His praises .... To descend into the valley of earth from the close presence of the divine Father's all-encompassing radiance .... from the splendour and magnificence of eternal life .... into the midst of sorrow and depth of sin .... The Saviour's love for the earthly children and the horrendous sacrifice of living in His purity in the midst of sin and vice is beyond words .... The Son of God fulfilled the act of Salvation on earth in holiest compassion .... No being before or afterwards ever endured such suffering as the Son of God .... On earth the

Saviour participated in all suffering .... in boundless love His divinity revealed itself and thus, for the salvation of humanity, He made an offering of Himself. Become like little children, then you will be able to empathise with the Lord's agony .... His spirit .... great and glorious and radiant .... dwelled in eternal light .... in order to now live embodied on earth, burdened by humanity's guilt of sin .... with a crown of thorns upon His head He experienced the most bitter humiliation with a pure heart .... He took all suffering on earth upon Himself in order to lessen the earthly children's pain and, in order to prepare the Father's kingdom for them, He allowed Himself to be nailed to the cross .... God's love was so infinite that He gave His Son, yet the love of Jesus Christ returned to the Father what would have been forever lost without the Saviour's love. Without this love no being would be able to behold the face of God .... for the sake of the human race the Lord offered Himself as a sacrifice and thus redeemed the world from eternal death. Blessed is he who, in partaking of this sacrifice, lives in the love of the Lord so that he, too, will be redeemed through Jesus Christ, our Lord!

Amen

## **Insight into all beings' activity ....**

## ***B.D. 0217 from December 7th 1937, taken from Book No. 5/6***

And once again day is dawning amongst humanity, for the Saviour is within your midst and instructing you .... If you listen to the Words of God, the Saviour is close to you .... He grants his gifts to everyone of good will. And thus you are offered anew strengthening of the spirit and a ceaseless outpouring of His love on receptive souls. Oh, prove yourselves worthy of this grace .... you will provide such unimaginable bliss for yourselves if you unite with the Saviour in constant activity of love, for not one of you would be able to become blessed **without** His grace .... but through His grace the Lord Himself will guide you on the path of ascent .... All instructions will be given to you as intended by the Lord, His goal is to grant you an insight into the spiritual beings' activity through constantly more profound revelations so that you will learn to understand that everything in the universe repeats itself over and over again .... that all life and death merely serves the one purpose of advancing the soul .... that every being's task is the same at all times: to care and to work in love for the weak .... that God, the highest and most worshipful of all beings, wants to draw us to Himself with loving compassion and that we must forever strive for perfection in order to come close to the infinite Deity. However, you should not forget that the Father calls all of you .... that all of you shall enter His kingdom .... and if the Father therefore assigns you an activity, for each person a

different one .... everyone's purpose is nevertheless the same .... to make sure that one's own and one's fellow human being's soul won't come to any harm but that it will be offered to the Father in purity and perfection .... for only according to this it will be judged one day. Therefore, desire the kingdom of God first before you long for other possessions and strive for them. Everything on earth is merely temporary .... in a manner of speaking, it is just given to accompany the earthly child, yet it should willingly let go of all earthly possessions and only desire its own, that is, its soul's, maturity, so that through overcoming all earthly possessions it will find the path to the heavenly Father and thus enter His kingdom, which was prepared for us through Jesus Christ, our Lord.

Amen

## **Instruction to work for spiritual possessions .... Realisation ....**

***B.D. 0218 from December 8th 1937,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

Greetings to you from all of us, and under our protection further teachings from the Saviour shall flow to you. By no means do we want to withhold anything from you and

your fellow siblings which can only be a blessing for you all, and therefore the Saviour has granted your prayer and allows you to hear His Words afresh time and again, for in receiving these your strength and your faith will grow. And when your knowledge increases, when you constantly remain in His grace, the high value of your work will also be recognised .... It is self-evident that only a person will partake of this grace if he constantly works at improving himself and only ever tries to lovingly provide for his earthly siblings. And yet, everyone has the right to be instructed in the Word of God, and by merely showing a little desire the Father will take pity upon him by granting his wish and instructing him .... For as yet you don't understand that the Father's love is seeking you .... that everything only happens in order to show you the right path, for there is no salvation where you are aiming to, there is only destruction .... Consider this before it is too late. At the end of your days you will find it difficult when you will have to justify yourselves as to how you have used your life. Of what use will your actions then be which merely gained you earthly reward .... Of what use will your earthly possessions be? .... And how much will you regret not having gathered deeds of love which enable you to ascend in the beyond .... and what pain will this regret cause .... when you have realised that you had precious time at your disposal and had lived it fruitlessly for eternity .... Oh, such realisation is bitter! The Lord therefore admonishes you to turn to Him while there is still time, for within a short time you can, if you are of good will, create inconceivable possessions for

eternity .... if you unite with the Lord in thought and in heartfelt prayer appeal to Him for His grace .... Everything you request from the Father for your soul will so gladly be granted to you. Don't be satisfied on earth with illusive possessions which are not permanent .... the Lord has prepared such indescribable happiness in His kingdom for you .... this alone should be worth your desire. Let yourselves be instructed and if you gratefully accept these teachings in your heart it will be a blessing for you for eternity. Now, my dear child, follow our advice: It is not always good to let oneself be guided by one's feelings .... You will learn to understand these words .... that this gift of God you received is something special .... Over many decades the human being does not divert from his point of view, and yet, a moment often brings him close to the great, holiest .... recognition of the Divinity, and then he is no longer able to find his way through the confusions of life. He feels he understands and can no longer reconcile this understanding with everything before .... This is the time when often everything seems to crumble in the person which until then had seemed rock-solid, and if then the grace of God did not visibly protect such people, the adversary would have an easy time .... Yet everyone follows the path he is destined to take, and his sincere inclination towards God will guide him across all obstacles. And if you now turn to the Saviour for enlightenment, the Lord advises you to leave everything to Him .... He will correctly guide and instruct anyone who places his trust in Him, and if you feel that your desire for the Lord is being granted, that

your heart turns to Him increasingly more, then you will also receive increasingly more profound teachings and the bread of heaven will be given to you .... Praise the Lord, for He instructs you and changes everything for your own good.

Amen

## **'Remain active in love ....'**

***B.D. 0219 from December 9th 1937,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

My dear child .... We all know that you depend on your daily work and therefore always try to accommodate you so that you can accept the daily reception without interruption .... However, consider how much better it would be were you able to keep to the same time .... within our ranks we have to accomplish a scheduled activity and therefore, where possible, instruct each person at the same time .... You might not understand this at the moment but trust our words, during reception you will feel that our thoughts flow easier to you as soon as you place yourselves at our disposal in a completely detached state. Every being is subject to certain decisive laws and so we are always already ready at the right time, so that you can receive what is granted to you .... Yet now continue your writing, we are ready for you .... we just

wanted to explain how much easier it would be for you and for us, if you could possibly always make contact with us at the same time, and now begin: Remain active in love .... Write these words deep in your heart, for it is the epitome of an upright way of life .... It will be indescribably significant for you if love always decisively influences your actions. For such deeds are pleasing to God .... And if, from another side, the same is preached to you that every good deed has its rewards .... then realise that **love** must always be its motive .... How often is this disregarded .... how often do people give, how often is something done purely mechanically without heartfelt love .... And this deed is not recognised by the Lord. Even the smallest act shall be guided by love .... and you should always feel the Saviour's closeness in you .... For in every deed of love God Himself is close to you .... No matter what you do .... if it is in connection with the feeling of love for your Saviour .... to your fellow human beings, you will always find grace in the eyes of the Lord .... And only then will you be 'active in love ....'

My child, always instruct your fellow human beings about the importance of this teaching .... Make it clear to them that they must work at improving themselves from within, that they must first cultivate love in order to make attaining the connection with God increasingly easier which, in turn, will grant them the grace again to take the right path, for the human being only remains in contact with God through actions of love .... And henceforth all divine grace will flow to people who pay attention to this



and, at the same time, transform themselves from within, if they first cultivate love in their hearts. And where you are able to show love to your neighbour, your change will bear fruit again .... For love awakens love in return .... and thus every good deed in love results in the same again, and such change has a refining effect on all those who are with you and around you .... Consider this and make every effort .... It is the Deity's intention that you should receive the love of heaven; in order to awaken it you must prove yourselves worthy .... you must strive of your own accord to receive the love of God .... Therefore practise love for God and your fellow human beings, for only through love can you become redeemed while you are still on earth and one day in eternity.

Amen

## **Pray with trust in the Lord .... Spiritual protection ....**

***B.D. 0220 from December 9th 1937,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

Pray to the Father in every adversity and, when He helps you, recognise His love. You all need to suffer, so that you send your thoughts to the Father and entrust yourselves

to His kindness .... The Father will not abandon His Own and, providing you make an effort to acknowledge His will, you will regard Him as the Father and will be safe and secure in His Fatherly love. Don't forget that your attitude towards God prepares you on earth for eternity .... If you are in heartfelt contact with Him, you will constantly experience His grace .... if, however, you renounce the Father, you will forfeit your childship to God and live your life on earth without His blessing. Let the Lord look after you and trust in Him. Inwardly you must certainly be strong and never doubt His love and goodness, after all, what would you be without these? .... First you must endeavour to have complete trust, then you will receive help in every adversity .... however, someone with timid trust in the Lord and His power .... will just as timidly appeal for help, and how can it then be granted to him? .... Therefore turn to the heavenly Father with strong faith and blind trust if you want your prayer to be granted, for the Father loves His Own and will help them in their adversity. And rest assured that He will let no child pray in vain which imploringly raises its hands to Him .... Thus, appeal to the Father with full confidence and don't worry .... Countless words will give evidence of the fact that the Father's love gives to His children what their heart desires. His angels are watching over you and lift you up when you are in danger of wavering. Entrust yourself to their protection, so that you will be guided on your earthly path until you enter eternal peace.

Amen

# **The Saviour's Word ....**

## **Guiding star in the**

## **darkness of night ....**

***B.D. 0221 from December 10th 1937,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

Hear our teachings, my child, and accept our Words with trust: Everything the Lord has in store for you is intended to be a comfort to you during hours of weakness. You, too, will need strength and consolation in life and this shall flow to you from the Words, so that they will always be able to lift you up again. It is His will that you shall be instructed whenever we can feel your desire for heavenly bread .... the Lord in His love and goodness explains everything His children desire to know .... He introduces them to the teaching of Christ in order to henceforth be a loyal Advisor on their path in life. And what can go astray under such a faithful watch? His Word is the guiding star in the darkness of night .... it is a warning of danger .... it is given to uplift, comfort and invigorate .... You will always feel refreshed when you appeal to the Saviour that He should bestow it upon you .... In your innermost heart you shall perceive the loveliest Words and you shall accept them gladly, and once they have penetrated you, you will

never let go of them, for nothing of an earthly nature can substitute the most glorious gift of God .... Nothing else will pour peace into your heart in the same way as the Saviour's teaching. And once you have received it, try to live according to the Saviour's request .... shape yourselves in a way that He will look upon you with pleasure .... that you, who comply with His Words, will be surrounded by radiant brightness. For whose Words should affect you even more impressively if not the Lord's? .... And if God has given you peace on earth already then you are inconceivably wealthy, and you, who are already allowed to live in the grace of the Lord on earth, have the assignment to share your wealth from now on.

Amen

## **Beneficial activity ....**

***B.D. 0222 from December 11th 1937,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

And once again we want to point your beneficial activity out to you. Much will still be offered to you and only diligent work on yourself will bring you closer to the goal of being united with the heavenly Father. For when God's messengers endeavour to initiate you into the mystery of eternity, when you are continuously given divine

wisdoms, when the Lord Himself allocates you what you shall receive, an abundance of blessings will be ascribed to you. Behold, we want to reinforce your will, we want to prepare you for your work, we want to help you to always desire the heavenly bread. At no time will it be denied to you as long as you ask for it yourself and constantly remain in contact with us in a state of complete closeness to God, as we are merely the Lord's executive forces .... we comply with His every directive and teach where the desire for the Deity exists. As soon as a nasty thought of evil powers wants to thwart our endeavour and influence you unfavourably, our protective spiritual beings are anxious to remove you from this influence, and when you direct your thoughts to the Saviour again all enemies of your soul will be powerless; this is why it entails such infinite blessing if you frequently find the path to the Saviour Who will comply with your desire with boundless love .... This shows all of you that every thought is decisive for your spiritual development .... Look at people whose mind is exclusively occupied with worldly desires, how little contact they have with their spiritual surroundings .... how carelessly they bypass so many blessings which would also be granted to them .... Every spiritual being's continuous effort is to direct the thoughts of their entrusted earthly children into spiritual regions .... with just a little cooperation you will already be able to receive your spiritual friends' thoughts .... that is, they will be able to transfer the thoughts to you, and then you will slowly ascend step by step, if it is your will. For only your **will** is decisive .... You shall choose the path

to the Father in complete freedom of will .... and since you are too weak to choose what is right of your own accord, you must pray for strength and for correct realisation, after which you will be guided correctly, for the Father calls you in His love .... Anyone of good will heeds the call, for the Father considers no person and no being too insignificant that He should not attempt to draw it upwards .... Thus you constantly notice within yourselves the struggle of the spiritual beings surrounding you ....

Amen

## **Treasures ....**

***B.D. 0223 from December 12th 1937,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

Day is dawning on earth .... At a time when you all have to fight, the Lord gives you an abundance of blessings .... It is His will that all available spiritual forces shall be in contact with Earth .... and thus it remains up to you to make use of the Father's kind-hearted approach. Simply trust your movements of heart .... the Lord always tries to penetrate this and, if you are receptive, you will be blessed by the heavenly Father. In all your striving on earth you always forget one thing .... the conscious work of improving your soul .... You always consider earthly

striving more important and pay no attention to the existence of that which is most sublime in you .... the soul, which is, after all, a part of God for which you should pave the way during your earthly existence .... Don't let your soul live in want for the sake of your body, in view of the afterlife make the sacrifice to constantly endeavour to cultivate a different way of thinking .... take hold of the Father's hand which reaches out to you and don't hide yourselves from the Saviour .... The dawning of this day finds a diligent child at work .... and thus you, too, should do your work day after day .... Do you know whether the evening will still be granted to you? .... Do you know how long you will live on earth? .... Oh, why don't you listen to the voice of caution! .... Golden gates will be opened for you if only you are willing to understand .... for during this period of time everyone's thinking will still change .... you will have to understand why the Father allowed the events on earth to happen .... that everything which affects you at present will have been, in the sense of divine wisdom, only permitted to have happened as a means towards your perfection. Understand this and humbly accept the Lord's directive, so that new activity shall develop from all happenings around and inside of you .... the work of improving your soul .... The means used by the heavenly Father in order to gain His Own may seem incomprehensible to you, yet the Lord looks into every human heart .... He must intervene at the root of evil and where the soul is in greatest danger of heading toward the abyss. The external circumstances of life are often the cause of why a person distances himself from the

Lord instead of turning to Him .... then the Lord will intervene with means which intend to arouse the human child from its spiritual sleep. Recognise your purpose .... it lies somewhere else than you assume in your blind eagerness .... If the Lord guides you with loving mercy towards realising the truth then be grateful and submit yourselves willingly, and don't cling small-mindedly to big problems which you are unable to solve with your current attitude. The Lord wants to see actions which serve the progress of the soul .... you will be able to accomplish the earthly duties imposed on you as long as the salvation of the soul is your first consideration .... your heart will find peace in difficult times if you work in cooperation with the Lord and not against Him and His teachings .... for if you want to exert an ennobling influence on your fellow human beings you will not be able to do so if you reject the Saviour and His grace which is at your disposal .... On your own, without the Saviour, your endeavour will be unsuccessful because 'No one comes to the Father except through Me' ....

Amen

**God's means to gain  
realisation ....**

***B.D. 0224 from December 12th 1937,***



## ***taken from Book No. 5/6***

(Continuation of no. 0223)

Every proclamation is the heavenly Father's answer to your supplication. The Father's love considers each one of His children according to His judgment .... The most beautiful and valuable goal you can set yourself in earthly life is to strive for eternal life. Illuminated by His grace no darkness can cast a shadow over the path to the top .... led in bright light across all obstacles .... the Lord will draw you to Himself. In tireless work your life flies by .... and you will replace your life on earth with life in the beyond .... so lend us your ear today again in order to receive the Words of the Saviour: The hour which may be decisive for their every activity on earth is often met with indifference by people. The opportunity certainly often also presents itself to people in life when they are being admonished to leave the broad path in order to reach the top on the narrow and laborious path .... yet they rarely listen to the inner voice until they receive ever more serious pointers to eternity. If someone would merely not let them pass by unused .... it would be to his own benefit. It is the Father's will that the earthly children shall be warned over and over again .... With untiring patience the Lord wants to bring help to all those poor people who spend their life in delusion. Since the Father, in His love, is so concerned for His children .... it would be really easy for you to listen to the Words of exhortation He proclaims to you .... He cares for His children on earth

with never-ending mercy and uses the strangest means to inform them of His will .... Oh, listen to the voice which only holds love for you, His living creations .... comply with it gladly! .... (Break)

## **God's means to gain realisation ....**

***B.D. 0225 from December 13th 1937,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

(Continuation of nos. 0223 and 0224)

So continue: The Lord will always inform you of His will by allowing you to gain insights into the activity beyond this earth .... into His beings' activity in the universe. If He grants you the connection from this world with the beyond then it is an act of grace which purely arises from the intention to inform the earthly children of His love and to admonish them to seek the Father as a child of God in order to focus on their purpose. None of you question where your activity is leading you .... You just use every day for accomplishing your earthly work. You do not want to know what kind of value or worthlessness it entails and remain indifferent to the true purpose of earthly life .... Behold, the Lord must draw your attention to your mistake .... if He does not want you to descend

further .... and so He uses the means at his disposal, as necessary. With some, a gentle suggestion is already enough .... a knock at the door of his heart .... yet others refuse to wake up .... the spiritual night surrounding them prevents them from turning towards the rays of light .... they do not desire illumination .... they believe they will just as certainly find their path in their spiritual darkness .... yes, they certainly take this path, but where is it leading to? Oh, let yourselves be warned before it is too late! And beseech the Lord in prayer for help, then you will find it easy and the hour of realisation will be near.

Amen

## **Extraordinary disposition ... Christian teaching changed into secular teaching ...**

***B.D. 0226 from December 14th 1937,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

'Remain with me at all times ....' shall be your prayer to the Saviour, and He will always protect you from danger that might otherwise threaten your soul .... Your determining factor will always be your attitude towards

Him .... since you will accordingly either win every battle of the soul or be defeated .... Where you beseech God for help, victory will be assured to you. Your heart need only ever humbly accept divine will. Up above in the eternal home it is a law that everyone shall be subject to their Lord and Creator and if you heed this, everything else will fall into place .... By acknowledging God's will, the sensation of his own smallness arises in every person, it is a sign of a dawning realisation and then everyone should make an effort to listen attentively to the Lord's directive. Behold, my child, if you observe people's every activity without the slightest opinion of their personal value, it will very soon become clear to you that they entirely separate the subordination of higher laws from that which they believe they create for themselves. They fail to consider that they are by no means capable of acting arbitrarily where it would be contrary to the Lord's will. Extraordinary disposition requires extraordinary preconditions in connection with the Deity, and if a simple solution regarding the question of eternity comes to such a person he will reject it simply because he was incapable of grasping the depth of divine truths and has no sympathy for the daily striving towards the soul's perfection .... Dear child, place the words in a way that the meaning is understandable to you .... give them the meaning in reverse order .... Once you have penetrated the divine teachings more deeply it will be comprehensible to you. Yet for today listen: The opponent constantly preaches about the spiritual disintegration of our teachings .... the teaching of Christ.

Every Word our Saviour gave humanity is intended to be changed into purely earthly admonitions, only calculated for the duration of the human being's life. And every Word is to be classed as human work .... albeit the work of a morally highly advanced person .... Yet no human being would ever have been able to do what the Saviour in His divine love for humanity has done, and His divine Words would never have survived throughout millennia had it merely been human work and human words. So today's explanation for everything that wants to rebel against this Word .... is that **this** is human work, supported by the opponent's power in order to destroy the Lord's pure divine inheritance which He gave to His Own as a blessing .... And, were the human being left at the relentless mercy of evil, the Word of God would be destroyed .... yet the Lord will never allow for that! Time and time again His Word will survive everything else, and regardless of how many misguided teachings arise today .... they will fall apart like anything else that is not of divine origin, for the Lord keeps His protective hands over the human race so that God's teachings will penetrate a heart which wants to accept them .... For this reason all the power in the world will be unable to destroy what the Lord created, rather, it will arise again to His glory and for the salvation of the human race.

Amen

## The hour of Christ's birth ....

# **Spiritual rebirth ....**

***B.D. 0227 from December 15th 1937,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

Dear child .... With tireless patience the Lord refreshes all those who long for Him. His Words shall flow to you and you shall receive every day .... for wise indeed is everyone who draws strength and comfort from His Word. Each one of us endeavours to return you to the state of heartfelt readiness .... such days are indeed necessary, as time and again the Lord wants to take renewed possession of your soul until it is so firmly anchored to the Saviour that it will faithfully stay with Him throughout all dangers and no outside influences will be able to separate your heart from Him. For this reason He demands your devotion time and again and if you remember this you will gladly submit to Him, for the Lord has decided that from now on even the slightest event shall result in spiritual advancement and bring you peace .... For wherever you are heading to, the Lord will protect you and only ever choose what is right .... You are accompanied by His blessing and His Fatherly eye watches over you .... Thus follow our thoughts:

When the Feast of Love draws to an end you will experience a state of strong inner reflection again .... as will every earthly child in search for God .... These are the effects of the Saviours infinite love which pours upon the

souls of those who became enlightened as the result of the celebration, who accepted the hour of Christ's birth in their heart .... For these the song of love is sung from above .... It rings in their hearts and leaves a gentle yearning for the Saviour which shall be satisfied .... For the Saviour enters every heart and turns these souls towards eternity. All angels intone the song of love .... and if you carefully listen to this voice in your heart, the hour of Christ's birth will also be your hour of spiritual rebirth .... You will grasp His teachings and live in His love from then on, and thus you will turn to the divine grace which will guide you towards the light. Then your life on earth will be sunny .... sunny in spirit, from this time on you will not rest until you have scaled the path of ascent. My dear child, always make sure that no doubt will cloud your inner being .... receive everything with profound faith, ignore all apprehension and always accept our Words with complete trust .... So much shall be given to you .... in increasingly shorter intervals you shall be informed of how closely the Saviour unites Himself with you through your dedication, how spiritual teachings are continuously being assigned to you .... For only faith is the foundation which the Lord builds His kingdom upon and your holiest striving should be to penetrate the divine teachings ever more deeply .... Listen to the Lord's voice ceaselessly and without hesitation, always prepare a receptive heart for Him, offer your whole will to Him and sincerely implore the Saviour for His grace. Those who hear His Word will join the Lord in their thousands, for His Word is grace, refreshment and nourishment, and no-one

can ignore it if he pays attention to the voice of the heart. He who has ears to hear, let him hear .... And anyone who longs for the Lord will hear the voice and accept it in his heart. Thus, bring these lines to a close and prepare yourself .... it is necessary to proclaim the eternal Word, and anyone who is close to the Lord will receive it and proclaim it to the whole world .... In this hour the Lord prepares that which shall be a blessing for everyone who wants to hear Him, and the Saviour recommends that you fight in order to prevail with His grace.

Amen

## **Easy reception ... Blessings of faith ....**

***B.D. 0228 from December 16th 1937,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

Dear child, in the few months of your spiritual work you heard so many Words of love from the Lord and Saviour through us. Every day and every hour you are being admonished to remain in faithful love to your Saviour .... we will guide your thoughts towards spiritual striving whenever it is possible for us .... One day the time will come when you shall pass on the teachings you receive .... Just as you engross yourself in the eternal truths, so will



many others around you be listening to the Words and accepting them into their hearts. At this time you will find it easy to receive our thoughts, you will hear them without problems and we will be permitted to instruct constantly, for the Lord has assigned to you the mission that you shall work for Him and His Word .... Every tiny act of love for your fellow siblings will make you happy; you will work with love and actively participate in the Lord's work of redemption. For, once again, the time has come during which the Lord shall stay on earth .... that He dwells in every person's heart which merely calls upon Him .... For there is great adversity amongst people .... countless earthly children do not heed His Word .... the forces of darkness are unleashed and there are many who surrender to these forces. A tough struggle will ensue for these souls .... hence the Lord sends His messengers and tries to penetrate the human heart wherever even the slightest thought for the Saviour stirs .... Many a person remembers the Lord on the Feast of Love .... May his heart not be hardened as yet and receive what his spiritual friends try to convey to him, for the time has come again when only the human being's will needs to turn towards infinity in order to be guided onto the right path by the spiritual forces taking hold of him. Always act and think righteously in all things. After all, your heart should be devoid of all impurities, therefore always make an effort only to shelter love therein .... Suffering and sorrow make people hard, love, however, takes them closer to the Deity. Therefore let only ever love prevail .... And now, my child, continue: The blessings of faith will be received by

everyone who openly professes God. Many unexpected obstacles try to obstruct the path towards realisation for such seekers, yet by transcending everything the soul will find its Father, for the human being's thought is able to lift itself into the universe .... it can overcome all obstacles, and as soon as the thought turns towards spiritual things, the human being finds contact with the spiritual beings assigned to him, which are already waiting for his approach and are instantly willing to help him. Although evil forces will also want to take possession of the human soul, the strength of good will become increasingly stronger the more the human will accepts it and in desire for God prays for help. Thus the battle until a person has made the decision of heart will only last for a short time, and if he yields to the inner urge which directs his thoughts upward, spiritual strength will be conveyed to him, for the Lord is always willing to help where it is appealed for .... He will always strengthen the weak, He will always teach the person who asks questions .... and show the misguided the right way .... but the earthly child must always long for the Father, then all blessings will start which the Father has in store for His children and which He gives to them according to need and wise discretion. For this reason everyone is offered the opportunity to receive, and only the foolish will discard this divine grace, His love will grant you everything you pray for ....

Amen

# Life on earth for improvement .... Sorrow of spiritual friends ....

***B.D. 0229 from December 17th 1937,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

Dear child, listen to our teachings and confidently hand yourself over to our announcements: The Lord speaks to His Own patiently and without tiring, and allows them to take an insight in God's given laws, to which all reign and work is subject to in the beyond .... in the whole universe. Earthly life with its battles is reserved for those who, in the care of the heavenly Father, want to improve their soul and have appealed to the Lord for the grace of embodiment for the purpose of attaining perfection. In this stage it is possible for the soul to reach a higher degree of perfection, yet during earthly life the soul often diverts from its actual purpose and either remains at a certain standstill or, in its mental delusion, turns towards the forces of darkness .... The soul enters a state in which, unaware of its actual purpose, it should profess the Father of its **own** accord .... however, in this stage of embodiment the soul is taken care of by many lovingly concerned spiritual beings which want to influence the earthly child's thinking and would like to guide it to the heavenly Father in eternity .... And thus many a thought

transferred by these spiritual beings to a person points to the eternal Deity, and were the human being fully conscious of his great responsibility as to what consequences his life on earth entails, he would pursue his goal more determinedly .... But would the purpose of life truly be fulfilled therein? .... The human being should have **faith** .... turn to the Saviour with complete trust .... assimilate everything of a divine nature, always with faith in the Lord .... **that** is his task for which his life on earth was granted to him .... If you look at the immense number of earthly children who live a completely pointless way of life .... then you will understand why their fate saddens us so much, since in the realisation of divine truth we must watch how much grace was granted to them and how carelessly they bypass it in ignorance of their task in life .... and that is our sorrow .... because wanting to be lovingly active for others, and being rejected, is incredibly sad for us who are responsible for the care of these souls.

The signs admonish everyone .... they all hear the voice of the Lord, but whether they allow it to take effect in them depends entirely on their will .... And the Lord's mercy always finds ways and means again to convey the knowledge of His will and His love to people .... However, in his ignorance, the human being values himself so highly that he imagines himself to live his life just as safely without the blessings from the Father's hand .... With this attitude he erects such an inconceivably large obstacle for himself that he has trouble overcoming it

and as a result of his delusion does not make use of the divine means of grace which would make life on earth much easier and more beneficial for him. Nevertheless, the divine Father's mercy and love are infinite .... Great is His wisdom and His kindness, for with new evidence of His working He constantly penetrates humanity's hearts time and again .... He makes miracles happen to instruct His children .... He constantly pours out His grace upon those earthly children who are inclined towards Him and through these tries to gain those again who, in ignorance, have fallen prey to misguided teachings. The blessing of the Saviour is with all those who work for Him and thus the undertaking of every person defending the Lord will be blessed as well .... And so the Lord also gives to those who are entrusted with the earthly children's souls .... He lets helpers arise for them and if loving interaction takes place it will also result in the blessing that every good deed produces its fruit .... This is pleasing to the Lord, it enriches the earthly human child's eternal life .... it has an effect both on earth as well as in the beyond, for not the body but the spirit shall be considered on earth .... the human soul, which came forth from God and travels through life on earth only to come closer to the Lord. At a time like this, the battle for spiritual improvement is twice as necessary .... no being remains at a standstill, there is a far greater risk that it will descend if it does not make an effort by itself to find the path towards ascent .... And in order to put an end to the hostile forces, in order to lead the souls to the path of realisation, you, His servants, must do everything in your power .... for the Lord

dwells amongst those of you who fulfil your task with love for the Saviour and are faithfully of service to Him.

Amen

# **Difficult days for patience – humility – meekness .... Activity of love during the time of grace ....**

***B.D. 0230 from December 18th 1937,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

In every hour of need the Lord is ready to offer solace for His Own and if He grants it to you, you are loved by Him .... My child, call upon the Father when you are anxious, He hears every pleading child and lifts them up. Behold, according to God's wise council you humans must train yourselves to apply self-discipline .... you must learn to patiently accept everything the Lord sends to you, for all that is given to you for the improvement of your soul. If only days of steady tranquillity were granted to you, you would never be able to reach the degree of perfection you need in order to be close to the Saviour. God's wisdom allows such days to come upon you so that all your virtues shall mature, such as patience ....

humility .... gentleness and submission to God's will. Nothing is further from the Father's intention than to grant you a difficult fate, yet a far more pleasing reward beckons in the beyond if you cope with such days by training yourselves to attain these virtues .... Everything that appears to make life more difficult can lead to improvement if only you always look up to the Father with love and humbly bow down to His will. And now listen to what we are permitted to proclaim to you today: While everyone on earth is preparing to celebrate the birth of Christ, there is also diligent activity in the beyond for the salvation of humanity. We take an active part in every event on earth .... When mutual love between people has such an effect that one is devoted to the other, their souls remove themselves from the influences of evil powers and many blessings can be expected from this, for love educates people and lets them unconsciously develop their divine striving. And where, in turn, the urge exists to do good deeds and please another person, there will also be the Father's blessing .... The human being becomes dignified in this time .... where love motivates his actions .... he only ever aims to act according to the advice of the inner voice .... And where you endeavour to please your fellow human being in this time, you can expect the same fate. You, too, will be made happy by the Father's love .... by His grace you will be permitted to refresh yourselves and His blessing will rest upon you who live a life of love.

And so the spiritual beings in the beyond also strive to

exercise their activity of love increasingly more. The strength they emanate lifts untold souls up again and facilitates their work of improving themselves .... If your heart only once dedicates itself to this activity of love, you will be changed forever .... for love is Supreme .... to live in it is bliss and the strength flowing forth from love cannot be assessed by you in earthly life, yet souls are constantly redeemed through love .... And to live life on earth in this strength is an invaluable wealth which you all can attain if you always live in love. Throughout millennia love has never lost its strength, for love is divine and through love every being becomes divine .... If you therefore deem love as the most Supreme, you will be in contact with the eternal Deity .... You will draw ever closer to the Saviour .... you will remain in His love and detach yourselves from the power of darkness. In these days each one of you should be aware of the fact that you live in a time of grace, which can result in blessings above blessings if you consider love as the highest law. Each heart becomes more easily accessible to God's appeal and only hardened people reject it and let the days pass by without inner reflection .... Yet in the Holy Night many a heart experiences inner grace, it opens itself, if only for a short time, and listens to the voice which speaks to it from above. Then it would only require an ardent prayer to the heavenly Father in order to provide him with the strength of love .... our Lord and Saviour is constantly close to His earthly children .... He directs and leads each person and seeks to come to their aid .... just a little faith in Him and His protecting hand



will guide you right .... Oh, we so hope that these days of loving activity amongst people will exert a favourable influence .... so that they will turn to the Saviour .... and that they may also receive love from Him in the same way as they love others. Look deeply into your hearts .... does not every child long for its Father? Thus, also regard yourselves as God's children in order to be lovingly accepted by the Father, so that you may enter into His kingdom.

Amen

## **Task in the beyond .... Strength of love ....**

***B.D. 0231 from December 19th 1937,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

Blessed are those who are of good will .... In your heart of hearts you hear the Saviour's Words that the hour of their salvation is close to all those who love God. Every child which sincerely entrusts itself to the Father will be received by the host of angels .... it will be protected by them until it enters the Father's kingdom .... In place of earthly existence a state of complete detachment will ensue .... in its search for the infinite Deity the soul will suddenly realise everything .... it will find itself in a

secluded place and will only feel a seemingly inexplicable consuming yearning for the Saviour. This is how the Lord will announce His presence ... and in awareness of its former activity the soul will become conscious of its new activity in the beyond, for it will then continue the striving for perfection it had started on earth and thereby unite itself ever more lovingly with the Saviour .... The goal it will then be striving for will be so extraordinarily exhilarating .... it will promise many blessings for the surrounding souls if they are still less advanced for eternity .... it will make the soul itself very happy, for its indwelling love will motivate it to constantly work for the kingdom of God. Not even the slightest measure of love will be lost; it will comfort the seeking and wandering spiritual beings which draw the strength to improve themselves from the love of the more advanced spiritual beings. Throughout millennia souls are yearning to be redeemed, untold beings are waiting for the time that they are given love and which you on earth value far too little .... The strength of divine love .... will be recognised by you in the beyond as the most Supreme .... It is very much to your advantage if you dedicate your every action to the Saviour, then you willingly hand yourselves over to His care and everything will be a blessing for you. Give generously and from the bottom of your heart .... but only ever give with love if you want to be acceptable in the Father's eyes .... And thus you will bring a large measure of good deeds into eternity .... and the profusion of light emanated by these brightly shining deeds will make you very happy and you

will realise how much strength comes forth from love, how it will lift you into regions of heavenly joy. From then on your work will become an infinitely enjoyable activity, for you will not rest until you also have shown other souls the path to the Lord .... Escorting the wandering beings to the Lord and leading His children to the Father will be regarded by you as your task in the beyond, and the Lord will be with you .... at all times .... and you are loved by Him .... God cherishes all beings .... no human being on earth can comprehend God's love and goodness or he would never do anything that might sadden Him .... yet the measure of love He gives to His Own is inexhaustible and will last for all eternity.

Amen

## **Ludendorff's death ....**

***B.D. 0232 from December 20th 1937,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

'Ye shall know them by their fruits .... ' My dear child, if you are of good will you must also listen to the inner voice admonishing you. You won't always find it easy, yet your constant effort will take you to the goal .... Despite all temptations you must succeed in approaching **all** living creations with love .... leave the judgment as to who deserves love or not to the Father. You shall be blessed by

Him, and you will never regret it .... nevertheless, you must always remain pure of heart and if you find it difficult, then pray. You humans have no idea how easily you can fall .... evil is constantly lurking around you and tries to enter your thoughts, in that case the human being is pulled back and forth and easily loses his bond with God .... Take pity upon every being and appeal to your heavenly Father that He, too, shall take pity .... The guilt is great .... yet God's love is greater .... Behold, my child, we advise you like this so that you will free yourself from the idea that your judgment is right .... Anyone who has concluded his life with faith in God is also entitled to the Father's merciful love, and do you know whether God's voice has not entered his heart? .... Behold, the Father takes continuous care of the earthly children .... It is incumbent upon His will when they complete their lives, and the love of heaven wrestles for every soul until the very end. Anyone who still commends himself into God's hands will receive His blessing. For this reason you should also approach the Lord with good will and pray for each other and you will emerge victorious from the battle with the opponent. Understand the Lord's Words correctly: Whatever you did for the least of My brothers, you did for Me .... and if you can rise above yourselves and love your enemies, you will offer this love to your Lord and Saviour, for it is His will that you shall love each other, and the Lord looks into your heart. You shall think of the poor souls without looking at the person .... you shall grant them the grace of prayer .... you shall leave judgment in the Father's hand .... Only the opponent can entirely

disassociate himself .... for God is love, and for as long as the Lord lets His children live on earth the opportunity for realisation is given to the earthly child .... Many a struggle with hostile forces will certainly seem to last forever, yet the power of love is stronger. God, in His love, has therefore wisely arranged that, in the hour of death, the human being sends his thoughts back to the time of his youth and childhood and these impressions often enlighten the spirit instantly .... he recognises the Deity's working and, if he leaves earthly life with this knowledge, he will not be hopelessly left at the mercy of evil forces .... Consequently, do not deprive this soul of love .... don't let it go short, for it will suffer badly enough as soon as it becomes aware of its situation .... The Lord will give you strength to overcome yourself.

Amen

## **Faith – Hope – Love .... Concern for the weak and misguided ....**

***B.D. 0233 from December 21st 1937,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

Behold, my child, we all want you to succeed in detaching your heart from everything that might impede your path

of ascent. The Lord always has His teachings ready for you, and if you make an effort to receive His Words eagerly, you will never lose the divine grace .... for one thing will always remain with you .... You long for the Father, and thus your striving will never be in vain. If the divine flame, which shall enlighten you, ignites your heart, not one day in your life will pass by without sincerely sending thoughts up to your Saviour and Redeemer, and then every thought will carry so many blessings within itself .... Faith, hope and love will unite .... for faith lifts your thoughts up to Him .... you may always hope for His grace and will always have His love .... Oh, my child, complete the work you have started .... so many things will still be offered to you and what you receive will make you happy .... The strength that flows from you as a result of your work will continue to fortify many earthly children which hitherto had lived an empty and insecure life. If the Saviour conveys this to you it happens again because of love for all those people, since the Saviour seeks to win all of them over in order to prepare the kingdom of God for them .... Every being is dear to God and, in order to save them from ruin, He is constantly concerned for the weak and the erring. He noticeably guides them in every hour of adversity by drawing their attention to eternity, and then He will let His teachings be conveyed to them, for the Saviour knows what is right for everyone in order to win all hearts. If He therefore conveys His Words through you, it will ease their steps on the path to eternity, and the more the human being's affirmative attitude towards the eternal God grows, the

more he will detach himself from the power of darkness. He would like everyone to realise .... that they prepare their own eternal life .... that they will also have to carry the responsibility for their every action or inaction in earthly life. Everyone should abide by His grace .... after all, he can so easily acquire it by merely fervently appealing for it and it will be granted to him unabatedly. And if you are instructed time and again that you will acquire the kingdom of heaven if you remain in love .... then you should all heed this wake-up call: Love one another .... don't act unkindly towards each other but always try to give love, then your life will be blessed and you will open your heart for everything that comes from the Father .... God Himself is love, after all, and God will always be close to you if you live in love. And God has placed the longing for love in every human heart, and therefore love shall also redeem you and one day provide you with eternal bliss.

Amen

**These proclamations are a  
sign of divine love ....**

***B.D. 0234 from December 22nd 1937,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

Thus the days which came upon you for your trial are coming to an end. It was a beneficial moment when the realisation of your own weakness arose in your heart, for only this can help you to approach the Lord again in all sincerity. The Saviour wants to give all His love to every one of you, for this reason you will be pushed to Him time and again through a sense of abandonment, for the Lord can only give when you feel sincere longing for Him. So many duties and tasks still lay ahead of you .... it requires a willing heart to 'hand oneself over to the Lord' in order to mature fully .... only then will you find calm and inner peace. His admonition gently sounds in your heart 'Remain faithful to Me .... even in the hour of adversity ....' for the Lord wants to educate you in three ways .... He wants to gain you for the eternal kingdom .... He wants to convey divine wisdoms to you and teach you to always follow the path of love .... For only in **this** way will you also find the path to Him. According to human calculation no connection exists between Heaven and Earth and this, too, is an immensely sublime act of grace .... which testifies to God's love for the earthly children, that every being can speak to the heavenly Father at any time and express their concerns to Him .... then the Father will also deem you worthy of an answer .... if, for the sake of your soul's salvation, you beseech Him for this .... None of you must ever doubt His goodness and mercy .... it has always applied to all beings since the beginning of the world and will last for all eternity. This is why the Father has repeatedly made it clear that even the smallest being may turn to Him .... it will always be



accepted because the Father loves each and every one of His children. You may always ask and your wishes will always be granted if they benefit the salvation of your souls .... for the Lord wants to prepare for you an **eternal** kingdom .... and if you desire this, it will be granted to you. Yet your task consists of improving your soul and, for this purpose, the heavenly Father wants to provide you with an insight into His divine working .... For ever more earthly children fall prey to misguided teachings; they distance themselves from the pure truth increasingly more and want to acknowledge the teachings of our Lord Jesus Christ increasingly less .... And thus their souls suffer distress as a result, for on his own .... without Christ's help, the human being will never be able to reach a degree of perfection .... The Saviour is so close to every person yet the human being, in his delusion, does not recognise His love and is in the process of completely losing himself to the powers of darkness .... however, for the sake of their salvation God reveals Himself to people in an extraordinary way. In your present state you will never be able to fully appreciate what He offers you through this grace .... you can only pray that you will continue to receive this grace until you are firm in faith and your love for the Saviour unites you with Him, so that you will be protected against all attacks from evil. As long as the Saviour unites Himself with you through these proclamations, all those of you who accept them in your heart will be well sheltered in His love and the path of ascent will be clearly laid out to you so that you cannot go astray .... Become worthy of this grace .... remain

faithful to the Lord and redeem yourselves through the love which the Lord preaches to you through His Word. Dedicate your heart to Him and, if you always and continuously listen to the voice within, you will all remain blessed and the divine grace will flow to you until the end of your lives.

Amen

## **Trust in God .... The blessing of prayer ....**

***B.D. 0235 from December 23rd 1937, taken from Book No. 5/6***

In a few days you will receive a proclamation which will bring peace to your heart, and in this hour you will once again experience the Father's grace. You will all be safe in His heart if the suffering on earth makes you take refuge in Him .... He will lead you ever closer towards eternity if you engross yourselves in profound prayer and enter into a heartfelt dialogue with the Father, Who is always willing to comfort and lift up the weak and the disheartened, who faithfully confide in Him. Draw your strength from the Saviour's Words: 'Ask, and it shall be given to you .... knock, and it shall be opened unto you ....' And thus you can always lead a joyful life, for One is

watching over you, Who will safeguard you if you merely entrust yourselves to His divine protection. People are lacking this faithful consciousness of being protected by the Lord .... Consequently, you must suffer on earth, for **with** this faith in God's ever-ready willingness to help you would experience far less suffering and worry in earthly life .... As long as you pray from the bottom of your heart you will not be abandoned .... you can entrust yourselves to the Father's guiding hand without worry and need not be fainthearted .... Your soul will only be granted peace when you have managed to gain firm faith in God, for one cannot be without the other. The Lord has so often provided you with the evidence of His love and goodness .... how can you doubt it time after time .... for this is what you will be doing if you allow yourselves to become depressed by your daily worries. Simply lift your hands to the Lord with faith .... and you will always gain relief from your worries. If you then look back at the end of your days, you will regret that you had not entrusted yourselves enough to the Lord .... You can achieve far more if you only ever unite with Him, Whose love applies to you all .... He constantly admonishes you and would like to take possession of your soul .... that it should wholeheartedly turn to Him .... yet you humans rarely listen to this wake-up call. Otherwise you would not go through life in suffering and sorrow. You will bear everything joyfully and with ease, and the inner voice will speak Words of comfort to you even in your adversities if you always look up to your Saviour .... Dear child, love and trust for your Saviour must be so firmly anchored in your

heart that you will be able to gladly endure everything the Father sends to you .... which will serve you for improvement .... If you require being comforted, then appeal for it to the Father and He will grant your prayer .... yet do not turn your heart away from Him, who alone can provide help .... Protect yourself through prayer from thoughts which are bleak and turned away from God .... a deep and heartfelt sigh to the Father will give His grace to you, this contact with Him alone will already release you from the powers of dark forces .... for every resentful thought .... every unkind feeling is their influence. Yet the strongest weapon is always prayer. You cannot receive the blessing of prayer often enough .... and in order to partake in all blessings it is enough to send an ardent plea to the Father, Who will never abandon His children. Therefore, do not let any day pass you by without sincerely commending yourselves to the Father .... then you will be protected against all evil influences, and you will triumph over everything and work for the glory of God.

Amen

**Light is life .... Influence of  
God's messengers ....  
Christmas Eve ....**

## ***B.D. 0236 from December 24th 1937, taken from Book No. 5/6***

Blessed is he who accepts My Word and longingly turns his heart towards Me .... My dear child .... always do your work in My grace and remain faithful to Me. Behold, wanting to serve the Lord with ceaseless devotion will bring you close to the heavenly gates, and your desire will become ever more heartfelt, for My love will not let go of you .... In every creature you see God's living creation .... and every one of God's living creations is in turn part of the eternal light .... only light is life .... therefore strive for light if you want to live in eternity .... The divine light descended to earth to bring enlightenment to those who lived in darkness .... but in My Father's kingdom the eternal light will shine for all of you eternally and you will not need to fear any darkness .... therefore strive on earth for the divine light .... Prepare your heart for the Saviour during this night so that He will find admission in it .... All your spiritual friends want to help you so that everything you set out to do will be for the glory of God and beneficial to you ....

My child, during this night many messengers travel the land .... far and wide they seek to fulfil the Saviour's will by directing people's thoughts to the hour of Christ's birth and thereby trying to make them receptive again for His teachings and the purpose of His life on Earth .... Our every effort aims to create a spiritual connection again

between the earthly children and the spiritual beings surrounding them, so that we can help them make contact with the heavenly Father ... the Saviour ... once more. In this night many a thought turns towards heaven .... Oh, if only we were able to penetrate their hearts so deeply that they would never let go of these thoughts again, that they might start to turn their thoughts into this direction every hour of every day! .... How much pleasure would we be able to give to our dear Saviour, and how beneficial it would be for people's souls .... And the grace of God the Lord would always bless their striving and give them the strength to work at improving themselves from now on in order to advance their soul in this life .... Often we can do nothing but watch how the path of ascent becomes ever more difficult for earthly children .... how they alienate themselves from everything that is divine and adopt attitudes which are not in harmony with the teachings of our Lord Jesus Christ .... We see and are unable to help because none of these human children are calling to us for help .... our intention to influence their thoughts is in vain, they reject everything, and at such times every effort to help the earthly children remains fruitless .... Yet at this moment people's hearts are often accessible to such emotions .... it is a blessed time when so many a person's thoughts unconsciously drift into spiritual realms .... and wherever we perceive it we are instantly ready to guide these thoughts further and to ignite a tiny spark of realisation in their souls. We wish to guide souls to the Lord .... and bring the light of realisation to

people .... We would like to snatch the souls from darkness and place them into a state of blissful happiness by imparting to them the realisation of the divine truth .... so that they will never again walk in spiritual darkness ....

Amen

**Sun .... Divine radiance ....  
Light and love ....**

***B.D. 0237 from December 25th 1937,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

Oh, my child, if you just always hand yourself over to your Saviour without hesitation peace will enter your heart and you will be released from all difficulties burdening you. You shall lift yourself up by His love .... it is not the Lord's will that you should lose heart .... And neither does He want your spirit to grow tired, therefore He gives you comfort and strength through His Words again .... All reign and activity in nature originates from God's immense love .... it is like a constant emanation of life-creating light which influences all being and becoming on Earth and in the whole of the universe. And in order to shape this becoming according to God's wise will, the Lord constantly lets the light shine forth .... If the infinity of the cosmos scares you and you become aware of your

own smallness you should nevertheless not allow doubts to arise in God's love and His care for every single being. Just as the light of the Sun illuminates the earth, as it warms and animates everything that exists on earth, as it enables the plants to flourish .... and provides brightness and warmth to all living creations on earth .... that is how countless other solar bodies emanate their light, so that the whole of the universe is subject to divine radiance and the light will never ever go out .... for the heavenly Father Himself is the light from Whom all life originates .... The light is never-ending and never-ending is love .... Both are the epitome of God and will exist for all eternity .... The Lord in His infinite love and goodness created His beings in light, and therefore every being will also strive towards the light, and anyone who lives in light travels the path of ascent. Anyone who turns to the Lord with the desire for divine enlightenment will be surrounded by bright light, for alone the will to return to the original state will bring you closer to it .... Every seedling tries to break through the soil and turn towards the light .... In the animal life the desire for light is equally predominant .... should therefore the human being want to remain in darkness and not turn towards the Father of all light?

And yet, the human being has to endure extensive battles against hostile forces which would like to permanently extinguish his desire for light in him .... their aim is to enshroud the human being's spirit .... the soul .... in utter darkness and to conceal the true purpose of life from it in



order to gain greater control over people and to remove them from the sphere of light, which they unconsciously strive towards, and to pull them down into eternal darkness .... God's love and care constantly concerns these earthly children who are endangered by the darkness. The human being himself is a creature without any will of his own once he becomes subject to the control of this darkness .... Without divine help he would never ever be able to release himself from this control, this is why so many spiritual forces are placed by his side so that no earthly child will be left to this fate without warning. Just as the opponent influences the earthly children on one side .... so the love of noble spiritual beings influences them on the other side and fights for the soul .... It is easy for the earthly child if only it slightly hands itself over to the virtuous forces, for the power of good .... the power of love, is incomparably stronger than the power of evil .... However, the human being is often so deluded .... his will, which should direct him towards the heavenly Father, often fails precisely in this instance and, vice versa, is again so strong to accept without second thought what the adversary offers the person .... Hence it is also his own responsibility, since he uses his strength and will, which he received to advance his soul, in order to fall away from God ....

You, my child, are needed by the Lord .... labourers, who are willing to be of service and devoted to the Lord, shall help those who are weak to take the right path and, through the teachings of our Lord Jesus Christ, find their

way back to the Father .... It is extremely valuable that the knowledge of the pure truth is conveyed to people .... for due to the longstanding conflict between the churches the teaching of Christ was presented to people in a way that they barely want to accept it these days .... They no longer consider it a heartfelt guiding principle offered to them by God's love, but very often merely believe it to be a traditional, humanly created word of instruction which scarcely touches their heart and which they just no longer take seriously .... but much rather would like to reject. This is why the Father wants to impart His Word to them in a new form, so that they will perceive the divine love therein and might open their hearts to the voice from above. The Saviour dwells amongst people again .... He will always be in the midst of you who proclaim His teachings .... He will help you to choose the right Words .... so that you yourselves put into practise what you are teaching .... And thus His Word will penetrate people's hearts again and they all, in turn, will lovingly help each other .... for everyone shall become enlightened, and every being shall release itself from the darkness as soon as they receive just a tiny ray of divine light, since the striving for light will continue for all eternity ....

Amen

## **Beings in the beyond ....**

# Appeal for help ....

***B.D. 0238 from December 26th 1937,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

We salute you in the name of the Father and inform you according to His will .... All beings wishing to be in contact with you are gathered around you .... and thus the Lord in His kindness has decided to grant their desire as it is the Feast of Love .... The following beings are permitted to avail themselves of your strength and to speak through you. An old father, his spirit has already been with you for a long time .... appeals to you not to forget his son, who stayed in your vicinity but had to conclude his earthly course of life. He frequently comes to visit you and follows your striving .... and yet he cannot understand why he is unable to contact you .... During his time on earth he refused to be taught and never thought of the hour of death, so although he was recalled by the Lord, his spirit still constantly remains in the proximity of earth, he has still not gained any realisation about his task in the beyond. His father is concerned for him and appeals to you to pray for him. Grant him this wish .... And now someone comes to you who wanted to speak to you before and did not give you his name .... so many beings are present here, they are called to you on account of your thoughts; however, try to hand yourself over to us and only accept what we give you .... Keep this in mind .... The latter takes an active interest in your work and would

like to assure you again that you can help many people with it. He turns to you and always remains close to you, so that you will suddenly feel when he pushes himself into your thoughts. He has no problems with your environment, for all the beings are dear to him .... He would like to make his presence known to you all and yet is sorry that he cannot make himself understood.

However, when your thoughts are with him, he will try to make himself noticeable to you if the Father gives him the strength to do so .... Today he just wants to greet you and request your prayer .... But someone wants to speak to you himself and we are happy to let him do so .... 'Dear friend, your efforts are a comfort to us and give us hope, for we need the love of people on earth because we failed to make contact with the Lord during our lifetime on earth. Oh, how wrong was our life on Earth .... Now we have a difficult battle and we are so grateful to you because your kind thoughts, your prayers, help us so much .... We depend on your love, for this reason we constantly gather around you, for the Father grants us the grace of being allowed to take part in your work ....

'Thanks be to the heavenly Father, for through your work we now recognise our task and eagerly devote ourselves to it .... spurred on by your spiritual work, your struggle and activity and strengthened by your prayer in which you remember us. It is a blessing for all of us who are surrounding you, for we have thereby also gained an insight into the working of higher spiritual beings which approach us with so much love, and we are permitted to be present with you at every contact in order to learn

ourselves how we should accomplish our work in the beyond in order to ascend ever higher.' Now you shall still hear something that will please you: All beings in the beyond are instructed to support you, consequently, we, being capable of helping you, will not leave your soul in distress and you will always be surrounded by a group of people who were close to you on earth and even today still gladly stay with you when it involves protecting you against all dangers threatening your soul. Therefore always remember all your loved ones who passed over before you with affection .... they are now always around you and beg God that He may bless you in order to be forever united with you. Grant them your prayer too, for one shall always take care of the other with love.

Amen

## **Activity in the beyond .... Effect on the uninformed ....**

***B.D. 0239 from December 27th 1937,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

Everyone will receive what he requires .... Believe me, my child, it is entirely up to you .... if you spend your days with trust in God you will, time and again, have the opportunity

to find the Saviour and all admonitions and instructions offered to you will always encourage you to refine your spirit and soul. Don't give in to any negative notions .... always fight against them and try to treat everyone with kindness, then you will find it increasingly easier to master such days, which can easily set you back. Every step of the way needs to be overcome .... no-one will ever reach the goal without effort and only constant battle leads to victory. You will find it far more satisfying when you have succeeded and, full of love and devotion, turn to the Saviour again .... the more sincerely you pray to Him, the stronger the Lord's strength and help will be. Never lose confidence and fight against spiritual lethargy. Dear child, once again we want to inform you about the activity in the beyond: In the world over there, which is still closed to you, many souls are lingering in a state which they find difficult to separate from. This is always the case when they have neither realised on earth nor in their present state that they are able to change this state for themselves. As long as this awareness has not yet arisen in them, they helplessly and idly wander through the universe .... with constant longing for the Earth and the environment they had left behind .... and it often takes a long time until they finally realise that they can and must make an effort.

And once again we want to point out to you that these earthbound beings are often near you. Until they have grasped the meaning and value of your spiritual work, they must observe much .... and you are constantly

surrounded by such straying souls. This alone should be an incentive for you not to slacken, and your work of improving yourself is also watched by them and does not remain without an impression .... Once they have grasped the richly blessed effect of the connection from the beyond to earth, the strong urge to take part in this will also awaken in them .... to help wherever possible, and they will longingly turn towards every ray of light in the hope of reaching a brighter environment which is permeated by light. This will always be easier for those who had not entirely opposed spiritual thoughts; however, how many regarded everything of a spiritual nature as strange on earth .... how many constantly opposed these issues in a negative way? It will often take a long time in the beyond before they gain realisation and we are very pleased if such souls follow your activity as well .... albeit for the time being they do not avail themselves of any practical application. Behold, my child, you must therefore faithfully persevere for love of the Saviour Who takes loving care of every being, of every spiritually dark and straying soul .... A single human being with good will and love for the Saviour can bring infinitely many blessings to such beings .... he gains much grace for himself .... he can help people on earth .... he shows countless poor souls the right path .... They did not succeed in the valley of earth, but every soul is so grateful now for the help they receive from the valley of earth because their struggle in the beyond is so much harder than on earth.

Amen

# **God and nature .... Consciously working at attaining perfection ....**

***B.D. 0240 from December 28th 1937,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

My child, write down what the Lord in His love has prepared for you .... Life as a whole is based on a sequence of divinely devised lawful processes which you simply describe as nature .... each individual stage of development is, so to speak, a process of lawful course of action which should make you recognise the Creator, the whole regularity must be subject to a will .... and particularly life in nature testifies to divine influence .... Everything that was created around you .... is a miracle. It is a constantly upwards pointing event which you earthly human beings merely allow to bypass you ineffectively because, as a result of its ever repeating regularity, you lack all understanding for such miracles. Divine will alone animates everything and ordains that these miracles will continually take place in the world, yet the human being, who should tremble at the sight of these miracles and every day look up in reverence to the



Creator of all of this, tries to find an explanation which is more appropriate to his life, to his thinking .... and uses the word 'nature' instead of 'God' .... yet the meaning is the same .... the only difference is that he acknowledges with this word what eternally **repeats** itself in the universe but not the **intervention** of a **higher Power** in the fate of every individual being .... and that a connection can be established between every, even the smallest, being and this higher Power by using its own will .... All this is not acknowledged by them even though they forever observe the events in nature and must acknowledge them .... This also explains the diversity in faith .... The personal intervention .... the help given by God's love as a result of heartfelt prayer .... the cautioning of unbelieving earthly children .... all this they don't want to see .... They only believe what they can see every day and therefore cannot deny .... for in daily occurrences and in the lawful repetitions of all natural events they cannot acknowledge that a higher will is at the bottom of it .... that everything has been arranged in this way for a specific purpose and that this purpose is once again merely the perfection of each individual being. Thus, the human being only ever recognises what he can see and touch, but where faith should help him overcome his lack of knowledge he rejects it. Nevertheless, in regular intervals a continuous growth and decay can be observed in nature .... and the human being can expect exactly the same .... Is the thought therefore not far more likely that the divine Being, Who is in charge of all events in nature, also takes care of the

human being and that his growth, his development, is likewise subject to His will? .... And if the human being is guided by a divine will .... why does he then maintain his opinion that a connection with this Divinity is impossible for him? .... Only when he consciously looks for this connection will an aspiration towards perfection be conceivable .... Making a conscious effort in order to advance higher is the actual purpose of earthly existence .... and precisely this consciousness is lacking in the earthly children. For this reason they so easily reject the gift from Heaven .... the Word of God .... for this reason they find it so difficult to acknowledge something that deviates from daily events and yet is so easy to believe if only they would bear in mind that not a single being is capable of shaping its life from beginning to end of its own will .... it will, time after time, be subject to strokes of fate .... it will always sense the intervention of a higher Power, even if it tries to deny the same. For is any human being capable of protecting himself from such misfortunes? If only you would think about it, you would have to waver in your conviction that you are the sole master of your destiny .... in that case you must also acknowledge the eternal Deity, Who holds your life and fate in His hands .... and then you must also believe .... only then will you be certain that you are subject to divine will and also feel like children of this Deity .... You will take refuge in prayer .... which unites the child with the Father and also experience the blessings of prayer on yourselves .... and only then will you **consciously** work at attaining your perfection.

Amen

# **God's blessing gained, all is obtained.**

***B.D. 0241 from December 29th 1937,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

And once again we want to speak to you in accordance with the Lord: All those of you who live on earth shall be in agreement with each other in His name. And listen, as before .... Each one shall be offered what he needs, for the Lord knows where it is needed and is a loving and caring Father for His children. Therefore pay attention: Everything depends on His blessing .... If you truly want to penetrate these Words, the Father will give you a parable, for He endeavours to write His Words deep into your heart .... A father allows his child to leave with his blessing .... and so the child goes on its way always feeling that it is accompanied by the father's love .... therefore it is never abandoned, even in its sadness. All those of you who appeal to the heavenly Father for His blessing likewise share His immense love, for if the Father gives his blessing He gives you everything you need. And so you should always pray to the Father in Heaven in order for Him to bless you so that you can walk through life with riches .... you will not be lacking anything that will benefit

the salvation of your soul, the Lord's love will be with you every day and you will feel sheltered in this love. And if earthly burdens then depress you, if earthly suffering is imposed upon you, it will not frighten you, for the Father's blessing protects you from all evil .... your soul will emerge unscathed from these bleak days on earth and will emanate bright light even during dark days which are sent to you purely for your soul's progress. If you pray for the Father's blessing it will result in an unimaginable abundance of grace, for you will constantly receive the strength to work at improving yourselves and this work will never be unsuccessful, instead, it will take you closer to the goal, you will become perfect and take the path through earthly life according to your task. Praying for God's blessing means appealing for His love, and this will be granted to you now and forever.

Amen

## **Divine truth ... Science ...**

***B.D. 0242 from December 30th 1937,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

Accept what you are offered, recognise God's will and be careful never to lose your trust in the Lord .... your love for the Saviour and His divine grace. The arguments about the divine truth will be endless and the one who does not

desire divine knowledge or presumes that he can uncover the great mystery by himself will always be the loser .... If he is to be successful he must beseech God for enlightenment and it will certainly be granted to him. The human being can investigate earthly subjects, yet regardless of how much he achieves, he will still not come closer to divine truth, for one is entirely separate from the other .... It is only accessible to the one whose heart detaches itself from everything of an earthly nature .... who considers nothing else worth striving for than the acceptance of eternal truths. Everything on earth will seem distant and unreal to him, and he will search full of yearning for the profundity of divine truth and be constantly permitted to receive it from the Father's hand, but only if he turns his heart solely to the Father .... So many attempts have already been made to penetrate this region .... and yet, if only those with great knowledge at their disposal were successful .... if they alone held the key to truth in their hands because of their knowledge .... it would not benefit humanity .... God has prepared His kingdom for all people, and were the Lord not to judge the earthly children's heart but only their knowledge instead, barely a tiny fraction would acquire His kingdom .... And if God the Lord has ordained that all those of good will can acquire His kingdom, then you are, after all, offered far more than only to serve the sciences on earth .... All of you are aspirants, and the onus rests entirely upon you as to whether you will reach the Father .... indeed, science is more likely an obstacle to bliss .... On earth it makes you great and powerful, yet

often very unsuitable to contact the Lord as a small and humble person .... and how can you enter the Father's kingdom without His help? .... You only ever focus on the one goal of ascertaining the nature of Creation .... you want to penetrate what is closed to you and inform the human race of it .... even though you have so little knowledge yourselves, because you still have not understood the simplest fact .... that you are small, if the Lord does not help you .... that you will never understand the meaning and purpose of the universe with your **own** effort .... You can only come closer to the true knowledge when you have found the path to God .... And then you will gladly relinquish all fame on earth, for then you will know that all striving for earthly things is worthless .... and that all earthly knowledge will not bring you closer to the eternal truth, for God distributes this only to those who desire deep down in their hearts to behold and experience God .... The will to reach God elevates you far above all science .... Where others make a lifelong effort to solve the mysteries of Creation, you will often receive it overnight .... providing you have the desire and allow yourselves to be instructed by the divine Teacher.

Amen

## **Bear death in mind ....**

***B.D. 0243 from December 31th 1937,***

## ***taken from Book No. 5/6***

The Lord will destroy whatever opposes Him, and resurrect those who remain in the Lord .... My dear child, it is the Lord's will that you , who lives in accordance with the Lord on earth, shall receive now and forever, for **His Word shall be taught again on earth, in the way it is given to you all from the Lord**. Humanity must not waver in its faith, it shall be guided back to the pure teaching of Christ, and ways will be shown to you, which would be impossible for you to travel on your own .... but guided by God you will overcome all obstacles. Behold, mindful of His suffering on earth, the Saviour advises you to accept everything He imposes upon you and what He has destined for you .... He will always stand by your side, and in every adversity you will feel His closeness and never be abandoned; nevertheless, you must make an effort to gain firm faith in God, then everything will be easy for you and for love of the Saviour you will be strong and able to endure everything patiently. His divine love offers you reliable protection, even if it sometimes seems as if you are at risk of being harmed, you are nevertheless so faithfully sheltered under His guard that you must not worry. Therefore struggle and pray incessantly for firm faith and profound trust in God, so that you will be able to resist everything that threatens you from outside .... And with complete confidence write this down today: Bear death in mind .... yet this thought should never scare you .... for the hour of death can be shaped by yourselves into a time of immense happiness if it merely signifies to

you the transition from this life into a radiantly bright beyond .... In that case, what is there to fear? You will leave all earthly suffering behind and enter a kingdom where all tribulations are taken from you and where eternal life close to the Saviour is prepared for you .... But woe to you if the hour of death does not mean your release from earthly anguish .... If you leave the valley of earth only to wander about in the dark .... burdened by your earthly guilt and incapable of leaving this darkness .... Therefore be warned before this hour arrives .... Bear the hour in mind and realise that you alone create this or that state on earth .... that your life on earth is the decisive factor as to whether the hour of death is the gate into eternal happiness or the entrance into darkness.

Consider how much more difficult it then will be for you to turn towards the light, and how many opportunities you still have on earth now to easily attain the state through which you will be granted a blissful death .... And if, for once, you spend some thought on the fact that you don't know how much time you are still granted on earth, then be grateful to the heavenly Father for every warning He conveys to you time after time through his messengers. Consider this and strive .... constantly strive, but only towards the goal of living your earthly life for the benefit of your soul .... and conduct yourselves on earth such that you are ready at any hour to be recalled by the Father. You will enter a new life .... make sure that it will radiate for you in heavenly beauty, that you may receive from the



Father's hand everything the Father has prepared for you in eternity .... but woe, if you exchange your life on earth with an existence in the beyond which will require an immense effort to leave and where you, in sorrow and self inflicted agony, remorsefully remember the unused time on earth .... Therefore, pay attention to the admonitions which are sent to you and always bear death in mind, which can approach you any time .... and sincerely appeal to the Father that He may take mercy upon you and enlighten you before it is too late .... and He will answer your prayer.

Amen

## **Reception of one's own strength ... without outside influence ....**

***B.D. 0244 from January 2nd 1938,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

My dear child, whenever you are guided by My Word you will be protected from all error. Behold, it all depends on how your soul assimilates the content .... When I send My messengers to you, they teach you on My instruction, and by no means should you become agitated .... it is for this reason that I have so far provided you with additional

spiritual knowledge .... so that you will believe .... Your willingness to serve Me enables you to accept messages which correspond to the teachings of My servants on earth. There are ceaseless arguments within many communities about the absolute truth .... each one believes that it corresponds to the heavenly Father's will if it purely advocates its own truth and treats everything else with hostility .... and that is regression for you humans. Why don't you want to understand that all of you will arrive at the Father if you agree with each other in My name .... And so I give My Own the teachings all over again, and anyone who accepts them will act in the right way .... After all, they do not go up against the teachings every community lays claim to for itself .... My child, if you are enlightened .... if you are granted the grace to receive My Words, then hold on to them and do not divert from this path. It will give you infinitely more, you will be protected and can hand yourself over to everything without worry .... You are safeguarded by your spiritual friends and not at risk of including errors in your writings through the influence of other forces. Therefore I bless your work and help you, and every time you call Me, My grace will flow to you. For My servants shall be willing and only let their actions be guided by Me .... And if I bring you into contact with other forces on earth, then it is only for you to learn to differentiate between them .... that I have given every individual a different task .... and in that way you shall become aware of the nature and magnitude of your task .... For the doctrine I want to proclaim through you shall be pure and clear .... and so

your thinking, too, must remain pure and clear ....  
unaffected by outside forces .... so that your writing will  
be an entirely **spiritual** product given to you with love  
from above .... So always remain in My blessing .... in My  
will .... trustingly place everything into the heavenly  
Father's hands. Since you were given the task of receiving  
the Words of the Lord, you will also receive the strength  
to write the Lord's spiritual messages down, for you would  
doubt all other Words you might receive under the  
influence of other forces .... Behold, My child, your faith  
will become far more profound and heartfelt and you will  
feel My blessing as long as you offer your heart to Me ....  
It is an incomprehensible blessing being allowed to  
receive the Words of the Lord, and one day you will  
understand why I have chosen you for this task ....  
continue to receive the Word of God in purity of soul ....  
the more sincerely you desire it, the more beautiful and  
profound wisdom I have waiting for you. For 'Ask, and it  
shall be given to you .... ' And now turn to the heavenly  
Father with complete trust, His blessing will be upon you  
and His love will guide you the right way.

Amen

## **Book: Jesus' childhood ....**

***B.D. 0245 from January 2nd 1938,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

Thanks be to the Lord of Heaven and Earth Who directs every person's destiny .... and on His instructions the transmissions are made so that you shall be permeated by love for the Saviour .... so that your prayer shall be granted .... In your love for the Saviour your heart shall make heartfelt contact with all spiritual beings.

Everything you were hitherto unreceptive to shall come alive in you, and only now will you recognise the Lord and Saviour's profound love, and even more humbly will you bow to His will .... As a result of your devotion the Lord was able to take abode in your heart, yet in order to make it worthy of His Divinity you must first come aglow in sacred love for Him .... My child, every Word He sends to you tells of His great love .... yet He also wants to possess your love and so places His Word deep into your heart, because you will accept the Words which God gives for the benefit of all .... and they will kindle bright light in you .... The flame of love will ignite and flare up into bright radiance, and soon the fire of love for the Saviour will permeate your whole heart and make you so happy, for with this sacred love in your heart you will live in bliss and only then will your love for Him guide your every action and you will be blessed a thousand fold on earth. The Lord will give you every gift so that you can accomplish what the Lord has determined for you to do on earth .... if you are guided by your love for the Saviour .... Thus immerse yourself in the book the Lord gave you with love in order to awaken love again .... and regard every event as God's providence, and if you willingly entrust yourselves to His guidance you will only

ever reap blessings. Praise the Lord, for His kindness endures forever!

Amen

# **Childship to God .... Father – Children .... Admonition – Task ....**

***B.D. 0246 from January 3rd 1938,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

My dear child .... you must always be aware of the fact that you have been chosen by God's love to receive the divine teachings for the benefit of humanity .... and so you must never doubt yourself, for only firm faith gives you the ability and strength to comply with the Lord's will. The Lord expects your absolute dedication every time you contact the spiritual world .... nothing should seem of greater value to you than to undertake this work .... you should strive for nothing more eagerly than receiving God's wisdom. Then each proclamation will come easily to you, you will hear with spiritual ears and see with spiritual eyes, and the Lord's love will dictate Words for you to write down which sound lovely to you and penetrate your heart with such strength that you will never want to miss this gift .... Trust in the Lord to guide

you right, turn to Him in prayer time and time again, and constantly appeal to Him to bless your work on earth. Everything that has been conveyed to you shall one day also be a blessing for your fellow human beings .... So work diligently and place yourself at the Lord's disposal whenever you can. We, who are instructed by Him, will follow your effort and help you as far it is within our power .... All the gifts flowing to you through divine grace also present us with a state full of bliss, for each one of us is happy when you have accepted and recorded our thoughts. We have so much more in store for you, for the wisdom which tells of God's working in the universe is inexhaustible .... His love is immeasurable and by virtue of this love the Lord wants to give to you humans, who desire to ascertain God's Creation and out of love for Him appeal for His support .... For the Lord informs His children of His wisdom .... And you are God's children when your heart genuinely longs for the One Who gave you life .... for the heavenly Father. Indeed, could there possibly be anything better than the Father lovingly granting your request? .... The eternal home .... The Father's kingdom .... shall be revealed to all of you if you regard yourselves as part of the Father .... yet you must pray for the grace of the childship to God, so that you will not bypass all the blessings which the Father has prepared for His earthly children. You must profess the Father so that His divine Fatherly love will illuminate you and His Fatherly grace will remain with you, then your earthly existence will be the gate to paradise .... you won't aspire towards anything else but to finally arrive at

the Father. Thank heavens that you had gained realisation .... And the Father with all His love has introduced you to His holy kingdom .... He has made accessible to you what will remain hidden to countless people who do not longingly turn towards eternity .... However, take good care of this gift .... always make an effort to refine your nature .... keep away from all earthly pleasure offered to you, but always fervently and sincerely desire the Saviour's love and His teachings .... If He provides these for you, you are loved by Him and will receive divine grace without end. For the seed the Lord places into a person's heart will take root a thousand fold .... and thus His teachings shall be spread which the Saviour still wants to convey through you to the earthly children. This is the task given to you .... Pray with all your heart for the strength to fulfil it to the glory of God.

Amen

**Errors .... The Lord Himself  
walks amongst people ....  
Proclamation of a wise  
disciple ....**

***B.D. 0247 from January 4th 1938,***

## ***taken from Book No. 5/6***

Realise the importance of carrying God the Lord in your heart! And then listen to the eternal truths which flow to you in abundance, and place your whole will at the Lord's feet, for blessed is he who lets himself be guided by the Lord Himself .... He will never go astray and God will take care of all his worries, just as He takes care of those who want to serve Him and acknowledge Him as Father.

People are constantly being taught that they should make contact with the above .... and, through all kinds of tribulations, souls are led to the Lord .... and for His children in need He always provides the right consolation. Everything living on earth shall arise again in eternity, and if the Lord Himself accompanies people in order to help them with His Word, then this repeatedly demonstrates to you the divine love which does not want any being to become corrupted and constantly struggles for this soul in order that it should liberate itself from the power of evil. Countless misconceptions often delude people, and in order to draw their attention to the fact that they live in error, the Lord Himself goes through the land and knocks at every door .... the heart which is receptive is lovingly taken care of by the Saviour, and then the earthly child will always be protected by Him and need only let itself be guided .... And so the Lord dwells amongst all of you and takes hold of each person's hand .... Every worry is intended to lovingly draw your attention to your lifetime goal .... Only pain and misery will finally lead you to the contemplation of God .... and



your spirit will lift itself up .... what loss will the world then be to you, even if it offers you everything .... can even one of you recognise the path of ascent when all earthly pleasures his heart desires are offered to him? .... Your senses become blunted .... they demand increasingly more and the soul gradually fades into the background although it should constantly strive to progress .... Therefore, sacrifice all your wishes to the Lord and be grateful to Him, no matter how He guides you and what He bestows upon you ....

And now a wise disciple of the Lord wants to speak to you .... You humans everywhere live as if the sun of the Lord had not risen above you and you don't recognise the power which comes forth from the Words of the Lord .... So I am calling you anew and informing you that the Saviour moves amongst you .... honour and love Him with all your heart, for you owe your life to His power and great goodness, and if you live your lives in a dignified way, you will recognise the Lord .... yet all your striving shall relate solely to Him, for all the spirit and the glory of God will come upon you if you remain true to His Word .... But if you do not recognise yourselves, you will not partake in this Word .... then you will search in vain for the path which is intended to lead you forward .... However, the wisest person of all is someone who triumphs over himself, for a reward is beckoning to him which will compensate him for all humiliations and will lift up the one who lowers himself .... And furthermore, it will benefit you if you give up what you deem

indispensable .... for only he, who regards himself small and humbly bows down before the Lord, will become great .... Try to endure everything, take all distress upon yourselves .... always think of the Saviour and you will lift yourselves up from the earthly heaviness, because the Saviour's love tries to draw you to Himself.

Amen

**Recognition of truth not  
without prayer .... Ask and  
it will be given to you ....**

***B.D. 0248 from January 5th 1938,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

My child, in order to introduce you to the mysteries of the universe, you merely need to entrust yourself to your Saviour with profound sincerity .... We observe your every effort and are always ready for you .... for at all times shall you receive what the Lord commands us to convey to you. The Lord will always be present where the desire for truth is strong and a person's will is placed at the Lord's service. And none of you recognise His power as yet .... what He does for love of humanity deviates from the ordinary, so that everyone learns to comprehend the power of Heaven .... And if you are about to lose

yourselves, a small hint from the eternal sphere is enough to make you receptive to God's teachings, for what the Lord gives to you will only be regarded by you as a divine gift if you clearly recognise it as the intervention of a higher Power .... Humanity's greatest error consists of the fact that it fails to recognise the laws of eternity as the Lord and Creator's will .... it cannot subordinate itself to divine will because it lacks this conscious realisation. On the other hand, however, it does not strive to attain the realisation of all wisdom either .... which it could easily achieve by calling upon the eternal Deity for help. Yet how can the earthly child appeal to Him if it cannot find the right relationship with the heavenly Father .... Where can it become aware of eternity on earth if it does not strive to look for the Father beyond worldly things .... where can the earthly child's longing turn towards the divine if its wishes purely relate to the fulfilment of worldly enjoyment .... And once again, it is prayer that is needed first .... talk to the God of the eternal universe so that He shall guide you correctly and enlighten you, and you will enter the right path and be led forward step by step .... However, without it you will not succeed .... you will neither recognise your purpose nor awaken from your sleep; you will remain in darkness until you take refuge in prayer .... The Father will not let any child pray in vain .... the Lord protects everyone from total ignorance, He provides many helpful hints but you must accept them in your heart if they are not to be given to you to no avail. And you will eternally bless the hour when you opened the door of your heart for everything that comes from

above and points to above again. The Lord of Heaven and Earth therefore has many teachings ready for the earthly children, the acceptance of which will be a blessing for each one of you .... learn to understand, that only the Lord's love instructs you; don't disrespect what He sends you and at all times look within you .... for if the human being recognises himself as a helpless creature he will gladly subordinate himself to the divine Father's love; he will feel well protected as His child and gratefully accept everything the Father's advice and divine will sends to him. For the Lord has countless riches prepared for those who believe in Him .... He gives to all who live on earth, yet whether you accept His blessings is entirely up to you. In His wisdom He created everything around you so that you should thereby recognise His creativity and work .... Therefore always meet Him with a willing heart. And if you then, with the good will of reaching God, hold a heartfelt dialogue with Him, He will illuminate you and direct you towards the eternal truth, so that the Word 'Ask and it will be given to you' will come true .... Every person has a share in God's Fatherly love, the Lord lived on earth for everyone, and thus He is once again among you to bring salvation to those who accept His Word, carry it in their heart and act accordingly. The Father's gifts shall be received by anyone with a pure heart wanting to serve the Lord, and His grace will be upon him now and forever.

Amen

# **No life without light .... Darkness in the beyond ....**

***B.D. 0249 from January 6th 1938,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

The spiritual beings are approaching you with a request that you give your utmost attention to their proclamation. The Lord has ordained that you shall receive well-ordered teachings so that your spirit will not tire of accepting divine truth. Therefore contact the spiritual world with complete confidence at all times and let our thoughts affect you to the glory of God .... the Most High of Heaven and Earth. The human being shall live, and he shall live eternally .... However, to live means to be enlightened .... to receive the light of divine grace on earth .... to strive towards the light .... and to dwell in an abundance of light, close to his Creator, in eternity. This is how the Lord decided it, and therefore all life on earth is merely a striving towards becoming worthy of being allowed to be close to the Saviour in radiant brightness, and so to being infinitely far removed from darkness and its evil powers .... For the Saviour is the eternal Light .... You can only understand this if your faith lifts you out of your spiritual darkness .... you can only comprehend how wonderful the strength of divine light is when nothing ties you to earthly life anymore .... Only then will you fully realise that the Lord's sphere is permeated by the divine

sun of love .... that all power and glory is united in this kingdom .... Every being requires light to experience the state of bliss, and only he who constantly stays within the Deity's vicinity of light, and being worthy of this beatitude, will live in eternity. However, to be without light in the beyond signifies death .... Even the most ignorant and obstinate being recognises the tiniest ray of light as a release from its adversity. It will always seek to follow the ray of light, yet realising its task in the beyond is still infinitely difficult for it. This is why the hardship of those dwelling in such darkness in the beyond is still far greater than the greatest misery on earth .... On earth the Lord shows you His love time and again, for He constantly admonishes you through His messengers .... His divine love would like to protect you from this darkness .... it would like to spare you the infinitely long time of battle .... for you will certainly have a hard battle there until you have detached yourselves from the power of darkness .... It will make you infinitely happy if you are allowed to move within the eternal light .... yet staying in darkness is indescribably wretched and bitter. Since God the Lord created you as part of the light, He also gave you the opportunity to remain in it, yet the earthly being ignores its purpose of its own free will by not resisting the temptations of the nether world, and so increasingly relinquishes its radiant strength of light and passively allows itself to be pulled down by dark forces. For this reason the world poses the greatest danger for the earthly children if they do not beseech the heavenly Father for the strength to enable them to walk unscathed

through the valley of trials during their earthly existence. After all, the Lord so willingly gives the strength to all of them, for He loves His children far too much as to leave them without strength and without warning at the mercy of evil powers.

Amen

# **Suffering ... Participation in the Redemption work ... Sorrow and joy are short- lived ....**

***B.D. 0250 from January 7th 1938,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

‘If you accept My Words, you will remain in My love ....’  
Engrave these Words deep into your heart and resist all thoughts provoked in you by the tempter .... Behold, in times of humiliations you are repeatedly recognising the grace of Heaven if you only ever regard these as concerned references to the eternity. In those times you must wrestle with yourself, then you will accomplish the task you were given on earth. Silently and imperceptibly something grows stronger inside of you, and soon such humiliations can no longer deprive you of your inner

peace if you recognise the Father's guiding hand and willingly give in to it. The Lord's path on earth leads across stones and thorns .... Let yourselves be refreshed by His grace and you will understand how infinitely beneficial it is that the Lord constantly grants it to you .... Therefore, always try to gain possession of divine grace and it will become obvious to you that you are constantly surrounded by His love, not one day will then be a lost one for you, because you will fulfil your purpose on earth, and this with ever greater ease the more divine grace flows to you .... The Saviour's heart suffered for you humans on earth .... you bear every suffering on this earth together with the Lord and Saviour if you think of His suffering and, in realisation of this, are willing to sacrifice your suffering to Him .... Every one of you should try to dispose of the opinion that you would be able to enter the eternal kingdom without having to endure suffering .... This is only granted to the person who, through his suffering, has participated in Christ's act of Salvation .... who has also contributed his share in reducing the suffering on earth on behalf of humanity, for what he bears for the sake of the Saviour is accepted by the Lord with grace, and once again a part of the immense guilt of sin has been reduced for the salvation of the human race .... You must have complete trust in the Lord, then you will be guided through all suffering on earth, and, without any risk of harm to the soul as a result of this suffering, you will, in fact, accrue unsuspected benefits if, in view of Jesus Christ's suffering and death on the cross, you desire to receive the blessings thereby



acquired .... The Lord has always helped the earthly child in extreme adversity if it turns to Him in prayer, for this reason every suffering will always come to an end if you sacrifice it to the Lord in heartfelt prayer and beg for consolation in every distress .... In this life nothing lasts forever .... neither suffering nor joy last long .... because all earthly things are transient after all, and are only imposed or granted to the human being to make him aware of the fact that he should always draw the benefit for eternity from suffering as well as from joy. Both will only be a blessing for the human being if he accepts them with faith and love for the Creator and willingly submits to it, no matter how it is granted to him by the Lord .... Only then will the human being pass the test and need not fear anything in this world, for his suffering will constantly bring him closer to eternity, where one day it will be converted into bliss for him.

Amen

**The souls' adversity on earth ... Help by means of this connection ....**

***B.D. 0251 from January 8th 1938,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

Now listen, my dear child, the Father of all salvation is promising you eternal life if you persevere for your and other people's sake. For a time of unspeakable adversity has come upon all of you .... countless spiritually deluded and wrongly thinking are waging battle with the darkness .... God the Lord has once again embodied Himself on earth in the spirit of those who are willing to serve Him in order to come to help these fighters .... to support them in their adversity of soul and to point the right path out to them. For the time of grace granted to humanity will soon be over. When the Lord of spirits instructs these spirits to speak to people on earth .... to make contact with Earth, then this visible activity of Heaven is an inexpressible grace for the human children, which all of you should truly recognise .... Yet the magnitude of adversity on earth motivates the Father Who, in His love, does not want to abandon any being. Work at improving your souls .... lift your thoughts up to the Lord and all of you will receive blessings a thousand times over, now and evermore.

Amen

**The souls' wretchedness ....  
Being of service and willing  
to help .... Reward ....**

## ***B.D. 0252 from January 8th 1938, taken from Book No. 5/6***

Greetings, My child .... Let My Words refresh you and always remain My obedient child, and I will give you all My love if you are of service to Me .... for the wretchedness of My earthly children is immense, they continue on the path which leads away from their real goal .... from eternal beatitude .... and indifferently walk through the earthly valley. I see the misery grow worse every day, I take mercy upon them and would like to offer them My help, yet they close their hearts and ears to My Words and admonitions. I will bless every one of you who serves Me, yet I have tasks awaiting you and need your complete commitment .... If your activity is to be crowned with success you must, for love of Me, accept opposition when it arises, for I need confrontational servants who are willing to suffer for My Words and to endure hardships .... Behold, My child, as a result of your striving your soul will derive a wealth of grace .... no human child is able to estimate this treasure, its physical eyes do not see the shine brought about by such striving in My spirit and in accordance to My will .... A child which serves Me with love and loyalty can never fail .... it will only ever dedicate itself more eagerly to its Lord and Saviour, and for this I will bless it for all eternity .... All souls are dear and valuable to Me, and every child helping Me to show these poor beings, which take the wrong path, the right direction so that they will turn to Me and allow Me to

enter their hearts, will be rewarded by Me with My love. One day eternal light shall shine for them, they shall all taste blissful happiness, which is forever prepared for them in My Father's kingdom. For My love wants to give eternal life to all of you.

Amen

## **Struggle for truth ... Help through prayer ...**

***B.D. 0253 from January 9th 1938,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

Once your heart has directed you to the right path, take it and remain faithful to the Lord till death .... Things are still awaiting you which the Lord has destined you to do for the benefit of humanity, and you shall actively participate in all the knowledge conveyed to you in order to strengthen your spirit. As yet, much is still unknown to you which shall one day provide you with information about God's will, wisdom and omnipotence .... The Lord Himself will advise you time and again to persevere and to work in His honour and for the benefit of many souls. Always obey the voice within yourself, which will guide and direct you according to the Lord's will .... And don't linger when you are advised to serve Him .... Everything

that flows to you is predetermined; therefore you must not become impatient. Only the Lord knows why He instructs you in this unusual fashion, and your complete trust, dedication and submission to His will enable you to receive His teachings time and again. Every desire for truth is a step towards fulfilment .... the Lord distributes as it is conducive for His children and beneficial for their perfection. The struggle goes on incessantly for everyone, and if you want to attain the eternal Truth you must patiently place yourselves at the Lord's disposal by proving yourselves worthy of the great grace of being allowed to work as the Lord's servants, with Him and for Him. Thus you are urgently advised to remain in prayer .... the Lord will give you everything if you appeal to Him for your soul's salvation and for strength and grace on your journey through life. Once you realise how your resolve to work for the Lord becomes stronger through prayer, you will use this means of grace increasingly more often and the Lord will stay close to you at all times .... In days of inner contemplation you will always have the desire to faithfully entrust yourselves to the Saviour, and this desire is the emanation of His divine love for you human children, since the more love you receive, the brighter your love for the Saviour will arise, and then it will be much easier to recognise the Father's loving care in His directives .... the heart will gladly become receptive and the spirit will lift itself up into the universe and hurry ahead to the eternal home. On days like these the earthly heaviness will not burden you so much, because your soul is following its true purpose and turns towards eternity ....

Once you have reached the level where you consciously turn away from the world and its enticements, your urge for perfection will become stronger .... You will no longer walk alone on earth but will always be in contact with the Lord and nothing need frighten you anymore ....

Everything in your existence on earth will proceed as the Lord has determined, and all events will be of benefit for you if you trustingly leave everything up to the Lord. The Earth is only a tiny part of Creation, and just as certainly as it is a stage of maturing for countless beings, so certainly will **that** soul, which always and forever entrust itself to the Lord and has united itself with Him in love, leave earthly life completely purged and prepared for eternity. For the Lord blesses His Own and gives them eternal life .... He lets the light of realisation illuminate them and guide them into the Father's kingdom.

Amen

## **Stars .... Natural law .... Research to no avail ....**

***B.D. 0254 from January 10th 1938,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

Dear child .... it is a fundamentally wise law that, according to the Lord's will, the heavenly bodies in the

universe always orbit the sun at the same distance and in eternally repetitive regularity. Every creation in the universe depends on the solar system .... Not a single star can exist without the luminosity of the sun, for the purpose of each heavenly body consists of being the abode for countless more living beings .... and yet the composition of each one differs. If you want to ascertain this you must take hitherto unknown laws into account .... The Earth is a completely independent star .... that is, from other heavenly bodies, with its own specifically designed natural laws, and therefore you can only explain the stars you see in the firmament according to **these** natural laws .... yet you do not come close to the truth in this way .... the laws of earth apply to all inhabitants of earth .... nevertheless, they deviate from the laws of other stars .... consequently, it will never be possible for you to establish principles and rules about them, for you are not in control of the laws of the universe. It is roughly the same as if you tried to explain to the creatures in the animal kingdom that every individual person thinks differently .... just as every spirit shapes its own life and that these lives can be totally different .... and the animal would be unable to understand the spiritual sphere in which the human being exists, although man lives on the same earth as the animal .... so all stars differ from one another, despite the fact that they all move within the universe and are subject to the same will .... Hence the final answer will remain unknown to you, it is therefore entirely pointless to establish scientific research about areas and questions mankind will never be able to solve,

for even if you have found an answer .... who wants to prove that this answer is right? .... Your calculations and conclusions will only ever be in accordance with the applicable laws for earth, yet the universe hides such great secrets that researching them during your earthly existence will be a futile effort .... Who gives you the guarantee that the Lord's creation has taken place in the same way on all stars .... who on earth will say things, the proof of which he is powerless to ascertain? .... Just as planets are worlds apart from each other, so is every star's purpose different for its assigned beings, and the laws these heavenly bodies are subject to were given by the Creator of the Universe according to His wise judgment, yet they are utterly incomprehensible for the inhabitants of Earth and not inexplicable for the human intellect .... All beings shall recognise the Lord's greatness by His work of Creation, and if the human being only once considers the fact that he merely knows a very tiny part of Creation and that he cannot even thoroughly explore this part .... the Earth .... in its whole composition, then a slight sense of the infinity of the universe has to come to him .... of the inconceivable magnitude of the Creator .... and he must begin to realise that everything has been created according to a wisely devised divine plan and that the human being, as a part of this work of creation, was placed into it in order to likewise fulfil a task which has to be the purpose of his life on earth. And the result of a person's contemplation about trying to investigate the Earth and its surrounding heavenly bodies should be the wish to serve the Lord of the world. For vast



is the universe and tiny is the human being.

Amen

# **Evil forces .... Good spiritual beings .... Reason and miracle of the proclamations ....**

***B.D. 0255 from January 11th 1938,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

Our effort to penetrate you is unsuccessful if you resist our thoughts. If you willingly hand yourself over to us, the reception will be easy .... Try to understand: every moment in your life good and evil forces try to take possession of your soul, and therefore many days and hours occur when the battle being waged between these forces becomes apparent in a person's emotional life .... During these times apathy, unwillingness and other less positive instincts take possession of the person and place him into a state of inner discontentment .... And you will find it particularly difficult to pray during those times, even though you could quite easily release yourselves again from the control of such demons with a prayer. However, you must use all your will to fight against such

states which can easily damage your soul and always strive to re-establish contact with your Lord and Saviour, for only then will your victory over these evil powers be assured. The Lord protects you, for His love would like to keep everything at bay, yet you need not dread such times either, providing you always listen to the inner voice which shows you the path towards inner peace. And now listen to our teachings, which we bring to you on the Saviour's instruction to give you strength and encouragement for the coming time .... God created you, and thus you all live in the world sharing exactly the same spirit yet at different stages of development, which you, during your more or less long lifetime, will raise yourselves, depending on the work you do to improve your own soul. This work of improving oneself is the only task the Lord gave you at the time of your creation, and for this purpose the Lord assigned spiritual beings to you to accompany you through your life on earth .... spiritual beings, which lovingly try to help you so that you are not defencelessly left to the mercy of evil forces .... spiritual beings, which constantly look after you and always try to influence you on earth in a way that you will gladly and eagerly accomplish this work of improving your soul. And you should hand yourselves over to these spiritual beings .... so that spiritual thoughts may be imparted to you, you should make your hearts receptive to the whisperings and admonitions which constantly flow to you from these spiritual beings .... Then your journey through the earthly valley will be much easier, you will never walk through it lonely and abandoned but will

always be accompanied by forces which will lead you to the Father and want to spare you from going astray. But then you will be given the task of seeking heartfelt contact with these spiritual beings, because the Lord Himself wants to talk to you through these beings. This is significant evidence of His love for you earthly children and is only understandable due to the great adversity which threatens the earthly children now. For this reason the Lord seeks to impart Words of comfort to His Own on earth again through the mouth of willing children who make contact with the spiritual beings surrounding them in order to accept the Words of the Lord .... He tries to revive people's faith again where it was lost and to strengthen it where it is weak. For without faith the human being is heading for disaster .... without faith evil powers take possession of him .... without faith he turns away from the Divinity and takes the path of ruin. And when the human being is no longer able to recognise God in that which surrounds him every day, the Lord of Heaven and Earth must be pointed out to him and through miracles he must be informed again of God's activity, so that he will look heavenwards once more and find his way back to the Father Who created him and Who does not want the downfall of even one of His beings because it does not recognise the heavenly Father.

Amen

## **Warning ... Working**

# **against the Word of God ....**

## **Serious admonition ....**

***B.D. 0256 from January 12th 1938,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

Oh, give thanks to the Lord, the Creator of Heaven and Earth! .... He elects who are willing to serve Him and educates them at all times. And thus all of you will, time and again, have the grace of being permitted to receive the Words of the Lord and to accept them as refreshment for your spirit. Pay attention to these Words .... he who receives from the Lord must remain in the Lord in order to be able to fulfil his task .... For as yet the human being's life is endurable .... one day, however, the time will come when the Word of God will be the only and true consolation for the human children .... when people in most bitter adversity will appeal to the Father in Heaven for help which will then be granted to them in His Word. The soul will long for divine gifts and turn its back on the world .... the Lord will destroy everything which still adheres to the world and His wrath will strike the sinners who want to deprive the seeking and God-desiring souls of heavenly consolation .... For God has mercy upon His children, but wherever the adversary's spirit works against these, he will be stopped. Therefore, try to escape from the darkness while God, in His forbearance, still gives you time .... and if you cannot accept the Lord's

Words as yet then at least avoid everything which might incur God's wrath upon you .... **don't work against Him** .... He wants His living creation to return to the light, providing it is not prevented by hostile forces .... and each one will indeed find the path to the light by merely making sure that the warnings and admonitions it receives are not rejected .... If the earthly child contemplates the great question of Creation and its own task, then the Lord will give His blessing and bring the human being's thinking close to the truth .... yet anyone who high-handedly rejects everything that might result in spiritual enlightenment will incur great guilt .... One day the hour will come to those when the Lord will speak to them with a loud voice, and if his heart then does not turn towards the truth, his life will be a lost one and the adversary will draw him completely into his domain. Oh, how half-hearted you all are when it concerns attaining the most Supreme and Exquisite and becoming worthy of an indescribably beautiful eternity! .... A radiantly shining beyond immersed in light is open to all of you and you walk along in spiritual darkness .... You need only implore the Lord for grace and the glory of eternal life will be assured to you .... Instead, you turn away from His love, you fail to avail yourselves of the abundance of grace at your disposal and let day after day pass by without considering that a Father lives in Heaven Who is calling you and has prepared His kingdom for you. Recognise the divine love and desire it before the guilt on earth has utterly deluded you and obstructs your path to the Father. Every sinner will be accepted providing he remorsefully

beseeches the Father for mercy, yet anyone rejecting the Father's grace will close the door to eternity himself and his end will be death ....

Amen

# **Steering the ship of life without a rudder .... The Word of God .... Glory ....**

***B.D. 0257 from January 13th 1938,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

Let your inner realisation of the eternal truth become your goal in life .... Trying to do justice to your earthly task without the help of God is a perilous undertaking .... It is impossible for you to steer your little ship of life without a rudder .... You must at all times call upon the Lord for help. However, if you abide by His commandments, you will weather all storms of life undamaged .... not one hair on your head will be harmed without the Father's will .... so try not to hide your adversity but unburden your heart to Him instead .... Not the tiniest star will fall from the heavens if it is not His will, and so you are also guarded by Him as well .... The Lord takes care of you, He seeks your soul's affection .... and if you want to listen to Him, your spirit will be saved

forever, for His love will always proclaim His Word, His omnipotence and His wisdom .... And if you want to hear Him, He will give you everything .... depending on your need .... His blessing is with those who follow Him, and His grace rests upon those whose life on earth is a life of love .... And therefore, let your attention be drawn to eternity, for life is only valuable for this .... only deeds of love are permanent, the earthly world, however, is like a dream .... it fades away and nothing remains but the deeds of the spirit .... strive heavenwards, always facing God .... devote your hearts to the Saviour with love and faithfulness .... then you will abide by His teachings and offer yourselves to the Lord. And yet you will only be able to recognise a fraction of the divine truth, for the Lord intends to grant you the whole of the truth in eternity .... when you enter the light and behold the glory of God with spiritual eyes. Only then will you grasp the magnitude of the Father's love and kindness .... Only when you behold the Word Itself in Its glory will you desire to penetrate it increasingly deeper, and then the Lord will illuminate you .... Be watchful on earth, because it can lead to your downfall which you can only avoid by turning your attention to the beyond .... you are being warned, so that your vision should not become clouded and you look after the small light the Father's kindness has kindled in you in order to save you from the darkness. Everything was created through His will and nothing is without purpose .... and if God allows you to hear His voice then this, too, is according to His will .... and the purpose of His Words is to protect you from the downfall .... 'For whoever

has My Word will have eternal life ....'

Amen

# **Stars .... Dwelling place for souls .... Sun-light ....**

***B.D. 0258 from January 14th 1938,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

Behold, today we proclaim to you in the Saviour's name that which will introduce you to infinity .... There are times when you are drawn to observe the splendours of the stars, do you ever consider the glories that might hide behind them? .... And no matter how many million stars you see in the firmament, it is nevertheless only a part of infinity .... it is merely a fraction of Creation and does not even begin to give you an idea as to how many more of such stars in the universe are still invisible to you .... This myriad of celestial bodies is only governed by one Spirit .... one Light .... and one Deity .... Over thousands of years it has been the Creators will to offer completely free beings the opportunity for advancement on these stars .... and to gradually prepare them for the state in eternity where they shall be illuminated by an abundance of light which far exceeds all the light of the stars in the universe. Yet even the abundance of light on each of



these stars differs in intensity .... the sizes of the suns, which give light and warmth to these stars, are, in turn, so different that no-one on earth would be able to imagine them, because these areas are inaccessible to human research and would only lead to wrong conclusions. Nevertheless, everything in space is so well arranged that from eternity to eternity nothing of this wise order of worlds can be revoked .... that no star would ever be able to leave its designated orbit and take a different path .... And thus listen: The Lord created space for the perfection of all His beings and for the duration of the earthly course of life, for instance, the human being has a number of years at his disposal during which he can attain a degree of perfection which will place him into bright surroundings. The soul shall continue to develop to ever higher realms and be offered ever more opportunity .... And the purpose of every star .... is to offer the countless beings a space that suits their spiritual state where the spiritual beings' activity shall be continued. It is incredibly difficult to explain this to a person, for he can only grasp this with his human intellect and is incapable of imagining the multitude of stars which are subject to God's will and which time and again offer countless beings the opportunity to mature fully again ....

Amen

## **Fatherly Words ....**

# Proclamations ....

***B.D. 0259 from January 15th 1938,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

My dear child .... not all people will be so singled out, and not all will have the grace of being permitted to hear My Words, for this reason it is your most sacred duty to attend to My Word with the most dedicated love and, as far as possible, avoid everything that might prevent you from doing this on earth. The obstacles arising will affect you such that you will no longer be able to hear so easily once you become distracted by earthly pleasures .... And so I advise you to avoid everything which ties you to this world .... look for happiness in your days solely in My Words and never fail to eagerly dedicate yourself to your work, because it is for your benefit and will further your spiritual progress .... The path which was shown to you is undreamt-of sweetness for your heart, for I lovingly support all children who fulfil My task and guide them towards higher spheres .... What could possibly replace this for you? Where else would your soul find peace if not through Me? .... My child, if you love Me more than the world, you will exchange heavenly nourishment for earthly pleasures and you will possess boundless wealth .... for such sacrifices are very pleasing to the Lord and He will return a thousand fold what you relinquish for His sake .... Therefore let this task always be the work of your heart .... in heartfelt contact with Me you will

provide greater joy for yourself and remain in My grace. And thus I also want to inform you today that the heaven rejoices each time you unite with Me and that this has a far reaching effect in your environment, for every noble stirring of the heart gives rise to a flood of light and strength which also strengthens the beings close to you which place their hope in you. And thus you are surrounded by light .... (Break)

## **Isolation from the world ....**

***B.D. 0260 from January 16th 1938,  
taken from Book No. 5/6***

A cheerful disposition makes the spirit grow stronger, and your effort will succeed in beholding the light of the sun beyond the ether blue sky, even if at the moment dark clouds still cast a shadow over you. Each spirit isolating itself from worldly endeavours .... which swings itself up into bright spheres, will feel its strength grow and therein recognise the influence of the divine light. There are certainly days in life which lack this radiant brightness, yet even in this state the human being can achieve extraordinary things for his soul if he appeals for strength from above .... because precisely this time is needed by many a person when he is completely disenchanted by worldly commotions .... If he can save himself from such physical adversity into spiritual regions, the rays of the

sun will shine for him there and trigger a spiritual awakening .... for the soul had been asleep until then, it was in a state of unconsciousness and only the warming rays of the spiritual sun had awakened it to life .... where the Lord lets His light shine to show an erring human child the path .... From then on adversity of soul can no longer exist for it if it always remains within the ray of this light .... and it can do so at all times by merely heartily appealing to the Father for the grace of realisation. Pay attention to these Words: Never lose contact with the Lord and Saviour, then you will never lose yourselves. In order to satisfy your hunger, you shall hear the Words of salvation .... All those of you who believe, do not worry about things to come .... awaken the Lord in yourselves, let Him dwell in your hearts and you will be relieved of all adversity .... The Lord will not let His Own go astray if you remain in the Lord, for you are a part of the One Who created you. Therefore He revives the weak with His grace and gives comfort to the disheartened .... He helps His Own when they are threatened by the evil one .... as long as you just merely show a little love to the Lord He will bless you and you will defeat the adversary's strength .... for anyone who tries to destroy you will be consumed by fire .... However, you must always and forever keep the faith, and then you need not lose heart, for God will help you for all eternity.

Amen

# **Danger of selfishness .... Love for God and one's neighbour ....**

***B.D. 0343 from March 22nd 1938,  
taken from Book No. 8***

God, the Lord, is ready to comfort you at all times, and He will do so in abundance if you trustingly turn to Him. Where the Lord Himself takes care of every being in this way you will experience His grace every day .... He will steadfastly guide your hearts towards the Eternal if only you strive for it. However, even a tiny amount of selfishness will weaken the great grace of strength imparted to you by the Lord, because someone who puts his own ego into the forefront will hardly enter the right path or remain on it. For love for God and one's neighbour is the highest commandment which comprises everything .... Should you not try to fulfil this commandment first? .... In that case, however, you should not place yourselves into the forefront .... Everything you own and are has been given to you by God, and to the same extent you should give to your fellow human beings .... you should give them everything you deem valuable yourselves before you consider yourselves and thereby love the next person as yourselves. In this way, you receive the same measure of divine grace from the

Lord as the measure you have given to your neighbour. If you practise this highest duty, your life on earth will still offer you incomparably wonderful things .... insofar as it will make your path to the Father easier and you, constantly standing within the radiance of divine love, will be able to educate yourselves for eternity .... A short prayer to receive strength for all rightful actions will make even this commandment seem easy for you to accomplish, and in lively communication with your spiritual friends you will penetrate the love and wisdom of God ever deeper and learn to look upon everything from a spiritual point of view .... The commandment of love will stimulate you into constant activity until the end of your life, and then you will not have lived your life on earth in vain but will have helped the advancement of your soul. That which you do to your neighbour out of love will have been amply repaid to you if you thereby reached a state of greater perfection and acquired the reward of heaven ....

Amen

**Purpose of suffering -  
Trials .... Lethargy of the  
spirit ....**

## ***B.D. 0373 from April 11th 1938, taken from Book No. 8***

Many things in life discourage the human being .... it is like a bond which binds the heart of such a person. Time and again doubts in the goodness and mercy of God arise when grief and suffering occur too often .... and yet they only give you an inner maturity which otherwise would take much longer to achieve. And since your earthly life only lasts a short time it is necessary that such depressing or painful occurrences must take place frequently and sometimes one after another so that you may derive blessings from them, that you look upon your life earnestly and carefully and that your desire turns more and more away from the world and its attractions, which are a serious danger to you. Life often seems unbearable for the individual, sometimes such an earthly child tires and loses heart .... it drifts without making any effort to change this discouraged existence. And yet it would be so easy for you as soon as the right attitude towards God shows you the way you have to go. But consider the many seemingly insurmountable obstacles in your life .... would you have escaped from them if you had not been given help from above every time ....

But you do not always recognise this help as sent from above, yet every occurrence is a flow of God's grace .... whether good or bad .... it always has the same purpose: to have a refining effect on you, My earthly children. If you can see in every test a means of improvement then you

will also recognise your own shortcomings and failures, and with this recognition comes the quiet will to overcome them .... Then every trial has already served its purpose .... and therefore you must realise in every difficult situation that they are necessary to achieve a higher degree of maturity .... that they are steps on the ladder which leads the soul to perfection, so to speak. A life without struggle would only mean to stay on the same level, however, the battle against oneself is far more difficult to carry out than the battle against enemies who approach the human being from outside.

Every awakening from the lethargy of the spirit is a step forward .... the alert human being will remember his spirit and not let it starve, for lethargy is a relapse and cannot be called 'enlivening' in any way, it will defeat every urge to be active and can never have a beneficial influence on the soul. Therefore do not be alarmed when life's difficulties seem hard to bear .... if they make you aware of your shortcomings and you fight them then they will disappear again in not too long a time, for the Lord only allows such trials until they have served their purpose and improved the heart of the human being. Because it is not His will that you should suffer except that through this you are made worthy of everlasting joy ....

Amen

## **Resistance to evil through**



# **desire for God .... Spirit of light .... The Word of God as weapon ....**

***B.D. 0382 from April 19th 1938,  
taken from Book No. 9***

Anyone who always lives his life looking heavenwards will resist the dark forces. Just a single thought of the Saviour and you will be released by Him from such influence. It will immediately create a deep gulf between you and the latter, since everything .... Heaven and Hell .... is subject to the Lord. The enemy expects to find a willing creature in you into which he can transfer all vices and lusts in order to get control over it .... yet if he meets with the slightest resistance as soon as a person's heart longingly turns to the Saviour, the power of evil will be broken and he will be released from evil forces without having been harmed. However, the power of evil shall make you realise how vigilant you must be if the struggle of improving your soul is not to be unsuccessful. Give preference to the beneficial spiritual beings surrounding you .... let them protect you and let them take care of your physical shell and your soul .... then the powers of darkness will have a hard time with you. They will try in vain to undermine your purity or to make you compliant for their disgraceful cravings .... Think of the Saviour in

every danger and you will already have overcome the one who wants to plunge you into disaster. And therefore it is always advisable to comply with the Word of God during your short time of existence on earth, which in itself will give you strength and is protection against evil at the same time.

For it is given to you by God so that you shall reach the kingdom of God .... hence it must also be, at the same time, the best weapon against the darkness which is, after all, the most adverse power to eternal bliss .... Therefore beware of everything which, being opposed to God's teaching, wants to throw people into spiritual darkness and thereby prevent them from taking a true insight into the Lord's never-ending actions of love .... The adversary will always find supporters where dense darkness dominates, for everything that strives towards the light is shunned by him, and, if you sincerely appeal to the Father to enlighten your spirit, the power of evil will become increasingly weaker the more sincerely the human child is governed by its longing for spiritual light .... since darkness has never yet triumphed over light ....

Consequently, it is also left up to your own discretion as to whether you take the path of light or darkness, but let it be a warning to you that the Lord is only with you in the light, that other forces preside in the darkness and that you must only ever strive towards the light and the eternal Deity if you want to escape the power of evil and be taken care of by the Father Himself. The spirit of light and truth will always reign over everything which is

subject to darkness. The wise, however, will make an effort to become enlightened and once they are, they will be protected against all onslaughts by the enemy and will overcome the world forever.

Amen

## **Seclusion from the world ... Monastery? ...**

***B.D. 0391 from April 29th 1938,  
taken from Book No. 9***

Cast all your cares onto the Lord .... Behold, if you follow Me I will know how to take your suffering from you, and during days of inner contemplation you will receive the constant flow of strength that I always have at your disposal, and thus you will know that the Father is close to you if only you ask for Him .... because I want to give to you what you desire. Behold, My daughter .... The suffering of the world is the result of the sin of the world .... If you strive for God's reward you will be far less exposed to suffering on earth .... then you will only have to bear what you voluntarily accept for the sake of other people in order to alleviate their suffering, and so I will doubly bless this suffering. If you believe that you will enter into God's glory without having acquired your final

maturity of soul .... thus, if you strive for the perfection of your soul but prefer to withdraw from all earthly suffering, you will hardly be able to enter the state which will elevate you to Godlike beings.

Anyone who participates in Christ's act of Salvation, who carries the cross imposed on him .... who sacrifices all his suffering to the divine Saviour without grumbling and complaining, will thereby constantly move in divine grace and his departure from this world will be a glorious one. For this reason I did not instruct you to withdraw from the world, which is indeed perilous everywhere, rather, you should willingly accept your cross, let its dangers make you stronger, rise above them and as conqueror of this world become an example to others. You should try to gain the Lord's loving kindness and His mercy which will equip you with the necessary strength and grace to cope with all worldly demands while nevertheless enabling you to free yourselves from your restraints. As I grant My grace to everyone, because every child may draw from My love's fountain of blessings without limitation, you are also given the power to resist the world ....

Behold, My child, nature is governed by many different forces .... the Lord uses them all so as to give people the opportunity to mature. The purpose of these natural forces is to awaken and to shape the concept of good and evil within the human being .... The same applies to the dangers of the world which are also permitted for the sake of a final choice of direction .... either for good or for evil. This detachment of the soul from the constraints of

darkness needs to be aspired to and done entirely voluntarily. For this purpose, however, evil must be able to exercise its influence too, for if a soul does not know evil, the state of perfection without a fight would be valued far less than if it were achieved by constant struggle .... Although there is sufficient opportunity in every situation in life to fight evil, the power of darkness will certainly predominate in the commotion of the world .... it will try to approach the human child from all angles, and the merit of such soul will be far greater .... The earthly children's love for Me, their Creator and Saviour, is indeed a fine testimony for all those who want to serve Me, but a life in seclusion without this love would be a mere escape from an environment especially created for the purpose of humanity's perfection, which then would not result in any blessing for the person .... because the criteria and stages of temptation would not be overcome but avoided .... And to maintain one's love for the divine Saviour amidst the commotion of the world is very enjoyable indeed .... To renounce earthly joys and cravings due to this love will result in a child who is pleasing to God on earth already, who will also be carefully looked after by the Father and lovingly and paternally guided past all obstacles in life. You humans on earth should also consider that you yourselves chose this state of embodiment on earth .... That you were willing to accept every burden on earth in order to achieve the degree of childship to God, which is meant to shape you into Godlike beings ....

Although it is up to your free will to then withdraw from your designated fate, and your good intention to serve Me is not to be condemned either .... but you are depriving yourselves of the opportunity to achieve a degree of perfection, since you consciously abandoned this opportunity after all. The human being matures and shapes himself the more willingly he accepts the suffering of the world .... thereby becoming a bearer of the cross and voluntarily walking the narrow path, which has no boundary and can be easily exchanged again for the broad road .... the earthly joys and pleasures .... in contrast to the broad road which makes a crossing on to the narrow path impossible. And thus the former is indeed significantly more commendable for your soul, which is in need of deliverance and light.

Amen

## **Leaving the mother church ....**

***B.D. 0400 from May 5th 1938, taken from Book No. 9***

The biggest foolishness in life takes place when people withdraw from the church they belong to. The circumstances the clergy find themselves in nowadays

are not easy .... they do everything possible to help the church keep its sheep and yet one after the other isolates itself and often no longer finds its way back .... It is then exceptionally difficult to influence the souls of such deserters even though this is and indeed should be every clergyman's task. Now the Lord puts the gift of teaching into the hands of His chosen servants .... not to push the clergy out of office but to help them, so that people outside the church also receive the blessing of God's Word. But who listens to and accepts the Word ....

It is indescribably difficult for someone having voluntarily separated himself from the church to submit to God's commandments .... It is not as if he did not have the opportunity to walk the right path .... If his heart dictates what is pleasing to the Lord and he follows this voice he will very soon reach a level which can lead him to much further ascent .... but usually people who have separated from their mother church are not at all interested in purely spiritual matters. They deny everything and are therefore in an extremely unsafe position by delivering themselves to evil powers, since they give up all support which the church had still provided to them and are far more likely to become entirely unbelieving, and their whole direction of thought only applies to the present .... but they deny life after death, which is generally the reason why they have separated from their previous belief. If these people are confronted by great hardship one day they won't know where to turn .... then they will look for their God and

don't know where to look for Him ....

The clergy will never again be able to keep up the old discipline, it has lost the strength which makes the task of the messengers of God's Word easier, because they themselves often lack true profound faith as well .... They cannot any longer support with holy eagerness what they are teaching, and thus one thing explains the other. God's Word has to come to life in the messenger .... anyone speaking to the people has to be permeated by true love for the Saviour. Then every word flowing from his mouth will be spoken by the Lord Himself .... then every word will also enter into the human beings' hearts, and the small flock of people on earth which follows the Saviour and is willing to serve Him, will unite ever more closely. But anyone leaving the mother church surrenders himself to divine grace if he does not voluntarily bring himself in his heart to accept the divine doctrine .... Such struggle of heart is of immense value at the present time if you do not want to perish. The soil is being prepared wherever a community congregates to hear God's Word, and if a person's love is active as well the earthly child will soon feel the blessing of God's Word by being able to penetrate the divine teaching ever more and by receiving the right understanding for God's Word.

And thus the foundation of faith is laid in such a community, and if a faithful, God-serving shepherd is in charge of this community the Lord's Words will soon take root in the hearts of the believers, and they will be correctly guided onto the path of ascent. Therefore



remain faithful to your mother church and don't leave it, for every church can give you the foundation for your own progress of ascent if you don't just listen with your ears but also with your hearts to what your Heavenly Father is telling you through His servants. Therefore, when you hear God's Word you should know that the Lord Himself is speaking to you .... you should know that everyone who serves the Lord has been chosen to proclaim the Word, that one day there shall be a great harvest .... and respect all workers in the vineyard of the Lord .... Any person proclaiming His Word has been given the task and strength by Him .... thus listen to him and the blessing of God's Word will always come over you ....

Amen

## **Reference to earthquakes and catastrophes ....**

***B.D. 0409 from May 10th 1938, taken from Book No. 9***

Just a little while longer and the Lord will bestow great strength upon His Own and give them the power to work in His name. By the same token an incredible measure of wisdom will come upon those whose hearts beat in love for Him .... Thousands of people shall be converted and, in

order to give them a glimmer of understanding of God's light, God must let extraordinary signs appear, for the delusion among the human race is too great. And in a night of terror many will succumb to the belief that the natural forces have put an end to their existence. In this way the possibility still exists to lead such souls to some realisation, for only that which happens outside of earth .... which is not caused by people, can lead to a change for the better. The reign of the elements will make them realise that every being is subject to a higher Power .... This spiritual realisation must be preceded by hours of extreme adversity and distress, and so this, too, is only an act of mercy by the divine Saviour. Just as the activity of natural forces cleans the air, a large tremor on earth will also only have a positive effect on humanity, for all earthly breakdowns can be put right again but not the breakdown of the soul .... Thousands upon thousands of hands will seek to rebuild the destroyed earthly assets again .... nevertheless, an uplifting of the soul will not be tackled quite so quickly .... Only a small part of humanity will have a change of heart and they will greatly benefit from the activity of nature and the devastation it causes .... In this way the Lord's powerful voice will resound everywhere, and he who listens to it will be wise and will make an effort to fulfil the Lord's will .... The valley of earth you find so charming can become a valley of terror for you if you don't respect the grace of living in it and only try to satisfy your carnal cravings. Where is your thoughtless way of living without your actual designated activity .... which, after all, consists of you

keenly furthering your soul's education .... leading to? Admittedly, God's forbearance and patience is everlasting .... yet you will not reach your goal in eternities either if you never muster the will for it. And so God will emphatically inform you of His will .... He who has ears to hear, let him hear .... for the Lord warns every individual person, so that he shall not be engulfed by eternal darkness but take pleasure in the divine light. Those of you who want to be of service to Me should prepare yourselves for this time, for then you will have to fulfil your mission and proclaim the Word of God everywhere, which will be comforting and uplifting for countless people in the difficult time, but then it will also be observed and complied with ....

Amen

## **Forgiveness of sins .... I.**

***B.D. 0444 from May 31th 1938, taken from Book No. 10***

Take stock of yourselves and recognise your sins .... And if you transgressed, appeal to the Lord for forgiveness and His grace .... only that is pleasing before God. But if you believe that incessant prayers will reach God, which do not arise from deep within the heart .... if you believe that the Lord only forgives those who deem themselves to be

closer to the Lord in their life due to privilege .... who have devised a scheme by which all sins will systematically be absolved within a specific time .... the Lord will teach you otherwise .... Through the Saviour's divine love you acquired the right to be able to release yourselves from your sins if you recognise them in your heart of hearts .... genuinely regret them and at the same time implore the Lord and Saviour for His divine mercy to release you from these sins .... and then firmly decide to avoid these sins for love of the divine Saviour. Everything a person recognises to be wrong must also be abhorred by him in his heart, and this, in turn, will result in his intention to avoid sinning again. If he confides, like a child, his serious intention to his Father that he will never want to sadden Him by committing such wrong again ....if his abhorrence gives rise to profound remorse and the intention to improve himself .... then the Lord will lovingly draw the remorseful sinner to His heart and forgive his sins. However, customs and traditions have been established in the world by which a person can quite automatically be absolved from his sins .... And thereby an even greater evil and sacrilege on the human race has been promoted. For the absolution of sins became a truly faith-destroying bad habit because it occurred in such a way, that the sincerity of heart was indeed mentioned as being essential... but that the least of the sinners made an effort to enter into complete contact with the Lord .... that all formal conditions were in fact observed but that the actual act of the remission of sin left people under the impression of having complied with their duty .... even

though the person's **heart** had not yet fulfilled the conditions needed for the forgiveness of sin through the Lord. And thereby a misguided teaching became increasingly more prevalent which, in its basic principle and intention, is indeed good and noble but merely gets people into the habit of performing a dutiful action whose profound depth is not understood seriously enough and yet is so infinitely essential for humanity's salvation of soul .... (Break)

## Forgiveness of sins .... II.

***B.D. 0445 from June 1st 1938, taken from Book No. 10***

No human being is given the means to redeem himself from his guilt of sin .... he will always require the divine Saviour's love for this. Neither has a person himself the power to forgive other people's sins .... only if he acts in his ministry as a representative of the eternal Deity on earth and the other person's heart is utterly sincere, that is, if the latter appeals to the heavenly Father for forgiveness in complete realisation of his sin. Hence, the earthly child's **will** is only ever the decisive factor, and the action of God's representative is merely a **symbolic sign of the act of grace** .... Therefore, the act of confession of one's sins will therefore also always be utterly useless, even if a duty has apparently been

fulfilled, if the same confession of sins is not sent to the divine Father in a most heartfelt prayer for forgiveness at the same time. And, alternatively, such a remorseful confession of sins to the Father will also result in true forgiveness of this sin **without this ceremony**. People are often no longer aware of how distant they are from the actual Deity, even though they comply with all expectations imposed on them by the church on earth .... Something that should be a sincerely heartfelt requirement has become an entirely mechanical act .... And thus, such compliance with duties cannot always result in the same blessing .... People's hearts must find God, the intimate contact with the Creator and Redeemer must be established first, then the Lord will provide His earthly children with an abundance of grace, so that they will come ever closer to Him and soon no longer want to live without their Saviour on earth. However, the person must take the first step .... everyone knows when he has sinned .... And just as he has found sin by himself, he must also find inner reflection .... if he recognises his sin, he will also learn to abhor it, and then follow remorse and the wish to be released from the guilt .... but in that case his prayer for forgiveness will come from the heart and will also reach the ear of the One Who alone redeems all guilt on account of His great love ....

Amen

## God's messengers and their

# **work ....**

***B.D. 0480 from June 23rd 1938,  
taken from Book No. 10***

The willingness of an earthly child to receive God's Word has the effect that God's messengers agree to help at all times; thus all who are willing to serve God unite within a short time .... The work on the other side as well as on earth is solely intended for those souls who are still misguided and walk the wrong way .... The Lord prepares every admission and gives to the children according to their spiritual ability .... Everyone with the interest of earthly human beings at heart takes part in this association between the earth and the beyond .... They all have loved-ones left behind on earth or have a bond with them by virtue of God's will and are now constantly striving to guide them onto the right path. This is a very difficult undertaking as long as the human being believes that he can walk alone. Every misguided soul's desire for help will be granted gladly and willingly .... every soul's pleading prayer will be heard and every struggling soul will be given assistance. God's messengers are capable of doing much because God's will is working through them .... And thus you, too, shall receive all the help you desire because all the beings surrounding you endeavour the same .... to work for the Lord and Saviour .... to lead souls to Him and to save countless souls from hardship and anguish. Wherever your work serves the same

purpose you will be supported whenever you pray .... with every proclamation one more message from above has been passed on to you .... every single message will have a beneficial effect on earth .... and its contents will always serve to awaken hearts and bring light into the spiritual darkness .... There are many such straying souls on earth, all are invited by the Lord .... and all will be given the information about the eternal Deity but only few desire the light. These few should be approached with as much love as possible so that they may find the right path and remain willing to continue on it as long as they live on earth. Every moment is light that guides your thoughts to the Deity .... And every path is right when you take it with the will to reach God. The will alone is sufficient for God to send His messengers to meet you .... then, always following the voice of your heart, you can no longer go astray. You don't know how much easier earthly life will become when you have found God .... and how little you fear death afterwards .... because there will be no more death for you .... you will indeed live in eternity when you live and die within the Lord .... then death will only be a transition into eternal glory where you may see God face-to-face ....

Amen

## **Caution regarding doubts .... Loving**



# **admonition ....**

***B.D. 0491 from June 30th 1938,  
taken from Book No. 10***

You, who are My children, should always remain devoted to Me, and thus I will bless you and bestow My grace upon you so that you will live for eternity .... Yet you, My child, will always be protected by Me in every adversity .... since the will to turn to Me sprang forth from a pure heart, and in this union with your Creator the strength will constantly grow for ever new activity, for realising the whole truth and for being of service to Me. Always enter into contact with Me with a joyful heart and all difficulties will fall away from you, after all, I Myself Am guiding you and will not let you tire in your striving. Nevertheless, be cautious of all doubt, this is a danger you must always recognise .... for nothing will last for long which doesn't have My blessing .... Doubt, however, is apt to reduce My blessing if you don't fight against it. I have so many teachings in store for you and only wait for you to become strong in faith .... Always remember that every doubt is an obstacle to reach Me and you will overcome it because you want to be with Me .... I constantly convey the knowledge of things to you which are far removed from others, and every proclamation shall strengthen you .... yet if you allow doubt to enter your heart you will diminish the strength flowing to you from such proclamations. Therefore, meet all doubts with

the firm conviction that you will be helped by your Saviour. Don't let them arise in you but suppress them with all your strength of will for they deprive you of the greatest blessing .... your profound contact with your Saviour, and this is what you must wholeheartedly strive for .... Nothing must be too difficult for you to become worthy of this bliss, for it will release you from all burdens and will make you abundantly happy. The love of heaven takes uninterrupted care of the earthly children who work for the Lord .... no enemy will have power over you unless you concede it to him yourself. Draw comfort, strength and faith from the teachings of the Lord .... and being thus strengthened you will overcome whatever stands in your way .... You will emerge victoriously from such inner battles because your Saviour stands by your side and protects you in every walk of life ....

Amen

## **Sun systems ... Fire-spewing mountain ... Eruptions ...**

***B.D. 0495 from July 5th 1938, taken from Book No. 10***

The whole of the solar system is also in accord with the

great work of Creation. Were you to envision all the sun systems, your intellect would truly be unable to cope, for these dimensions would surpass the human being's thinking ability. You deem the measurements of Earth alone considerably more extensive than you can rationally take in. Yet the Earth can be called tiny compared to the size of the smallest sun systems. But countless such sun systems exist in the infinite space which differ in their dimension, composition and kind from each other, yet in their final purpose they all serve the same objective .... of furthering the steady higher development of the beings which, having emerged from God, separated themselves from God and shall return to God again. Every solar body is an infinitely enlarged similar work of creation as Earth .... Only a few people can understand that the sun can be compared to a fire-spewing mountain .... However, this comparison will only be understandable if one considers the fact that the Creator very wisely also designed the interior of such a mountain so that it can be the abode of countless beings .... and that the activity of these beings consists of producing endless eruptions through which the whole composition of the mountain undergoes constant changes again .... so that a proportion of beings can shed their cover again and open up their path to other regions on and above the earth. Consequently, such eruptions happen with the Creator's full approval, and the activity of anyone who loses his earthly life due to such occurrences is limited and they will move on to a different opportunity for development. The solar worlds

are likewise creations which the Lord has placed into space for the purpose of constantly new arising heavenly bodies. Every sun is continually active. In its interior rage unimaginable forces whose elementary power continuously throws parts of their interior into space, these are seized again by spiritual beings and shaped into entirely independently active heavenly bodies which are equipped with everything that is required by the living creations which are intended to live there again. However, each of such heavenly bodies will always be in a certain connection with the sun from which it had emerged. Just as the mass thrown out by a fire-spewing mountain always falls back to the earth's surface again due to gravity .... so will the released matter from the sun always remain within the vicinity of this sun due to this sun's gravitational pull .... and will also be constantly nourished by this very sun with light and warmth, without which no heavenly body in the universe would be able to survive. Merely the purpose of each world will vary, insofar as constantly different living conditions will also result in constantly different achievements, and such an abode is precisely what is required by **those** spiritual beings which, in a certain sense, need to continue their development .... which are sent there by the Creator of Heaven and Earth in realisation of what they are lacking. The universe is endless .... countless spiritual beings exist .... and thus time and again the opportunity must be offered to all of them to attain their set goal .... Space is infinite .... infinite is the power of God .... and infinite is His love for His living creations .... For this reason

everything has been created out of God's love and power.

Amen

# **Admonition to unite .... Peacefulness .... Love ....**

***B.D. 0548 from August 16th 1938,  
taken from Book No. 12***

You, who are in contact with each other on earth, should learn to get on together .... you should respect and love each other, you should share your worries and make an effort to muster mutual understanding, all of you are, after all, your Father's children, all of you are a small part of the eternal Deity and therefore you are all the same living creations of His love .... And if you deem yourselves entitled to consider yourselves better than another you will hardly be pleasing to God, for it will become a stumbling block for you on your path to perfection. You must establish a relationship with each other which corresponds to God's will .... You will truly reap far more love where you sow love, and every heart you meet with love will lovingly turn to you. It may mean overcoming yourself each time, yet the advantage for your soul is extremely valuable. Neighbourly love should be cultivated and never be neglected or even disregarded,

for your own strength will grow to the same extent as you consider your neighbour. Therefore, don't let discord arise between you, live in love and strive to balance everything with love, and don't offer the other person any reason for unkindness. Your whole nature should become pure love; hence, you must also take care to always give love in order to receive even more. And judge not, so that you will not be judged .... Time and again you should bear these few Words in mind if you run the danger of making judgments about your fellow human beings .... Everyone has faults and weaknesses, and many don't even recognise themselves and therefore treat others arrogantly, yet anyone who practices gentleness will also approach such fellow human beings with the greatest patience and peacefulness and leave the responsibility of judgment to the Lord, for He alone will make sure that these, too, will recognise His power and bear the last burden of their lives with profound humility .... Yet you yourselves only ever ought to fulfil your task with greatest love, which consists of uniting with each other .... of overlooking another person's flaws and only aiming to serve the Lord in everything you do, so that you will establish a relationship which only serves the purpose of proclaiming the kingdom of God to your fellow human beings .... and all your efforts will be successful if you only ever make true love your driving force. If you make an effort to give love, it will fall on good ground and awaken love in turn .... yet love can never thrive in discord but provide the evil power with ever more influence .... For that reason, try to abstain from all unkindness if you

want to unite yourselves with the One Who is true Love Himself ....

Amen

## **Diversity of earthly existence .... You would pray for suffering ....**

***B.D. 0579 from September 11th 1938,  
taken from Book No. 12***

You see, My child, in the world of your parents you accepted a destiny that allowed you to mature considerably and your earthly life was rich in experiences which stimulated your thinking, and the way to ascend could be revealed to you more easily. Although people's circumstances of life are often even more difficult and with far greater poverty and anguish but then their souls are even less mature and can only purify themselves in such hard conditions; and thus people's burdens are as different as are their results. Before its incarnation as a human being each soul longs to utilise its embodiment as quickly and as successfully as possible and therefore inhabits a body which has a predetermined difficult fate. On the other hand, many souls must go the path of purification which requires other circumstances of life ....

which leads to their goal sooner through an easier and more pleasant existence but where other dangers have to be fought which the soul has to overcome.

This is arranged by the Heavenly Father in His wisdom even if people on earth can't yet understand it and often become indignant about the uneven distribution of earthly wealth. But He Who knows all, Who understands every deficiency of the soul and would like to see the same perfection in everything also knows to offer the right help and only places upon each human being what is necessary for the benefit of his soul. Every day is a step closer to happiness .... so take care that you climb one step after another .... and not step back ....

You will eternally thank Me, your Creator, for every sorrow that I have put upon you and will praise the wisdom of Him Who created you and Who wants you to be near to Him forever .... You should always know that the Father does not want to lose even one of His children and that He cares for every being. And this care often necessitates methods which seem hard to you, since you cannot imagine the magnitude of the calamity that threatens you .... if you could fully understand you would pray for suffering only to avoid this adversity, but you must live your life without knowledge of your situation and strive to ascend of your own free will and in order to achieve the highest reward ....

Amen



# **Depression .... Spiritual and physical apathy ....**

***B.D. 0599 from September 30th 1938,  
taken from Book No. 13***

Pay attention to every depression affecting you and always regard it as the means used by the Lord in order to submit the soul to His will. Behold, you humans would yield to a certain amount of spiritual sluggishness without a second thought were you not subjected to moods which affect your thinking. To discover the reason for depression in order to resolve it can only ever be spiritually beneficial, for the human being's task is to be constantly active so as not to diminish in his vigour, and this applies both to the body as well as to the person's spirit. Once the state of diminished vigour has occurred, spiritual as well as physical activity is likely to wane and this would always signify a decline, which divine wisdom seeks to prevent, providing the earthly child willingly complies with every encouragement and prevention. The danger of such a decline is too great to be overlooked; on the contrary, it must be fought by using all available means, which therefore very wisely happens by subjecting a person to depressions which, in turn, give cause for reflection and exert an invigorating effect on body and spirit. Someone who always regards and understands such depressions as a revival for spirit and

body will derive utmost benefit from them .... He will monitor from which side he is at risk and protect himself even before the state of inertia occurs .... This is how the Lord protects His Own from weariness and at the same time combines it with an educational purpose .... of increased vigorous activity .... with thoughtful introspection as to how small and inadequate the earthly being actually is, and in so doing the human being regains his inner humility when he is at risk of losing it. Divine wisdom must frequently intervene if the soul's improvement is to progress steadily. You humans are so weak and without perseverance .... Were it left up to you alone, without the support of divine grace, any progress would be hard. Nothing in the world lasts forever .... eternal alternation and alteration keep everything continually active. The spirit must therefore also be constantly stimulated and God deals with this in a manifold and frequently changing way. Yet always bearing the benefit of the children on earth in mind and taking care of them according to their need, often in painful but also in uplifting ways .... However, the only decisive factor is the effect the events or feelings exert on the human being's spirit. A person rarely succeeds in overcoming all hurdles in life with the same ease .... Many a time his strength will leave him and then visible help must come from above, but it frequently expresses itself such that it is not gladly welcomed .... that is, in the shape of emotional depressions which so burden the earthly child that it will try to master them and thereby liberate itself from the impending danger of inertia. Then it will

try twice as hard to fulfil God's will .... it will aim to attain a state of inner peace again and can only achieve this through increased activity. Consequently, every depression, if it seems to burden the earthly child, also includes a certain blessing providing it is recognised as such ....

Amen

## **Prediction ... Destruction of God's Word and Scriptures ... Prayer ...**

***B.D. 0641 from October 27th 1938,  
taken from Book No. 14***

Heaven and earth shall pass away, but My Word shall remain forever. And anyone who believes in this Word will never ever die, for everything that belongs to Me has eternal life .... And yet you will have to struggle and fight for this Word of Mine. You are approaching a time which will demand utmost responsibility from you, you will have to demonstrate that you are living creations of the Deity and not the children of evil. And if you produce this evidence you will be blessed for all times. My Own will have to fight and must indeed very much defend themselves against the enemy, for all earthly powers will

oppose that which came forth from the eternal Deity and will not shy away from any means to achieve its complete annihilation. Yet even during the darkest night the light will shine for all those of you who hold on to My Word, and you will be able to take the path without worry of going astray.

And thus listen: Wherever the world intends to work against Me that is where I prepare the counter-offensive, and this will make the earthly power's resolve waver, for it will suddenly behold the Lord's avenging hand in the sky. And this will only show itself after their regulations and laws attempt to utterly eradicate My teaching .... thus, when it is clearly recognisable that the teaching of Christ may no longer be offered to people .... Only then will I intervene in order to safeguard My fighters who are working for Me from the worst danger at the same time. So wait for this time calmly and confidently; when the need is greatest I will stand by your side with My help and will certainly know how to stop the host of My fighters from becoming dispersed or destroyed. Everything is subject to Me, in heaven and on earth .... Oh, what folly it is to oppose Me! .... And if they don't believe in My might then it must be visibly proven to them. You should use your power on earth truly wisely for the glory of God and your own salvation of soul and not try to establish a kingdom on purely earthly desires and advantages which can only be described as a kingdom of Babel if you overestimate your own power and, with total lack of responsibility towards the divine Creator, believe

yourselves able to issue instructions which oppose the Lord's will .... At the moment it is still left up to individual people to deal with this issue, which is decisive for eternity, in their hearts .... But soon you will be given guidelines as to how you ought to be thinking .... The world and its representatives will endeavour to curtail all knowledge about the teaching of Christ .... It will be most strictly demanded that the still existing documents and Scriptures must be handed in, and people who won't let go of My Word will suffer serious inner conflicts .... And then I will remember them in their adversity ....

Anyone who wants to keep Me in his heart will never be abandoned and earthly authorities will not be able to touch him, for My power is greater than theirs. The instigation of the world which concerns the total destruction of God's teaching will be recognisable both in its consequences as well as in its defeats, for at first I will allow it to happen in order to draw everyone's attention to it .... Only when the effort is clearly identifiable, when no more doubts regarding the seriousness of such plans exist and when the distress of My Own is greatest will I reveal Myself and stretch out My hand in judgment against the deniers of My Word, and when this hour has come you, who are faithful to Me, will realise that you are visibly guided by the Father's hand. Regardless of what the world imposes on you, you should only ever look up to Me and in firm trust of rescue from adversity look for My spirit .... which will equip you with strength to resist and will never ever let you move

towards ruin. In order to protect your soul from danger I will constantly work in the midst of you as a sign of My presence ....

Amen

Let the heavenly Father's Words gently end in a prayer, which all of you should send up to Him whenever you suffer adversities: ....

Let Your peace be with Me ....

my dearest heavenly Father ....

Give me strength to fight down here ....

and fortify my will.

Grant me Your grace at all times ....

show me the right path to go ....

Let me always and without hesitation

be of service in honour of You ....

And when I come upon difficulties

let my faith grow even stronger ....

Hold on with Your love to me,

your weak earthly child ....

Help me to find My Saviour

through the flurry of the world.

Protect and look after me ....

always and forever ....

Amen

# **People without suffering .... Suffering is love ....**

***B.D. 0646 from October 30th 1938,  
taken from Book No. 14***

Those of you who long for it in your heart shall always hear My voice. Behold, My child, your life on earth is indeed a constant struggle and has to remain so until the end of your life, for this will uphold your strength of will; were you to find complete fulfilment of your wishes on earth already you would slow down in your endeavour to reach Me, and therein you can always find the explanation for days and hours which weigh heavy on your mind. Nevertheless, My love is close to you and protects your soul from being harmed. The state of constant satisfaction on earth is extremely perilous for the soul .... and My love wants to avert such danger from you and nurture ever greater spiritual activity and longing for Me in you, for this is the true driving force for the spiritual work of improving yourself .... And I Am always close to all of you, but you often fail to recognise Me and do not look for Me nor listen within yourselves,

where I affectionately speak to you .... Just persevere and don't let your longing for Me diminish, then I will take complete possession of you and give you blissful peace one day, when you have victoriously overcome the battle of life.

And thus let Me tell your heart the following: To taste of unmixed rapture here is never to a mortal given .... This frequently used saying describes the state of suffering on earth in a nutshell, and anyone who enjoys many pleasures in earthly life is truly not considered by the heavenly Father's love. He can only ever speak of true Fatherly love if he also gets to feel the Father's strictness .... unless he so willingly gives himself to the heavenly Father that the Lord has already blessed him in earthly life. Yet anyone who is loved by the Father will also have to purify his nature through the fire of love or through suffering .... If his heart is willing to love and ready to lend a hand then the suffering will not depress him, in his anguish he will even look up more to the heavenly Father and become pure love in earthly life. Yet anyone who is spared suffering is indescribably poor on earth, and this as a result of his own fault .... He did not love his fellow human beings and therefore will not receive the same from the Father either. His earthly life of undisturbed enjoyment and untroubled days will indeed be far more agreeable to him, yet the state of his soul is lifeless and agonising beyond words ....

His alienation from the Father's heart will noticeably express itself in the fact that all his thoughts and wishes



only apply to his greedy striving for earthly pleasures, for due to his heartless nature he becomes subject to the power of adverse forces, turns towards them increasingly more and will be drawn by this power into the whirlpool of the world with all its temptations, glamour and sensuality. This is why you should never envy people who are apparently well-off in earthly life .... their life is so unproductive .... They gather nothing for eternity, do nothing for their soul .... yet everything for their downfall and spiritual death. And earthly life is short but life in the beyond is infinitely long .... they have forfeited much and received little on earth and are poorer than the poorest people on earth who have to endure suffering and troubled days. The more lovingly active you are on earth the more you will also be fraught with suffering .... your own and even more so your fellow human being's suffering, for a loving heart also feels his loved-ones pain .... Yet all suffering is love again .... your heavenly Father's tender love Who thereby wants to make you worthy of His presence and the heavenly paradise .... And if you are in a position of suffering then you should know that you are also loved by Me .... know, that you then should take only your Saviour ever more into your heart so that all your suffering will be changed into blessings ....

Amen

## **Patiently bearing the**

# **cross .... 'Lord, Your will be done...'**

***B.D. 0648 from October 31th 1938,  
taken from Book No. 14***

Look within yourself and recognise your failings and appeal to the Lord for His help, then you will grow in strength and succeed in enduring all tests of life gently and with patience. After all, the Lord's will only sends these to you for your own advancement .... A person will rarely submit to the suffering imposed on him without grumbling, and yet precisely this is a willing submission to God's will, when the human being gladly and gratefully accepts all suffering from the Father's hand and so only ever acknowledges that whatever happens will be right for his soul's salvation. When the pain increases, the Saviour is placing a small cross upon you which, for His sake, you should carry patiently. Such days will make the soul infinitely happy, for whatever is tolerantly carried by the body is removed from the soul and it will enter an increasingly more liberated state. The body's suffering is the soul's greatest help, and if the human being bears it gladly, the soul will be grateful for it and, in turn, will use every opportunity to help the body through inner suggestions which benefit the human being's earthly work. All suffering will only have an ennobling effect if it does not cause bitterness in the person against the One

Who inflicts this suffering upon him, and thus it will only ever benefit the person's soul. And if the temptation is great to revolt against God's will, then remember the Lord's suffering on the cross .... How unspeakably painful was His death, and how humbly did the Saviour accept all suffering upon His shoulders out of love for the sinful human race. If you bear this in mind, then you will also gladly carry your small cross, for the Lord will not impose anything upon you that you are incapable of carrying. And the right love for the Saviour will sweeten your every suffering .... One day the significance of suffering will dawn on you and your soul will rejoice, if you were willing on earth and gained many merits through the bearing of suffering, which has an extraordinary effect in the spiritual world. Your lifetime on earth certainly burdens you with much which seems insurmountable to you at first, and thus you quarrel with God and want to object to His most sacred will; nevertheless, God's love will soon teach you otherwise .... it will let you realise that it is only in your best interest when He allows you to suffer, and your earthly existence will be richly rewarded if you have realised it. Therefore, always pray from the bottom of your heart 'Lord, Your will be done ....' and your suffering will turn into joy .... and you will gratefully accept the reward which, one day in eternity, will compensate you for all the suffering on earth ....

Amen

# **Even suffering is grace ....'Father, You will be done ....'**

***B.D. 0659 from November 9th 1938,  
taken from Book No. 14***

Abide by your inner voice which will always remind you to do what is right, and remember that the Father will in fact instruct His child correctly if only it wants to hear it. For there is a far greater possibility that an orderly accomplishment of the work will no longer be possible, but all means will nevertheless be at your disposal, and therefore you should not worry about obstacles which the Lord will be able to remove time and again if it is conducive to the work He wants to be done.

And now draw closer and receive our message: What can possibly happen to you humans if the Lord keeps His protective hand over you .... He will protect your body and soul from being harmed, He will guide you according to His will, and whatever is inflicted on you for the purpose of overcoming it only serves to benefit your soul. Therefore, don't worry, and submit yourselves to your heavenly Father's guidance with complete confidence. Everything on earth has its purpose; no human being knows the eternal Deity's plans and therefore cannot

easily recognise how well and wisely everything has been arranged for people's benefit. His severity, which people often consider cruel, is always just a loving means in order to offer you something incomparably more magnificent one day. And since you do not voluntarily want to make yourselves worthy of it, it is the Lord's will to lead you by way of suffering and sorrow to the path which makes these glories accessible to you. One day you will realise it and wholeheartedly thank the Father for every reprimand in earthly life. People on earth constantly receive God's grace and even suffering is grace .... which is still incomprehensible to you humans. But if you completely entrust yourselves to the Lord you soon will feel the blessing of suffering on yourselves, you will realise how infinitely lovingly you are being guided by the Fatherly hand so that such suffering will have a favourable effect on you even in earthly life, however, the benefit on your soul's life will be incomparable. And therefore meet everything the Father sends to you with complete submission, consider that not one sparrow shall fall on the ground without your Father's will, and that everything he sends to you is only an expression of His will and mercy, the full extent of which you can only comprehend when you have become perfect. For at the moment you are still incapable of judging what is helpful to you or what is to your disadvantage, you must only ever devoutly sacrifice your will to your Father in heaven and in all suffering and sorrow pray to Him in your heart ....'Father, Your will be done ....' Then you will also always be comforted ....

Amen

# **The activity of natural forces according to God's will ... Disaster ...**

***B.D. 0661 from November 10th 1938,  
taken from Book No. 14***

The laws God gave to the world from the beginning as being necessary for the beings' spiritual development are always applicable for the human being's journey through life. Forces often actively oppose them, but these are subject to a superior invisible Authority, they will always experience the effects of their adverse actions as being detrimental to them and will either turn around and work according to God's will or, if they maintain their malicious nature, experience God's power increasingly more severely. Hence, the activity of natural forces, too, is always and forever subject to God's will, for were this left at the mercy of the opposing power everything would soon be a total work of destruction, since the opposing forces only ever cause destruction, whereas God's wisdom and will applies to the preservation of all created things. Where natural forces manifest themselves destructively nevertheless, it is always the work of God's

will, but this destruction is by no means the permitted action of evil forces. In that case there are carefully considered reasons for God's intervention which, however, only ever help the advancement of spiritual beings or the development of human beings. Even destruction has its good side in many ways. It releases natural spirits from their indescribably long state of constraint .... other natural spirits may become extensively active and thereby comply with their purpose .... and it arouses sleeping spiritual beings from their tranquillity, which can do nothing but harm to them. The fact that the effects of such destruction are often regretful for humanity is also permitted by God, it refers the complete unbeliever to His existence and is a touchstone for believers, whose strength and faith shall be fortified by it. For only such extraordinary phenomena, which natural catastrophes will always be, can place a person into a state of reflection .... When all human power is not enough to stop it, and rich and poor, high and low are equally subject to such God-intended disasters, then the question may still occur to this or that person as to why humanity has to suffer such a judgment and to what extent a divine power is noticeable. Such questions could lead to a complete turnaround of his present way of thinking and guide the human being to the path of realisation. Every natural disaster is preceded by smaller events which make such thinking easier for the human being, and each previous inner state is, in a manner of speaking, a preparation for the ensuing experience. Would the human being only once realise

that all worldly power cannot achieve the slightest change in such elementary effects of nature .... that **all** those within the vicinity of a natural disaster are at the mercy of it .... he would have to turn his thoughts upwards and try to attain a spiritual explanation ....

However, the human race has already become far too arrogant .... at best it will describe such evident activity by the eternal Deity with the words: Activity of natural forces .... and will thereby try to dismiss everything which disagrees with its spiritual attitude. It deems itself knowledgeable and considers everything it does not understand merely an inherent manifestation of nature .... but very rarely a visible intervention by a divine Being. Their most acceptable explanation of all natural phenomena is the continued development affected by the sun's rays which, again, are still an unexplored source of strength in the universe and which manage to achieve all life on earth, but, in accordance with that, people are nothing else but living beings having been brought to life through these natural forces, who have their beginning and end on this earth. The fact that one Being is in control of the whole universe, Which, in accordance with Its wise plan, through Its will and omnipotence, has placed each one of the living creations, from the tiniest creature to the crown of creation, the human being .... on this earth for a specific purpose .... cannot be grasped by such uninformed people. They do not acknowledge such a Being and, therefore, will never regard the activity of natural elements as the manifestation of God's will.



Those who are further away, who are not affected by it, don't pay any particular attention to such disasters; they only ever quote similar instances and thus quickly dismiss such events. And God must use increasingly more obvious means .... He must ever more quickly let one disaster follow another and have a serious effect on people if these phenomena are to make an impression. It is regrettable as to how seldom the suffering of fellow human beings triggers true sympathy .... and how habitually a hint from above is taken in. And so the signs will have to take on ever greater proportions are they to arouse people from their tranquillity. Only when their own lives are in danger will they attach importance to something, and thus much suffering and fear will still have to be people's fate .... and things will have to manifest themselves which draw people's attention to a will which cannot be resisted .... Yet even exceptionally unusual natural phenomena will be explained and accepted with the greatest of ease, because worldly scholars are instantly willing to give a completely natural explanation for everything people cannot understand, yet such an explanation will never refer to God's reign and activity and His will. They deem themselves superior to this and therefore have a completely misguided point of view which cannot be of any benefit to the people they are instructing. Many a person will still change his attitude and, therefore, will still have to make many sacrifices until he gains completely realisation, and in order to precipitate this, the Lord will now intervene more than ever by rattling and shaking the world so that

all those living on it shall take note and pay attention to the divine voice, which informs them of God's will, of His omnipotence and wisdom, and anyone who looks upon every natural phenomenon and the turbulent reign of the elements in this sense, will recognise these as the voice of God and make an effort to always do what is right before God ....

Amen

## **The eternal Trinity ....**

***B.D. 0662 from November 11th 1938,  
taken from Book No. 14***

Always be aware of the great blessing you receive and always remain willing to carry out the task given to you, and the Lord will bless you. The message you receive today is intended to briefly explain the eternal Trinity to you. This is a problem you humans find difficult and yet it is so very easy to understand, for only the Deity is everything in one Person. It unites wisdom, love and strength of will within Itself. Whenever a Trinity is spoken of, it is always just the quintessence of love as the Father, of wisdom as the Son and of will as the Holy Spirit. For the Father's love brought everything into existence .... God's wisdom subsequently put every creation into its rightful place and allocated their tasks .... and the spirit of will

animates everything and assures its existence ....

Only in this way, that everything is united within the one eternally unchanging Deity because God is forever the quintessence of love, wisdom and might, can the most comprehensible solution to the problem be found, but people often came to the wrong conclusion and, as a result, gave the misguided explanation of three deities. The living relationship of the child with the Father makes it easy to find the right explanation that God is everything in One and that no separation whatsoever is possible .... that therefore everything also has to unite itself in God. People's limited intellectual capacity also tried to apply human limitations to the eternal Deity and imagined an entity which was intended to represent the Eternally-Divine and this in line with their own opinions and concepts.

Any personification of God is a wrong concept .... for a Being Which unites everything within Itself and Which is incomprehensible in Its abundance of light and strength cannot find expression in one person. But to enable people to form a mental concept this eternal Deity embodied Itself in a human being, so that they are indeed able to conceive an outer appearance of what became comprehensible to humanity as the Son of God. Love and wisdom, will and omnipotence were also united within this Son of God, and again nothing was separated from each other.

Through Jesus' death on the cross the power of death was

broken .... that is, it now became possible for people to conquer evil by using their will .... Will became strength at the same time, and from this time on the willing person on earth also received God's strength to turn his will into action and thereby release himself. This strength of the Holy Spirit in turn is an emanation of the all-embracing Deity again, yet it is never a person in itself .... Intending to ascertain this kind of problem intellectually would only ever lead to ever greater misconception, for you humans have devised something that is far too human and comes nowhere near the truth if you try to imagine the Deity in triple form ....

Amen

## **Abuse of power ....**

***B.D. 0665 from November 13th 1938,  
taken from Book No. 14***

Anyone who is given authority on Earth shall administer his office wisely, for My will gave him the power which he should now use according to My will. People often place great value on exercising the latter with as much pomp as possible and forget in the process that the plenitude of power by no means rests in this and that they can be relieved of it at any time. Acting in opposition to My will is always a dissent against the One Who appointed them

to this office of judge. And if whole circles unite to commit adverse deeds, the guilt of the ruling powers grows exponentially and every pressure exerted by them will result in enormous responsibility. Let Me tell you: The days of anyone who rules in the world to humanity's horror are counted, and whoever believes himself to have sole right of existence on Earth is very much mistaken. It is not you but I Who have placed people into this world so that every soul shall mature during the course of its life, and that which is your share you should also allow the other person; don't let countless people fall prey to great misery but prove yourselves with them. I Myself put right where it is needed, and My judging hand is just. You should never consider yourselves entitled to throw the whole world into turmoil .... you should by no means exert your authority with pressure but act as wise and charitable judges, so that one day your actions will be rewarded leniently and wisely, because .... judge not, so that you will not be judged.

Your actions on earth have such appalling effects in the beyond that you, if you knew the fate that awaits you, would be so horrified that you would be incapable of living. Do not forget My love and mercy which gives itself to all beings on earth .... I alone have the power on Earth and in Heaven, I will know how to punish those who so exceed My laws that fear, misery and horror are the consequences of their orders. The Last Judgment will affect everyone, regardless of where they come from, and then it will show who walked his earthly path

righteously and who refused to recognise and follow My will. For all power is given to Me in Heaven and on Earth .... The human race will be seized by terror and those who disregarded My will shall then be stricken, and I will severely punish those who so opposed Me and in heartlessness and injustice do as they please on earth. Try to reform people, then you will exercise the judicial office according to My meaning, and not that you impose inhumanly cruel punishments on them which will never be a blessing for you, neither in this nor in the other world. For your action is merely revenge and retribution but not a just exercise of your power. You incessantly only consider how you can increase your authority and don't shy away from using means which dishonour you, and thus you will never be able to find mercy before My eyes, for your activity is sinful and detestable. You certainly appear to benefit humanity's physical well-being, yet your soul will perish in profound darkness if the driving force of your conduct is not love and compassion, and thus the misery of people you oppress will fall back on you a thousand fold, for I indeed gave you the power but not the right to abuse it for acts of violence which are far beyond My will ....

Amen

# **Worthlessness and transience of earthly**

# **possessions ....**

***B.D. 0671 from November 16th 1938,  
taken from Book No. 14***

The greatest problem in this present time is the seizing of earthly possessions. It is truly growing in a frightening way and infinitely long times will pass by until the consequences of such projects are cancelled out again .... Intervening in public life is only possible to a limited extent, for countless followers of mammon might take advantage of this again by unlawfully trying to acquire what God's mercy wants to take away from the human being for the sake of his soul's salvation. For earthly goods must exist in order to test the human being's strength and to divert their will and craving from it, for only the voluntary rejection of such enticing stimuli can cause the soul's separation from matter. If therefore the arm of God reached out to all owners, taking or destroying their possessions by force, then this spiritual level would never ever be reached through a deliberate voluntary rejection, and for that reason all temptations for the soul need to remain in the world, to enable the human being to rise above himself and to detach himself from the longing for whatever the world has to offer. If, therefore, people strive for money and goods in such frightful way that they only consider this but never their soul's salvation, then a time like this also poses a terrible danger for the human race, and only the Lord can counter

this danger by making people aware of the transience of all earthly possessions through natural disasters, ailments or other events which reduce all possessions and more or less disintegrate them completely, without having been touched by any **other** hand, so that the incentive for sin will diminish and people can easily recognise the Originator of their supposed damage.

It certainly makes sense to think about it when the intervention of a higher Power is so very distinctly perceptible. That which the human being believes himself to own with absolute certainty and which he anxiously wants to protect from the world and his fellow human beings has to be shaken time and again. For this need for sole ownership is detestable before God .... Anyone who willingly shares his worldly goods with his neighbour if he owns only little .... anyone who uses his surplus to support the poor, his goods fulfil their true purpose and will be protected for the person, yes indeed, even be increased .... And a person need never fear to experience great hardship if he always makes an effort to alleviate the hardship of the poor .... For the measure you give will be the measure you receive .... Someone who always thinks of himself and his good living standard first has to be prepared, for the Lord will make His presence felt and take hold of him where he is most sensitive .... by losing his worldly goods and putting his supposedly good living standard into question, and only then will the soul have to prove itself by finding its way out of the physical hardship and doing everything on its part to live a



pleasing life before the Lord and to strive for spiritual possessions. Money and possessions certainly signify power on earth but not in eternity .... Everything will be null and void there, the souls of those who regarded power and wealth as their God will exist in a very lowly state, while those who were disinclined to worldly goods and recognised their worthlessness will be placed into an elevated position ....

Amen

## **Wolf in sheep's clothing .... Forerunner of the Lord before His return ....**

***B.D. 0685 from November 26th 1938,  
taken from Book No. 15***

The adversary has an easy time when he moves about in disguise like a wolf in sheep's clothing fascinating the people with his looks and words. He will use every opportunity to cause damage to humanity. Anyone who falls victim to the claws of the wolf will be mercilessly torn to shreds after he has gained power over the soul.

Therefore let Me tell you: you will recognise him who walks across the earth with the fiery sword of his

tongue .... No one will doubt his word as it will be divine and an emanation of God's deepest love. But do not search for him in splendour and magnificence; his name is humble .... unknown .... although he calls himself John his mortal body does not present the appearance that graces him spiritually. He walks amongst you and teaches by word and deed and will be a forerunner of the Lord before His return to earth. Thus his word will testify to the love of God wherever he is, and he will awaken in the hearts of humanity a deep longing for truth and light.

Do not believe the voices of the present time which intend to mislead you, which intend to dull your senses for the good and noble .... leave them be and only hold on to what the Lord sends to you from above; because the inclination of the adversary turns towards the world and not away from it towards the eternal Deity.

Whoever listens to John's words will hear the Lord's Words directly and his spirit will proclaim the true salvation. And whoever hears him is completely convinced by his words. He comes in the light of truth, nothing worldly will adhere to him. The country that shelters him, however, is blessed by his presence .... When he appears the hour of judgment is not far .... he will accept all suffering with patience and only hear the voice of the Lord. Remember these words when he is apprehended to seal his fate on earth .... However, you humans will never be able to prevent God's advocate from carrying out what he has taken upon himself for the sake of humanity. You will never be powerful enough to

fight against him without punishment .... Yet his eyes will rest upon you, who want to hurt him, with gentleness .... for his love and patience include all those whose hearts oppose him .... And he will win many for himself because the strength of his words and his love are great. And the world will suffer a loss .... The souls will be divided into those, who recognise him as their saviour from deepest distress and those, whose only share is the world. And their end will be the death of their body and soul ....

And thus you are given light to see the deeds of those who ask to descend, who shy away from all light from above and strive to extinguish it so that the adversary can seize the souls during darkness. Those of you who ask for light shall receive light, the Lord will not let you suffer in darkness and He will protect you from snatching wolves who sneak amongst His flock in disguise and strive to cause confusion. Read His Word and notice the first signs of the confusion .... And whoever has ears to hear shall listen: Not the world will bring you peace but only He, Whose kingdom is not of this world. And His peace will be an eternal peace and nothing in the world can destroy it and yet it will also extend across the world .... across those people who hear the Word of God from the mouth of a pure disciple of Jesus .... whose love wants to help people and who proclaims to them God's eternal love .... He will bring peace to all people of good will ....

Amen

# **Blessing of ill health and suffering ....**

***B.D. 0687 from November 27th 1938,  
taken from Book No. 15***

The state of suffering often obliges a person to take a closer look at his whole life on earth, and this is both beneficial for the soul as well as very often favourable for the body, since the human being, in recognition of his wrong thoughts and behaviour, will frequently endeavour to change his nature. This can also have a positive effect on his body in so far as that a decent way of life can considerably contribute towards maintaining a healthy body or curing a sick one.

The body often has to be afflicted by illness or infirmity, precisely in order to make the person realise that his conduct had completely contravened God's order .... For all reprimands and warnings sent to people by the Lord won't achieve what ill health can often bring about. The human being has no option but to turn away from the world and its pleasures and see earthly life in a completely different light .... He sees the body's frailty and helplessness, and his personal sense of weakness, his inability to escape this condition, will automatically direct his thoughts towards spiritual issues. He will then be far more inclined to deal with problems which are far

from a healthy person's mind, and such thoughts can induce a change if he does not oppose them, and thus the spiritual beings can start with the work on such a person's soul by influencing him ever more into asking questions, which will then be answered by the spiritual beings in the form of bright ideas, and thus he is gradually guided into a spiritual sphere which he finds agreeable and which internalises him. To come to the same realisation within the commotion of the world would have taken him a very long time, which would have passed in vain for the soul .... this way, however, a short time can suffice and advance him considerably. And thus, suffering should not make a person unhappy, instead it should equally be regarded as a demonstration of the eternal Deity's love, which the human being will soon understand if he, through suffering, has taken the right path and subsequently can move on by actively working for the salvation of his soul ....

Amen

## **Prediction of a devastating event ....**

***B.D. 0694 from December 1st 1938,  
taken from Book No. 15***

It is very beneficial for all of you to read the words of the Bible, and you will realise that the Lord in His time has announced His coming. The forthcoming divine Judgment is not the Lord's will but solely the will of humanity, which endeavours towards an almost complete separation from faith which will result in descending further into spiritual darkness. Purely to put an end to these goings-on and to save what has not yet been entirely taken in by the night, the Lord will fulfil His Word .... For His spirit foresaw the present as well as the approaching time, and in His kindness and gentleness the Lord has left no stone unturned in order to be able to prevent the divine Judgment. Everyone presently living on earth will be informed of it beforehand and able to avert the judgment from himself, insofar as that he will be protected from every danger by the Father's invisible hand, if only he trustingly turns to Him and thus acknowledges His power and love .... The many events preceding this in order to wake people up will also show you that the time is close at hand.

This time will not pass any person by without a trace, and there will be many signs which are intended to arouse people from their spiritual lethargy and draw their attention to the visible intervention of an eternal Deity. And the adversary will have his hand in everything and influence people everywhere to listen only to the thoughts and words of the world and to reject everything spiritual, for in their dominance and arrogance people are so convinced of their own strength and power that, by

necessity, the evidence of their own weakness and inadequacy has to be demonstrated to them through misfortunes which human hands are unable to prevent. At first they will certainly accept such strokes of fate without experiencing any particular effect to their thinking .... Yet the events will happen increasingly more often and even make arrogant people inwardly tremble as they realise their vulnerability. And one such event is being prepared by the Lord ....

He will intervene in people's arbitrary activity of injustice and perceptibly express His will to them .... This time will numb all emotional souls, for the scale of the event will be too powerful as to be considered coincidental. And in case of the event repeating itself many people will wake up from their sleep and prefer the dawning day to the darkness of spirit .... and to preach the Word of God will be the rewarding task of God's servants on earth, for nothing in the world happens without consideration .... Nothing is hidden from the Creator's knowledge, and thus the Lord's visible intervention will not be without purpose and meaning for many people, but His intervention will be recognised as the helpful hand of the Heavenly Father which everyone should be willing to grasp. For the time is near of which it is written in Word and Scripture ....

Amen

## **Earth's state of peace**

# **depends on spiritual attitude ....**

***B.D. 0703 from December 9th 1938,  
taken from Book No. 15***

The peace which one day shall make the people on earth very happy is still far out of sight. Too many demons are still interfering in world events and find too much cover behind people's spiritual attitude; consequently, a turning point in earthly life will only become apparent when humanity's mentality turns more towards spiritual experience .... The promises of the Lord will therefore only apply on earth when the earthly children's faith in Him comes alive in their hearts. Everything of a spiritual nature does not, in a manner of speaking, walk with the world but next to the world .... Only one or the other can dominate a person entirely, and the world will lose to the same extent as faith wins. When the spirit tilts the balance in its favour then peace will bring joy to the world and all earthly hardship will come to an end. Yet humanity's yearning is still far removed from this. Worldly desire keeps a firm hold on them, sacrifices will always only be made for this, and almost all interests merely apply to temporal joys. The broad, passable path, which leads to the soul's downfall and into disaster, is preferred to the narrow path, which is indeed full of thorns but it will lead to the goal with certainty .... to eternal life in all



splendour and glory. And as long as people's intentions and thoughts don't change, as long as their thinking does not become deeper and more internalised, world events cannot change either, because they shape them themselves through their will. For as long as their love purely concerns their bodily satisfaction, they will draw their strength for their endeavour from the materialistic spirit world, and this can only result in an increase of all secular cravings and never a decrease of the same. On the other hand, the strength for good will grow tremendously if people do not apply their love to themselves but to their fellow human beings and therefore to the all-retaining Creator again .... Any support which now flows to people is beneficial spiritual strength, which will always result in the desire for the spirit and an assured spiritualisation of human thinking. Hence people themselves will reshape world events and are therefore the bearers of the spirit of peace if they undermine their inclination towards the world and seek fulfilment in spiritual experience and perfection. Then a peaceful state will bring joy to the world .... there will neither be discord nor envy among the nations .... No-one will try to curtail the other's wealth but always share with him, and a life of love among each other will help people to attain highest spiritual maturity. For the world is part of the dark power .... Anyone who desires it also hands himself over to this power, yet he who detests it will be seized by the blessed spiritual world and, continually receiving strength, can entrust himself to it. And so a state of peace will make those earthly children

exceedingly happy who have utterly discarded their longing for the world and completely turned towards the spirit. Yet only the one who has recognised this can participate in the co-operation of bringing eternal peace to earth.

Amen

# **Fulfilment of the Scripture .... Eruptions .... Ocean and mainland ....**

***B.D. 0704 from December 9th 1938,  
taken from Book No. 15***

Those who see their Father in Me are well protected in My care. And so, My child, hear the Words of the Gospel .... Blessed are those who love Me and hear My Words .... for I Am the way, the truth and the life. And if you are being nourished by My Word, you will have gained all possessions of the eternal life. For this reason it is of utmost importance that you listen to everything I proclaim to you, for there are many who dare to drown out My Word. However, in view of the spiritual situation it is necessary to teach My Word time and time again, because you have no idea how poor you are if I don't impart spiritual wealth upon you. You would have to go

extremely hungry and the soul's adversity would be indescribable. But refreshed by My Word you are strong enough to resist all hostility. And so I want to inform you that the first signs of My will are beginning to appear and that people are accepting My Word in all places. No event is in the slightest coincidental; instead, it is entirely arranged by My will and My omnipotence .... And the core of Earth is incessantly active within itself and will produce eruptions of huge proportions, so that you will be in utmost danger of losing your life if you don't keep Me in mind .... The more humbly you humans accept what I unleash upon you, the more mercy I will show you .... I only want your love, and if you offer it to Me, you will be saved for time and eternity. Thus wait a little while longer and pay attention to My Words that the Scripture will fulfil itself to the very last letter, for what the Lord proclaims is truly irrevocable .... Pay attention to the happenings in the oceans and how the mainland fares .... Take notice of the sun and all elements of nature .... Keep the Creator in mind, and become humble when you look at yourselves and how infinitely tiny you are in this work of Creation .... And then consider the Creator's greater than great love for His living creations and that He, in His love, uses all means which contribute towards regaining your souls. Once you have pondered this in your heart, look up to Him and appeal for His mercy .... and you shall be saved from all danger of body and soul. And this happens through My Word which points out the time of terror to you and at the same time assures you that I will always remember My Own. And so let go of

all sorrow and faithfully hand yourselves over to the Father in Heaven, He alone holds your life in His hand, He will let you keep it if you ask Him for it.

Amen

## **Passing through each form is necessary .... (Microcosm?)**

***B.D. 0716 from December 19th 1938,  
taken from Book No. 15***

Your friends from the other side lovingly turn towards you to fulfil your desire, and thus receive:

The world as such has only one purpose, namely, to lead the many living beings, who are carriers of spiritual substances, towards higher development, which can only take place in an environment where all manner of conflicts occur, of which the world offers an adequate amount. Be it on earth or on the many other celestial bodies, living beings everywhere have to face unforeseeable difficulties and need all their strength to overcome them. However, such strength is present in every living being, since every living being receives strength to exist in the first place. Further development

therefore always depends on how this strength within the living being is utilised. That means, the sooner any activity incumbent upon the living being is carried out, the faster the spiritual intelligence is released from its surrounding form and the next stage of development can begin.

Now it is possible to ask, which form guarantees the fastest development for living beings .... And the answer to this question can only be that it is vital to pass through every form .... and that a limit can only be set where the unification of innumerable small particles of soul result in one whole, when all substances of soul are present to give life to the final embodiment .... the form of the human being. The most subtle movement in the human being, the most gentle emotion is only due to the finely tuned soul, which in turn is composed of even more subtle particles of soul. These are a most important requirement in the construction of the whole as they, in turn, guarantee the completed soul the most delicate emotions and perceptions for the smallest miracles of creation by divine love. If these tiniest of components did not exist the human being would not understand current and future miracles of creation .... he simply would not be able to see something that is not already alive within himself .... he must have everything that exists in creation as the smallest components within himself .... that is, every substance must be a part of his soul, only then can he also observe what is outside of himself.

This instruction in turn raises the question as to what kind

of components the small living beings consist of, and this is easy to explain: they all carry substances of yet smaller living beings within themselves but accordingly can only instinctively feel what has already progressed further in evolution, yet at the same time they control what already exists in these living beings as substance. Knowledge of this important information in the doctrine of creation is of greatest advantage for the human being because from this he will learn to understand the complex composition of human nature .... On the basis of this fact he can judge that the human being is indeed the crest of divine creation, so to speak .... that he, i.e. his soul, is so delicately constructed within himself, that it is impossible for such a work of art to have been produced by a wise Creator merely for the duration of earthly life, because everything he sees in nature, be it in the region of mineral, plant or animal life, exists in atoms within himself. The human being incorporates the whole work of creation in miniature within himself.

Therefore, he also has to overcome within himself the opposition that approaches him from outside .... from the world .... which means that countless external dangers motivate the human being into strongest resistance .... while likewise the spiritual atmosphere is stimulated by the continuous resistance and permanent struggle of the different substances of soul and only can become stronger and the soul open to higher truths of light in this way. Just as every living being, even the smallest, has to perform a specific task so has the human being, as the

carrier of all these substances. And this task consists first and foremost of spiritualising all substances of soul that are still in harmful opposition to their real task, who would still prefer to perform the earthly task which is their nature due to their past earthly duty in an earlier form. For this reason the human being has to fight against many faults, mistakes and bad habits since the character of the substances bound in the soul repeatedly comes through and would like to seduce the flesh, the earthly cover, into compliance, which should be strongly resisted during earthly life. And only in this way can it be understood that the human being has an extraordinary responsibility during earthly life; that there must be a continuous struggle to triumph at the end of the day truly spiritualised as victor against all dangers and to have resisted all temptation. After all, how often indeed is the spirit willing but the flesh weak ....

Amen

**Willingness to transcribe ....  
Receiving the living  
Word ... Authenticity ...**

***B.D. 0718 from December 22nd 1938,  
taken from Book No. 15***

Infinite wisdoms are given by the Lord to those who are faithful to him. It often takes years before a child that is willing to transcribe offers its services to the Heavenly Father again and this also explains why such scripts remained incomplete for so long and that only the willing devotion of a new scribe made the imparting of new spiritual knowledge possible. The will was good, and thus ensued a work which was pleasing to the Lord, for it expresses His spirit and His love just as clearly, even though the wording has different characteristics. Anyone who understands the right meaning also recognises the Lord and attaches no importance to the style of writing as such, yet it is also advisable to exercise the same care in the assessment of spiritual issues .... It always has to be remembered that many a person indeed believes himself to be called and yet does not possess the necessary qualifications for such an important task .... to only devotedly and truthfully want to fulfil the Lord's will. Anyone who makes every effort to strive only for that will also be welcomed by the Lord as a servant. Receiving the living Word is a responsibility in itself for the servant too. He must constantly check himself as to whether his will is totally subject to divine will .... he must accept the spiritual knowledge without resistance, make no personal judgment whatsoever while he is receiving it, and keep everything away from his heart which might weaken the spiritual power .... he must keep his heart pure and make himself worthy of a personal relationship with the Lord .... only then will he directly receive the Lord's love in the form of His Word, and only then will he be able to be



completely convinced of the truth of what he had received and transcribed.

The sentence structure of whatever the Lord gave to humanity was, at all times, so worded that it combined profound meaning with intelligibility .... so that everyone looking for truth and being lovingly active could recognise it .... Anyone who has different motives for wanting to investigate the authenticity of God's Word and His revelations will hardly be able to find clarification as to what extent the scripts are of divine origin. For whoever endeavours to live in His spirit, whoever truly wants to be of service to Him and humanity will never again need to fear the spirit of lies, for his aim and striving solely applies to the Lord, and therefore the Lord will also protect their work and will not allow it to become detrimental to humankind. Hence, anyone who strives to remain subject to the Lord's will has also the best guarantee of remaining in truth, and therefore only the spirit which rests within the Word will be crucial and not the wording by itself .... Anyone who therefore lives in love for the Lord will also recognise the Lord if He reveals Himself through a human mouth or in writing. Only ever pay attention to what your heart reveals to you .... whether the received Word kindles or enlivens your heart or whether it leaves you dull and indifferent and makes no impression on you. Your heart will always tell you what is lie and what is truth .... if you look for and desire truth. And don't worry that the Father will let you fall prey to error, He is, after all, Truth Himself and always

wants to give to people and therefore would not allow the God-loving earnest seeker to go astray ....

Amen

## **Serious admonition .... (Discord and unkindness ....)**

***B.D. 0720 from December 24th 1938,  
taken from Book No. 15***

Where discord dwells inside a heart I Am unable to enter, for the master of the house is not prepared for My arrival. And thus I advise you to purify your heart first and banish all feelings of unkindness from it, for this contains the seed of evil. You must make a serious effort to comply with My admonitions if you want to be granted the grace to receive Me and My Word. You will receive so many countless hints which you should heed and live up to and your heart will ever more easily surmount that which, at the moment, still seems insurmountable to you. The feeling of longing for Me is always a sign of My loving activity in you .... If it is to be satisfied too then you must banish everything from your heart which has nothing to do with love .... You must only nourish the sacred and pure feeling of love within you and abhor every impure feeling, for it will merely increase your distance from

Me ....

Everyone lives his own life and is absorbed in his own point of view, and thus everyone's nature has to be considered and taken into account, consequently everyone has to endure his fellow man with tireless patience and try to adapt to his nature; and if he cannot succeed in doing so he must appeal to Me for My grace and help and he will receive the strength to rise above himself, he will emerge victoriously from all minor tribulations of life providing the love within him always keeps the upper hand. For I especially put you into this sphere of activity so that you would mature and control the weaknesses and faults residing in you. How much must you practice becoming patient if you want to become worthy of My patience .... And how much love you must give to your fellow men if you always want My love to be present with you .... And therefore you should always be lovingly united amongst yourselves, one should take loving care of the other, and don't erect barriers between each other, for all these little temptations are merely the means to an end .... How can you become perfect if you don't learn to overcome yourselves .... Remain in love if you want to remain in Me; know yourselves, then you will also know Me and make yourselves worthy of My blessing ....

Amen

# **Only love recognises the Deity .... Seekers of God ....**

***B.D. 0721 from December 25th 1938,  
taken from Book No. 15***

Only in love will you be able to recognise the Deity, and a tremendous urge for truth will arise in you if you are lovingly active. God will reveal Himself as Love Itself to people. Consequently, anyone who lives in the light of truth must be embraced by love and fit in with everything that is wanted by God's love. Hence someone who fulfils the Lord's will and strives for ever increasing perfection will, in a manner of speaking, base his every action on God's love and thereby, having emerged from God, unite himself again with the elementary Power of everything in existence, with divine love .... All subsequent activity must therefore reinforce his inner strength of love. Henceforth the human being will inevitably draw all spiritual strength to himself which, in turn, will increase his will to love and stimulate him to put it into action. For all strength of heaven and earth originating from the love for God as the Love Itself will unite.

Therefore, all God-seeking beings on earth will first internalise themselves such that they, through their acceptance of God's Word, which is the outpouring of divine love, become capable of knowing God. And from

this realisation, love will emerge and continue to grow, and since God is Love Itself, the search of an earthly being will truly not remain unsuccessful, since the longing for God alone is already love, the human being is just not conscious of it, because the Lord in His love takes hold of every being looking for Him. If you want to understand this you should look around in nature where a perpetual coming into being testifies to the tireless creative will .... to God's constantly vibrant activity of love .... Everything that comes into being shall live in order to reach God .... and even if its path is an infinitely long and arduous one, the being will nevertheless have the final opportunity of living in the flesh as a human being, and this shall result in his perfection providing his free will does not oppose divine will. Thus, God's love will understandably take hold of the human being where just the slightest will to advance becomes apparent, and the yearning of anyone wishing to recognise God in his heart will truly not remain in vain. And all spiritual forces will come together in order to intensify the hitherto isolated strength through the influx of spiritual strength from the beyond, and thus a truly God-seeking person will never be prompted by the feeling of his own weakness to abandon his plan, but his obvious constantly renewed willpower will let him pursue the path of realisation and finally lead him to the goal ....

Amen

# **Grasping and discarding thoughts according to God's will .... Fear of death ....**

***B.D. 0722 from December 25th 1938, taken from Book No. 15***

All thoughts flowing to you are grasped by your will. The true, God-devoted will always eliminates that which is not intended to be written down. Therefore, you will only receive such proclamations which utterly comply with God's will, yet partly only intended for you and partly given as a pure doctrine to humanity. The more diligently and devotedly you carry out your work, which is intended to be a blessing for the human race, the more worthy will you become of the grace to receive God's Word. For every happening has a wise meaning with God .... He is incessantly at work to open those earthly children's eyes who are still blind, for the Lord's love for His living creations is infinite. Anyone who entrusts himself to this love is constantly protected by Him and carefully looked after. Life offers the earthly children most diverse changes, but they only contribute towards not forgetting their Creator. They would like to spend their days on earth without worry and not needing to fear an end for

their body .... And thus they only ever strive for material goods and gladly push any thoughts of death far into the background. Even so, the former is detrimental for the soul; death, however, becomes a thought of fear or unease as they grow older ....

And this is not in line with divine order. Anyone who bears his soul in mind on earth will not be frightened by death, for he will only look at it as a liberation of his soul and an entry into everlasting peace. The Creator is simply and solely concerned with making the earthly child understand that the earthly activity is only the smallest part of preserving the divine creation and that the work of improving the soul is a person's most important task on earth. Everything which helps to maintain the body and a good living standard will sooner or later fall prey to transience, yet what a person does for the salvation of his soul is everlasting, just as the soul itself is everlasting. The soul can never cease to exist; however, it is of paramount significance in which condition, that is, in which state of light, it will enter the beyond, because the respective state of light is the decisive factor as to whether the soul will suffer or enjoy heavenly bliss. It is incredibly painful for the soul to desire the light and having to do without it due to its own fault. And then again, it will make the soul extremely happy if it is allowed to enter the regions of light and thereby take part in the heavenly Father's nearness ....

Amen

# **Loving Fatherly Words ....**

***B.D. 0723 from December 26th 1938,  
taken from Book No. 15***

The fullness of My grace will be granted to you so that you can fulfil your task on earth, providing you are fully committed to coming close to Me and to keeping My commandments. You do not realise that I only await your return into the Father's house in order to accept you with much love and that I want to help you where your strength is failing .... You have in Me the most faithful friend, the most loving Father and most watchful Protector for your life on earth. And you can hand yourselves over to My protection without qualms if only you feel that you are your Father's children and grant Me your heart for time and eternity. During the time of My return to earth you will all receive an abundance of blessings, for I Am so close to all those who desire Me, that they feel My presence .... Oh, you should all make yourselves worthy of My presence .... do not let Me court your heart and love in vain, but open your hearts instead in order to receive Me .... Allow Me to enter when I want to take abode in your hearts. And from that moment on your way of life will be blessed, for where I dwell grief and worries are banished, because I protect My Own who have recognised Me. Every right thought, every will



inclined towards Me results in an abundance of My grace. I want to strengthen your faith and increase your willingness to love and open your spiritual senses for everything that comes from above .... Because I love you, My children, I want to save your soul for eternity .... One day I would like to make all beatitudes accessible to you and therefore want to guide you into true realisation.

Amen

**"I Am the beginning of all things ...."**

***B.D. 0750 from January 21st 1939,  
taken from Book No. 15***

I Am the beginning of all things .... Take this to heart when you are moved by the slightest doubt about the creation of everything you see around and above yourselves. If My power is thus sufficient to call every life form into being, what kind of strength would then be necessary to oppose this creative will? An equally destructive will perhaps? .... In that case a second Deity would have to be at work next to Me, whose expression of strength would run contrary to My own activity. Anyone who imagines the Deity as an imperfect Being can truly place many such gods next to this One, yet he will not have the right kind of concept

about the one true Deity, Which has created everything and controls all. Anyone who wants to recognise Me must believe .... and subordinate himself as a creation to the Creator .... And he will become enlightened, and in this light he will see Me as the Ruler of the universe .... He will realise that no opposing force is able to counteract Me by working destructively where I Am creating.

Only the physical transformation of the earth's surface has been left to the human being's free will, so that people's creative urge, which I likewise have placed into their hearts, can occupy itself. Thus they can more or less act at their own discretion but they nevertheless will always have to recognise their own inadequacy and always be dependent on the omnipotence of the Creator and the activity of natural forces and cannot oppose them arbitrarily. Thus nothing is more understandable than wanting to ascertain the almighty Creator and yet nothing is more impossible .... Human intellect is not sufficient by far to fathom Me in My full elementary power .... and it will be even less possible to categorise Me, that is, to put My Being and Becoming into any kind of form which seems acceptable to the human mind. This is a hopeless undertaking which could never produce a satisfactory result, for I was, I Am .... and I forever will be an inscrutable Spirit Who harbours within Himself everything that can be found in the entire universe .... to Whom creation is subordinate because it originated from Him .... and Who is the beginning and the end of all things .... the Spirit of Love from eternity to eternity ....

Amen

# **3 years test of faith .... Christianity ....**

***B.D. 0754 from January 24th 1939,  
taken from Book No. 16***

Every task involves a certain commitment and the earthly child should always vigorously strive to meet this and not allow mediocrity to creep in since a work such as this demands great dedication and is too vast to be likened to daily routine work. And thus you are advised to give all your will and devotion to this work that it should not suffer any loss on account of trivialities. And now begin:

It will take three complete years for Christianity as a whole to pass its test of faith, to either become strong within itself or to completely abandon its faith in Jesus Christ as Saviour of the world .... And during these three years a clear separation will be distinctly noticeable because the world and its followers endeavour to achieve a total separation from faith, whilst the others unite ever more firmly and devote themselves ever more deeply to their Saviour and Redeemer. The latter flock will be much smaller indeed and for this reason great hardship must still afflict the world to save what is not yet completely

bound by Satan. The large community of those who deny the Lord are approaching a dreadful time. The Lord is without mercy when His Words and advice are no longer heeded and are ridiculed and laughed at. It is of vital importance to realise that time after time the Lord seeks to approach the human being with love and kindness and that He meets ever more hardened hearts .... that His intention always concerns the return of His fallen children and is not understood, thus leaving only one way to soften their hearts, and all clemency and mercy would be in vain, as these are ignored. Human beings can only return to their Creator by way of much grief and distress, even then it has to come from the heart because the Lord takes no notice of empty prayers, and after that there will be another separation which can yet deceive the ignorant in the final hour. A heartfelt sigh towards the Father of infinity suffices to deliver a child from gravest peril .... But those who are not praying in spirit and in truth will call in vain as their call cannot be heard; and thus there will not be many who acknowledge their relationship with the Father in the last hour, but for the few it will truly be a blessing ....

Amen

## **Veneration of the virgin Mary .... The birth of**

# Christ ....

## ***B.D. 0756 from January 25th 1939, taken from Book No. 16***

Jesus' life on earth required a normal birth. The Deity wanted to incarnate Himself in the body of a human being on earth, consequently this body had to have a natural origin .... it had to come forth from a woman's womb. However, in Jesus' time everything extraordinary was quickly explained .... as being in cohorts with the devil .... A natural explanation was certainly searched for yet if it couldn't be found by simple means this very conclusion sufficed and thus gave countless people the reputation of being God-deserters. Judging by human standards Jesus' birth was likewise an act which lacked all preconditions and, for this reason, the same explanation was intended to be applied to a virgin which everyone knew to be exceptionally devout.

The extraordinary occurrences at the birth certainly struck many as strange, yet most attached little importance to them. And so only a small circle received the news about an extremely unusual kind of birth .... about the awakening of a life which lacked all natural prerequisites and was therefore an event caused by God's will and omnipotence. This was subsequently exploited in a way that people used the figure of the mother Mary to create a being which receives their veneration, devotion

and love to such an extent that it detracts the human being from his most important task on earth ... to establish contact with the Lord and Saviour Himself .... This applies to the exceptional demands for intercession as well as the illogical devotion which lacks all justification, for the mother of Jesus was chosen as a result of her piety .... but by no means aware of the immense grace which was bestowed upon her .... she was God's chosen servant and therefore only God alone deserves the honour, for all beings are His work ....

Amen

## **Fatherly Words ... My name ....**

***B.D. 0763 from January 28th 1939,  
taken from Book No. 16***

All willing children carry Me in their hearts and search for My spirit because their souls had recognised Me. And you, My child, will hear My voice whenever you sacrifice your time to Me, and My work will not be without success for you. The hours during which you fear that you lack the necessary strength to do My work will diminish. Very soon you are given a mission which you can easily carry out with My help. Your faith, love and will become great

because I Myself will be your reward .... and eagerly you will strive for this.

My child, everything that shall be revealed to humanity through you is hidden in your name:

**Buße -- B - They shall atone**  
**Erkennen -- E - acknowledge**  
their origin  
**Rastlos -- R - work on their soul**  
**ceaselessly**  
**Tätig -- T - be active** with love.  
**Horchen -- H - listen** to the voice in their heart  
**Allen -- A - deny all**  
worldly pleasures

**Demütig -- D- humbly** submit themselves to the Father in heaven  
**Um -- U - constantly pray for** grace  
**Dienen -- D - serve** the Creator of heaven and earth  
**Dienen -- D - serve** their neighbour with love  
**Ehre -- E - and give Me, the**  
Father in heaven, **honour** for all eternity

Understand that those who seek the world cannot find Me but those who look for Me I will meet and reveal Myself to .... Whoever surrenders to Me shall possess Me, and whoever prays for My grace is in My grace, because to truly understand My Word is My love's gift of grace .... So prepare yourself to receive My gift as a sign of My love. Take care of your soul, My child, acknowledge My love and make an effort to feel the purest love for Me in your heart because all impurity has to be removed from the heart in which I shall live, since I only find pleasure in pure love, in love which does not demand and only gives itself .... which is willing to do everything in order to serve .... Pure love is as precious as a jewel, it brightens its environment with its light, it brings happiness and just

wants to give at all times .... When this love has taken possession of your heart you will accept Me in yourself and keep My image in your heart, and this will be a supreme blessing for you even while you are still living on earth. Whatever is destined for you while My love takes care of you has yet to be hidden from you because you achieve the degree of maturity only by constantly striving for My love. It is to your advantage to call upon Me and My presence from the bottom of your heart .... when you commit yourself to your Saviour in earnest prayer .... I will appear .... unexpectedly .... and move into the abode that your love prepares for Me and bring blissful happiness to those who believe in Me and love Me .... I will not let My children, who give themselves to Me, live in want and will reveal Myself to them at the right time ....

Amen

## **Last Supper ....**

***B.D. 0764 from January 29th 1939,  
taken from Book No. 16***

The motto of your life should be 'To serve the Lord in all things will be my constant endeavour ....' and His blessing will be with you wherever you go. Now hear what is intended for you from the Father: The most holy



sacrament of the altar was given by God, but its meaning will have to be understood wisely. You are now surrounded by a protective shield of spiritual friends who will keep everything that is wrong and misguided at bay, so that people may receive clarification through you about a question which has become a frequent matter of dispute. Over a period of time people's correct thinking had been infiltrated by an entirely wrong point of view which caused further conflicts and divided opinions. Without first having asked for consent from the divine Lord and Saviour a directive was issued which is contradicts the divine teaching.

The living portrayal of the Holy Communion is always the acceptance of God's Word in one's heart .... Whoso eats My flesh .... i.e. who receives My Word with a hungry heart .... and drinks My blood .... i.e. who receives the truth with My Word and lives by My Word entirely truthfully .... he receives Me. And My Words 'This is My flesh .... this is My blood ....' should be understood in this sense: Just as the human being needs bread for the well-being of his body, so the pure Word of God is needed for the preservation of eternal life .... And just as wine will give strength to the weak, so shall the truth from God strengthen the soul, providing it accepts it. And when it is said that the bread and wine are transformed into My flesh and blood then the correct understanding of this should be that My Word will bring Me Myself close to the person at the same time, if it is complied with .... i.e. if it is eaten and drunk, and that, therefore, the human being

accepts Me Myself with My Word, because My Word teaches love, and I Myself Am love ....

He who loves Me will sincerely accept Me in his heart and thus will be filled at My table by My bread and My wine .... by the Word of truth and life. The meaning was in fact understood correctly. However, it was decided to ceremonially intensify the impression of My Words but then greater significance was given to the ceremony, so anyone not complying with it was declared to have lost all blessing. And thus the formality was observed first, but the deeper meaning became lost, Communion increasingly became a formality, divine truth could no longer enter into people's hearts. In contrast, the ceremony has been preserved to this day, and the human being believes to have fulfilled his obligation sufficiently by approaching the Lord's altar with faith ....

But how can I take abode in a human being who has not changed himself to love first, who will not comply with My Word and keep My commandments? Anyone who wants to receive Me physically and spiritually and carry Me in his heart has to eat My bread and drink My wine .... he has to desire the bread of life as nourishment, which comes from heaven, and he has to drink the wine, the living truth, which flows to him who is thirsty. Only then will he eat My flesh and drink My blood and he will live eternally, because then he is in Me and I Am in him ....

Only in this and no other way should the Communion be understood which I inaugurated with the said Words, but

which you humans have interpreted at your own discretion without recognising the deeper meaning of My Words. The more eagerly you try to observe only the ceremony and the more often you merely externally receive My bread and My wine, the less I will be present Myself, and thus you will not receive Me Myself but you will only be close to Me in your imagination. Because I Am only present where profound love for Me expresses itself by fulfilling My commandments and living in accordance with My Word .... For he eats My flesh and drinks My blood who complies with My will and serves Me .... who bears witness to Me before the word, he will truly be My disciple with whom I will take communion and whom I will fill, to whom I will give his share .... he will be nourished by Me and receive the bread from heaven in all eternity ....

Amen

## **Love .... Hate ....**

***B.D. 0765 from January 31th 1939,  
taken from Book No. 16***

Behold, My child, I come to meet with open arms those of you who want to accept My gifts. Your heart's yearning will convey My love to you, My love for you demonstrates itself in your desire for Me, and this will also be your state

in the beyond, you will constantly long for Me, and My love will grant you fulfilment without end. Behold, I placed love into your heart so that one day you should delight in beatitude when your love will be fulfilled. But I also placed the opposite impulse into you because you can only attain a state of beatitude by overcoming this impulse, and thus your endeavour on earth should especially apply to the fight against hate, the feeling of intense animosity, for hate poisons your soul in a very destructive manner .... hate destroys everything that is created by love ....

A person with a feeling of hate in his heart will never ever be able to achieve perfection, for hate is part of evil after all .... Hate is so disastrous and so unspeakably depressing for the soul .... it is the worst evil .... it is the enemy of every good attitude .... it is a vice which quells everything good and noble .... it is the origin of sin .... A heart having succumbed to hatred is incapable of any noble feeling .... Where hatred rules no virtue can be exercised. Humility, gentleness, forgiveness and mercy .... these are completely alien concepts to a heart controlled by hate; for the person has no knowledge of love at all, and this is necessary, after all, if he wants to live in a virtuous, good and God-pleasing way.

The appalling effects of hate can be recognised by the person in the beyond .... how it has distorted the soul of someone who was under the influence of hate in his earthly life. If only people would consider that the opposing power gains complete control over a hating

earthly child so that it will find it ever more difficult to withdraw from this power and its influence, that it will also find it ever more difficult to find its way back to love again, and that such a person cannot be rescued by any other side unless he genuinely strives to liberate himself from the power of evil. As long as he does not withdraw from this influence with the firm intention to apply love it will be extremely difficult to become free. It is certainly understandable that the human being is often virtually pushed into a feeling of hate when he looks at and reviews other people's heartlessness and observes their injustice and apparently successful conduct, but he always has to remember that there is a God in heaven Who will repay every iniquity in due course .... He also has to counter this with the fact that Jesus Christ even lovingly forgave those who were to blame for His death, and that a feeling of revenge at no time got the upper hand in Him, but full of love, He only ever responded to the earthly children's conduct with understanding and compassion. Love should, after all, defeat hate, and therefore the children on earth likewise have to make an effort to stifle the feeling of hate when it begins to arise in the human being .... and only ever repay it with love even if the temptation to feel most bitter hatred against the oppressors of people is too strong. Most people err since they deem themselves extremely superior and believe that they have to express their power over their subordinates in a very blatant way, yet the individual should not respond with hate, instead he should resolve to educate the other person with love.

He should first consider his own soul which should be protected from the danger of hate, its struggle is at times so dreadfully difficult, yet overcoming this most detrimental attribute for the soul will lead to perfection, for then love will have triumphed over the opponent .... Hate will have been rendered harmless and destroyed by the strength of love, and the soul will be grateful for such effort since it will have been released from bitter anguish ....

Amen

## **Correct thinking ... God's guidance ... Stars ...**

***B.D. 0772 from February 10th 1939,  
taken from Book No. 16***

Someone who always practises love will soon reach that degree of perfection which enables him to always recognise what is right and to remain entirely within My will. Behold, my child, your every thought seeks what is right and effectively always remains in contact with the benevolent spiritual world, for this takes hold of everything that desires Me. For this reason, straying onto wrong paths and misunderstanding Me need not be feared. The best guarantee is always the heart's longing

for Me, I protect every child which directs its thoughts in willing love towards Me. I sharpen your mind, I guide your soul, I let the voice of your heart speak to you and if you pay heed to it you will do what is right at all times. And thus you merge your mental knowledge with the spirit of truth, for you recognise all proclamations by the fact that they will touch your heart benevolently. You cannot receive anything wrong once the will is exclusively focussed on the pure truth. I take you by your hand, and you can confidently entrust yourself to My guidance, I recognise your will .... and a heart which longs for Me will soon distinguish Me clearly .... And it is My spirit which seeks contact with Me, it is part of Me and therefore the spirit of truth. Let the infinite number of tiny stars in the sky testify to My power and glory .... And then ask yourself whether the Creator of such magnificence, Who maintains the orbit of all celestial bodies, would be not be able to guide a human child according to His will? .... And thus leave yourself confidently to My guidance and then watch which paths I let the children who love Me travel ....

Amen

# **Jakob Böhme lecture ....**

## **Answer?**

## ***B.D. 0773 from February 12th 1939, taken from Book No. 16***

Let your spirit arise and listen to the Words from above: It is incredibly foolish not to utilise the blessings of the Lord's gifts and thus to seek in vain and to fumble about in the dark during this time on earth. After all, it is so extremely important to establish really heartfelt contact with the Lord and Saviour, but this cannot happen if people do not become tangibly and perceptively aware of the Lord's proximity. It is now intended to make people understand that they should not seek the Lord in the distance, that they should not look for him so far away from their heart; instead, He will move increasingly closer to them the more tirelessly and sincerely they strive towards moving closer to Him. Every time has its symptoms .... so at the present time it is noteworthy that countless opportunities present themselves to people through which light can be brought to the darkened minds, and yet people's train of thoughts is an entirely internal one .... that is, they certainly desire what is right but don't seize it when it is offered to them, because it seems too easy to them and the human being is unable to believe that the Lord turns to His children at all times and with the same love. He who has ears to hear, let him hear .... But don't desperately close yourselves in order to perceive sounds in the distance when a delightful sound arises close to you, when the cornucopia of divine love would like to shower you with an abundance of grace ....



Grasp with your heart what you have already intellectually ascertained and do not worry that you might distance yourselves from the true knowledge. That which has so far remained hidden from you, which you do not experience first-hand as yet, will gain you life .... you will only be guided into the real truth if you surrender your opposition. For the Lord's gift shall universally be understood and accepted so that you all will be enlightened and your activity will also be richly blessed. And the more sincerely you unite with the Lord the more alive you become .... only then will the spirit begin to flourish and look for new nourishment, and this will be offered to you in abundance, for it is the Lord's will that His children shall long for Him in order to be able to lovingly take care of them. The Lord will advise you to immerse yourselves in His light and His grace .... you shall be allowed to draw from the eternal font .... you shall partake of the divine grace and in the midst of the world stand on the mount of realisation and feel comfortable in the divine Fatherly generosity. Whatever you desire, you will possess in abundance, spiritual realisation and inner experience .... nevertheless, that which today still slumbers in you lifelessly, must come alive .... The divine spirit wants to be liberated, yet you keep it gagged as long as you merely study rather than giving yourselves gladly and full of love to the Father in heaven as His Own. Listen to His voice which coaxes you and lovingly makes you understand how you can become His Own, and your struggle on earth will not be in vain ....

Amen

# Canonisation ....

***B.D. 0783 from February 21st 1939,  
taken from Book No. 16***

Being so securely protected you will truly not run the risk to offend against divine will, because countless spiritual beings are making an effort to safeguard the success of this work and your spiritual well-being and thus also guarantee their protection, so that you may receive what is spiritually offered to you, unimpeded and without hesitation. Many a question shall still be answered for humanity through you, many a problem shall be resolved and many a doubt removed, and thus your devotion and diligent work will constantly be required. The more willingly and joyfully you do this work, the easier it will be for the helpers in the beyond to make themselves understood, and thus a message is intended for you today which concerns a very controversial subject:

Canonisation is arousing the indignation of many a person, since it is, from their point of view, an interference with divine law and divine judgment. But those who felt entitled and destined to establish a community of Saints have in fact assumed to possess a competence of judgment which undoubtedly far

surpasses human abilities. Because they will never be knowledgeable enough .... to conduct such canonisation in complete lawfulness. What do people know of another person's inner life? .... Only God can look into a person's heart, only He alone is able to measure the earthly child's degree of love .... Only He can dispense in accordance with merit and knows to judge the innermost nature, the maturity of soul ....

Hence people established an unlawful spiritual community which as such became the centre of admiration and prayers, which truly cannot have been intended by the Heavenly Father, because it is more likely to result in the earthly child's separation from the Father than in a heartfelt relationship with Him. The human being no longer approaches the Heavenly Father Himself in prayer but attempts to reach his goal through intercession, and this will always hamper the right relationship with the Father. The spiritual beings who take care of you are certainly always chosen by God for this office, they also stand by you with all their spiritual strength, they guard and protect you and are constantly concerned for your spiritual advancement; however, it depends on God's will as to who is chosen for your protection, because you humans would not have the right knowledge to decide whom to turn to in order to mature spiritually and to obtain the greatest benefit for the salvation of your soul. When people on earth presume to anticipate the eternal Deity's judgment, when they feel entitled to canonise or to condemn, it is similar to an

anticipation of divine Judgment .... it is a supposedly irrefutable testimony of an honourable way of life which is pleasing to God, the evidence of which, however, can never be produced by a person ....

As long as he lives on earth the human being will err, and therefore his judgment will not be irrefutable either. Anyone who outwardly portrays himself to live in a God-pleasing way is very often still far removed from it within himself, and equally, a person passing by unnoticed in earthly life will very often be enlightened, with a pure inner life and a heart that became love on earth. And so people should not wrongly assume a right to which they are not entitled, because this canonisation is not beneficial for humanity, rather it is misleading those who are seeking the truth ....

Amen

## **Divine guidance and direction ... Spiritualism ... Truth ....**

***B.D. 0793 from March 2nd 1939,  
taken from Book No. 16***

Anyone who consciously turns to the Lord is in direct

contact with the spiritual forces and will not need to fear interference by unauthorised powers. If you remain true in your heart to the divine Saviour, you will soon spiritually rise above your surroundings and be able to accept spiritual knowledge without interruption. And so you are requested to carefully listen to the voice of your heart, which wants to proclaim what the Father intends to give you. Every event happens with permission from above, yet you do not always understand it. Nevertheless, people are offered so many opportunities to embark on the only path that leads to the goal. Where the right kind of trust accompanies all events, their purpose will soon become obvious to them .... Behold, the path is not as clear to everyone that they would enter it without reservations, it must be pointed out to them, and this can only happen through wise guidance and direction of all steps which, in turn, in the eyes of a person, happen again by coincidence. However, if all of you remain in contact with the Lord, He Himself will show you how important and beneficial it is to utterly entrust yourselves to His guidance .... how you only ever fulfil the Creator's wise plan if you don't resist His instructions. One link of the chain glides into another, and you are merely the Creator's visible implementers, He constantly works through you on earth .... He attempts to awaken the human hearts and introduce them to His actions of love. Consequently, you will take no step without consideration, and only someone who entirely avoids God withdraws himself from the divine Father's loving guidance. Yet all of you who strive to fulfil His will are

used by the Lord in order to save other souls again and lead them towards the eternal light. Therefore take note that you should always entrust yourselves to the divine guidance without resistance .... that you should let yourselves be impelled by the voice of your heart .... Pay attention to every stirring which wants to direct you, always accept the urging of your heart as a spiritual admonition and comply with this urge, then you will at all times be willing helpers for the Lord's tireless act of love for His children .... And now try to accept spiritual knowledge without resistance, for a clarification needs to be given for a teaching interspersed with errors, which can never have originated from the eternal Deity.

People have often attempted to enter the spiritual bridge by spiritualistic means, and this has always evoked objections by all believers and those who want to believe without, however, having complete knowledge of an area which hitherto was concealed from them. Present day spiritual adversity considerably contributes towards the fact that people nevertheless digress into this area in the hope of finding some kind of help from there. Whatever the human being undertakes in order to find the **truth**, purely with the desire for this very truth, can never be sinful before God. This has to be said for clarification to those people, who only want to look upon all spiritualistic experiments as misconduct and transgression against the divine will. People on earth are often driven by the inner urge to ascertain the truth, and the doctrines of the church do not offer them enough certainty .... or, they

love and hunger for the truth far too much as to unhesitatingly accept something they do not consider sufficiently reliable. They want to take the direct path, in a manner of speaking, they want to draw from the source .... they also **want** to believe if the truth seems acceptable to them and this thirst for knowledge is not always only the desire for something extraordinary .... It is not in connection with a worldly purpose but merely intended for clarification, and therefore the activity of such people thirsting for truth will never be wrong before God, i.e., it will never be a sin. Whereas each similar attempt relating to worldly desires .... which also includes contact with the dear departed, since this likewise contributes towards a person's everyday happiness .... or which intends to satisfy a sensational hunger, can never find God's approval because then .... please take note .... a purely spiritual exchange, which intends to guide the earthly child into truth, cannot take place and because the connection from the beyond to earth is only permitted to reveal the pure truth to the earthly child if it proves itself worthy of the privilege. That the latter is the first prerequisite for spiritual contact from the beyond to earth is already obvious by the fact that not each and everyone can establish contact with the world of the beyond, and so, on account of the extraordinary danger this poses to both the earthly child as well as the still immature spiritual being, such connections must very seriously be warned against ....

Hence the partly correct point of view, that spiritualism

very often opens the door to lower forces. Therefore, all such connections must be refrained from if the necessary spiritual maturity for it is non-existent and the will to first and foremost serve God and attain the truth is not exclusively the reason for such a beginning. But how wrong people's point of view is to reject all contact with the world of the beyond can be seen from the fact that all spiritual beings have the power to express themselves, but that all these expressions, whether good or evil, will only be perceived if the human being **wants** to perceive .... that in each and every case the human being's consent is a prerequisite .... in a manner of speaking, a certain willingness for reception .... then every being will also be able to clearly express itself. Admittedly, this does not happen in a way that a person receives tangible or visible information from the spiritual being, instead, it will always take effect in the form of thoughts .... and so are the proclamations by beings in the beyond within spiritual circles more or less thought transmissions from these spiritual beings to people's minds. The person, as it were, willingly accepts what is conveyed to him as his mental knowledge, and can shape these proclamations according to his state of maturity .... With profound desire for truth he will only be informed of absolute truth, because through his desire he will only attract the spirits of truth or, as it were, call upon them for their tuition. And thus no offence should ever be taken concerning the reason for this work .... People must not claim the right to criticise what God the Lord in His wisdom has permitted, because a human being with



profound love for truth appealed to the Father in Heaven for enlightenment which, in turn, could only exhaustively be given to him in this way.

Amen

# **Spiritual chaos ... World conflagration ... Messiah ... The forerunner of the Lord ...**

***B.D. 0801 from March 9th 1939,  
taken from Book No. 17***

And it will come to pass in the world as precisely as it is written, that no stone will remain on the other, for in these days the world will experience a complete breakdown of everything that has been preserved for thousands of years. All traditions will be opposed; it will mean incomparable chaos in a spiritual as well as in an earthly respect .... People will no longer be able to differentiate to what extent their opinions are right or wrong. They will allow themselves to be driven beyond all bounds, and in the end it will be a spiritual waste-land. The most incongruous rumours will emerge regarding the second coming of the Messiah, and a huge world

conflagration will throw humanity into extreme adversity and despair.

Yet this crisis can most certainly be controlled by indisputable faith in Jesus Christ, the divine Redeemer. The path of anyone who has chosen Him as a leader through earthly life will bypass all distress and, protected by His love, the earthly valley with all its horrors will only vaguely touch him, yet the adversity will be indescribably great for all who do not carry the divine Saviour within their hearts, and the suffering on earth will appear unbearable for him, he will torture himself with all kinds of physical and spiritual problems.

And into this chaos a light will shine, giving everyone standing in this light much comfort and hope .... In these days a bearer of spiritual truth will arise amongst you. He will proclaim the Word and fill people with much hope, he will be a powerful speaker before the Lord and announce His second coming and, permeated by love for humanity, eagerly preach the Word which the Lord Himself had taught on earth .... And he will be a forerunner of the Lord. Yet his hour will come even though people will try to stop him accomplishing his mission. The world will show an interest in his fate on earth, some of the world will recognise his assignment and working as God's will .... yet the majority who live in utter spiritual darkness will demand his death.

And during this time the earth will rumble and the Lord God will warn and admonish humanity with a stern voice

to turn around and consider the salvation of their souls, and the suffering on earth will be extensive and is intended to show you humans that the hour of Judgment is close. You ought to look within yourselves and remember the Lord Who proclaimed this time to you in Word and Scripture ....

Amen

## **Blessing of deformity ....**

***B.D. 0839 from March 31th 1939,  
taken from Book No. 17***

The human being has to undergo an involuntary yet very beneficial test of life if he, due to his external appearance, is unable to enjoy earthly pleasures, i.e. if the opportunity of undivided enjoyment of life is taken from him due to some kind of deformity and he is forced to give up earthly joys. He could then be in great danger to think of his Creator in bitterness or even reject Him completely because the will of a Deity who, in his opinion, imparts gifts to His earthly children unfairly, is incomprehensible to him. However, if he remains faithful in spite of his misfortune, spiritual progress will be possible for him much sooner since he will find it easier to resist the world and its temptations and in absence of worldly pleasures will be far more able to occupy himself

with spiritual problems, which will lead him to the state of maturity much sooner. Consequently, such human beings often achieve the right understanding of their life in a short time .... They no longer demand complete fulfilment in life and patiently await the time when their earthly existence comes to an end, convinced that only then true life will begin and that their time on earth will have an appropriate effect in the beyond.

Hence, a deformed person on earth has a certain advantage in as much as the denial of worldly pleasures is easier for him than for a well proportioned person who is constantly confronted with the temptations of the world, but only if he contributes towards it himself, that is, if he, in submission to God's will, accepts his imposed destiny and thanks his Creator that He had given him life. If such a human being is spiritually active he soon will no longer consider his body a misfortune but consider spiritual life a desirable goal. He will always strive to increase his spiritual knowledge; he will also love his fellow human beings and not grumble at his fate or even fight God ....

Amen

**Jesus' suffering and  
dying .... Hour of death ....**

***B.D. 0853 from April 7th 1939, taken***

## ***from Book No. 17***

The soul suffers if it loves. And therefore the Saviour has exemplified His suffering to you, and this for love of the people. When you remember His hour of death, your heart will also feel profound pain if you come aglow with love for the Saviour and have offered Him your heart. During the agonising hour of death His body was subject to intolerable pain; He suffered the disgrace of His elevation on the cross twice as badly, because His own children had nailed Him to the stake and shouted scorn and mockery in His face .... No other human being on earth ever suffered what Jesus took upon His sanctified shoulders for love of humanity, no-one ever concluded his earthly life in such torment and, yet, the divine Redeemer did not resist His suffering and death .... He took it voluntarily upon His shoulders and thereby acquired eternal bliss for people. And so you, too, will have to endure suffering and sorrow if you want to participate in the great act Salvation and its blessing. Bear in mind that you must present your guilt of sin to the Saviour as well, that you must appeal to Him to take pity upon your guilt of sin, then the Lord in His love and gentleness will graciously dispel your suffering, He will keep everything away from you and redeem you from your guilt of sin, for His goodness and gentleness are beyond description, He includes everyone in His love who wants to belong to Him and reveals their suffering to Him with complete trust. To them He is a Saviour from all adversity, He protects them from all tribulations and

transforms everything depressing into a state of freedom and redemption, the soul will be released from its burden and, in cheerful anticipation and relieved from all worries, the earthly child hands itself over to the grace of the heavenly Father .... And it will not appeal to the divine Saviour's help in vain if only it faithfully, and with profound empathy, remembers the Lord's hour of suffering and is willing to bear its suffering in God's will for the redemption of humanity from the sleep of death into eternal life ....

Amen

## **Sensual love ....**

***B.D. 0873 from April 19th 1939,  
taken from Book No. 17***

So today, for the strengthening of the spirit, you shall receive one more proclamation concerning love, and namely from a specific point of view. People often describe something with the word 'love' which, in itself, is indeed love too, yet it is far removed from what is preached to people .... the practise of which shall be the human being's first and last task. It concerns the love of the senses, which you so often want to understand as the concept of love. Yet you should know that you are more likely to destroy true love if you don't resist sensual love,

for it is a game of deceit by the adversary. It is, as it were, his means by which the human soul only too often falls into his trap. The human being completely submits himself to the control of evil if he does not resist his physical lust. This is the love which endeavours to possess, yet it will never ever be able to refine the human being and therefore cannot lead to union with the highest Entity either. So the human being must be very much on his guard that his soul and its progress will not be at serious risk due to purely physical longing .... he has to consider that it is far more difficult to suppress this lust once he has become addicted to it, and that all love on earth which purely applies to earthly interests therefore can never be right before God .... for love which is not giving but merely aims to fulfil earthly desires is likewise set to accomplish earthly success and consequently not intended by God. For God only considers a heart's innermost feeling. If this is truly selfless and only ever wants to give love, regardless of its own advantage, such deeds of love will also result in the reward inherent in them .... they will lead to heartfelt union with the divine Saviour ....

Amen

# **Thought currents ....**

# **Prerequisites for easy**

# acceptance of spiritual knowledge ....

***B.D. 0888 from April 27th 1939,  
taken from Book No. 18***

In order to perceive the thought currents clearly and distinctly, the external human being must be completely governed by the spirit; the separation from the earth must have taken place and the union with the beyond must have been established, only then will the human being's thoughts be able to move in spiritual spheres, and the voice from the spiritual world will sound distinctly and audibly in the person's heart. However, as long as the body is held captive by earthly fetters which prevent the soul's escape from the body into spiritual spheres, the spirit in the person cannot become active. Therefore, a long struggle must precede first in order to achieve this detached state .... in order for the body to achieve a state of being gentle and patient and of allowing the soul's every flight into higher spheres. Thus, the first condition in order to be able to accept spiritual knowledge easily and without effort is that the spirit must not feel impeded by anything. It certainly requires considerable self-denial in order to accomplish, yet the pleasure of the reward will be accordingly great. All opportunities will remain unused if the expansion of the divine spirit in the human being is not taken care of first. People's spirit will



forever remain gagged if they take no action to liberate their soul for good .... As yet the soul is still constrained and therefore cannot grasp the spiritual deeply enough, thus it requires all your will to desire receipt from above so that your will can be complied with; nevertheless, the soul can liberate itself much sooner where love for the divine Redeemer flares up in a heart, for that is where the spirit clearly strives for unity with the eternal Deity. But where the writer or recipient is seized by a certain spiritual lethargy it will be difficult for him to establish contact and it must, in a manner of speaking, be laboriously achieved through perseverance, otherwise it can never lead to the goal which, however, should be all people's ultimate striving. And the spirit will understandably be in serious difficulties, for it will be prevented from reigning and taking effect according to its purpose ....

Amen

## **Collision of Earth and Sun .... Researchers .... The Earth's core ....**

***B.D. 0945 from June 3rd 1939, taken from Book No. 18***

It will be scientifically proven that, as a result of the Earth's advance towards the Sun, the continued existence of the Earth will be questionable after a certain time. And this evidence will remain unchallenged, because evidence to the contrary cannot be provided by anyone on earth who does not possess a clear knowledge about the course of all events through spiritual contact. However, a person who would like to convey this knowledge he receives through spiritual messages to the world will flatly be labelled abnormal, and although science will once again make a point of clarifying such symptoms, the human race will remain in the dark as long as it does not grant credence to such proclamations. On the one hand, the calculations of academics are not guaranteed, but on the other hand they do not take the time span into consideration, which they aspire to determine .... They do not avail themselves of the truth-revealing source of knowledge and since God, as the Creator of all things, has imposed limits which the human being cannot exceed without divine help, but which is consciously rejected, he can therefore never know the truth, since God will not arbitrarily revoke the order of His Creation. Nevertheless, despite this He will always and forever inform people of the further development and advancement of the works of creation, but precisely these proclamations are not regarded as truth, whereas the scientific reports and calculations are meant to be authoritative and will therefore also be acknowledged as irrefutable. And so scientists are totally convinced that nothing extraordinary can come upon the Earth before

their calculated point in time has come .... indeed, as a result of this it is even believed that experiments can be conducted and that the Sun and its effect can be utilized on that basis, thereby reducing the Sun's strength and alleviating the collision of the Earth with the Sun accordingly. All these purely earthly experiments and results are absurd, for they are more likely to confuse human thinking than lead to clear realisation. God's creations repeatedly provide the evidence that no human being can ever contribute towards their emergence and that the human being was only granted the transformation of the Earth's surface, everything else is brought about by God's love, wisdom and omnipotence and the human being cannot contribute in the slightest to changing the law which has existed for all eternity. And thus this supposed disaster will never occur as people imagined, instead, the core of the Earth will suddenly and unexpectedly start to rotate and wreck all calculations by the scientists .... For this was not planned in the worldly researchers' latest calculations and scientific results, nevertheless, it was determined in the wise plan of the eternal Deity from the very beginning.

Amen

# **Eruptions .... Work of Creation .... Researchers ....**

## ***B.D. 0957 from June 10th 1939, taken from Book No. 18***

Hence it is impossible to avert an event which was predetermined from the start and once again only for the purpose of returning countless fallen souls. The innermost structure of the Earth is constantly influenced by the activity of spiritual forces, and so an eruption will occur when it is permitted by the divine Creator, and this permission, in turn, depends on people's own will .... If humanity's state of soul is in grave danger due its own fault, a disaster is intended precisely in order to save it; hence people's will is ultimately the cause of the total destruction or of rescuing the soul from profound adversity. However, that which God decided in His profound wisdom from the very start has been concealed from the world but was proclaimed to those who live in Him and according to His order, as the Lord has always chosen those who, time and again, were supposed to proclaim His will to people. Nevertheless, this knowledge cannot be verified and is therefore rarely accepted as truth. But now worldly researchers also insist on entering a region which is inaccessible to them. They believe themselves capable of ascertaining the divine Creator's plan, i.e., by way of all sorts of calculations they try to determine the effects of natural laws; they even insist that they can numerically determine the date of the alleged end of the world and thereby effectively intend to subject the divine will to their calculations .... The

human being is so small compared to the work of Creation and yet deems himself to know so much about things which are completely out of his reach as long as he does not try to attain them by spiritual means .... He fails to recognise the only right path but, on the other hand, is very quickly willing to believe what is scientifically presented to him. The greatest intellect truly does not suffice to ascertain the truth, yet the profound faith of an uneducated person can penetrate the mysteries of Creation and reveal irrefutable knowledge. Therefore, you should always pay attention to what worldly researchers present to people as far as these investigations touch upon God's work of Creation, for this region is inaccessible to them as long as they don't endeavour to gain an insight by spiritual means .... For God Himself offers the eternal truth to His children on earth now and at all times.

Amen

## **Mental activity ... Heart ... Brain ....**

***B.D. 0962 from June 13th 1939,  
taken from Book No. 18***

Unite in faith and pay attention to My Words, for the spirit

in you will noticeably express My will. And if you live up to My will your life will irrevocably lead to the goal. The thought is spiritual strength, it propagates and is therefore the best evidence that it is not something dead, that it lives and invigorates and is in constant contact with the person's mental activity. Regular nourishment through spiritual strength is essentially the human being's mental activity. The human being is capable of receiving this flow of strength and effectively diverting it to the heart which, as a receiving station for spiritual strength, makes constant use of the nourishment and, thus utilised, returns it to the brain-centre where it, in a manner of speaking, activates the human being's mechanism .... This process is still entirely incomprehensible to the human being, since up to now he is advocating the mistaken opinion that only the brain carries out its organic activity and that the rest of the body is not involved at first until the will moves into action and then the body implements the mental activity .... but that, in fact, the heart is the receiving station and that an elimination first happens there as to how far the human being is willing to accept the spiritual strength, that is, the transfer of thoughts .... and this happens in a way that the body, and with it the brain as an organ, consents to either keep the received spiritual transfer as spiritual knowledge or merely senses it as a vague notion and instantly dismisses it again.

For this reason it happens so often that opposition makes itself felt when a particularly insightful and willingly

receptive soul also wants to impart the information received in the heart to the brain .... The latter refuses to accept it completely, sends it back to the human heart, where it is received again with sadness, sent repeatedly up until the brain's opposition wearies and subsequently acts as it should, since it is now determined by the strength of the spirit .... which grows increasingly stronger the more the brain's opposition wanes. Mental activity can only be fully explained in this way .... and provides the answer to the question why the same wisdom, which people are made aware of in the same manner, will be completely differently received, i.e. believed. In fact, it is simply due to a person's will to what extent he accepts and utilises the spiritual information received by the heart .... whether he therefore effectively offers resistance through the mere activity of the organs, which only utilise the spiritual strength so far as they need for their essential activity, thus for purely earthly thinking .... However, in order to solve spiritual problems the cooperation of the heart with the thinking organs is indispensable, because everything spiritual first takes the path to the heart until it is passed on, and then it will also have to be fully accepted by the organs, which are responsible for mental activity. And, once again, a heart living in love, will be incredibly richly endowed with spiritual strength and therefore the person, who shelters love within himself, will increase his spiritual knowledge and he will live in brightest realisation ....

Amen

# **The prophets' predictions .... The return of Christ ....**

***B.D. 0963 from June 13th 1939,  
taken from Book No. 18***

In the Lord's return to Earth the predictions of all prophets will come true. For it is written that humanity does not pay attention to His will .... but it is also written that a number of people will serve Him and that the Lord will come to these people and give them strength in times of adversity. That He will give the bread of heaven to His Own and take supper with those who love Him and keep His commandments. And that they will hear His voice, that He will therefore be with them during their life on earth and live in the midst of His Own on earth. People do not want to take these predictions literally and try to undermine the Words of the Lord. They themselves have changed the arrangement as well as the meaning of the Words and thus no longer grant full credence to these rearranged Words. And so you humans deem Him far away even though He is very close to you .... You no longer hear His voice and all your thoughts and feelings have turned away from the divine and consequently



attach no value to the prophecies. Behold, if you yourselves are unaware of the fact that the Lord pleases you with His presence .... if you can't believe that He so loves you and in this love takes the path to humanity again, then you will barely be able to grasp the infinite happiness of His return to earth either. You will only ever see the earthly life but pay no attention to spiritual currents which clearly reveal to you that the Lord is present among His Own. In a manner of speaking, He takes part in every event and His presence can easily be felt by those earthly children who, through their works of love, already carry Him in their hearts, for the prophecies' meaning will suddenly become clear to them and they will realise how the Scriptures will come true, Word for Word ....

Amen

## **Immortality ... Eternity ... Suicide ....**

***B.D. 0974a from June 21st 1939,  
taken from Book No. 18***

The question of immortality .... the concept of eternity .... cannot be solved by the human being because on one hand he cannot understand something that reaches

beyond earthly concepts, but on the other hand he cannot be given a spiritual explanation which he could adequately understand either. Only on entering the regions of light can the being be given a partial explanation but even then it remains a problem which, like the eternal Deity, can never be completely solved and comprehended. This has to be said first in order to explain the following:

In times of great spiritual adversity people are inclined to believe that they can put an end to their lives at will, and thus an end to their existence, because they believe that they only exist for a limited period of time and hence feel entitled and qualified to shorten it. They simply lack understanding for immortality, for endlessness of time, for eternity .... That they will never cease to exist cannot be proven to them, but the thought of knowing that life will end one day is far more comforting to them .... And although from time to time the human being feels uneasy about the temporal ending he nevertheless rather accepts this thought than the thought of a continuation of life after death because he knows that everything on earth is temporary and therefore he cannot and will not believe in the immortality of his Self. To explain the concept of 'eternal' to such a person would simply be impossible .... The idea that something so intimately related to him should never cease to exist worries him and awakens his sense of responsibility because, understandably, life has to be viewed quite differently as soon as a permanent existence has to be taken into

account.

(Break)

# **Immortality ... Eternity ... Suicide ...**

***B.D. 0974b from June 22nd 1939,  
taken from Book No. 18***

Consequently, people who consciously deny life after death will not hesitate to end their earthly life themselves since they believe that by ending their earthly life they will dispose of everything, and fail to consider the consequences of their action if they are wrong. They only destroy the outer shell but not life itself and therefore they have to continue living it .... since it cannot be destroyed, neither on earth nor in the beyond .... it is, in the true sense of the word, immortal, i.e. of eternal duration. It is not possible to end it because the Creator has created the being out of Himself and everything of divine origin cannot possibly perish. For that reason the Creator, in His wisdom, has ordained that there shall be no limit for the being to reach its state of perfection .... that even in eternity it can steadily advance and thus be constantly active and give as well as receive .... without ever becoming exhausted or ever

having received the ultimate from the eternal Deity. The earthly human being can barely conceive the concept of 'eternity', neither can immortality be completely explained to him since nothing on earth is everlasting, and since the immortality of soul cannot be proven to him he has to believe it. Likewise, human intellect cannot analyse the time concept of 'eternity' either. This attempt cannot possibly lead to a result as long as the human being cannot apply the same comparison to a physical medium. He only accepts something as true when he has conclusive evidence. And therefore there remains only faith again .... The human being has to believe what cannot be demonstrated to him, and thus the immortality of the being throughout eternity must precede all other reasoning ....

Amen

## **State of light ....**

***B.D. 0977 from June 23rd 1939,  
taken from Book No. 18***

Life in the beyond in a state of light is likewise inconceivable to people. It exceeds all earthly joys a thousand-fold; nevertheless, it differs entirely from the kind of earthly joys and, therefore, imparts happiness and bliss beyond all measure. And no amount of the human

being's imagination would be able to even roughly paint a picture that corresponds to the truth, for the heavenly pleasures awaiting a perfect being in these spheres are incomparable to anything on earth. In a state of light the being's sensitive faculty equally surpasses all earthly feelings, for this reason no-one on earth will ever be able to understand the degree of pleasure which is granted to these beings. During the time on earth it must also remain inconceivable for the being, so that the human being will strive of his own accord towards perfection and not for the sake of reward. Yet the knowledge of this immeasurable happiness in the beyond would make all people strive for it with greatest zeal; nevertheless, in order to be truly perfect good must be done for the sake of good, and the reward should not come first. And therefore the heavenly Father has wisely arranged to leave humanity in ignorance about that which He has prepared for those who love Him .... He wants to possess the earthly children's love, He wants to be their Father and reward their love in a Father's way .... by giving the child everything that belongs to Him .... Therefore strive to become true children of God, so that you can partake in all heavenly delights .... and you will be blissfully happy beyond measure for all eternity.

Amen

## **Admonition to exercise**

# **self-control ... Gentleness - Peacefulness ...**

***B.D. 1003 from July 12th 1939, taken  
from Book No. 19***

Learn to restrain yourselves and become gentle and peaceful, for your time on earth is given to you as a probationary period during which you should reach full maturity, training and shaping yourselves for the benefit of your soul. You will hardly be able to fulfil your earthly task if you don't strive for this first, for all your soul's difficulties arise from your own lack of self-control. And thus hear what the Lord Himself is proclaiming to you:

You, My children on earth, have to make an effort to treat each other with love ... You have chosen this stay on earth in the knowledge of what you are lacking; you have many opportunities to combat your weaknesses and mistakes, yet you must also have the good will to make use of the possibilities offered and, through constant self-restraint, grow stronger and overcome your mistakes. Bear in mind, My children, with how much patience I have to overlook your weaknesses again and again, and yet My love for you does not diminish ... Consider how much more reason I would have to become impatient, and how I, nevertheless, in utmost patience and mercy, embrace My children again and lovingly forgive them when they

have trespassed .... consider that My life on earth demanded an abundance of patience towards sinful humanity, which nevertheless did not recognise My love and repaid all the good I did for people with ingratitude, and finally made Me suffer so indescribably ....

How much did they humiliate Me and devised all sorts of torments and, without any blame, handed Me over to be crucified .... And I patiently shouldered even this most bitter injustice and nevertheless did not withdraw My mercy from those who wronged Me .... I implored the Father in heaven to forgive them their sins and did not turn away from humanity but tried to win them over with patience and love and thereby bring them redemption. And therefore you should also practise the virtue of self-denial, one should live for the other and only ever endeavour to ease each other's suffering, so that you will become perfect and will not have lived your earthly life in vain. And sacrifice all your worries and pains to Me, and you will become as gentle as doves and communicate with each other patiently and with love, and inner calm will enter your hearts .... and I will help you if you are in danger of losing yourselves.

Amen

## **Saturn ....**

***B.D. 1008 from July 16th 1939, taken***

## ***from Book No. 19***

Worldly scholars will struggle in vain to obtain a clear picture of the inner structure of extraterrestrial works of Creation. It is not enough to establish the numerical size ratio of other planets in comparison to Earth, nor is the intention of establishing the sun's influence on these planets and the measurement of luminosity sufficient .... Rather, the research of these planets requires people with enormous knowledge, and such knowledge can only be acquired by spiritual means. No connection exists between Earth and other planets, and no such connection will ever be established even if eternities pass by. On the other hand, however, spiritually, no limitations exist which separate one planet from another. The vast space between two planets does not prevent spiritual beings from communicating with each other and exchanging information about the world they inhabit and its structure. Providing a clear picture of the most related planet to Earth, Saturn, is the task of one of the elevated spiritual beings inhabiting it by giving you humans on Earth a description which offers an undeniable explanation to a person desiring such information. As yet no mortal has succeeded in establishing the dimensions of this planet, for it is not possible to calculate its size because people possess no criterion for the circumference of Saturn. It goes beyond all earthly estimates and is almost an infinite concept for you humans. The basic material of this planet is not the same as that of Earth either .... it consists of transparent,



brightly sparkling metal with an inconceivable luminosity. The state of all beings within the vicinity of this radiant matter is in harmony with this brilliant light .... They are exceedingly sensitive to all spiritual currents and are relatively far advanced spiritual beings which, however, did not reach their state of light through conscious striving but are highly educated through God's will. The task of these beings includes taking care of the spirits on earth. Like on earth, they also live a similar physical life, except that the size ratio of the external shells they occupy is humanly incomprehensible, but accordingly their spiritual power is indescribably effective. Nevertheless, the beings also have to fulfil a function and this is in harmony with their respective embodiment, for these beings also exist in various external shapes on the planet's surface, but their ability to change far surpasses that on earth, insofar as that they are not animating some external shape as imperfect spiritual beings, but that they can, as it were, change their shell at any time so as to be able to accomplish their set task better and easier in a different shell. Consequently, Saturn shelters living beings, nevertheless they possess a certain degree of maturity or they would not be suitable for this planet since the abundance of light presupposes a specific receptivity to light. These beings are difficult to describe to people on earth because certain laws need to be taken into account which are unknown to people on earth. It would indeed be possible to portray them to you, albeit only in a metaphorical way which illustrates the beings' activity.

And this activity is, in a way, just as necessary for people on earth, for the beings have the task of constantly animating the entire flora, nevertheless, the correlation of this cannot be fully understood by you as yet. Amongst each other, the beings lead a similar life as on earth, in total harmony and spiritual unity, so their dwellings are accordingly and magnificent creations of their own intelligence shaped the surface of the planet into an exceedingly charming abode. Creation consists of countless stars and yet each one differs from the other both in its surface arrangement as well as in the living conditions of its inhabiting beings .... In the same way their basic materials are always of a different kind too .... yet all these creations are governed and directed by one Deity according to His will. And thus God provides countless opportunities for a being so that it can receive and likewise distribute bliss for eternity through lively activity in accordance with its perfection.

Amen

**Togetherness in love ....**  
**Easy earthly path ....**

***B.D. 1021 from July 24th 1939, taken  
from Book No. 19***

The longest path on earth is not difficult to travel if the human being doesn't have to cover it alone, for all distress and trouble are easier carried as a twosome. A lonely wanderer bears all burdens and troubles by himself, he has no loving heart to speak to, no one to lift him up if he is in danger of breaking down, and no one whom he, in turn, can reassure and support in difficult times. And many an earthly wanderer's fate consists of the fact that they always and forever walk alone even though they are surrounded by countless people. They exclude themselves from the world and reject all consolation and active help. And thus they have to cover an arduous, very long earthly path in constant isolation. Natural law connects people, natural law requires togetherness since it is, after all, the foundation of continued existence for creation and its living beings.

Everything in the human being longs for its alter ego, the human being naturally feels the instinct to bond with a similarly natured person, in every human heart dwells love which wants to express itself towards this other self, and therefore the union between a man and a woman is an irrevocable law ordained by the divine Father Himself. The foundation for all unions, however, shall be profound love, each one shall endeavour from the bottom of his heart to serve the other, to treat him with love and to start a relationship which utterly complies with divine will. Then God's blessing will also rest on such a union, travelling the path through earthly life will be easier for both because their love for each other will help them

carry all difficulties, and this love also guarantees that the Father is likewise present where pure love unites two people. For the eternal Deity's activity will be noticeable there, pure love will refine people and turn their eyes towards heaven, they will recognise God, the Lord, by virtue of their inherently active love which is divine after all, and from this realisation they will draw the strength to overcome all difficulties in life .... They are walking with God at the same time .... in blissful togetherness they have become aware of the fact that God has to be present where love exists, and this realisation makes them blissfully happy, since then the human being will know that he is safe under the Father's loyal guard ....

Amen

## **Monastic life? .... (Concerning a previous conversation)**

***B.D. 1027 from July 29th 1939, taken  
from Book No. 19***

As soon as the change begins in the life of a woman's soul her ability for spiritual acceptance will increase; and during this time all worldly experiences can have a retrospective effect on the state of the soul. For a period

of years certain laws of nature are influencing the human body such that it cannot counteract them without damaging itself .... This compulsion is effectively necessary in order to preserve the human being's sexuality which, in turn, is absolutely essential for procreation. As long as this instinct is clearly expressing itself, as long as the person is always trying to accommodate it, the soul's desire for spiritual nourishment will not voice itself ....

This becomes more understandable as the human being's desire for physical fulfilment of the natural instinct decreases. This very desire automatically ties the human being to earth as if he was chained .... he is unable to ascend spiritually, and therefore the development of his soul becomes doubtful. Consequently, no pure, God-pleasing relationship can ever be established from earth to the spiritual world as long as the body's desire still aims to fulfil its natural instinct, because these two worlds do not harmonise with each other. Although God Himself has placed this natural instinct into the human being he also has the option to resist it voluntarily. However, when people indulge in it without hesitation the soul's ascent will be obstructed .... whereas every resistance to this desire will also loosen the soul's chains .... And therefore it is extraordinary beneficial when the human being fights his craving during that time. Giving way to this instinct is only intended by God for the purpose of creating a new human being, otherwise every person should make an effort to live a pure life since he

will provide the soul with undreamt of spiritual advantages.

Once this physical impulse is overcome, i.e. once it has been successfully resisted and thus the fulfilment of bodily lust is no longer banishing the soul in a state of constraint, it is free for its flight of ascent, and it will then be able to make uninhibited contact with the spiritual world. The human being was provided with every opposition in order to overcome it in life, and it is far more commendable to have resisted and defied the world with all its oppositions than to have deliberately avoided it. The Father in heaven knows of everyone's desire and the degree of love for Him, consequently He will also provide His children with trials in order to test their will of resistance, and this should be sufficient for you .... (Break)

## **Monastic life? ....**

***B.D. 1028 from July 29th 1939, taken from Book No. 19***

\_(concerning a previous conversation) A natural limit has been set when the strength of resistance is threatening to wane, and then the soul can expect help if it is too weak to stand firm by itself. A woman's purpose in life mainly involves caring and supportive work, and she

receives her strength to do so in the same proportion as she is expressing her love, and thus a sphere of activity exists especially for the woman on earth which offers the soul ample opportunity to mature. There is no need to tightly limit her duties in order to live for the Lord's pleasure in seclusion on earth. Anyone who wants to work to a greater extent in the service of neighbourly love will also be offered adequate opportunity for it in the outside world. It is therefore not especially beneficial for the soul if a field of duty is imposed on the person which is in fact conscientiously carried out but only as a kind of personal obligation .... under conditions which exclude a refusal or non-compliance of this fulfilment of duty, and therefore the work of loving service does not always correspond to the person's free will. The will of the person who puts himself into such an obligatory situation may doubtlessly be good and his intention may well be to dedicate his life entirely to the Lord and Saviour, but he does not consider that everyone can utilise and develop his earthly life in the midst of worldly commotion and that he will be offered more than enough opportunities for active neighbourly love ....

Amen

**'Vengeance is Mine ....'**  
**Revenge ....**

## ***B.D. 1029 from July 29th 1939, taken from Book No. 19***

'Vengeance is Mine ....' says the Lord .... and therefore you should not exact vengeance, instead you should make an effort to repay evil with good and not think about how you can revenge yourselves for the wrong done to you. For anyone who suffers injustice and never entertains vengeful thoughts is gentle minded and patient, and his will endeavours to eliminate injustice by doing nothing in order to obtain satisfaction for himself. And this is an immense advancement for the soul .... It is certainly very difficult to be unjustly treated and yet consider the enemy with love, nevertheless, it is extraordinarily beneficial .... The human being should always bear in mind that every feeling of revenge shrouds the soul in darkness, that it can never become light and clear in a human soul where there is still room for thoughts of revenging the evil done by the other person. For such thoughts will inevitably lead to feelings of unkindness and thus spiritual weakness. And the human being cannot be lovingly active if he does not put a stop to such thoughts in him. For animosity is a tribute to the opponent .... Anyone who lives in animosity with his neighbour has already granted the evil power every right over him. Every feeling of hatred and vengeance must be banished from the heart, for it will lead to other unclean thoughts, just as, vice versa, a devout and gentle character is only ever concerned about not doing wrong



to anyone, and that all injustice must be left to the responsibility of the divine Lord Himself. For only the Lord can judge the blame of two partners and what gave rise to the enmity. So if in earthly life hatred and discord seem to prevail, the human being must especially try to eliminate these bad habits .... It is not enough for a person to anxiously avoid an argument .... he must aim to adapt himself to the other person where possible and change hostile feelings into the opposite. The success of such intention will be felt so indescribably beneficially, all hatred will end since love, gentleness and patience will take its place, and the person will experience an inner sense of satisfaction if he tries, where possible, to undo all injustice done to him with the weapon of love .... Love disarms all anger, vindictiveness and the urge for revenge .... Love reduced the feeling of suffering injustice and will never consider retribution, for it strives for spiritual perfection and for this every degrading thought has to be excluded first, and the Lord will take abode where the human being rises above himself and the heart has transformed itself to love, gentleness and patience, for this is the inevitable basic condition for the Lord to reveal Himself and thus also practise patience with His children .... Human revenge and retribution are not permissible where the soul wants to liberate itself from its chains .... therefore, hand everything over to the Lord, for He is pure Love Itself and will exact vengeance according to the law of love .... Likewise, you, too, should make an effort to practise love among each other and always and forever fulfil the Lord's will, Who cautions you

against judging your fellow human beings' unkindness too harshly ....

Amen

## **Compassion ... Sick and weak people ...**

***B.D. 1032 from July 31th 1939, taken from Book No. 19***

Take care of the sick and the weak, and consider that they are suffering and need your help. You should be compassionate and constantly consider the welfare of these poor people, whose physical afflictions make their life intolerable, you should try to alleviate this suffering and selflessly help them at all times. This is pleasing to God, and since you are all children of God, one shall also be concerned for the other and not allow heartlessness or indifference towards your fellow human being arise in you. How often do people pass by the sick and the weak without offering them a comforting word, it is very depressing for these sufferers. They are helpless in their state and grateful for every word granted by love .... And how often do they have to go without because no considerate word is spoken to them. They are lonely, and their soul is seized by profound sadness, for it hungers for

love and is only scantily considered ....

And the Lord teaches compassion .... and promises eternal bliss, for compassion presupposes love, and only a labour of love will bring salvation to the soul. Compassion is purest neighbourly love, for it wants to help and expects nothing in return .... A person can be ailing in body as well as in soul .... and bringing him help is always inexpressibly valuable .... speaking words of comfort to the physically weak and offering the psychologically sick and frail the right remedy out of kind-hearted neighbourly love .... For the body's suffering will come to an end one day but not that of the soul unless it is approached by active neighbourly love bringing it help to escape its adversity.

The weak and ailing person, however, needs twice as much support, for the body's weakness often also lets the soul descend into helplessness, and it can only be helped by selfless love which, as it were, awakens the soul from its lethargic state and thus stimulates it to take care of improving its condition. Then the human being will also bear his physical suffering with patience, if only the soul has come to the right recognition on account of its fellow human being's active help which supported it during its adversity.

Any actively compassionate person can bestow untold blessings, for the earthly child will feel this both earthly as well as spiritually, and the thus considered person will have to feel relieved and, on account of the spiritual strength which shines across with every deed of love, turn

his gaze upwards. And thus will love and compassion for sick and weak people result in twice as many blessings .... It will help to improve the physical condition of the sick and weak and simultaneously be extremely beneficial for the soul, and therefore, don't forget to grant them your help and kind-hearted sympathy, lift them up physically and spiritually, and thereby also let their time of suffering become a time of spiritual maturing for them .... and the Lord will bless those who are full of compassion towards their suffering fellow human beings ....

Amen

## **The messages are given in a specified order .... Teaching ....**

***B.D. 1047 from August 10th 1939,  
taken from Book No. 19***

Listen to the Lord's will: The messages from above are given with specific regularity and succession and were therefore transmitted in a specific order. But you will only discover this succession when you have achieved complete knowledge because the messages of wisdom were given to people consecutively, apparently without any correlation to each other, thus all gifts from above

are unique messages of wisdom in themselves and yet absolutely essential to make subsequent messages understandable. Everything just serves to stimulate the human being's activity of thought and to become more aware of the spirit which surrounds you.

Therefore the teachings have to be offered in a way that the human being can gain insight into all subjects and reflect on them. The revelations also have to be comprehensible so that the recipient can understand everything of this nature and that the creation as well as the activity of spiritual beings in the beyond is, in a manner of speaking, figuratively portrayed to them. This happens in carefully prepared teachings, which in turn follow one another so that people can perceive in their thoughts an understanding of what is offered to them.

Therefore the messages are at times seemingly without connection .... first one subject, then another is chosen for detailed consideration because the spiritual teachers always recognise the necessity of this and constantly supplement missing knowledge when it is required. Repetitions have to be offered time and again until the earthly child has completely understood and become aware of the significance and importance of the given spiritual principles. A single lesson and presentation could not lead to the kind of knowledge that is essential for the recipient to teach in turn .... and likewise every spiritual question has to be answered with extreme clarity and certainty for the divine teaching to be accepted by human beings, and that requires the greatest

and most extensive knowledge ....

For this reason you often receive revelations which you believe were given to you before. This is necessary so that anyone who wants an explanation of the divine Word can be clearly and plainly taught by you one day. Only the greatest attention and willingness to learn can result in a particular maturity within a short time, for this reason every message is wisely considered and given to you in accordance with the Lord's will ....

Amen

## **Atheism ... Divine intervention ...**

***B.D. 1066 from August 22nd 1939,  
taken from Book No. 20***

The divine Creator must rightfully address the extent of people's lack of concern in respect of spiritual matters, since the whole of life on earth is pointless and useless if the soul leaves its earthly shell in the same state as it had received it. And such a wasted life is an abomination before the Lord, for the Lord gave people this life for improving their soul and not for a thoughtless way of life and the chasing after earthly pleasures. Woe to those who do not recognise their task on earth .... Countless

obstacles will be placed into their path, so that they will run into them and be forced to investigate where all this is coming from. Such an obstacle is occasionally able to cause a complete change of thinking and to resolve the carelessness and indifference towards all spiritual matters. And therefore God's will always intervenes where spiritual ruin is foreseeable. If the human soul's downfall is looming, drastic experiences must weigh the mind down if the soul's fall into the abyss is to be prevented at the last minute. The distinctly visible continuous spiritual decline is the best evidence of this. Does anyone ever even associate the smallest event with God? Does anyone ever give honour to God and thank Him when daily life proceeds smoothly? .... Does the human being not experience new miracles around and above him every day, do these constant experiences ever make him think of his Creator? .... And how often does God's grace guide a person through adversity and danger .... and he accepts it as a matter of course when he should, in fact, praise and glorify God without end. Only a devout disposition recognises the Lord's guidance in everything .... only a faithful child places all its trust in the divine Creator and Redeemer .... Yet the human race barely knows faith, and it is so removed from spiritual experience that the God of love wants to help people in their spiritual adversity. And thus the day has come that the flood of divine love once again pours itself upon humanity, for faith in God as Ruler of heaven and earth shall arise anew through signs of a miraculous nature .... The spirit of a kind-hearted person will brightly and

clearly recognise God's activity and he will instruct and help his neighbour to learn to interpret the signs correctly as well. You humans will come into possession of spiritual values; even so, you will look outwardly and unless you make an effort to listen to the inner voice, all Words will be in vain and thus the signs must talk instead on behalf of God's wisdom and might .... And you will experience many of those .... they will all point to above, for you do not recognise human influence therein; instead, they solely show the Lord's will and purpose. And this time is near and thus the time of spiritual adversity can be over for everyone who pays attention to these signs and draws on it for the benefit his soul ....

Amen

## **The Saviour's visible presence .... Degree of love ....**

***B.D. 1077 from August 31th 1939,  
taken from Book No. 20***

Those who seek Me will recognise Me wherever I encounter them, for their spirit is part of Me and thus nothing separates them from Me. I will be amongst them in person and the inner voice will disclose My presence to



them .... And if they then want to serve Me, they will remain silent and not announce Me publicly, for I then I will only be present for the child which is united with Me in deepest love. I will be visible to this child yet remain hidden to the others if their spirit has not recognised Me as yet. Nevertheless, the hour is still undisclosed to you, for only your degree of love leads Me to you and into your midst. The legacy I gave to My Own on earth shall fulfil itself word for word, anyone who carries Me within himself shall be permitted to behold Me, and every word from his mouth will testify to My magnificence, and his voice will sound brightly if it sings My praises and honours Me .... And as soon as I dwell amongst you, My little children, you need never fear the suffering on Earth, for you will no longer feel it so much; one glance into My Fatherly eye and earthly suffering will no longer torment you. I come to My Own to give them this strength in order to defy the onslaught which penetrates them from outside. The spirit from Me instructs you so that you are likewise able to teach and to nourish and refresh the hungry and thirsty. And wherever you gather together to proclaim My Word I take part and give strength to those who speak in My name .... And thus it is I Who reveals Himself through a human mouth, for I choose My own fighters, and anyone willing to fight with and only for Me shall fight with the sword of his mouth, then he will be victorious in battle, since I will lead him into battle. He who beholds Me cannot help but serve Me with all his soul .... He fears no opponent, fear and despondency are nothing to him, for My image is indelibly carved in his

heart and, from then on, it will be the impetus for his highest display of will. And the world will recognise his strength with astonishment; it will oppose him and yet be unable to diminish his will, in constant battle as a courageous fighter he will show many a soul the way to the eternal light, for they will recognise the strength and power of faith in Me, the Saviour and Redeemer of the world ....

Amen

## **Cloud formation in the sky ... Christ's suffering and death ....**

***B.D. 1081 from September 4th 1939,  
taken from Book No. 20***

God, Lord of heaven and earth, will give you a visible sign to testify of His power and glory .... This has been preordained since eternity and will be revealed so obviously that you will marvel at this expression of divine omnipotence and love.

Insubstantial though this little cloud in the sky may appear; it nevertheless harbours a life comparable to that comprising your being. And God will guide this life in

accordance with His will too and will therefore arrange this cloud-formation with wise intention in such a way that the Lord's suffering and death can be easily recognised, and you will identify the One on the cross Whom the world wants to deny .... you will either be seized by horror or shout with joy, depending on whether you reject Him or harbour Him in your heart. The latter will pause in prayer whilst the former, being distant from Jesus Christ, will want to forget this image. And this is what the Lord wants .... He wants to give human beings a sign of His mercy and love to assist their faith .... to either resurrect faith in Jesus Christ as Saviour of the world if they have lost it, or to cause the same to grow into unyielding strength. And humanity will yet again try to disprove this wonder of divine love; it will interpret it as an appearance formed by chance and without meaning .... and will want to dismiss divine providence.

Yet, defying all human explanation, the formation in the sky will remain unchanged for the entire world to view .... And thus even the people whose opinion prohibits any belief in mystical phenomena will become thoughtful. The time has come when humanity can be offered unusual appearances without coercion into faith, because humanity's thinking has become so dispassionate that they will explain every appearance rationally, i.e. intellectually, no matter how curious it is, denying all spiritual intercession by unknown powers ....

And thus humanity's free will is no longer endangered by such appearances .... indeed, scientific explanations are

far more acceptable than a statement that the formation is a sign from above. And again, only those who aspire towards God and are living in love will recognise this visible act of the eternal Deity; and therefore, once again, the grace of divine love will be presented to people which only few will recognise as such.

The Lord will briefly stop natural law and precisely this should make the scientist think, but when the desire to recognise pure truth is absent even the stars can leave their usual path and the sun lose its shine, it would not bend the hardened will of the human being, he would simply try harder to ascertain the laws of nature and thus ultimately deviate further still from true knowledge. Hence this sign, extraordinary as it may be, will indeed be a direct gift of grace but only for someone whose heart recognises the wonder of the appearance or starts to think about it. However, someone who makes no use of this gift of grace, who coldly views this phenomenon in the sky without any attempt to draw his conclusions, will merely regard it as blind chance of an exceptional nature. His heart is not yet compassionate and therefore not yet receptive for deeper wisdom either ....

Amen

# **Fulfilment of prayer ...**

## **Conditions ....**

## ***B.D. 1082 from September 5th 1939, taken from Book No. 20***

Whoever speaks My name in faith will receive the fullness of My strength and love in his heart. Behold, your body is earthly and everything surrounding you is also earthly in its outer form; but what is within you is, like that which is hidden in the outer form, divine substance, and this feels the input of My strength and experiences it as extremely benevolent. And for that reason you should always regard the spirit within you and disregard all outer appearances. After all, I gave you the form for the maturing of the spirit and will surely know how to maintain it as well. So why do you worry about it? ....

Whoever thinks of his soul and concerns himself with its welfare, his body really need not worry about the things it needs .... I gave you everything you can see in creation .... I gave you everything for a purpose .... If you fulfil this purpose you will have in abundance what you require for your body. And if you are anxious, call Me and mention My name with complete faith and you will not suffer earthly hardship .... Whoever trusts in Me completely already lives from My strength and is also master of worldly things because I place all strength into a trusting heart to turn it fully towards Me so that I can take possession of this heart ....

Understand this, My child .... All people on earth are allowed to simply voice their requests and they will be granted fulfilment, providing they call Me in their hearts,

believe in Me and sincerely love Me .... Because he who loves Me bows to My will, he who believes in Me does not doubt My power and love, and if he calls on Me he confesses his weakness and, like a fearful child, trustingly comes to the Father .... And I can fulfil his prayer, after all, I Am waiting for the call that arises from the valley of earth to Me. However, where one of these requirements is not fulfilled, where love, faith and trusting prayer are missing, the earthly child has yet to pass tests to find the path to Me. You so often want useless things and if I then don't answer your prayer you doubt and don't query the reason; you don't question to what extent you yourselves may be to blame for not finding fulfilment. Behold, when My true children express their requests to Me they also leave it to Me how to deal with their prayer because they always know that I would not let them go without if it was not necessary for the benefit of their soul. Nor do they ask for anything but what their heart dictates .... and are therefore already clearly guided by the spirit within themselves .... Thus the prayer of such a child always meets My approval and consequently will also find fulfilment. And if you feel the need to ask for something that serves the preservation of your earthly body, the Heavenly Father will surely not deny your request. My children are taken care of with much love and are supplied with everything they require whenever their faith tells them to call My name and to confide in Me because 'Whatever you ask the Father in My name will be given to you ....'

Amen

# Places of worship ....

***B.D. 1083 from September 5th 1939,  
taken from Book No. 20***

The buildings you humans created as permanent places for the worship of God hardly correspond to the Lord's will since thereby the actual worship of God within the human being's heart has been reduced to a minimum; far more importance is attached to external appearances in houses specially built for this purpose than to the internal contact of a person with the Heavenly Father. Yet this alone must be the foundation of all worship of God. Every action accompanied by a display of splendour lacks profound inwardness, and understandably so, since in so doing the human being is too involved with all earthly matter as to be able to form a simple and intimate bond with the Father in heaven. Where a visual representation intends to motivate something of a spiritual nature there is always the danger that everything visible will be observed and the spiritual aspect neglected .... The earthly child can, in fact, only attain inner calm, inner spiritualisation, when all visual things and those which affect the senses are completely excluded .... Every person has to make an incredible effort and be constantly on guard that earthly longings and earthly thoughts will

not gain the upper hand, for to the same degree as they increase the will for the spirit recedes, and then it will be extremely difficult to establish an innermost spiritual contact.

Therefore it is understandable that also all ceremonies, all rites, which effectively intend to illustrate to people something of a spiritual nature are especially suited to externalise a person or make him become superficial. If the human being aims to spiritualise himself of his own accord he will understand how persistently he has to fight against all external influences .... how he must time and again try to disregard everything that goes on around him in order to be able to completely entrust himself to the state of pure spirituality. And all this is not possible in a place where so many people congregate and where rites are regularly performed which require a person's complete attention but which, on the other hand, divert his attention away from that which alone is important before God .... The human being should not entertain the thought that it will count as a sin if he does not comply with these ceremonies .... The Lord only acknowledges the depth of faith, the degree of love and the earthly child's absolute submission to its Father .... and anyone who endeavours to do so need not fear the Father's Judgment either .... he will conduct himself as it pleases the Father and he will look for the core in everything but not for the outer shell .... The Lord takes no notice of the perfectly devised procedures which are nevertheless purely externally conducted but do not touch the core of



the matter, because the internalisation of the soul requires a **continuous** connecting-oneself with the divine Lord and Saviour. And the designated times for the worship of God do not suffice in the slightest to achieve maturity of soul .... Instead, the earthly child has to show God the Lord his love, veneration and his gratitude every hour of the day and constantly strive for spiritual deliverance .... And specified ceremonies are truly not suitable for this, for they are more likely to make the human soul indifferent and even leave it in the mistaken belief that it has complied with divine will. And this is, in view of the spiritual standstill or regression, extraordinarily regrettable, since the human being should make use of every hour in order to work at improving himself and his soul for the purpose of attaining perfection ....

Amen

**Purpose of the work ....**  
**Numerical prediction ....**  
**Transmission of**  
**inconceivable**  
**significance ....**

## ***B.D. 1086 from September 8th 1939, taken from Book No. 20***

A momentous work shall be achieved with your co-operation, and one day the strangest opinions will be formed about the origin of this work, and it will be assumed that all documents could only have come about in that through concentrating on a specific school of thought a literary talent developed and that the work created was effectively the result of this mental concentration .... and that the working of supernatural forces was simply due to the writer's disturbed imagination. Now, however, the Lord is preparing something which will also make these doubters think. He determines the numerical extent of the work's total volume .... First 2000 (two thousand) chapters will be offered to people which will sufficiently explain everything needed for a person in order to teach uninformed people again. But after that the work will receive a specifically prepared proclamation which presents to people something completely new and extraordinarily informative, for anyone who faithfully accepts this proclamation will also recognise a special mission therein, which will become the writer's task. The Lord Himself will dictate Words which never before were given to the human race .... These are the Words the Lord spoke to His Own in His most difficult hour but which were never made accessible to the world, since until now humanity has lacked the cognitive faculty for these

Words. Jesus' activity on earth was recorded but not His very Words which are so profoundly significant that even a knowledgeable spirit cannot inspire them; instead the divine Lord and Saviour alone must be the Speaker of these Words ....

And in order to receive this transmission an extremely willing heart is required whose sole desire consists of being able to accept the Saviour within itself and which directs all its senses towards this sacred experience, and only under these conditions can a gift like this be imparted to the earthly child. The more tenderly this heart beats towards the Saviour the more clearly and understandably can this Word be imparted to it, for this requires an extraordinarily willing and receptive heart as well as absolute faith. And once this transmission has been given to the earthly child a mission of such incredible significance will have been fulfilled which you humans are incapable of assessing. This work shall survive for endless times and forever testify to God's infinite love and kindness for His children and to His forbearance, patience and mercy. After it is finished the battle against the divine Word will set in, and then it will become obvious and be revealed that no-one can refute this divine Word. And it will be willingly accepted where previously there was still opposition to it. And so the work will become established amongst humanity and convey strength and grace to all who do not close their mind to the proclamations and thus willingly receive God's grace.

Amen

# **Advantage of contact from earth to the beyond ....**

***B.D. 1094 from September 15th 1939,  
taken from Book No. 20***

It is extraordinarily advantageous to establish a true spiritual communication with the friends of the beyond, for it promotes the soul's maturity within a far shorter time. All spiritual faculties will more or less be employed and thus used properly, and this strength benefits the earthly child, for it considerably alleviates its own struggle for psychological maturity, and it will find limitless support on the part of the spiritual beings, which take an interest in supporting the earthly child in every battle, spiritually as well as worldly. Thus, such contact from the earth to the beyond offers an indescribable advantage and yet it is hardly noticed and valued .... Once someone has taken this path and placed himself under the protection of the spiritual guides he will be completely shielded against any spiritual relapse, he only needs to confirm his will in order to be well taken care of and then his earthly life will not be so difficult anymore, since all the burdens the human being has carried so far will be willingly shared by the guardians and not be felt as much by the person if he requests help

from the spiritual guide.

And thus it follows that in this time of suffering on earth the spiritual beings are especially very busy and active ... that they are trying everything in order to spiritually influence the human being's thinking and thereby make his life easier and thus act as true spiritual guardians. Such contact is good in every sense, after all, it comprehensively informs a person, thereby strengthening and enlivening his faith and thus contributing in every respect towards the fact that the person willingly disassociates himself from matter and eagerly involves himself with spiritual matters. Hence it is understandable that the spiritual beings very much like and welcome it when such a contact from earth to the beyond has been initiated and so doubly endeavour to always instruct the earthly child in a way that it will not tire or become weary in its decision to work its way up to perfection. It depends on the teachers as to whether a person's will then concentrates more on spiritual life, and that therefore threads will be established from the earth to the beyond which will survive every earthly crisis and which thus will have to take entirely different paths from that which affects the person in times of such earthly adversity. The human race is so very extensively influenced by the blessed spiritual beings, and they gladly accommodate even the slightest will, that such gifts from above should also be received with utmost joy, for one day people will realise how far more valuable it is to know this extraordinarily perfect information; they will

ever more eagerly look for contact, for the light beings' love is so concerned about the afflicted human race that on its part it does the only thing it can do .... it provides the earthly child with strength in abundance, and anyone who uses this strength will never be able to descend again, neither physically nor spiritually ....

Amen

# **Spiritual disintegration .... Raging of the elements .... Fertile ground ....**

***B.D. 1095 from September 16th 1939,  
taken from Book No. 20***

The picture of spiritual disintegration will become clearly visible at the dawn of the day when the great disaster strikes this earth. In times of danger people used to take refuge in God .... In this disaster, however, only a tiny fraction of humanity will remember Him, Who alone can bring salvation, and thus the low spiritual level will be obviously recognisable by the despair of people who don't know where to turn for rescue. And this is precisely why it is necessary for this affliction to come upon people, as it can still change their thinking to some extent, because the adversity will be inconceivable and

earthly help entirely impossible. Someone who lives with faith will not be frightened by the disaster to the same degree as the unbeliever, since he will always willingly hand himself over to his God and Father anyway. Yet there are only few of them, and these few will be unable to penetrate and induce the hearts of people into profoundly heartfelt prayer. Their obstinacy is so great and their arrogance even greater and these two are insurmountable obstacles for humble submission and appeals for mercy. The more furiously the elements rage the harder and more stubborn will be the spirit of those in the midst of it. And yet the Lord will take care of the few Who remember Him .... He will reward their faith so that they will give thanks and sing His praises, for the Lord will not abandon His Own, and He will lead them to peace and true life in eternity if they have to relinquish their earthly life, profess the Father and commend themselves to His mercy.

And so, do not feel sorry for those who have to surrender their life in faith .... bear in mind that He Who gives life can also take it away again .... and likewise, that He Who takes it away can also restore it again, yet far more beautiful and joyful than the most pleasant earthly life can be. Hence do not doubt God's love, mercy and justice .... Indeed, many innocent people will have to suffer with the guilty ones, yet they will be compensated for a thousand fold, since it has, after all, to be endured for the sake of so many misguided people. And, in fact, the wise Deity has also created a balance elsewhere

insofar as the country of the disaster will become extraordinarily fertile precisely because of this event .... and the people who survived by the grace of God will dedicate their lives to the Lord and thus will truly live for and within the Lord and also fight for His name. And this time will be the beginning of spiritual change, everything will be united through love and one person will lovingly help the other, and they will recognise God's love, omnipotence and wisdom; their deeds and thoughts will be right before God and the Lord will look with pleasure upon everyone who found his way to Him through suffering and is then of service to Him with all his heart ....

Amen

## **Deposing the earthly power ....**

***B.D. 1103 from September 21st 1939,  
taken from Book No. 20***

The spirit of anyone giving the world reason to live under constant threat does not demonstrate the love he should harbour within himself. Rather, it is the tribute of evil paid by the person spreading discord and controversy amongst humanity. People are supposed to cultivate love



and peace and all should be like brothers to each other .... In its place bitter enmity is taken into homes which ought to shelter peaceful people; and a whole nation will be unworthy if the citizen of a country lives in spiritual bondage .... Enslaving those who should be treated like brothers is not sanctioned according to God's will.

Those who arrogantly dare to put laws into place which restrict personal freedom .... and this purely to push through a preconceived idea, will soon discover that they went to too far and that destiny will reverse itself for those who believe themselves to be in charge of it. Admittedly, at first it will appear as if the worldly power is successful but not for long, for all signs of the time point towards the end of the period when force comes before mercy. And even so, if it remains unfeasible that the weak gain respect on earth, then it is permitted by God's wisdom so that God's righteousness, His love and His Omnipotence will clearly manifest itself one day .... for He will intervene when the time is right .... You must let **Him** rule alone and He will arrange everyone's fate such that it will be bearable for the individual and with God's blessing and help bring his life to the right conclusion.

And now get ready to receive a revelation, the meaning of which you will not be able to understand today, and yet it shall be explained to you: Hence the Lord will have to forcibly intervene in the spiritual chaos, and the world will already anxiously evaluate the scale of the eternal Deity's intervention. And therefore it is it is permissible that a troubled nation's ruler will first have to taste the

miseres himself before he gets severely affected by world events. As yet he will still enjoy the height of his fame, as humanity continues to cheer him on, but once he has fallen no one will speak to him or on his behalf, for in times of hardship and most bitter adversity humanity forgets that it also owes him certain advantages, and thus it will come to pass that in the forthcoming time of hardship on earth a general uprising will be planned and implemented against the authorities, which will cause many a person's downfall, who saw himself in a leading position .... And the soul will make a decision .... it will let itself be guided by its sense of righteousness, it will recognise the mistakes and shortcomings but also the intention of those who long for an improvement of the whole situation and will content itself with less power in order to protect humanity from further calamities .... For the incredibly embittered people will demand their rights and request the removal of the one who brought such indescribable misery over humanity.

And the hour will come when rich and poor, young and old, high and low will recognise how much power this ruler had exercised and how level-minded those had been who had not let themselves be deceived by appearances .... And once this change of direction has taken place the earth will only remain as it is for a little longer, in order to then receive a completely new appearance as a result of a huge disaster, admittedly not everywhere but noticeably in all countries which were united by the world conflagration and which contemplate

mutual destruction. And this will be a dreadful day followed by a dreadful night, for the Lord waits with utmost patience, but if it is ignored events will take place on earth and affect everyone .... according to merit .... For God's justice will not leave anyone on a throne who does not warrant his status .... and likewise elevate those who have always been faithful to Him, not for the sake of earthly reward but for love of the divine Creator .... Everyone's fate has been determined since eternity, and the Lord is merely implementing what is proclaimed in Word and Scripture, so that humanity may recognise the truth of these predictions and take them to heart ....

Amen

## **New spiritual kingdom .... Prophet .... New human race ....**

***B.D. 1107 from September 23rd 1939,  
taken from Book No. 20***

Humanity will have to recognise its true Salvation in a completely new spiritual direction and it will loudly testify that this alone was its deliverance from all adversity. A tormented human race, afflicted by all kinds of distress, can release itself from utmost earthly

torment by changing their innermost being .... by consciously working to improve their soul's life. This way of refinement also results in an improvement of their earthly situation. Only the low spiritual level is the cause of all physical ailments, and the latter will be remedied as soon as the human being makes a spiritual effort to do justice to divine will. The human being's spiritual darkness has such dreadful effects, countless souls walk headlong into ruin and can only be saved by an extremely arduous earthly life.

And in this hardship of the souls the Lord will awaken a man whose soul is filled by the spirit of God .... He will so speak of God that anyone who recognises him as a spiritual saviour of countless misguided people will breathe a sigh of relief. He will be fought against, yet his Word and its might will defeat the enemy .... He will fight for the souls, he will preach about love and ignite hearts by encouraging them into spiritual cooperation .... He will offer people the purest divine teaching, and everyone willing to do what is right will recognise which spirit speaks through him. He will not fear earthly power nor exert force by any means but with infinite patience and love explain to people their wrong way of life, their worldliness and their downfall .... They will listen to his Word and take heart from it, they will withdraw within and recognise the truth of his Words .... They will want to protect him from his pursuers, and soon two sides will emerge and argue with each other ....

And the Lord will impart great strength upon those who

support him, whilst the power of those opposing him will diminish. And this will be the beginning of the new kingdom .... And blessed is he who listens to his inner voice and defends what he hears .... blessed is he who joins the army of fighters for God and battles against the opponent's world .... The tortured soul will breathe a sigh of relief for having been saved in the last hour ....

And a new age will dawn .... The world's external appearances, glamour and splendour will not be desired as much as before, the human being will strive for psychological maturity, he will strive for spiritual wealth and will long for gifts from above which the world cannot offer him. And from this time a new human race will emerge which will be the bearer of true Christianity, living in love for God and their neighbour, they will recognise the human being's purpose and thus consciously work at becoming perfect, the soul will unite itself with the spirit and find union with God as Father and Creator of all things in order to be united with Him for all eternity ....

Amen

**Faith is the first condition  
for truth ....**

***B.D. 1134 from October 12th 1939,***

## ***taken from Book No. 20***

Regardless how conscientiously a person endeavours to know the truth, its certainty is not guaranteed as long as his striving is not based on profound faith. Without the latter, everything presented and accepted by people is interspersed with error .... In contrast, the slightest thought in faith will also result in purest truth. And then a person should pay attention to the abundance of thoughts flowing to him, if he, in faith of God, deliberates on any subject .... In a manner of speaking, he will be grasped and most profound knowledge will be imparted to him, and he can be assured that it will be purest truth, for this is the fundamentally inherent way of thought transference that a person questioningly turns to the teaching enabled beings when merely a thought desiring clarification arises in him. The only way for a correct instruction is the questioning desire, which will be instantly answered. Who is the only one to clarify all things? Only the divine Creator Himself, and He does this by giving the beings of service to Him the task of informing every living creation of what they desire to know. Every person's train of thought is the result of a more or less strong will for truth. For God Himself is the truth .... If a person desires the truth with complete faith in God then he also desires God Himself. This desire of the person's spirit for God also establishes the connection with the divine spirit, and thus the spirit in the human being will be instructed by the divine Spirit Itself and can therefore only receive purest truth .... However,

where, vice versa, the same desire prevails but without faith in God, the Deity cannot make contact with the person's indwelling spiritual spark and thus the adversary avails himself of the opportunity of transmitting his will to the person and leads him into error and wrong thinking. The inner link with God safeguards every communication .... anyone who calls upon God, opens his heart and listens to the answer will only be able to hear absolute truth, for God is willing to give wherever a faithful heart requests divine gifts, and truth is always and forever a gift from above ....

Truth can only come from above but never arise from the abyss .... And thus people are wise to consider the divine Lord in every question, for truth can only be provided by the One Who is Truth in Himself .... And again, no earthly child will appeal for it in vain, since the Father in Heaven will always guide His children into truth .... Hence the spiritually perfect beings must also manifest themselves as bearers of truth to those who want to receive truth .... they must not encounter any opposition if they want to express themselves and this, in turn, requires profound faith in God again, in spiritual strength and their transfer of thoughts to the human being. Faith is therefore the first condition without which a truthful conveyance of knowledge is unthinkable .... Once a person has found this simplest of solutions, whereby his correct thinking is guaranteed, he will neither be tormented by doubt nor downheartedly and hesitantly scrutinise such transmissions for their truth .... but he will

unconditionally accept what the spirit imparts to him, since his attitude towards God assures him correct thinking after all .... By comparison, a person who constantly longs for worldly things will not desire truth .... He instinctively feels that worldly pleasures and the fulfilment of cravings cannot be the purpose of earthly life .... but does not want to admit to it, and thus he also shies away from strictly searching for truth in all aspects of life, and precisely this deliberate avoidance of truth results in the fact that the prince of lies gains power over his soul. The eternal Deity can send little help to such a soul since the same opposition will also result in the same evil influences again, because God, the eternal Truth Himself, wants to be acknowledged and therefore faith is the first condition in order to attain the truth ....

Amen

## **Natural phenomena .... Temperature .... Star .... Predictions ....**

***B.D. 1153 from October 30th 1939,  
taken from Book No. 20***

Time flies and people don't change their mind; untold souls will perish, unless the Lord still offers them His love



in the last hour, when He will bring the horrific destruction of all worldly things home to them .... And therefore pay heed to days which will significantly differ from the usual time of the year. The lower the sun stands the brighter will be its shine and extraordinary heat will astonish people .... This will give rise to all kinds of assumptions .... People will look forward to the approaching time partly with cheerful confidence and partly with anxious reservations, and the human being will be inclined to acknowledge supernatural activity.

Yet only few consider their relationship to God .... They don't realise that God Himself wants to direct their thoughts to Him, they don't even try to look for a connection between Him and the extraordinary natural phenomena .... Indeed, they very quickly get used to it and don't derive the slightest benefit for their soul. For if only they would pay attention they would understand the call from above. But if they do not consider their relationship with the Creator, they remain earthly minded and don't accept any spiritual gift. And all these extraordinary natural phenomena are expressions of spiritual activity by powers which are subject to God and willing to serve Him. More spiritual currents will emerge and make themselves known to people in various ways, and yet people will not spend much thought on them, for the power of darkness has tremendous influence and fights against all spiritual recognition .... it tries to weaken the Divine, consequently humanity will only ever pay attention to earthly events and remain indifferent to

God's activity in nature, even though people clearly will be beneficially affected by them. Just a small number see God's hand reaching out to people and try to enlighten their fellow human beings, but they only acknowledge physically perceptible benefits and not an instruction from above that intends to cause a change of human thought. And in this time of well-being, caused by the sun's extraordinary effect at an unusual time, an event will take place which should even make spiritually blind people think ....

A star will separate itself from the firmament and change its path .... This star's radiance will far exceed all others, it will shine brightly at night and approach earth so that this appearance, too, is unusual for people and yet at the same time demonstrates that the Creator of heaven and earth is in full control and thus also dictates the movement of stars according to His will. Once this star becomes visible, humanity will be getting ever closer to the spiritual turning point .... It is offered so much spiritual assistance that it really only needs willpower to accept this help, yet it grows ever more obstinate, its thinking becomes ever more deluded .... And the time is not far away of which the Lord said on earth that the world will be turned upside down if the human being closes his heart to all spiritual issues.

The light will also shine where it is avoided, for the light's radiance will be so bright that it penetrates everything, and even the spiritually deluded person won't be able to avoid seeing, but he wants to reject it anyway, and thus in

the end he will be consumed by the light .... For everything bright, light and clear banishes darkness .... And the light will defeat the darkness in so far as darkness has to retreat once the light of truth breaks through. And lies and illusions will crumble but truth will last for all eternity ....

Amen

## **Human additions ....**

## **Attendance at church ....**

***B.D. 1375 from April 8th 1940, taken from Book No. 23***

Everything in relation to God has to result in success for a person providing he complies with or makes use of it .... It will have to lead to God .... but only if all requirements are actually adhered to. Formality, however, will not lead to success. It is merely easier for one person and more difficult for another to reach the objective, in as much as the latter has chosen to walk an exceptionally difficult path, whereas the other path is easier but can be an equally joyful service to God. Hence the human being is submitting himself to conditions which were not required of him by God. It is helpful to become aware of the individual teachings which were added by people to the

teaching of Christ. First of all, attendance at church was made a duty, which is not always spiritually beneficial but can also be soul-destroying.

The idea that the human being will turn more towards God by going to church is extremely misguided; instead he is far more at risk of turning what should be a profound inner experience into a habitual act. The true aspirant will look for God everywhere, his church attendance will certainly not harm him but he can find contact with God anytime and anywhere and will not need a particular place for it. Therefore it would only be necessary to hear God's Word if it is not made accessible to the person elsewhere, and this will only find God's complete agreement as long as the purpose of attending church is just the said imparting of the divine Word. All other ceremonial activities are embellishments which were more than less added by people and nowadays motivate the concept of a service to God, although something entirely different than attending such practices, which have nothing in common with the real work of the soul, is meant by serving God.

It is entirely unimportant and inconsequential whether and to what extent the human being will comply with the requirements which are prerequisite of belonging to the Roman-Catholic church. The church founded by Jesus Christ on earth has nothing to do with external appearances. In spite of its external manifestations its profound principles can certainly be recognised, and thus they need not be obstacles to recognising Jesus Christ's

true teachings and to living accordingly. Alternatively however, these external manifestations are not necessarily needed in order to be a true Christian in accordance with God's will. It is not difficult to see that people are put off precisely because of the many formalities, and Jesus Christ certainly did not consider that the achievement of eternal bliss depended on the fulfilment of humanly decreed commandments such as attending church regularly, taking part in an action which is likewise a humanly devised theatrical play that is of no benefit for and has no influence on the human soul.

People should consider that the Lord on earth objected to outward appearances, that He did nothing in order to emphasize His Word effectively, with the exception of miracles, which intended to prove His Divinity to people. However, He has never done anything that could justify or somehow substantiate the above actions today but they are mere humanly introduced formalities which have no other deeper meaning than what people had assigned to them. And this can never correspond with divine will, thus it cannot be required of people as evidence for complying with the teaching of Christ ....

Amen

# **Ceremonies ... Childship to God ....**

## ***B.D. 1376 from April 8th 1940, taken from Book No. 23***

Thus God's will was ignored and this resulted in a dire state of affairs which is seriously endangering the faith. Only few people understand the most important point, and these few certainly comply with the specified commandments but at the same time they are so in touch with the Lord that they are drawing strength from this bond which, however, is attributed by them to the fulfilment of those commandments. This misguided notion will not, in fact, harm their souls, but this strength can also flow to a person without outwardly recognisable ceremonies providing the heart seeks and initiates a union with God. Whereas ceremonies without a heartfelt union will not result in any kind of blessing.

It is also important to raise the question of childship to God. In accordance with dogma only a member of the Catholic church can lay claim to calling himself a child of God. This is a completely wrong point of view which cannot be justified. Anyone who tirelessly works to improve himself and thus strives for perfection, anyone who is always strictly examining himself and his actions, who is always trying to fulfil divine will, takes the childship to God seriously and will be regarded by the Father as His child. But obligations and their fulfilment will never be as valuable as a voluntary joyful service to God. Coercion will never activate one's own will.

Fulfilling the commandments in a state of duress is not

particularly commendable before God, but the least voluntary surrender to his Creator is an extraordinary step forward for a person's soul. And thus God has in fact always made His will known to humanity, but He has never commanded that His will should be fulfilled as a duty, because it is only of value to Him if the human being rises above himself and for the love of God accepts a certain amount. Because only then will the human will bend down and consciously strive to bond with the Father in heaven, only then will the child's relationship with his Father be initiated. The human being, like a child, will endeavour to be obedient to his Father in heaven, the child will love its Father and try to please Him and shape himself in a manner that the Father will affectionately draw him close to His heart, and thus the person is consciously striving for childship to God ....

Amen

## **Ceremonies ... Childship to God ....**

***B.D. 1377 from April 9th 1940, taken from Book No. 23***

Think of the people who are always trying to be righteous and just but who do not belong to any particular school of

thought. Their will is directed towards God, thus towards good, they merely lack the correct understanding, but this has to arise from deep within their hearts, and as with them, so also with every member of a particular school of thought. And this inner understanding is absolutely necessary for every human being, an outwardly manifested faith is of no use to him without it, alternatively however, inner understanding without such faith will also establish the person's correct relationship with God, the child's relationship with the Father. And this has to be striven for first. Although this requirement can probably be more easily understood and fulfilled due to the religious dogma of a church, non-affiliation to a particular church will not exclude it. Thus it should also be understandable that this relationship to the Father has to be established first in order to speak of a childship to God .... that the latter is not ensured by an affiliation to this or that church, but that the deep inner feeling of heart is always the crucial factor.

The concept of 'affiliation' can be very flexible but it cannot depend on mere appearances, such as the fulfilment of commandments which were added by people to the divine commandments .... the regular church visit, the stereotyped prayer, and the attendance of an act which can only have symbolic value unless it is brought to life by the most profound unity with the Father. However, it is considerably more valuable if the human being has a longing for God without being impressed by such formalities, because it will be easier



for him to come closer to the Father. Trustingly, like a child, he will hand himself over to Him. He will not need to remove as many barriers as rigid teachings and mystical actions establish before a person's spiritual eye, which give rise to the sense of distance from God in the first place, that God can only be reached in a roundabout way .... which is not easily overcome, when, in fact, a heartfelt thought of and the desire for Him will already give the earthly child the blessing of His loving affection. And besides, innermost emotion alone will reduce or increase the separation from the Father and not external actions which could also lack personal feeling ....

Amen

**Dispensations of providence are divine will .... Guarantee for highest maturity ....**

***B.D. 1386 from April 20th 1940,  
taken from Book No. 23***

It is the Lord's will that everything which lives subordinates itself to His laws, consequently nothing can happen that is not according to divine will as long as it

concerns events which affect a person by providence for the purpose of inner experience. The human being's will can never oppose divine will, he will never succeed in abolishing or changing what God has determined, for such is not within his power. The human being's will has to fall in line with it, he must effectively agree even if it does not correspond to his will, since this coercion signifies his guarantee to be able to achieve the highest goal, that is, he is thereby given every opportunity towards higher development .... Nevertheless, whether he makes use of it or not entirely depends on his will. But were the human being be able to shape his own destiny this guarantee would not be given, for he has no idea what his spirit needs and in which way it can be set free. Therefore, God Himself determines the fate of every individual person and arranges it such that His will cannot be counteracted because of lack of understanding or a rebellious will. And thus the divine Creator demonstrates with His laws the most loving care for His living creations; His wisdom recognises the state of every individual and He always aims to bestow upon everyone the greatest possible means of help through dispensations of providence which ensure spiritual progress.

The fact that so many opportunities remain unused is not due to the Creator's will but is entirely due to the human being if he pays too little attention to his inner life. Yet this person could also be granted a different life but he would never use it for the benefit of his soul, therefore he should never consider his immature state of soul to be

the result of his earthly destiny .... For even if God gave him the freedom to shape his own destiny he would remain on the same level since his will does not strive towards ascent. The same applies to those entities which, in full possession of their will, populate the world of the beyond and which are therefore free from all earthly weight. They, too, are subject to a certain law which they have to submit to. If they are perfect, they can only want that which is God's will .... And in the state of imperfection, the fate of the beings in the beyond is, like in earthly life, allotted to them such that it is most likely to contribute towards the soul's purification, realisation and advancement. Once again, divine will applies, and once again it is left up to them to submit themselves, i.e. their will, to divine will or to resist it, but they can never change this will or make it ineffective. One will rules all .... Everything that subordinates itself to this will of its own accord is redeemed .... yet damned are the beings which want to oppose the divine will .... For this intention will only end with their downfall. Divine will can never ever be excluded. Even where human will is at work accomplishing things which contradict divine will, it is only with God's permission that this human work succeeds in order to thereby bring help to a soul in spiritual distress, as nothing could ever happen which would be entirely against His will. For His wisdom, love and omnipotence determines everything that happens .... And this wisdom, love and omnipotence only ever wants what is best for every one of His created beings .... And therefore it is impossible for any being to oppose this

will. Only the shaping of its soul is left for the being to manage itself .... This is not compelled by the Creator in the slightest, and thus the being can use its free will according to its own discretion ....

Amen

## **Catastrophe .... Prediction ....**

***B.D. 1398 from April 28th 1940,  
taken from Book No. 23***

Undivided attention is necessary in order to be able to receive the following proclamation: Divine Wisdom has intended an event the effects of which will be dreadful. A disaster shall develop in the very near future which can neither be prevented nor diminished by way of earthly efforts. Countless spiritual beings will move into action and, on behalf of divine instruction, turn the interior of the earth into upheaval, the earth will split open and masses of water will burst through; an act of destruction of catastrophic proportions will take place which will bring indescribable misery upon the people who will be affected by it. And this will happen very soon .... For you humans will only deem yourselves powerful and safe from all danger for a little time longer; you only observe

world events around yourselves and feel secure and out of danger .... yet you forget that there is a Power in charge of everything in, on and above the earth.

And since you forget the One Who reigns in accordance with His will, He shall speak to you through the forces of nature and you will have to listen to Him, for you will be unable to escape His voice. You pay no attention to instructions from above, suffering on earth doesn't change your thinking, yet you will be unable to drown out the divine voice since it is stronger than all the noise in the world. And therefore it is proclaimed to you in advance, so that you will recognise the Lord when His voice resounds .... Admittedly, the world does not want to hear anything about it, it will try to control the great adversity with purely earthly means and constantly negate divine activity. And many will agree with this opinion and thus only see the misery but do not recognise the divine will which, for the sake of humanity's improvement, will expose whole stretches of land to destruction. And this time it will announce itself by the fact that a country will be affected by an unmerited pestilence which will subsequently get this country into very serious difficulties, and since no earthly help will seem possible anymore God Himself will step into action and instruct the elements of nature to intervene in earthly measures.

And whoever deemed himself great before will become small, for he will need all his resources in order to rebuild what was destroyed. People will be needed for

the reconstruction of his own country which, having previously flourished, will be desolate and bare and require many workers. And this is the time when people will reflect on different questions than before. For anyone who survives this time will truly enjoy God's favour .... He has testified to being united with the Lord .... in greatest distress he had sent his thoughts to the Father in heaven, and the Father answered the prayer of a human being who had recognised and found Him in most severe adversity. After all, He only sends severe suffering upon humanity so that it shall find its faith in God again .... And thus He will also have to forcibly raise the utterly destroyed faith again by demonstrating His omnipotence to people and showing the world that He is Lord over heaven and earth ....

Amen

**Mutual help from beings in  
the beyond for the care of  
misguided souls ....  
Suffering as aid ....**

***B.D. 1400 from April 29th 1940,  
taken from Book No. 23***

Spiritual beings are connected to each other by heartfelt love, and one is always ready to actively help the other in bringing salvation to unredeemed souls, because every mature spirit is living in love and unable to feel anything but love for every single being. When a being in the beyond wants to bring spiritual help to its protégé on earth many spiritual beings are instantly willing to take care of this person on earth, and an eager desire for his soul sets in. An indescribable number of obstacles have to be overcome which require the spiritual beings' patience and endurance, and during their pursuance of such a soul they make every conceivable effort in order to establish a spiritual bond. Many futile attempts are made before they succeed in motivating people to accept their transmitted thoughts, which are frequently rejected by people in as much as everything of a spiritual nature is laughed at and ridiculed. But nothing may prevent the beings from tirelessly continuing their attempts, and they do so with utmost joyous devotion. It is, after all, for the sake of helping the spiritual beings who are entrusted with the protection of people, because their love for them urges them to help. And, at the same time, every accomplishment generates a lot of joy in the beyond, because these beings know the suffering of the unredeemed soul. And if these souls are not taught the Gospel until they are in the beyond their resistance will not lessen until they have become aware.

In contrast, earthly life can achieve a relatively rapid change of mind if the beings in the beyond make the

most of every opportunity; and that they do so is guaranteed by their immense love for each other and their love for people. Whatever they can do in order to support each other in their spiritual work for the earthly children who are entrusted to them they will do gladly and joyfully, and thus they serve each other with love. And the strength of this love transmits itself to people, so that once in a while a sudden change occurs in them .... that they, for no obvious reason, will contemplate spiritual matters and thus listen to the whisperings from the beyond, and then the beings' effort will be successful. Because loving action overcomes the worst opposition .... it just has to be applied with perseverance and patience. And this is guaranteed by the great love of these beings, for they are concerned that every person should reach awareness, and this concern spurs them into tireless activity and work to bring the kingdom of God close to people's thoughts ....

Amen

**Mutual help from beings in  
the beyond for the care of  
misguided souls ....  
Suffering as aid ....**



## ***B.D. 1401 from April 30th 1940, taken from Book No. 23***

Thus the spiritually perfect is incessantly working for the redemption of the imperfect, and love is always the motivating factor, because these beings' state of maturity also requires a sphere of activity, and this is what they are looking for on earth as well as in the beyond. Because unredeemed souls are suffering indescribable hardship which cannot be alleviated without active help.

Consequently, the beings in the beyond will most eagerly try to make contact with needy souls, and although it is frequently laborious and unsuccessful it may not be abandoned. For this reason the beings need to have an excessive amount of patience and love so as not to slow down in their work. Sometimes a simple reference to eternity can suffice to make the soul reflective, and then the connection has been made, since the friends in the beyond can then transmit their thoughts to such a thoughtful person.

However, if the being only has materialistic thoughts, on earth as well as in the beyond, such hints will fade away unheard .... it is always merely living in the present and does not consider its hopeless condition in eternity. Such souls are extraordinarily hardened and have to be made aware of their situation through suffering and pain. And even then the beings of light will not leave them, unrecognised by the poor souls but forever willing to help.

The beings on earth, too, are permanently surrounded by the bearers of light who would like to direct their train of thought towards the spiritual world. But their love is frequently rejected .... their help is turned down, and the human being remains in the same state which will result in a pitiful fate for him in the beyond one day. In the knowledge of this impending hardship the beings will not leave the people who are entrusted to them for as long as they live on earth. They are also frequently the cause of earthly hardship and suffering if they cannot find any other means to assist the soul. They are the cause of failures, ruined hopes and all kind of disappointments which are only ever meant to bring the futility of their earthly endeavours to their attention and to guide their thoughts into another direction. They recognise the worthlessness of everything the human being is trying to achieve and since it cannot be explained to them mentally, as it is firmly rejected, people often have to be forced to sacrifice what they are trying to achieve.

This task is not easy for the perfected beings because their emotion is love .... and love always wants to fulfil and give, it wants to give happiness and bestow joy .... and now has to take away and cause pain to the people they love. But the suffering awaiting them one day will be far greater, and in order to avert this from their protégées they often interfere in earthly life destructively. The final release of such beings can only be achieved by suffering if love is not awakened in them by seeing the suffering of their fellow human beings. This can very quickly result in

a change of mind. Their own suffering will not always lead to awareness, but having to witness the pain of their fellow human beings will make a person thoughtful and bring him closer to understanding. And then the danger for this soul will have passed, because the heart of a person who is able to love is not hardened and the influences of the beings in the beyond will not be unsuccessful. Hence people's suffering cannot be avoided as long as they haven't become conscious of the fact that they are living on earth in order to educate themselves for eternity. Only suffering will bring this thought close to them, and it is the only means of help available to those who are fighting for the souls ....

Amen

## **Mental activity ... Mind ... Images ....**

***B.D. 1417 from May 13th 1940, taken  
from Book No. 23***

The human being's thinking apparatus resembles the blank pages of a book as long as it is not active, that is, as long as the intellectual capacity is not developed yet, thus as long as the human being is not yet capable of formulating thoughts .... At the tender age of infancy, the

thinking organs are not yet active and it requires a certain time until the human brain starts to take in outside impressions. And this happens as follows: The human eye imparts an observed image to the human being's thinking apparatus, the brain, and this begins its actual activity by allowing the imparted image to take effect on a highly sensitive retina. This receives the image and conscious impressions occur which emerge in the human being as thoughts and effectively are thus retroactive effects of the image in the human brain .... Every impression, in turn, makes itself identifiable on the hitherto empty space of the cerebral cortex and can remain indelibly engraved for long times .... but it can also become unrecognisable through new impressions and vanish into the unconscious mind, hence no longer entering a person's consciousness. As long as the human being is alive, constantly new layers keep forming for the purpose of receiving and reflecting new impressions. However, the sensitivity increasingly lessens, therefore the images will no longer stand out so clearly in the receptive area and therefore are no longer able to impart the impressions to the thinking apparatus as strongly, which manifests itself as forgetfulness, as less intellectual capacity and as a reduction of receptivity for impressions which require a certain amount of concentration. Then the thinking apparatus will only work slowly, the external impressions are no longer capable of causing increased activity; the images will no longer be clearly imparted to the cerebral cortex and the whole mental activity starts to slow down .... The human being

will no longer be able to effortlessly and easily recall individual occurrences because the images have become indistinct and blurred, nevertheless, they will be able to describe earlier occurrences precisely because these images are indelibly and clearly inscribed in his consciousness and can even be brought to light from earliest childhood, because the thinking apparatus can be impressed by these clear images and thus every image appears in the form of thoughts.

The process of mental activity can be likened to a constant diving-down and fetching-up .... where it concerns earlier experiences. Countless images are engraved in countless thin layers, every empty and blank space has been covered by impressions imparted by the human eye, and countless spaces have been covered by mental images which a penetrating image from outside made appear again. The mental function of the designated organs is therefore an inherent activity, brought about through external impressions and implemented through the person's will to allow this or that image to take an effect on him. These images need not always penetrate him through the eyes, spiritual images can also trigger the same process, which the human being conjures up through his will and which thereby trigger an associated mental activity. These organs are therefore first prompted to become active through a person's will, and the thoughts subsequently take the direction which corresponds to the person's will. Purely earthly interests and imaginations will,

understandably, only impart these kinds of images to the cerebral cortex, and thus the mental activity will therefore express itself such that only thoughts which correspond to these earthly notions will dominate a person. The human being's train of thought is always in agreement with his will .... The will determines his mentality .... And this is why the human being is also responsible for his thoughts, since it is up to him to impart images to his spiritual eye, regardless of what kind they are. But he should not forget that too many earthly images reduce the capacity for impressions and that it is therefore to his own disadvantage if the mental activity reduces accordingly and, in the end, is no longer receptive to spiritual truths, i.e. mental transmissions. All thoughts will therefore only ever express that which moves a person most .... and thus the human being, having been furnished with all abilities by the divine Creator .... which also includes the mental activity .... is fully responsible for his thoughts, because it is up to him to formulate them according to his will ....

Amen

## **Divine intervention ....**

## **Prediction ....**

***B.D. 1418 from May 14th 1940, taken***

## ***from Book No. 23***

It is a futile battle which the people of the world are waging against each other, for it will not result in a satisfactory outcome. The Lord of heaven and of earth has decided that this shall be concluded in a different way to that which the world is hoping for. But this end will be indescribable. The battle noise will be drowned out by God's voice resounding from above .... It will cause tremendous confusion amongst people since no human command will be able to stop it, and people will be powerless and will have to submit to everything that is sent to them by the Lord. And then it will be left up to each individual person to recognise the hand of God and submit to it or revolt against his personal fate. For it is intended that people's thoughts shall be forcibly directed towards God, and blessed is he who finds this path and recognises God as the Originator of all happenings and commends himself to Him and His mercy.

Yet there will only be a few, for people are spiritually deluded, their modern explanations have made them lose faith in a Being Which determines everything on earth, and their lofty attitude makes it difficult for them to find the way back to God, and this spiritual arrogance will be their downfall. Only someone who feels small and powerless and calls upon God for help will keep his life, even if he will physically lose it .... Yet anyone who believes they do not need God's help will forfeit his mortal and spiritual life .... And even if God allows him to

keep his earthly life, it will only be an act of greatest mercy so that he shall still gain realisation on earth after all .... For the Lord knows the hearts of people, He looks into the furthest corners, He recognises every stirring and will not let anything perish that can still be saved. And anyone who calls upon the Lord for help within the midst of terror will feel a wonderful calm enter his heart, he will suddenly realise the worthlessness of earthly life if it is not accompanied by profound faith, and this realisation will let him willingly surrender what previously appeared desirable to him.

He will readily submit himself to the Lord and accept what he receives from His hand .... life or death .... However, he will only surrender his body in order to awaken to life in the beyond. And thus his departure from the world will not be his ruin but his resurrection into a better life. Divine will puts everyone in their place, He takes a person from the world when the time for his end has come, and He returns to the world those whose earthly life is not over yet .... For nothing happens arbitrarily but everything is determined by God's wisdom and love. Yet if a person cannot recognise God's hand even then, his soul will suffer serious hardship, for it will have no other means of salvation .... It has infinitely extended its distance from God during its earthly existence and strives towards the state of banishment again; hence its life on earth is utterly pointless, since it does not recognise God. And for the sake of such souls God will let His powerful voice be heard .... But if this call



also dies away unheard, the fate of these souls will only be eternal damnation ....

Amen

## **Omnipotence of divine love ... World events ....**

***B.D. 1456 from June 6th 1940, taken from Book No. 24***

Record the following: You humans have the wrong idea about the omnipotence of divine love. You use different guidelines to evaluate events which signify both suffering as well as joy for people. You only see the effects in an earthly respect but cannot even remotely imagine the spiritual effect of the necessity on one hand as well as the consequences on the other hand. You always base your judgment on human feelings, and this even makes the love of God seem cruel to you. Yet you are not aware of the agonising state which will await the souls one day were I to protect them from all suffering on earth and seemingly only bestow My love upon them. This love of Mine is so great that I want to spare My living creations the suffering in the beyond and thus let them suffer before in a state in which they do not feel this suffering so much.

And yet, you do not recognise My love and crave to quarrel with Me. You live in a world where sensual pleasure provides you with a certain amount of satisfaction, yet in the world of the beyond you will, if you are enlightened, strive for the union with Me.

Nevertheless, you first must detach yourselves from all matter in order to be able to unite with Me. But you are still very far from it, for you are still too captivated by matter and this to an extent that you still regard it as enticing. And thus I forcibly destroy what stands in your way to far greater happiness. I want to shorten your path on earth which you still have to travel in the body, I want you to learn to despise matter which is only an obstacle for you .... and you don't recognise My love .... you are still too strong-willed and don't succumb to divine will, which truly only considers you such as is helpful for your soul .... Always and in every instance try to imagine that My greater than great love is the motive for what I send or allow to happen to you, and you will learn to think differently. It truly gives Me no pleasure to watch My living creations suffer and thus I try to avert greater suffering from them .... You only ought to learn to look at world events around you from this perspective, which should be seen more as evidence of My love for you than an act of cruelty. Resist the thoughts which make you doubt My love, because it is only My love which makes Me act in a way that you appear to be the sufferers.

By yourselves you are too weak and don't desire enough strength which would help you overcome matter, and

thus I take care of your difficulty and remove the obstacle from the path of your higher development. I take all earthly possessions away from you precisely because this physical hardship makes you take refuge in Me and thus look for heartfelt contact with Me, and then My infinite love will take hold of you .... and My infinite love will help you prevail. However, until you have entrusted yourselves to Me the loss of your earthly possessions will be painful to you, and thus you are still in an enslaved state, you are still too attached to matter, and you still don't recognise Me and My love sufficiently. And you are even inclined to wanting to deny Me altogether, because you look at all happenings from an earthly point of view and fail to consider to what extent the spiritual necessity exists so as not to let you perish. The danger of your spiritual downfall requires My intervention in a way that you doubt My love .... But I only have your spiritual well-being at heart, and every happening is intended to bring you this spiritual happiness. Therefore you should confidently submit yourselves to My guidance and humbly and obediently accept your fate from My hand and it will be a blessing for you, and one day you will thank Me that I have thereby averted from you far greater suffering in the beyond ....

Amen

## **Love between one person**

# **and another ....**

***B.D. 1459 from June 7th 1940, taken from Book No. 24***

What you human beings call love is a feeling of togetherness which God wants and therefore need not be denied before Him. God Himself has planted this feeling into your heart in order to make you happy as well as to bring Himself closer to you, because deeply felt affection for another human being must simultaneously be love for God, since the former is God's living creation after all and thus not only is the living creation the object of this deep affection but also the Creator Himself. Hence you show the Eternal Creator the same love which you give to His living creation. However, this love should be giving and not desirous, or the desire should be the same as love ....

God created His living beings for mutual happiness, one should serve the other, hence give to him what he considers to be desirable himself, and if he asks for love from him he should also give love. This is what the Lord wants, Who would like to give His love to His beings in the same way and therefore also requests to be loved by them. If the human being only looks for worldly advantage his love will not be true since it will arise from selfishness which is not of divine origin. In that case the adversary will have placed the feeling into your heart to weaken your will and to take notice of your body's desire.

Then everyone will try to take but not to give. And then love will have no beneficial effect either. Because it is the love for the world, the love of the senses .... it is not a feeling wanted by God but the way of the adversary to make you fall. Then you will erroneously give the instinct, which dominates you, the name of love, but instead it is desire and selfishness and not unselfish love which is gladdening.

Those who originated from God should find one another again and jointly strive towards God in order to support and guide each other on the path of ascent. And this love should express itself in the longing for each other, the human being should experience the other person's presence as God's most delectable gift with radiant happiness, his heart, full of gratitude, should praise the Creator, Who will send him a ray of His light of love. And their mutual love should give rise to good thoughts and cause good actions. This love is entirely in accordance with God's will, it causes happiness and elation .... it does not demand but gives .... it is from God and leads back to God .... it knows no boundaries and will continue to exist for eternity. For if it is of God it cannot be restrained, it will always and forever mean happiness and joy and remain unchanged since it is something spiritual which emanates from God, which does not affect the body but the human being's soul and thus it will not be felt by the body but by the soul. Love is the strength which benefits the unification of the spiritual beings and therefore meets with God's complete approval ....

Amen

# **The spirit of heartlessness ... Divine intervention ...**

***B.D. 1464 from June 9th 1940, taken  
from Book No. 24***

The spirit of heartlessness rules the earth and its inhabitants, and the opponent has become victorious over countless beings whose lives are devoid of all love. And countless people are thus driven into the chaos he has caused and which became feasible precisely because of this heartlessness, which aroused inconceivable hatred and discord amongst people. People have lost all common sense for they are guided by the spirit of darkness, and this also keeps people's thinking enslaved or distorts it such that they no longer know what they are doing. Humanity has indeed rarely subordinated itself to the opponent's will so thoroughly as is the case now, and therefore the countermeasure will have to be exceptionally harsh too, if a higher spiritual state is to develop and people's present-day spiritual delusion remedied again. And so this spiritual hardship requires divine intervention, and divine love and wisdom are

aimed at using an event for the sake of removing this hardship which, admittedly, makes humanity doubt divine love and wisdom but which is nevertheless the only option left to save people from certain ruin.

People remain irredeemable; they cannot be persuaded in any other way to accept the faith and they comply even less with the commandment of love for God and their neighbour .... And then again, the human being has to acquire the right way of thinking if he is to be spared the adversity of the approaching time and his earthly life left to him. For the divine intervention will befall people with elemental force, no one will be prepared for it who has not united himself with God beforehand. And there will be a panic which only God Himself can avert again if He is sincerely called upon to do so. Yet people will lack the faith in God. For even those who live with faith and love will be stricken by anxious doubts since they, too, will very clearly hear God's voice. Their spirit will certainly take refuge in God, yet their soul will fearfully and with dismay await the events which are yet to come. They will barely be able to comfort their fellow human beings and will have to struggle for faith themselves, yet God will support them so that they shall not waver in their faith. But those who don't recognise God will look for rescue on earth and find no help.

They have to change their thinking or become victims of the elements which are instructed by God, the Lord Himself, to serve Him. There will be indescribable confusion, since only the most extreme adversity can still

bring about a change in hardened sinners .... only the fear of losing their earthly life will make people soft and submissive and willing to pray. However, without prayer no gift of help can come from above, for only prayer provides the certain guarantee that God Himself will take care of His earthly children and release them from all anguish. And the hour will seem awfully long to people who see everything they found desirable up to now fall prey to destruction. And yet, people cannot be spared this hour since all of God's love and kindness has been rejected and there is no other possible way out of the spiritual adversity. Again and again God's forbearance has postponed this event, but finally His prophecy shall be fulfilled .... For the time has come when extreme weakness of will and unbelief can only provoke this catastrophe. The time is near which the Lord has announced through His Word when He lived on earth and referred people to this time of apostasy from God. For His Word is eternal truth and will come to pass, down to the very last letter ....

Amen

**Perfect spiritual order ....  
Disorder ....**

***B.D. 1469 from June 13th 1940,***



## ***taken from Book No. 24***

All imperfect spirit causes some disorder in the world because all order is perfected spirit, it behaves in accordance with divine will, and God's will is order and perfection. The disorderly condition can never be something divine, therefore, the beings who are in God's ordained state .... that is, who are within divine order, must carry the divine will within themselves, that is, they have to live in accordance with God's will first if they want to come closer to God. Immaturity, however, aspires towards God's opposite goal, it conforms to the will of the one who wants to destroy all divine order. However, this disorder can only be evoked when the imperfect spirit is in possession of free will, that is, when it is embodied in a human being, since prior to that divine will determines every activity of the being and therefore this activity has to be orderly too .... which is expressed throughout the entire work of creation which exists in God's ordained order and cannot arbitrarily be transformed by a God-opposing will. Earthly life, however, is at the mercy of the human being .... And thus the human being creates his own state of order or disorder, all depending on the attitude of his free will. A life in closeness to God with the surrender of one's own will must understandably proceed orderly, it must completely correspond to divine will. The human being obviously cannot violate God's will as long as he subordinates himself to it. Consequently his conduct also has to be in line with God's ordained order, he can't help himself but aspire to what God wants ....

Hence, whatever is directed against this order has to collapse as a result, as it signifies disorder. All order incorporates within itself the guarantee of continuation whilst it is in the greatest interest of the representative of disorder, the adversary, to destroy everything, and for that reason he provokes an enormous disorder. It is now also understandable that human thought becomes completely chaotic when it expresses itself in some destructive form or another during earthly life. The impulse of preservation will always be divine, the impulse of destruction always satanic. Whoever complies with the inner urge to destroy, consciously submits his will to God's adversary who wants to annihilate God's work of creation and who uses the immature spirit to triumph against God. He besets the spirit, he tries to weaken the human being's will to act in a God-opposing manner, i.e. to disregard and attempt to destroy what God in His wisdom has created. And this is contrary to divine order. Everything in existence serves to mature the imperfect spirit. Every desire to destroy any kind of creation interferes with God's will, Who gave all spirit a certain length of time and will only release it from its form when the spirit within the form has matured, i.e. when it has become capable to live through the next stage of embodiment within God's ordained order.

A being which is prematurely disturbed in the process of higher development wants to escape its form or take its abode in an external form that is unsuitable for its state of mind and this, since it lacks the necessary maturity,

would be the start of an unimaginable disorder which would have horrifying consequences on earth as well in the entire universe. Because everything would be at the mercy of the immature, God-opposing spirit. There would be an open contest against God which would rage against all divine wisdom if God didn't prevent it. For that reason, i.e. to maintain divine order, the will of the immature being prior to incarnation as a human being is constrained, whereas the danger in earthly life is that the opposing will results in an unparalleled chaos, a confusion of human thought which can cause the most incredible disorder.

And all virtuous spirits fight this disorder because God Himself uses no coercive measure as hindrance and allows the immature spirit complete freedom of will, nevertheless, it will always be a sin to oppose God's will. The being violates divine law .... which in itself is order .... when it enjoys changing this order into disorder. Because it then subordinates itself to the will of the adversary who longs to destroy everything that God has created .... He will not succeed, nevertheless merely the determination to do so is the greatest offence against God's love, wisdom and omnipotence, it is rebellion against God and therefore results in the most dire consequences. The spirit who rages against Him cannot enjoy freedom as long as it defies divine will and divine order. As long as it refuses to fit into God's ordained order it is not free ....

Amen

# The raging elements of nature ....

***B.D. 1473 from June 15th 1940,  
taken from Book No. 24***

The magnitude of the Almighty will become apparent at a time when the elements of nature rage and cause indescribable damage. Then the hour will have come when people's spiritual decline becomes visible for nothing will remind them of God, nothing will move them to pray, for they will have lost their belief in a God and thus will not call upon Him in their need. Hence humanity cannot stay on earth any longer, for it fails to consider its actual purpose of earthly life and only contributes towards destroying the faith of the few people who are not yet entirely estranged from God, causing them to abandon God as well. God's love, however, will prevent the latter from being harmed and will therefore forcibly terminate the lives of those who threaten to endanger the souls.

And there will be great distress when the raging of the elements begins. It will be like a storm which threatens to destroy everything; people will be unable to defend themselves against it for they are like fragile stalks which get bent by the gales .... They will want to flee yet be

unable to escape the elements, without God's help their resistance will be too feeble, yet a heartfelt call to God will restrain the power of the elements, and anyone who entrusts himself to God in his peril will be saved. But God will be very close to you during this disaster, He will affect everyone's thoughts and for the last time offer you His hand so that you may take hold of it and let yourselves be saved .... Yet He cannot force your will, you must voluntarily acknowledge Him and desire His help. There is no other way to lead humanity out of spiritual darkness into the light other than through an event caused by natural forces which create such turmoil in people that no one can escape it. Confronted by these natural elements they will have to recognise their helplessness; they will have to lose all other help so that they realise the end of their physical life, only then will there be a slight prospect that they will remember the Lord Who is entitled to all power and Who controls heaven and earth.

God's living creations separated themselves from Him and have remained separate from God for an infinitely long time, yet a moment of extreme crisis and danger can bridge this separation. The soul can return to God, and as a result will even thank God for the indescribable suffering which brought it to its senses. Yet this moment when the soul directs its will towards God cannot be forcibly induced by God in spite of greatest love. God's love has tried everything to bring salvation to the souls and point them to the path of ascent. Yet people's will

was strong and God cannot break this will but only affect the human being such that he changes his will himself and turns it towards God. This natural event is thus the final attempt to influence the human will in the most favourable way. But this natural event will also be so powerful that His Own will need great strength in order to remain firm in faith; and everyone who pleadingly sends his thoughts up to God will also be given this strength, for the Father knows the adversity of His children and will lovingly support them if they are in danger of wavering. For His kingdom on earth shall remain, and extensive work will have to be carried out in order to proclaim the divine kingdom to those who had found God and desire His Word. And this is the time the Lord is thinking of by making His Word accessible to people already ... the seed shall fall unto good ground and yield rich fruit on the field which the Lord first wants to purge from all weeds ....

Amen

**Forgiveness of sins ....**  
**Infallibility ... Routine**  
**actions ....**

***B.D. 1482 from June 20th 1940,***

## ***taken from Book No. 24***

The alleged act of forgiveness of sins is only the symbol of what the Lord taught on earth. It is not at all necessary to fulfil a formality because the forgiveness of sin depends entirely on how guilty the human being feels before God and on confessing this to Him in heartfelt prayer by appealing for His mercy and forgiveness of his guilt. Formality is once again only a danger to the soul because an act will be mechanised which is, or should be, far too intimate to be made outwardly identifiable. The act of public confession of sins can lead to superficiality, in as much as the person more or less follows a routine act without being so internally united with God that he has a need to confess his guilt of sin to Him. Everything you do for the sake of your soul's salvation should be alive, and a ceremony like that can easily result in a lifeless act because not all people are infused by God at the same time in order to reveal themselves to Him in all their weakness and guilt of sin. But this is a prerequisite for the forgiveness of sin, all external acts are mere symbols of what corresponds to God's will but not the accomplishment of divine will.

When the spirit of God draws your attention to the danger you place yourselves in, you should not oppose it but be grateful to your Heavenly Father with all your heart for guiding you correctly, because you waste a lot of strength by fulfilling external formalities, which you should use for your inner progress. A heartfelt thought of devoted

love will bring you infinitely more blessings than the eager fulfilment of ecclesiastical commandments, which were given to people without God's approval. The representatives of these teachings once again took refuge behind a humanly evolved doctrine about the infallibility of the head of the Church in regards to spiritual laws.

Everything given to people from above is purest truth; however, through His messages from above, God is only expressing His will but He will never want to control or use coercive measures to make people obey. Because this would be in complete contradiction to divine love and wisdom's emanated law of the beings' voluntary deliverance. A humanly decreed commandment is an interference with divine ordinances .... commandments which impel people to commit actions, although officially their own will is prerequisite, will never be considered right by God. The human being's will cannot routinely carry out its activity, in that case it is no longer free but already bound by the will of the person who, as a result of such commandments, allocates a specific time for people to perform their duty.

This is an immense human error which threatens to stifle the developing delicate seed of inner longing for God, unless a human being's loving actions become particularly dynamic and spiritual enlightenment suddenly makes him realise God's true will. Only then will he be able to liberate himself from a teaching which, due to human contribution, already deviates considerably



from the teaching given to people by Jesus Himself on earth. The human being usually strives to fulfil his obligation, and this is the greatest danger for the soul .... For it does not consciously strive for perfection since it is effectively given a plan which it aims to implement, and by following the groundwork done by other people it is neglecting its own psychological task but is convinced that it is living a life which is pleasing to God, the Lord ....

Amen

## **Concern for the souls' salvation .... Utterly unselfish neighbourly love ....**

***B.D. 1504 from July 5th 1940, taken from Book No. 24***

Every undisturbed hour should be used to work for the benefit of the human race .... Spiritual wellbeing should take precedence over earthly interests, because there is no time to lose. The demon likewise makes use of every opportunity to spiritually damage the human race, and so the opposing power must constantly be at work in order to prevent his actions; good spiritual forces must unite in

their work against this power, and thus neither indifference nor carelessness may arise, which would only serve the adversary's purpose. For then he will only intensify his activity, he will also weaken people's determination and wear them out if they do not diligently work against him .... What's more, it is a transgression against the commandment of neighbourly love if people slacken in the battle for the salvation of souls which are in need of help. It should be your greatest concern to help those who are approaching their spiritual downfall. Don't leave them in their spiritual darkness and turn away from them indifferently, for they need your help. They are weak and no longer able to release themselves from the power of the opponent. In their dark and lightless surroundings they do not recognise their soul's adversity and therefore do not desire light. Even so, you should make an effort to kindle a small light and bring these poor souls a tiny glimmer of it, so that they will take notice and pay attention to your activity. You should leave no stone unturned in changing their indifference of spiritual knowledge into interest; you should show their thoughts the right path, you should educate them and beseech them to remember their soul and to understand the meaning of life; you should try to persuade them to have faith in Jesus Christ and explain that a life of love on earth is far more beneficial than only to live for selfish love, for the fulfilment of earthly wishes. You should not withhold anything from them which made you find the path of ascent; you should acquaint them with the teaching of Jesus Christ and the fact that they can only

ascend through kind-hearted service. You should do everything possible which can guide these souls out of the spiritual night into the light of day. Then you will be kind-heartedly active in the truest sense of the word. This is the most unselfish neighbourly love because it only applies to a fellow human being's salvation of soul. This task requires infinite love and patience, for it is very difficult to persuade the beings in darkness to accept the Word of God; they will staunchly resist it, because the opponent himself is your strongest adversary and incites people's will into most powerful resistance.

Nevertheless, a person's love can be victorious if these souls are tirelessly and patiently fought for with these very means of love .... Not the external person but the soul needs to be paid attention to, which is in a pitiful state and can no longer muster the strength to release itself from the opponent's shackles. Hence the love of an enlightened person, that is, someone who knows the truth, will recognise the adversity of such souls and not slacken in his effort for them. He will try to help them through heartfelt prayer, he will present this soul's hardship to the Father in Heaven and appeal to Him for strength to accomplish the redemptive work, if his own strength is not sufficient and the person's will begins to tire before the soul has been won over for eternal life. Therefore you should constantly be active with love, and give all your love to your fellow human beings' souls which suffer adversity. Don't let yourselves be depressed by failures but always desire the strength from God, then you will be able to solve the most difficult tasks, you will

snatch the souls from the opponent and lead them to the heavenly Father, and these souls will be grateful to you for all eternity ....

Amen

## **Spiritual marriage to God ....**

***B.D. 1505 from July 5th 1940, taken from Book No. 24***

The spirit's union with the Father-Spirit is the most sacred act a person's life on earth can result in, for nothing more beautiful can happen to him. However, only a few people will attain perfection on earth, which is the prerequisite for marriage to the Lord. Hence a person must have become pure love and denounce all earthly pleasures, then divine Love Itself will fulfil his yearning, which cannot be compared to earthly happiness nor can it be physically felt to the same extent as spiritually. An earthly environment also requires earthly feelings ....

Marriage to God, however, is a spiritual process which can only be felt spiritually, it only manifests itself in an earthly way such that the human being is no longer quite as suitable for earthly life and constantly dwells in higher spheres. Consequently, this spiritual marriage will rarely

take place as long as the human being still has to fulfil his earthly task, because this prevents the merger for obvious reasons. It keeps the person on earth and constantly draws the spirit back to earth and its duties. On the other hand, however, the person's will is the decisive factor, and thus someone firmly determined to attain God can reach his goal as well and still do justice to his earthly task, providing he requests the spiritual strength he is entitled to and uses it to deal with the earthly work, thus providing the earthly child with time and peace to send the spirit entirely unimpeded into higher spheres where it can unite with the divine Father-Spirit. The process of unification may demonstrate itself in various ways, because every person feels differently, therefore that which is given to a human being as supreme happiness must also be perceptible in different ways. Spiritual marriage can gain the person the audible Word, that is, the moment when the voice within the heart sounds as clearly and as audibly as a small bell is the moment of spiritual union with God. And this voice triggers an inexpressibly blissful sensation, for God's love will have taken complete hold of the earthly child and will draw it to Himself. But the union may also take place without any visible evidence .... so that the living creation, being aglow with love for the Lord, will feel seized by divine Fatherly love and be blissfully happy, yet this is physically not perceptible, instead, it merely expresses itself in the ability of spiritual vision. This is a very happy state for the earthly child but often makes it incapable of complying with earthly requirements which, however,

leaves it unaffected, since it feels that its physical end is close. Spiritual marriage to God is almost always the sign of an imminent passing away from the world, but it will only be understandable to those who are also spiritually striving, whereas a purely earthly inclined person will merely pass an incredulous and unfriendly judgment, because his intellect is incapable of grasping a purely spiritual process ....

Amen

## **"Draw strength from My Word ...." Prediction ....**

***B.D. 1511 from July 9th 1940, taken from Book No. 24***

You should all draw strength from this Word of Mine. Consider that I Am coming down to you Myself in order to grant you support in your battle of life .... realise the fact that I will not leave My Own without comfort and strength if they are in need of it. Don't be content with only using My strength once, but want it all the time and it will flow to you in abundance. And thus I want to inform you yet again that you will be in desperate need of this strength, because the hour is not far-off which will deprive you of all sense of security, the hour which

should bring you close to Me if only you would think of Me in your adversity. Then you will definitely raise your hands to Me in prayer and appeal for My help, and it will be granted to those who respond to My call, which you can only perceive in your heart. You will feel My presence, you will realise the gravity of the situation you are in, and that will make you take refuge in Me.

Remain faithfully devoted to Me in this adversity and it will pass you by. And draw strength and comfort from this Word of Mine in advance .... Accept Me in your hearts beforehand, lessen your resistance to Me by consciously handing your will over to Me, and don't doubt but believe, for this faith will keep the immense adversity at bay even if you are in the midst of the event. For the sake of the world My omnipotence has to be clearly recognisable to everyone, for the sake of the world this major event will come upon you, revealing to you My will and My omnipotence. And its effect can only be eased with those who believe and trustingly confide their hardship in Me, for My will controls life and death, and My will lets people suffer if it is necessary or spares them if they hand themselves over to Me.

And My will shall also shape happenings such that events shall only mildly affect My Own who are loyally devoted to Me. For it has to befall humankind in order to lead them back to Me, as far as it is still possible and the souls are not yet entirely hardened and deluded. I Am concerned about these souls and therefore use the last means, which appears to be cruel and yet offers the only

prospect for their salvation. In order to make this hour bearable for My Own I give them comfort and strength through My Word in advance. Anyone who allows himself to be influenced by it will not fear the occasion. He knows about My love and care and puts his complete trust in Me .... he will not anxiously await the day but be fully confident of being led through all horrors. For I know My Own and My Own know Me ....

Amen

## **Infallibility .... Ecclesiastical commandments ....**

***B.D. 1514 from July 11th 1940, taken  
from Book No. 24***

You place too much significance on the infallibility of the head of your church, and yet you are hugely misguided. It was not God's will that His church should be arbitrarily formed by people and in accordance with people's will. Everything right and proper to maintain and spread His teaching was given by Jesus Christ Himself on earth to his disciples. He made the distribution of His teaching conditional on the individual's will to accept it or not. His gave precise guidelines which applied to everyone who



wanted to accept His teaching. These consist of the promises which were made on condition that people comply with the requirements of the Lord's teachings.

He always respected the free will of the human being. The human being should make his decision voluntarily and without external pressure and thus fulfil God's will. And to these people He promised eternal life .... Thus He only requires faith in Him and His Word when He says 'I Am the way, the truth and the life .... I Am the means, the law and the fulfilment .... anyone who believes in Me will have eternal life ....' His love wants to give something unimaginably wonderful .... eternal life. And for this He only requires people's faith and their will. However, it is not His will to burden humanity, who is already living in a constrained state on earth, with new sins .... The restraints of someone who truly believes in Jesus and His Word will be loosened, however, someone who does not believe is already punished enough by his constrained state because he has to remain in it for an eternity. Anyone who disregards the Ten Commandments given to people by God Himself, anyone who defies them, commits a sin, i.e. he disobeys God Who is love, because he disobeys the commandment of love. He does nothing to liberate himself from his state, instead he does everything to make it worse. Fulfilling these commandments is the only means of release, while infringing against them is the very opposite.

The dogma of infallibility, however, became a new lawgiver for people in as much as the God-given Ten

Commandments were increased by several more, so that the new ecclesiastical commandments more or less were added to God's commandments and failure to comply with these laws was considered to be as sinful as acting in opposition to the God-given commandments. And this error has an appalling effect. Because people now burden themselves with entirely irrelevant yet duty-bound actions which are quite unrelated to the commandment of love for God and their neighbour. And now they only focus their whole attention on keeping these ecclesiastical commandments and on releasing themselves from presumed sins .... Thus the sum total of their soul's task consists of complying with commandments decreed by people or to do penance for the guilt of the alleged infringement. And the soul's dreadful bondage, which can only be resolved by love, is ignored by them ....

If these commandments had been necessary, truly, the Lord Himself would have given and preached the fulfilment of these to His disciples on earth first .... Thus people tried to improve Christ's teaching arbitrarily and did not hesitate to give themselves divine approval for it. By deeming themselves to be enlightened by the Holy Spirit while still in a state far removed from it, they now decreed laws which could not be in accordance with God's will. These laws considerably reduced people's sense of responsibility for the God-given commandments due to the fact that the newly decreed commandments were now given the greatest attention, to an extent that

humanity now observes them purely automatically and believes that it follows Christ's teaching when it fulfils its imposed duty.

The truly enlightened human being is chosen by God to put a stop to this deplorable state of affairs, i.e. to reveal it. However, God can never have enlightened those who had decreed or approved such commandments. The infallibility of the head of the church is a distorted image of the outpouring of the Holy Spirit. Anyone inspired by the Holy Spirit will always have recognised the error of this set of laws but worldly-ecclesiastical power prevented them from correcting this momentous error. For these commandments did not come forth from the spirit of love .... Lawmakers had little interest in reducing the work for the struggling souls to achieve their final release. Rather, their motive for establishing these commandments was a craving for increased power and the will to lead people into a certain state of dependence, since at the same time the failure to observe the commandments was deemed to be a grave sin. True servants of God have always recognised this deplorable state and have wanted to confront it but the teaching of infallibility of the head of church is already too deep-rooted that it could be easily removed. And only someone looking for pure truth and asking God Himself for the truth and the spirit of inner enlightenment will be able to liberate himself from it ....

Amen

# **‘You are Peter, the rock ....’**

***B.D. 1516 from July 11th 1940, taken from Book No. 24***

Some gladness in receiving the following message is a prerequisite: the living faith is the rock upon which Jesus wanted to see His church built .... a faith so profound and steadfast like that experienced by Peter while the Lord was close to him. Thus Peter was an example for anyone who wanted to belong to the church of Christ. Because without this faith the teaching of Christ, i.e. His Gospel, could not be received .... Only faith affirms Jesus Christ and accepts Him as the Son of God and Redeemer of the world .... If people were to accept what the disciples were spreading across the world they first had to believe in a God of love, goodness and compassion, in a God of omnipotence and wisdom, in a God of justice .... Only then could His teachings penetrate them as divine will, hence profound faith was a prerequisite. All His disciples were profoundly faithful, and therefore they accepted His teachings very quickly and endeavoured to do justice to the divine will which He had revealed to them. And by doing so they penetrated the knowledge of divine truth ever more, and this also developed their ability to teach in accordance with God’s will which would never have been possible if they had lacked faith. Thus the Lord says

‘upon you I will build My church ....’ And His church is the community of those who want to follow Jesus Christ; His church is the small community of those who firmly and steadfastly believe everything the Lord has said and done on earth; who, for the sake of this faith, make an effort to fulfil God’s commandments, who desire eternal life and thus live earthly life in accordance with God’s will .... The church is a community of believers ....

And when people are profoundly faithful no power in hell could ever disturb this faith and exercise control over such utterly devout people who only seek God and acknowledge Him as their Lord and Creator. Profound faith in God will always overcome the power of the adversary, because anyone who lives in faith also lives in love, and love is the adversary’s harshest opponent. Hence nothing is more understandable than the Lord using the most devout of His disciples as an example, that He makes firm faith a prerequisite of belonging to His church .... that therefore Peter exemplified this faith and that Jesus Christ wants to count all those to His church who are also profoundly devout .... It is so easy to understand these words, and how are they understood by the world ....

Amen

**‘Go and teach all nations ....’**

## ***B.D. 1517 from July 12th 1940, taken from Book No. 24***

The adversary's greatest deception consists of clouding a person's thoughts and making them comply with his plans.

If, however, the person humbly asks for the divine spirit, his thoughts will be right and he will clearly recognise the meaning of these Words. He will also recognise that the will to dominate had to disable the working of the divine spirit, that his thinking was misguided and therefore a false doctrine had to develop, which seriously distorted the divine Word. And God did not stop the human being, He did not interfere with the person's free will .... He had taught the Gospel to His disciples and instructed them to pass it on by saying 'Go and teach all nations.' .... His disciples' profound faith was the guarantee for the working of the Holy Spirit, and hence the disciples could not teach anything but the truth. Thus the assurance of truth for a teaching servant of God will always be found in his profound, thus living, faith ....

He will be a true follower of Peter and the church which Jesus Christ Himself founded but which was not ever supposed to represent a worldly power, instead it was meant to be spread only spiritually throughout all the nations on earth.

God has never given people the task to establish an institution on earth and then, within the context of

humanly decreed commandments, to also include the pure divine teachings yet more or less demanding the compulsory fulfilment of the commandments, which is in opposition to divine will. The human being should accept Christ's teachings within himself and endeavour to carry out God's will with complete freedom of will. This doctrine should be offered to people by truly devout teachers wanting to serve God, who are then enlightened accordingly by God's spirit when they proclaim this teaching.

However, the spirit of God can never express itself where a structure of worldly power has evolved and where the reinforcement of this power has been the sole purpose for the many regulations and commandments which were supposedly decreed with the help of the Holy Spirit, thus leading to the creation of the doctrine of the church leaders' infallibility. The Holy Spirit is constantly at work to disprove these misguided teachings and to offer people clarification, but time and again human will is strong enough to reject the pure truth and to adhere to misguided teachings. And the human being's will cannot be compelled to accept the truth, nor can it be compelled to acknowledge God as the giver of the knowledge which is presented to him as truth. It has to be up to himself to recognise the truth; however, much help for this is at his disposal .... Anyone with just a small desire for truth will be guided to it, and anyone willing, i.e. anyone seriously interested in walking the right path on earth, can at any time in his prayer ask for the strength

of insight ....

Amen

# **Sequence of the catastrophic event ....**

***B.D. 1538 from July 25th 1940, taken  
from Book No. 25***

The teachers in the beyond always try to help you in the same way and seek to make you more receptive, yet your heart is not always willing to receive, creating obstacles which make the reception more difficult. Undivided attention has to be paid to the gifts of heaven and all earthly thoughts avoided, then the thoughts of the friends in the beyond will find easier access. Divine love sends messengers to you who shall reinforce your willingness to receive. They bring you a revelation that describes in an understandable way the sequence of the catastrophes which shall decide the life and death of each individual person.

Only few people take notice of the signs of the coming time. They are indeed surprised about obvious changes or irregularities in nature but nevertheless dismiss it carelessly. They don't recognise therein an expression of God's will but merely put it down as a coincidence. And



thus, to begin with they do not pay any attention to these manifestations when the natural event approaches. People will first be made aware of the advancing tempest by whirlwinds. This will happen so suddenly that men and animals will find themselves in great difficulty for they will barely be able to manage against the violent storm, and this will be the start ....

Every now and then violent earth tremors will be felt and the sky will grow dark, a thunderous roar will be heard which will be so dreadful that it sends people and animals alike into panic so that they try to save themselves by escaping. Yet the darkness will stop them and as their distress becomes intense, the roaring grows ever louder, and the earthly tremors ever more violent, the earth will open up and huge masses of water will break through from within the earth. And as far as the eye can see .... water and darkness and an indescribable chaos amongst people who realise their horrendous situation with utmost distress. The days before will be so glorious that people are to some extent light-hearted and the change will come so suddenly that no one can take earthly precautions, which will be entirely pointless anyway for no earthly power can defend against these elements. Only the devout person will feel the divine omnipotence now .... and entrusts himself to his Creator .... And although his heart will tremble and know fear when he sees the raging of the elements he will nevertheless wait patiently until help arrives, for he will continue to send his thoughts up to Him above.

Anyone who has grasped the meaning and purpose of life knows that now the time of decision has come for every individual person. And he will try to administer spiritual help wherever possible, he will comfort those who are miserable and refer them to God, he will help by kindling a small light in utter darkness .... For God will give them the opportunity to work for Him .... Those who have recognised Him and offer themselves to be of service to Him will be assigned a rich field of activity, and the seed will fall on good ground, for God spares those who look up to Him or find Him in greatest adversity ....

Amen

## **Fatherly Words ... Return to the Father's house ....**

***B.D. 1542 from July 28th 1940, taken from Book No. 25***

Become as little children so that you will be able to enter into My kingdom. Trustingly hand yourselves over to your Father in Heaven and let Him take care, and His love will make your path across earth easier. This is why the admonition goes out to all of you to bear Me in mind wherever you go, for only if you call upon Me can I help you such that you will recognise My help and only then

can I remove your worries. The path you had to travel was long and, with your life on earth, it shall now come to an end. If you want to be totally united with Me at the end of the path you must already yearn for My presence before the end, you must long for the Father like children, you must desire My nearness with all your heart and it must be your innermost requirement to communicate with Me in spirit and in truth. Never believe that I Am out of reach for even one of My earthly children, you must always and in all places be aware of My loving care with solid trust and therefore come to Me with every request so that I can grant you My Fatherly love and guard and care for you like underaged babes. For you are in truth My children whom I long for; I yearn for your return into the Father's house, I do not let anything fall which comes from Me and bears My spirit within itself. I live and suffer with you, and I long for your release. And if you thus bring Me your heart, you will entitle Me to take the shackle off you, for you will be offering your will to Me and that will signify release from the control of the one who is to blame for your apostasy from Me. And the moment of liberation from his power is the moment of unity with Me, for I draw every child to My heart which voluntarily detaches itself from this power .... which longs for Me and acknowledges Me as its God and Father .... so that it will forever remain close to Me. A murmuring is going around the world, My love is seeking to attract all beings, it knows the willing earthly children and draws them to itself .... For I instruct My messengers to impart strength to those of good will, and this flow of strength enlivens them; in a manner of

speaking, it releases the earthbound beings and enables them to hear the gentle voice which is the expression of My love for them and which sounds wherever the heart wants to perceive the voice and thus wants to let itself be permeated by My love. I continuously consider My Own, I will not let this spring run dry as long as they desire it, I will never ever disappoint My earthly children's faithful trust by leaving them without assistance if they require it and call upon Me for help. And anyone who desires My love will feel it in his heart, for I will be with Him and work in him and through him .... For this is My gift, that I permeate those with strength who wholeheartedly turn to Me .... so that they will already feel the bliss of unity with Me in earthly life and strive for nothing else but the fulfilment of their most ardent yearning of being forever united with Me ....

Amen

## **The voice of conscience ....**

***B.D. 1565 from August 13th 1940,  
taken from Book No. 25***

You have no better indication for that which is right than the voice of conscience, the voice of the heart, which truly advises you correctly. This voice will often guide you to do what is pleasing to God. And if you sometimes don't

really know what you should do, think or say then you may always call upon God in all sincerity and He will inform you of it such that all doubt, all indecision will fade away and your actions will become conscious and unambiguous. Every wrong thought triggers unease in you and every right thought will make you feel glad, for all good spiritual beings around you endeavour to mentally inform you as to what you should or should not do, and if you willingly accept these suggestions they will give you inner contentment, whereas the other way round they will awaken in you a feeling of unease in order to make you become aware of the inner voice. The prompting of spiritual friends into doing a good deed is often the reason that this deed will then also be carried out, for a person on his own is often too weak-willed if he is not stimulated to do good. And if he only listens to the inner voice he will be correctly guided. The realisation of that which is right will likewise awaken him if he wants to act correctly. For his God-inclined will persistently rejects what is wrong, after all, this will attracts the good and knowledgeable forces which will instruct him truthfully. Although adverse forces try just as hard to exert their influence they will only succeed if a person is weak-willed or indifferent and thus complies with every spiritual influence, completely oblivious as to whether he is being instructed by good or evil forces. This is where wicked forces have an easy game, although afterwards the voice of conscience will sound reproachfully and disturb his inner contentment. If attention is paid to this then the opportunity still exists that the good spiritual

forces will still be able to be more persuasively effective, but often such silent reproaches deep within the heart only drive the person to try to drown them out, so that he will no longer take notice of them and thus deaden his conscience and no longer hear the subtle voice within. And this is extremely unfavourable for the soul. For then a person will find it very hard to perform kind-hearted actions, since he has insufficient strength to do so, but, since he is not stimulated by the voice of conscience to resist, he will not take refuge in God either, Who alone can make him strong-willed and send him spiritual strength to help him. If, however, a person cultivates the voice of conscience within himself, if he complies with everything this voice instructs him to do or not to do, and if he finally, after every question posed to the eternal Deity, listens to this voice, he is not likely to take any other path than the one which leads to realisation ....

Amen

**Confess Jesus Christ  
before the world ... Divine  
protection ....**

***B.D. 1567 from August 14th 1940,  
taken from Book No. 25***

Whoever declares his faith in Jesus Christ puts his life into God's hands, even if the world and its power threaten him with a most bitter battle indeed, since the mere articulation of the divine name emits strength. The Saviour's love blesses all who give themselves to Him, i.e. who believe in Him and keep His commandments. Jesus' life serves only a few people as a guiding principle of their life. However, anyone who tries to follow the Lord in all things will soon become enlightened and will not want to renounce the divine Saviour and Redeemer because His love expresses itself so comprehensively that it perpetually increases the human being's longing for the Father in Heaven. It is like an unceasing rain which soaks the parched soil with His indispensable Word that comes from above to the people on earth and forever urges them to acknowledge Him, Whom the world wants to deny. And the human being who so obviously feels God's strength should support this Word, he should speak frankly and freely about everything the Lord has taught on earth Himself.

First the person should do everything to prepare the human heart to receive the truth, which is mentally conveyed to the person from above. The Lord Himself says 'Whoever confesses Me before men, him I will also confess before My Father ....' Thus Christ gave people the duty to defend His name so that anyone who does may likewise receive divine protection when he requests help from the Heavenly Father. Whoever upholds the divine name will be involved in the fight against Him, and the

world will attempt to remove every memory of His activity on earth from people. People will be threatened with harsh penalties which are intended to undermine the faith in Jesus Christ as Saviour of the world .... And the human being will have to struggle considerably in order to stand firm against all suggestions of evil minded influences. Only that person will be strong and free enough to speak on behalf of Jesus Christ who, in faithful prayer to the Lord, conveys his distress and worry and asks for protection and strength. Because the Lord grants this to all of His defenders when they confess Him as the divine Lord and Redeemer to the people.

Here the divine might will provide visible proof that it is stronger than worldly power, it will guard each earthly child irrespective how it confesses the Lord and Saviour. Consequently the human being need not worry that he could be harmed by the earthly power if he is a supporter of the true Christianity. Jesus Christ can never be eradicated from the world of hatred and heartlessness even when the fight is openly conducted. Anyone who loves his earthly life will find his heart beating anxiously and will observe the worldly power's law and hence betray his Lord and Saviour for the sake of earthly success. However, anyone who does not fear death will openly confess the name of Him, Who has redeemed the world from its sins. And worldly power wants him to do penance for this .... But the Father in heaven shields the earthly child with His hands and to the adversary it now appears as if superhuman forces are fighting against him,



and by the unmistakable calm in spite of threats he recognises the strength of the divine Word and the loving care of the heavenly Father Who protects His Own if they confess Him before the world ....

Amen

## **Influence by the prince of lies on people's thinking ....**

***B.D. 1580 from August 24th 1940,  
taken from Book No. 25***

Look at humanity's conduct. It is dominated by the spirit of lies and this is causing indescribable confusion. Human thinking will distance itself ever further from the truth, for the human being mentally accepts the lie and has no way of recognising it as such, and thus the person's emotional life will be led astray as well. It is therefore understandable that the layer around the human soul continues to thicken, thus the person distances himself more and more from the truth since the spirit in him cannot express itself, i.e. the soul is incapable of receiving spiritual truths. As soon as a person's thinking takes the wrong direction the voice of the spirit gradually subsides until, in the end, it is no longer heard. The result is a human race which lives in complete ignorance, which

strives towards completely different goals than they were originally supposed to achieve. Hence, earthly life is entirely unsuccessful, because as long as the human being lives in error he turns to the power from which he should separate himself. The God-opposing power subsequently makes use of this inclined will and determines the being to commit God-opposing actions in order to destroy all ties and to subjugate the being completely. And this state among mankind can now clearly be recognised .... Earthly life is lived totally independently from God, people only rarely think of the One from Whom everything emerged .... or every thought relating to spiritual matters is anxiously kept secret. God is no longer publicly professed, providing He is at all thought of. All these are visible signs of powers which are hostile to God, for their influence grows stronger the weaker the human being becomes. And since the human being keeps distancing himself ever further from the eternal Deity, his strength to resist the evil influence grows constantly weaker. Instead, he receives the strength from the God-opposing power which supports him in all earthly undertakings. Thus earthly success is always guaranteed through this said strength and the earthly success, in turn, contributes towards a complete separation from God, for the human being no longer needs divine strength, consequently he no longer calls upon God either but denies Him .... And it is the adversary's intention to alienate the human being completely from thoughts of God, for then he will have absolute control over him. He has become a victor over

the being which had the choice to whom it wanted to concede victory.

It has chosen God's adversary and thus walked its earthly path in an entirely wrong direction ....

Yet God will not let these beings fall .... He will provide them with the evidence that everything earthly worth striving for is also subject to His power .... that He can destroy it if it corresponds to His will. He by no means haphazardly destroys what the human being deems desirable, but this work of destruction will, from a spiritual point of view, also be of greatest advantage for countless entities. Yet people who do not recognise its profound significance will be sorely affected by it, for they will lose everything which, until now, signified their whole life. And once again they are facing the decision .... to strive for the same again or to recognise the transience of it and to gather everlasting possessions for themselves. For at the moment of destruction the adversary loses power, and if the person recognises the impotence of the latter the possibility is given that he might recognise a different Lord above himself and turn to Him. Earthly possession is the share of the evil power for it contains unredeemed spiritual substances, and the human being should not desire what was his place of abode for an infinitely long time before .... he should not strive towards something which took him endless times to overcome .... And thus the obvious worthlessness of it has to be proven to him, so that he will turn away from it and towards that which will come after him, after his life on

earth. He must relinquish earthly matter and desire spiritual things, then he will also overcome the final form and liberate himself from every chain. However, spiritual things continue to exist and therefore belong in the realm of truth .... Worldly things, however, are transient, thus they belong to the realm of darkness, to untruth, for it only shelters immature spiritual substance which did not recognise the truth and therefore were banished. Consequently, the human being can never know the truth as long as he desires earthly goods and, precisely because of this desire, concedes power to the prince of lies. And as long as he strives for earthly possessions he will be dominated by the lie, and his thinking has to be misguided, for the prince of lies tries to influence the person's thoughts first and to completely distance him from the truth. Therefore, the state of people is extremely alarming and can only be remedied if God Himself breaks the adversary's power by destroying earthly possessions ....

Amen

**Grace .... Spiritual vision ....  
Blissful state ....**

***B.D. 1585 from August 27th 1940,  
taken from Book No. 25***

It is like a revelation when the human being allows the divine grace to take effect in him, when he pays attention to the influx of the divine spirit in his heart and all earthly burden falls away from him. The soul detaches itself from the body's shackle and accepts the spiritual gift from above. It looks into the spiritual kingdom, it lives in a different world, and what it receives is living, utterly true spiritual knowledge. It is its nourishment and therefore indispensable for its spiritual wellbeing. And so it remains the most glorious gift on earth to be granted this grace, and if the human being desires it he will have overcome the obstacles of life on earth, for he will never relinquish this delectable gift for earthly pleasures. He will never want to distance himself from it again once he has gained an insight into the kingdom of light. His previous earthly path had lacked light despite earthly pleasures, for they had never completely satisfied his longing. But now all suffering has become bearable for him, because the heavenly Father's love compensated him a thousand-fold and offered him a far more glorious gift than Earth will ever be able to offer him. And yet very few people strive for this most precious gift. Their souls must first attain a degree of maturity which allows them to perceive these glories consciously, since a still very earthly-minded soul lacks the sensitivity for spiritual glories. The spiritual kingdom could be visibly opened up, but the soul would perceive very little of it because the thick layers still surrounding the soul will prevent it from gaining an insight into the spiritual realm. And so, this happiness-inducing state can only be experienced by

people who have already dissolved their covers, whose heightened sensitivity also enables them to recognise what their physical eyes cannot see. This ability can be developed to the point of clearest vision, it is possible for the soul to see through everything of a material nature and only behold the spiritual substance, and therefore nothing will be a secret for it anymore, it will be able to behold even that which is deeply hidden, and the human being will live with a perceptive heart if he has so shaped his soul that its spiritual eye can see everything and impart it to the person. You will only understand the grace of such conscious immersion in the spiritual kingdom when you have entered this kingdom yourselves, devoid of all covers, radiant and aglow with the deepest love for your Creator, Who has prepared the most glorious things for you and wants to bestow them upon all His children ....

Amen

**Involuntarily premature  
deceased people ....  
Beyond ....**

***B.D. 1589 from August 31th 1940,  
taken from Book No. 25***

The undeserved fate of those who have to sacrifice themselves against their will on account of unjust actions by malicious nations will not remain without punishment, for there has to be just retribution if souls lose their embodiment's permitted time of grace on earth due to human fault and thus were unable to mature fully, as is possible in a long lifespan. It is an unmerited shortening of earthly life which admittedly releases them from the body but they enter the beyond in an immature state. The soul can only receive what its state of maturity merits; it has to enter the spheres which correspond to its degree of maturity. But it has to be understood that terminating human life in a certain state of compulsion has to be atoned, for nothing that is unjust before God can remain unpunished. For no-one is entitled to take a fellow human being's life. On the other hand, however, the human being's soul has to be given the opportunity in the beyond to continue the self-redemption which was interrupted on earth. And therefore especially these prematurely deceased souls are assigned a rich field of work in the beyond, so that they only need to be of good will in order to advance their soul's state in line with earthly life. If the soul's progress of development is interrupted due to someone else's fault, the beings in the beyond have the most incredible opportunities at their disposal to nevertheless still reach the state of maturity, providing they have an active will and the being desires to reach God.

However, particularly a prematurely deceased person is

at great risk that his soul will be unable to detach itself from the earthly sphere since it had left it before it was able to overcome its fondness for matter, for all earthly pleasures. And there is great danger that it will not make use of the opportunities in the beyond as it is still far too earthbound but, nevertheless, just as in earthly life, has to abandon this will in order to be able to travel the path of higher development. Nor can its will forcibly be directed towards ascent, the soul is just as free as on earth to voluntarily strive towards ascent or the abyss, although countless beings of light will try to help such a soul.

But those who have caused the premature demise of a human being will gain little spiritual success from earthly life, for their guilt will thicken the layer of their own soul and the release from such a layer will be extremely difficult. Consequently, the person will have to struggle tremendously to free himself from this immense guilt, the state of his soul will be very low once he leaves earthly life himself, and he will have to do bitter penance for his guilt in the beyond ....

Amen

## **Inner reflection ... Hours of rest - Introspection ....**



## ***B.D. 1590 from August 31th 1940, taken from Book No. 25***

It requires some time of reflection as to be able to listen to the inner voice, for it does not express itself in the midst of earthly commotion, that is, it is not perceptible to the person. Only someone who withdraws into his inner life will be able to perceive it, precisely because it only sounds deep within the heart. Thus, in order to establish a connection with the spirit, it is absolutely necessary for a person to shape his inner life by trying to harmonise it with the will of the One Who gave him life. An inner life after divine will can give rise to inconceivable success, for this guarantees access to spiritual knowledge. It opens the gate to life beyond earth for the human being. The human being is unable to penetrate these areas from the outside, but if he takes the path by means of his innermost life, by means of his thoughts and feelings which are deeply rooted within his heart, he will take the right path and will reach the right goal.

The human being needs many heart-to-heart talks with himself and needs to subject himself and his actions to self-criticism and must always want what is best, then he will shape himself according to God's will. However, the more he is prevented by the outside world from times of inner reflection the harder it will be for him to establish contact with the spiritual world, for every pensive hour will already be, so to speak, the unification with spiritual beings which try to influence his thoughts and which,

precisely during such inner introspections, can speak to the listener of the inner voice unimpeded. These beings can only make themselves noticed through the most subtle spiritual vibrations, hence they have to be received during profound silence otherwise they cannot be sensed and ineffectively glide past the human being's soul. The more easily you are able to detach yourselves from the earth and desire spiritual contact, the more clearly and perceptibly the voice will sound in you, and therefore you should do everything in your power to avoid earthly experiences which might detract you from the inner work of improving your soul, from introspective hours of rest, during which you seek spiritual contact. You will undeniably have far more success than you can ever achieve by earthly means ....

Amen

## **Moods .... Depressions .... Evidence of love ....**

***B.D. 1602 from September 8th 1940,  
taken from Book No. 25***

People pay no attention to the various undercurrents which express themselves as different moods and thus don't know that even these currents are not by chance

either, that people's disposition is therefore merely the result of their attitude towards God or the opposing power. Especially the person suffering such moods is visibly seized by God's love, for God takes care of a person who is in danger of forgetting Him by influencing his temperament, spoiling his joy of life and allowing him to be seized by overall despondency. And in many instances this is incredibly beneficial, for only at times like this will the human being's thoughts turn to his Creator; only when all worldly things have lost their value will the human being remember his real purpose. Hence people have to experience days of inner struggle, days when they become aware of the irrelevance of earthly pleasure. The cause of this does not always have to be actual hardship and suffering, a person's gloomy mood can arise within himself for no external reason. And this is the influence of the beings to whom people are entrusted and who are concerned about their soul's salvation and anxiously guard every movement of the human heart.

There is a serious risk that a person will use all his strength in coping with the demands of earthly life; then they will intervene by strongly inhibiting his desire for activity, his pleasure of earthly life, and the person will consequently feel depressed. And it is good if the human being allows himself to be influenced by this .... if times like that result in hours of inner reflection they will not have come to the human being in vain. Yet not all people listen to this inner admonition .... Very many try to stifle their emotions in increased pleasure and succeed,

precisely because their will is mainly focussed on earthly life and they carelessly take no notice of such moods, they only aim to restore the old state of inner satisfaction. The human being should not complain if he experiences days in his life which appear difficult and unbearable and which are purely caused by his emotional life. The love of God is very close to them, and such hours are simply a way of help by friends in the beyond wanting to stop the person losing himself in earthly gratification. Everything on earth which seems as if the human being has to go short is always just the merciful evidence of divine love, which can only use this means to direct a person onto the right path, onto the path which will lead him to eternal glory and fully compensate the earthly child for everything it had to miss out on or give up on earth. For earthly pleasures will cease to exist yet eternal glories remain forever, and these alone should be desired on earth ....

Amen

**The soul ... The spiritual  
spark in the human being ....**

***B.D. 1618 from September 18th 1940,  
taken from Book No. 25***

The human soul is the unification of countless soul-substances which are assembly points for spiritual strength, i.e. which are receptacles for the spirit of God. Each one of these countless substances was previously embodied somewhere else, that is, enclosed in an outer form for the purpose of the spirit's higher development and for the prospect of later unification with an equal substance. Hence each single substance of the human soul has passed through every work of creation and has, so to speak, matured for its last embodiment on earth. The soul always assumes the same shape as its surrounding outer shape .... If a person with spiritual vision would contemplate the human soul in its composition he would be presented with an incredibly charming and varied picture. This work of God's creation, invisible to human beings, is beyond description, both in its structure as well as in its usefulness. But a description of the formation of the soul would only confuse human thought for he cannot understand the countless miracles within the human body. What human beings understand to be 'soul' is all of creation in miniature. The soul is the innermost part of the human being and includes the whole of creation .... intended to become enlightened during its life on earth and in glorification of God to enjoy the delights of heaven.

The soul has the divine spirit within itself. Although the original substance of the soul is also spirit in all its phases of evolution .... the divine spark of spirit is placed into the incarnating soul of the human being by God

Himself .... He instils His breath into the human being .... He places the divine into him and gives the soul the task to choose between the divine and the human during its last existence on earth. If the soul .... the spirit out of God which at one time had opposed God .... is now willing to unite with the divine spirit, the transformation of what was once far away from God begins and the human soul becomes enlightened. The unity of the human soul with the divine spirit occurs when the soul steadfastly overcomes all human desires, which, for the purpose of testing and for strengthening of the will, cling to the human body as temptation .... when it resists all that the body as such requires and willingly submits to the requirements of the divine spirit.

Then the soul finally surrenders its former resistance to God. It chooses God, it is no longer in conscious opposition to the divine and accepts the emission of love, the strength, to increase the spirit within itself, to bring about the unity of the spirit within itself with the spirit outside of itself, and thus consciously strives to draw closer to God. If, however, the body's desire dominates then the divine spark of spirit stays dormant and completely buried deep within the human being, it cannot emit light and the soul dwells in utter darkness. Its earthly life goes by without the smallest accomplishment; the spirit within is condemned to stagnate, its earthly process is not a path towards higher development but a time of standstill or even regression. The divine spark of spirit in the human being had been

ignored and therefore could not manifest itself. The strength of divine love could not flow into the being and, as a result, the unity with the spirit of the eternal Father could not take place either. The soul takes this lightless state, which it had chosen for itself on earth, across into eternity and there, with endless pain of regret, contemplates the wasted time on earth and now has to struggle far more strenuously to improve its situation ....

Amen

## **Judgment .... Time of peace .... The opponent's broken power ....**

***B.D. 1622 from September 20th 1940, taken from Book No. 25***

God's Judgment is not far away. It will only be a short time longer and during this time the world is yet to see much misery, bear much suffering and sorrow and go through indescribable affliction. Since the Calvary cross has been ignored people will have to experience it for themselves, they must endure unspeakable suffering and thus atone for the guilt of sin because they renounced their faith in Jesus Christ. God does not want to leave them in their agnostic state and still provide them with

means and ways of finding Jesus Christ. The suffering coming upon the earth is negligible compared to the suffering of those in the beyond who died without faith in Jesus Christ and won't acknowledge His act of Salvation. His suffering and death on the cross was the sacrifice of atonement for humanity's sins. Yet those who distance themselves from the act of Salvation must atone for their guilt of sin themselves and can be considered fortunate if they are still allowed to do so in their earthly life. Souls which oppose Christ and His act of Salvation can expect to suffer inconceivable torments in the beyond. Yet immense suffering on earth can still let them find Him and recognise His greater than great love, and then the state of their soul at the time of death can be such that they will not need to endure the agonies in the beyond. But if earthly suffering does not result in spiritual success, then all means on earth will be in vain and God will impose upon people a time when everything will be eradicated which can no longer be spiritually saved .... since a separation of good from evil will take place .... so that only those who confess God will keep their lives but everything that is hostile to God will be removed .... Prior to this, God's demands will be revealed to the world, the world will not be kept in ignorance; nevertheless, it will not want to believe. And it cannot be forced to believe; unbelief, however, will become so prevalent that God wants to protect His Own from the corrupting influence of those people who are clearly subject to the opponent's control. Consequently, He will break his power and allow everything that opposes Him to fall prey to destruction ....



He will withdraw His will from every external form and let the souls take the infinitely long path in a bound state again, because no prospect of higher development and redemption exists for this spiritual essence in the beyond, since its will is still utterly influenced by the opponent. Hence, the Judgment will signify the dawning of a completely new era. That which will then populate the earth will be spiritually advanced and consciously want to serve God and travel the earthly path in accordance with divine will, for it will no longer be so harassed by evil forces. With the knowledge of God people will flourish into a joyful and ardently God-loving race and the earth will be spared sadness and suffering, a time of peace and blissful happiness will commence on Earth, people will lovingly be of service to each other and thus strive towards higher spheres in a way that is pleasing to God. And during this time the opponent has little control over people. It was taken away from him, since all spiritual beings enslaved by him had lost their freedom and were bound in forms again, thus the opponent will be unable to use his power until these beings enter the state of free will once more which, however, will take an infinitely long time again, and this time can be called a time of peace on Earth.

Amen

## **Jesus' transfiguration ....**

# **‘My Father and I are One ....’**

***B.D. 1739 from December 15th 1940,  
taken from Book No. 27***

The right solution to the problem of Jesus' transfiguration after His crucifixion also explains Jesus' Words 'The Father and I are One ....' at the same time. God sacrificed Himself through a human being Who overcame every human aspect for love of God and Who therefore shaped His soul such that God was able to take abode in Him in all fullness. His external form, His body, totally complied with the soul's will and was likewise only disposed towards the Divine; thus every substance was God-inclined spirit, so that it no longer needed the process of development on earth and was therefore able to enter the spiritual realm in all perfection after the body's death. All perfected spiritual beings unite with the Elementary Power and, through a most heartfelt fusion, become as one with It. The process of development of the spiritual beings which had once fallen away from God lasts for an infinitely long time and, through countless levels, will also lead to ascent in the beyond but the external form, the less developed spiritual substance, always remains on earth and releases the soul which, as a spiritual being, will subsequently seek to join beings of equal maturity in the beyond. The external form dissolves and the individual spiritual substances affiliate with similar ones in order to continue their process of

development .... However, Jesus' body, on account of its purity and actions of love, had already attained spiritual perfection and the inconceivable suffering on the cross had been the final process of purification for the body's spiritual substance so that, in this utterly cleansed state, it was able to join the perfect soul and no longer needed to stay on earth, and therefore the spirit of God, the soul and the body united, thus became one.

Jesus, the man, was the mediator between God and people .... but now God and Jesus Christ are One .... they should not be thought of as two beings next to each other but it is only one Being Which absorbs everything that is perfect. Jesus' divinity cannot be imagined in any other way than the eternal Deity Itself, Which merely affiliated Itself with the external shape of Jesus, the man, i.e. His spiritual substances were allowed to merge with the elementary Power, because at Jesus' death they had already reached a degree of perfection which is the prerequisite for the closest unity with God .... By despising earthly pleasures and, as a result of strict self-discipline, Jesus' body had overcome all matter and therefore no longer required a further process of development. All spiritual substances in the physical form were able to join the soul and leave the earthly valley together with it in order to enter the heights of light. From this moment on this soul was surrounded by the most brightly shining light, consequently Jesus' body and soul had to leave the earth in a transfigured state, for a being that is completely merged with God also had to

receive light and strength from Him and thus emanate it in the same way as the eternal Deity Himself, because it was One with God, therefore also light and strength in abundance. This process of light emanation usually remains concealed from people, yet God's infinite love for people allowed the transfiguration of Jesus to occur visibly in order to give them a sign of His power and glory, to strengthen the faith of those who were to proclaim His power and glory to the world and in order to provide people with the evidence that Jesus had conquered death .... that from now on death no longer exists for people who follow Him and make an effort to take the same path on earth. Jesus' transfiguration has been a much disputed subject for humanity and was usually rejected as a myth, because people lack all spiritual understanding for the ultimate goal of every being .... for the final union with God .... for becoming one with Him .... However, Jesus says 'The Father and I are One ....' For the union had taken place in Him already, His soul was shaped such that it was able to accept God and thus had already become a recipient of light and strength from God, thus He was able to teach all wisdom and work through divine strength. He was as perfect as His Father in Heaven and able to create and shape like Him .... His nature was love, His Words were love, and thus He worked by virtue of His great love for people. For everything in existence and everything that happens can only be accomplished by love .... His life on earth was a constant succession of works of miracles without pomp and splendour, but He concluded it in radiant light .... by

transfiguring Himself before the eyes of His Own and ascended to Heaven, to eternal glory ....

Amen

## **My commission ... Help the needy ....**

***B.D. 1742 from December 17th 1940,  
taken from Book No. 27***

Accept in all humility every gift offered to you from above, then you fulfil God's will and serve Him. What He has intended for you merely requires your unlimited devotion to Him and your will to obey Him. Countless souls on earth are struggling for knowledge, they cannot find the way to God alone and urgently require help. And you shall take that help to them by bringing God's love and kindness, which expresses itself so obviously, to their attention. And as you give so you may receive. And your soul will be able to receive ample nourishment and need never starve. The bread from heaven will never be withdrawn from you as long as you feed the needy. Time and again it will give you renewed strength and always and forever make you happy. Barren and dry is the earth without the living water, empty and joyless the life of the soul without refreshment from heaven. And you shall

help these souls: offer them the refreshing drink and take every opportunity to distribute God's precious gift because it will remedy a great need. Truth will be spread, the light will shine brightly and in turn attract souls seeking to escape the darkness. And God will bless your effort, He will give you strength to carry out your mission, He will guide you in your task and provide you with all the help you need to work for Him ....

Amen

## **Spiritual change ....**

## **Professing Jesus Christ ....**

***B.D. 1748 from December 24th 1940,  
taken from Book No. 27***

The world can expect an extraordinarily significant change of era. For good spiritual beings will descend to Earth and achieve a radical change of thinking by means of extraordinary events which correspond to God's will. The battle between the various schools of thought will be waged on an immense scale with the result that a separation of those who argue for and against God will take place. No particular signs will precede this time; the human being will merely be more frequently referred to supernatural things, he will effectively be motivated to

think about it and thus be obliged to form an opinion about questions which are beyond earthly things. And then he will follow this or that school of thought and become a fighter for his point of view. And thus begins a new time, a time when on one side spiritual enlightenment and on the other side profound spiritual darkness will separate people from each other .... a time, when the spiritual striving of the former will clearly show itself in their attitude towards earthly possessions, which the purely worldly-minded person eagerly aims to increase but which will be despised by the others. And then humanity will go through a change of thought. The spiritual world will embody itself in God-inclined people who will be able to see brightly and clearly and endorse with utter conviction what the spiritual world is imparting to them.

However, they will have to fight for their spiritual freedom. Those who are in favour of God will be ostracised and subjected to constant threats, for the majority of people will be godless and have great power since they are being supported by the reigning authority. And yet, the virtuous spirits will win; they have great strength because they fight with the weapon of love. The new era is intended to result in spiritual progress, the soul shall derive substantial benefits from it, humanity shall become more open towards the truth and allow itself to be guided more by love; a conscious striving towards God shall characterise people who concede to the power of the spiritual forces; people shall enjoy a

peaceful disposition despite external pressures and apparent obstacles, for they know that they are on the right path and therefore feel secure and well-protected under divine guard and thus pay less attention to the hostilities from the human side. They are strong in faith, confident in hope and powerful in love. And those who still doubt will lift themselves up on the latter, for the profound and living faith is more convincing than a lot of talking.

Jesus once struggled on earth for the souls and at that time, too, started a period of spiritual strive; in those days people also had to make a decision to profess or deny Christ. This time the question will be equally decisive as well. Then the human being will also have to decide as to whether he will acknowledge Jesus Christ and thus profess Him before the world or whether he will reject him. And the answer to this question will once again determine his higher development. For only someone who professes Him will derive a benefit from his earthly life for the soul. And the divine Word must be spread again; diligent disciples must once again distribute the Gospel throughout the world, and prior to this an incredible amount of work has to be done by instructing these disciples so that they will teach according to divine will. And the signs of the forthcoming new era can already be found in the fact that this divine teaching comes to people directly from above, that they are therefore given the teaching of Christ again as unspoilt as it was at the time of Jesus on earth, accompanied by



miracles and extraordinary happenings, for there will also be miracles during the coming time which noticeably express the divine will, yet these miracles will only be understandable to those who have already experienced the working of the spirit within themselves and who therefore ever more intimately join Jesus Christ and profess Him before the whole world ....

Amen

**The soul's hardship  
necessitates suffering ....  
'Father, Your will be  
done ....'**

***B.D. 1749 from December 25th 1940,  
taken from Book No. 27***

Infinite trust in divine guidance makes your earthly way of life easy, for you accept everything with a certain calm providing you bear in mind that it was determined by God in this and no other way due to His boundless concern for your soul. Every burden life imposes on you is necessary for the maturing of your soul, and the more you are in need of it the more burdensome it will be. Thus, you should first shape yourselves according to divine will and

the suffering will gradually lessen and will finally entirely be taken from you. Practise love, meekness and patience, practise compassion, peacefulness, and always appeal to God for strength to do so and you will rise above everything with ease, you will be a blessing for your surrounding neighbours for they will strive to emulate you .... And your earthly life will become easier, you will have emerged victoriously from the battle against evil and through your appeals for strength have come closer to God. If you want to reach God you must completely hand yourselves over to Him, always pray 'Father, Your will be done ....' You thereby give evidence of your trust in His guidance, you sacrifice your will to Him, you humbly submit yourselves to His will and acknowledge Him as your Father, and then you will have become as it is pleasing to God .... patient, gentle, humble, peaceful, you practise love if you also compassionately turn towards your fellow human being and try to make him live in the same way. It will refine your nature and the soul will become light and bright for it will become ever more capable of absorbing divine light and of spreading it as well.

Therefore, don't complain if you have to suffer, bear everything patiently and know that you still need to suffer, that your soul is still distressed and that God in His love wants to help you and release it from its still oppressing shell .... The soul is still struggling for its freedom; it is still constrained by a force which refuses to set it free. Its own will is still too weak, and in order to

strengthen its will it must call upon God for strength. If it fails to do so of its own accord then God must encourage it through suffering to turn to Him for help .... And it often takes an unbelievably long time before the soul takes the path to God, and just as long it will have to suffer and endure a depressing state. And yet it would be so easy to release itself from it, however, it often gives way to the adversary's urging and revolts against its fate, it grumbles and complains and therefore cannot be released from suffering either .... And your mistake rests in the fact that you do not recognise God's love and are grateful to Him that He wants to lead you into higher spheres .... If you believe in His love it will also be easy for you to confide in Him and every day, regardless how distressing it may be, will be a blessing for your soul and beneficial for your spiritual higher development ....

Amen

**Establishing spiritual  
contacts on earth ... Help  
from the beings in the  
beyond ....**

***B.D. 1750 from December 25th 1940,***

## ***taken from Book No. 27***

The inhabitants of the spiritual world are inconceivably active and accomplish their task with such dedication and perseverance that it will lead to success. Time and again they approach the people entrusted to their care and try to induce them into asking questions in order to subsequently be able to convey the answer mentally, and therefore it is of great importance that people use every opportunity to exchange their opinions. For only then will it be possible for the spiritual beings to move into action by inspiring people with questions and answers, that is, by whispering these mentally to them, so that ever deeper problems will be raised and thus enable the friends in the beyond to start with their instructions. Such exchange of thoughts can be incredibly successful, for it also stimulates a reflection on them afterwards, and the mental instructions can then be continued according to the desire for clarification. For this reason it will be extraordinarily gladly welcomed by these spiritual beings if a person's will always keeps making new spiritual contact, for all efforts on this side will be recognised in the world of the beyond and made instant use of, and then it will only depend on people's will to what extent they will then be open to instructions.

Threads from the beyond to earth are being constantly woven, and if an earthly child helps to establish such connections it makes the task of the beings in the beyond substantially easier, for the door to the heart needs to be

slightly open, and this happens when a person has a question on his mind and expects an answer. Then the heart will carefully listen to the voice within itself, then the being in the beyond will be able to express itself and can expect to be heard as well. And if therefore the person takes advantage of every opportunity to discuss spiritual problems with his fellow human beings he helps at the same time to open the door of his heart and clears the way for these spiritual beings to the innermost part of the heart. This assistance is exceptionally significant since it can, after all, be the first incentive towards a complete transformation of thought .... From that time on the person can remain in heartfelt contact with the benevolent beings of the beyond and extensive information can be imparted to him by them if it is the person's will to know the truth and therefore listens to the whisperings of these beings, which now comply with their task with the most devoted dedication ....

Amen

## **'Vengeance is Mine ....'**

***B.D. 1753 from December 27th 1940,  
taken from Book No. 27***

Exacting revenge is not right before God, for then the human being will share the guilt because he gave way to

an evil desire in him and is no longer pure at heart. Every feeling of unkindness is an obstacle towards ascent, the inner battle, however, is an advancement. As soon as the human being is antagonistically inclined towards the fellow human being and ponders retaliation he hands himself over to the power of evil and has to comply with its will, which always intends to increase unkindness. And this puts his state of soul at risk, for once he has given in to the enemy's desire it will be difficult for him to practise love, for the thought of revenge poisons his feelings. What his fellow human being has done to him is far less than what he is now doing to himself, for his fellow human being's wrong-doing consisted of causing him physical damage but he is damaging his soul and puts it into new fetters with every act of unkindness. He has no other benefit by doing so other than to satisfy his feeling of revenge and thereby hands himself over to the opponent's control, and to then return to activities of love is extremely difficult and can only be possible if he realises and regrets his wrong-doing. The vindictive person, however, is pleased with his action and far removed from a state of remorse. The human being shall repay evil with good, this way he will weaken the power of evil, acquire love and release himself as well as his opponent from the influence of evil, for his opponent will experience this as a beneficial act, providing he is not entirely obstinate, and will regret his action. Vengeance, however, is God's responsibility. And God is righteous, He truly administers vengeance according to merit .... He beholds the human being's heart and nothing remains

hidden to Him. And it is His will to reform people and to make them realise their wrong-doing, just as He blesses those who patiently endure the other person's wrong-doing without rebelling against it or thinking of exacting revenge. 'Vengeance is Mine', says the Lord .... He thereby makes His will known to leave the responsibility of vengeance to Him, so as not to cause damage to your soul, which will be much greater than your fellow human being can ever inflict on you ....

Amen

## **Thoughts are spiritual strength ....**

***B.D. 1757 from December 30th 1940,  
taken from Book No. 27***

In a state of realisation the human being no longer regards his thoughts as having been acquired by himself, that is, that they came from himself, but he sees them for what they really are .... the emanation of spiritual beings which want to share their knowledge with the human being and which try to impart it to him for as long as it takes until he has accepted it as mental knowledge. Every thought is therefore spiritual strength, hence something spiritual, which has paved its way from the kingdom of

the beyond to earth in order to be received by the human being's thinking apparatus of which he subsequently becomes aware. Consequently, the human being's thinking must correspond to the spirit of the being which takes possession of the person .... or to which the human being concedes. The spiritual beings' emanation of strength is enormous, yet good and evil beings alike are anxious to send these emanations to earth, and this emanation will always be received by likeminded earthly beings. Thus, every person will always be given **those** mental transmissions which correspond to his nature .... whatever is desired will be distributed, and thus truth will be offered to someone who is hungry for truth but lies where lies are at home. Therefore, the nature of the human being's thoughts will be as the human being wants it, since the spiritual beings will endow him according to his will. The human being cannot produce anything of his own, he is entirely incapable of letting thoughts arise from within himself, precisely because thoughts are spiritual strength, but that this strength will first have to be given to him from the spiritual realm. Only the ignorant person believes himself to be the originator of his thoughts. He merely repeats the opinion of those who are of this world, namely that thinking is merely a function of certain organs, that it happens entirely without outside influences, that therefore all thoughts of a person are his own, that they are not based on direct or indirect influence .... and that therefore good or bad, profound or superficial thoughts always originate in the human being himself and are therefore his own merit. In



so doing, he denies the spiritual strength because he does not acknowledge such at all. For this reason, such people cannot easily be convinced of the truth either, if it was mentally imparted, because they still don't properly understand the process of thinking and are therefore unable to believe. The actual nature of thought is still something incomprehensible to them and will also remain so until they recognise their own inadequacy where it concerns finding a solution to profound problems .... when the train of thought fails if the human being should give a final explanation by himself. Only when he trustingly turns to the spiritual beings with a desire for truth and appeals to them for clarification will he experience for himself how spiritual strength in the form of thoughts flows to him and he will realise that he cannot be the originator of such thoughts but that something spiritual is imparted to him by spiritual beings from the kingdom of the beyond ....

Amen

**Battle against Christ's  
teachings .... Persecution of  
those who confess Him ....**

***B.D. 1762 from January 2nd 1941,***

## ***taken from Book No. 27***

It is indisputably better to confess before the world to belong to the church of Christ than to be subject to the adversary's will and to deny Christ. For whoever is powerful in the world has nevertheless no power to stop what God will send against him. Whoever denies Christ, denies God, even if he mentions His name as proof of his faith .... For if he is profoundly faithful he will also recognise the Deity of Christ, because then he has love and love affirms Jesus Christ as the Son of God and Saviour of the world. This insight is the result of profound faith. However, unbelief prevents the human being from recognising the Deity of Jesus. Therefore, where Jesus Christ is rejected there is evidence of the human beings' unbelief and such people belong to the world which openly opposes Jesus Christ. And the world will demand to reject Him completely, it wants His name no longer mentioned, it wants to erase all memory of Him and raise subsequent generations in ignorance; it wants to destroy everything that refers to Him and thereby suppress the knowledge of Him and His works. And thus the battle erupts ....

Those who follow Him will defend His name, confess Him to the world and readily speak on His behalf and of His teachings .... They will be pursued and yet patiently endure persecution for His name's sake, they will receive strength from above and the more they are attacked the more eagerly they will proclaim His teachings. God's

power will visibly be with them, his love protects them and the mighty of the world will have to realise that their power is futile. They will have to acknowledge a greater power Whose work is evident. They become outraged and now strive to impose their will by any means and for that reason they shall be punished by God's hand .... For when human beings arrogantly want to fight against God Himself they are completely controlled by the adversary and then God will put an end to this .... Hence the time will come when laws upon laws are endorsed and people will be placed into a position to choose for or against Christ .... The supporters of the world will let go of Him for mere rewards; they will gain earthly advantages and sell their soul. And many will give up what should be their holiest possession .... the divine Redeemer and Saviour of the world .... Yet those who suffer persecution for His name's sake will be blessed a thousand-fold because He Himself will approach them and lead them into battle and victory will be where He Himself is in command. And even if it seems as if the enemies' intentions might succeed, the battle only lasts a short time, but those who fight for the name of Jesus will be victorious ....

Amen

**Heavenly bliss .... Eternal  
glory ....**

## ***B.D. 1792 from January 28th 1941, taken from Book No. 27***

Staying in bright surroundings makes the being indescribably happy; everything of a depressing and burdensome nature has been removed, it is no longer subject to any aggravation by immature spiritual beings, no shadows or dark states exist which could frighten it. Joy, harmony and brightly shining light abound everywhere. And heartfelt love and gratitude permeate the being which feels close to God, even if it has not yet entirely merged with God. Nevertheless, it may receive light and strength from Him, and thus it is already partaking in the eternal glory. It may accomplish a pleasing occupation; it may be active according to divine will by passing on to other beings what it receives itself. The beings constantly require the divine gift of strength for their higher development, and the beings of light are such stations of strength by constantly passing the strength from God on and thereby creating an inconceivable state of bliss for themselves. No human being on earth can either understand the light beings' activity nor the process of re-directing the strength to the beings in need of strength and has therefore no idea about it; consequently, the thought of an eternity in blissful happiness is a fantasy to him that he would like to dismiss and thus he refuses to accept it as real. He measures everything with the yardstick that can be applied to earthly processes, but does not bear in mind

that other laws apply outside of earth, that processes take place which cannot be grasped in a worldly way. After all, Earth is one of the most insignificant works of Creation and thus its inhabitants cannot imagine anything else but what they find on earth, for people's imagination cannot go beyond this. And in order to even roughly imagine the kingdom of light, people must be very far advanced already, yet even then they will barely be able to grasp the truthful description since completely new knowledge must be revealed to them, and the human being is rarely receptive for this. This is why these realms can only ever be described as eternal glory, for they are glorious and lovely to look at beyond all measure and place the being in a state which can be called highest bliss and, yet, the human being cannot imagine what it really is. The words 'heavenly bliss' and 'eternal glory' will therefore always cause serious doubt in people as to the truthfulness of such words, because they don't want to accept something as truth which is not understandable and explainable to them. On the other hand, however, it is impossible to initiate them and to allow them to gain an insight into the kingdom of light until they do their best in order to become bearers of light and strength themselves. They can certainly still achieve this on earth, yet it requires strong will and profound love for God, but then it will be much easier for them to understand these spheres which shall be their abode one day, for then they will have become brightly enlightened themselves.

Amen

# Signs of the world catastrophe ....

***B.D. 1795 from January 30th 1941,  
taken from Book No. 27***

Every world catastrophe is preceded by signs so that humanity can recognise its approach, for God at all times has proclaimed them through His Word, and by paying attention to these signs you will know that now the time has come; and thus you also know that you have to prepare yourselves so that you will not be heading towards total destruction. Whatever God does, and thus also allows to come upon earth, is determined by humanity's will, that is, human will does not directly draw the catastrophe near but its wrongness is the reason for it. Human will is misused on such a scale that a world catastrophe has to be the inevitable consequence of it, for this misguided will can only be directed onto the right track by something completely unexpected, effectively by something unnatural. Hence, the more the human will moves into the wrong direction the more urgent becomes the divine intervention, for precious earthly time is passing by without providing the being with the necessary higher development. Misused will, however, can never support higher development but only prevent it.

The events of the time, the ever increasing unbelief, the anti-Christian efforts and the messengers of His Word which are spiritually awakened by God ought to remind you that the time has come which the Lord mentioned on earth. And thus you shall be diligent and consider your soul's salvation. And regardless of how implausible it seems to you that a disaster is intended to occur on earth, just bear in mind that nothing is impossible for God, that everything can happen if it is God's will. And the fact that it is God's will is based on people's own behaviour, on their wrong attitude towards Him. If earthly life is given to people for a specific purpose but they fail to live in accordance with this purpose then they will let a divine gift of grace go by unused, and God will warn them just once more with stern Words which no one can ignore. Human will alone is the reason for a work of destruction of inconceivable proportions and when the Lord proclaimed this He foresaw people's wrong will. Yet it is His will to win back misguided humanity and therefore He applies the last resort, which certainly seems to be an act of infinite cruelty, nevertheless, it is only motivated by divine love and mercy, for countless people will attain realisation, and they will be saved for all eternity ....

Amen

## **Duty of distributing the divine revelations ....**

## ***B.D. 1797 from January 30th 1941, taken from Book No. 27***

It is indescribably commendable to spread the Word of God. That which is conveyed to people through God's grace shall not remain the sole property of the individual but shall be passed on to the many people who require it for their soul's salvation. Humanity is in serious trouble, it is so distant from God that it does not even recognise His will anymore and goes through earthly life in complete ignorance. However, the human being needs to know what God expects of people, consequently the information has to be imparted to them. And for this reason earthly children who are willing to be of service to Him are chosen by God with the task of making His will known to people. He Himself instructs them first so that they can subsequently pass on their knowledge to fellow human beings. The human race would perish without active help, and active help can only be found in the Word of God. But at the moment everything is rejected by people if it admonishes them to remember God or if they are taught about God in the usual traditional way. This is why God gives His Word to people again .... He provides them with an explanation about their purpose and their task .... He wants to come closer to them through His Word, He wants to familiarise them with everything pertaining to the creation; He reveals to them the correlation of all things and gives them the commandments, which are the basic conditions for their



ascent to God. And willing people shall help to distribute the divine gift; they shall diligently strive to make the divine revelations accessible to the human race; as God's eager servants they shall always and forever make His activity known; they shall let their fellow human beings partake in the delectable gift of grace, so that the divine Word will find acceptance among people, that it will strengthen their faith and motivate them to do whatever it takes in order to live in a God-pleasing way .... thus to fulfil the commandments of love for God and their neighbour. Only when a person has knowledge of God's will can he be held to account if he does not live up to them. Admittedly, uninformed people cannot be held to account but neither can they utilise their life on earth and attain a higher degree of spiritual maturity, for they would have to be extraordinarily lovingly active of their own accord, that is, love must be within them, but in that case they will **also** know the meaning and purpose of earthly life and their task. For God imparts His Word to everyone who desires it, it is just not always outwardly noticeable except in the shape of mental transmissions. But those who receive the Word such that they are able to write it down are particularly responsible for the distribution of this Word, for they receive much grace and shall therefore also share it. They shall proclaim the Gospel to all those who do not reject it ....

Amen

# Hour of death ....

***B.D. 1798 from January 31th 1941,  
taken from Book No. 27***

The hour of death has become the subject of insurmountable fear for many people, they are anxious and afraid of every thought of it, and this is always a sign of insufficient maturity of soul. The soul unconsciously recognises its deficient condition and perceives that the death of the body is the end of its earthly existence .... it intuitively senses that it has not made the best use of its earthly life, hence the human being finds the thought of death frightening. The uncertainty after death disturbs him, he is full of doubt about life after death yet he is not entirely convinced that his life is finally over either. And precisely this uncertainty about the 'afterwards' makes him anxious about the hour of separation from this world. The more mature a human being is the less he is affected by the thought of death, the reason for this rests in the realisation that the real life does not start until after the death of the body. Prerequisite for entering the spheres of light is the ability to surrender the earthly life with an easy heart as then the human being is no longer attached to earthly possession, he has overcome matter ....

Everything the human being leaves behind on earth are earthly possessions which should no longer be desired but gladly and joyfully abandoned. Everything the human

being holds dear on earth he should be able to give up with an easy heart, then his departure from the world is easy. There should be nothing to hold a person back or the release from earth would always be a fight.

Consequently every desire should be overcome at an early stage so that death can approach the human being at any hour and never take him by surprise. Equally decisive for the physical ending of the human being is the will for God because anyone who longs for God is happy when his earthly life comes to an end. Spiritually he is already in those spheres and just yearns for the hour which finally takes him where the spirit wants to go, to his true home. Hence the hour of death can mean anxiety, fear and horror for one person, while for the other it can be the granting of what he had long dreamt of and hoped for. It is the release from every form for him, it denotes his entrance into the eternal kingdom, into everlasting glory ....

What the human being regards as death can be his entrance into eternal life if he has lived life consciously, i.e. with God, and is therefore mature for life in eternity .... However, it can also really signify death, the soul senses this and fears the hour that will inevitably come when the time of earthly life, which God has designated for the human being, is concluded. Every human being should therefore think of the hour of his death and in view of it live his earthly life consciously, i.e. to improve his soul that it may achieve the degree of maturity which guarantees an easy and painless passing

over from earth into the eternal kingdom ....

Amen

# **Human corrections of the messages from above ....**

***B.D. 1811 from February 15th 1941,  
taken from Book No. 27***

The messages from above have to be written down unaltered otherwise human will disobey God's will. Each message has its purpose, however, the human being cannot as yet understand this purpose and if an

Amendment of a word results in another meaning the original purpose will be lost. God Himself reveals to the human being when he fails to comply with His will, when human inability had not received His Word as it was given. People are not authorised to modify the messages because their assessment ability is not sufficient to scrutinise a creation which is not just planned for the present time but is intended to survive future times. The human being himself may well have the best of intentions; however, he needs a certain degree of maturity to have the knowledge at his disposal which will enable him to make corrections in accordance with God's will. Human knowledge alone does not qualify him to

judge the substance of spiritual truth. The spirit of God only transmits the purest truth and if the human soul is not yet able to receive this truth accurately then its thinking will be guided in such a way that it will not transcribe an error. The arrangement of the words might not be accomplished to perfection but will never be completely wrong either. However, every human correction can incorporate error and therefore does not comply with God's will. The less the receiver refuses to accept the message, the clearer the spirit of God can reveal itself. Hence all personal thoughts should be avoided where possible. The will to serve God is the best guarantee for correct, unrestricted reception and then the human being truly will not need to worry about transcribing anything else but God's will, because God's will protects his thoughts from error. Whatever God wants to create He will indeed also protect from transcripts which could divert the earthly child from the right path because it is His will to give humanity the purest truth and to instruct it correctly ....

Amen

**Communal church  
service ... Tradition ...**

***B.D. 1814 from February 16th 1941,***

## ***taken from Book No. 27***

Communal service to God can indeed correspond to God's will if all people are simultaneously moved by the deep desire to contact the divine Lord and Saviour, and thus every person is also willing to serve God. But people are usually just observing a custom, a habit, which has been preserved over generations, consequently it is scarcely a heartfelt need. An action, which really should be tremendously significant for people, has become routine .... People just prepare themselves intellectually to make contact with God, i.e. they try to raise their thoughts to Him, and yet their heart need not be involved. However, the contact with God has to come from the heart. To enter into union with God is the state which should be the human being's only goal in earthly life, because then he has awakened in himself the feeling of belonging to God, Whom he originated from. He had never been separated from the elementary power but had not realised it and thus felt far removed from it, whereas the conscious union with God will bridge the apparent separation and the being will recognise himself as eternally linked with its Creator. When true believers gather for a communal service their united prayer will reach the heavenly Father, and God will be well pleased.

But when people come together without profound religious faith and only for the fulfilment of traditional requirements, their thoughts will frequently wander and a deeply felt closeness to God is out of the question.

People will certainly make an effort to receive the Word of God, but this, too, will be heard more with the ear than the heart and will only have a spiritually beneficial effect if the person endeavours to put it into practice. But usually people are satisfied with this brief period of communal church service and believe to have done their duty by attending, i.e. by having acknowledged God publicly. But God does not attach any importance to outward acts, He evaluates the heart's longing for Him. And a heart longing to be with Him takes no notice of time and formalities, it will establish contact with Him as and when it feels urged to do so. It will seek God because of its inner desire and not in order to provide the world with evidence of its faith. And thus the only importance rests in the sincerity of contact between the human being and his Creator, and the communal service to God will be a congregation of completely devout people who are harbouring the will of unification with Him in their hearts ....

Amen

**The opponent's intentions  
to portray everything of a  
mystical nature as error ....**

## ***B.D. 1815 from February 16th 1941, taken from Book No. 27***

There are things which the human being is unable to explain to himself and which he therefore rejects as an unsolvable problem. He is not inquisitive and thus does not ponder them either, and since his will does not aspire to solve such things they will also remain inexplicable to him. However, what appears to be unexplainable cannot just be dismissed as 'non-existent' or be thrown into the field of fraud or sorcery due to lack of evidence. This particularly applies to all mystical phenomena which cannot be solved by human intellect alone and which are therefore unhesitatingly dismissed as a deliberate attempt of deception or a person's morbid plan. Mystic phenomena can only be explained by mystics, i.e. only the spiritually aspiring human being can penetrate spiritual spheres. People's mere intellectual ability will never be able to lift the veil, and therefore they will also try to destroy other people's belief in spiritual matters, in spiritual activity. And this is what they will then call enlightenment and will thus be concealing what the human being should recognise as most important .... the working of the spiritual beings in the beyond who want to provide people with the evidence that life after death on earth is not over ....

O world of unbelievers and scorners .... Where a visible sign is offered to you, you try to refute it, and you are thereby refusing the spiritual beings' access to you. With



your wisdom and actions you intend to destroy the activity of these beings. It is more pleasing to you to ridicule the spiritual aspirations of profoundly thinking people in the eyes of the world, and are effectively locking your own entrance to the kingdom which is sending signs to people in order to make their recognition easier. And the working of negative forces can be clearly seen in people who, with absolute conviction, deny everything of a spiritual or supernatural nature. They speak on behalf of the opponent because he wants to destroy people's belief in the continuation of life after death, in eternal life and the hour of accountability. And people support his will instantly and do not shy away from surrendering their faith, thus merely affirming what they can touch or feel but denying everything that appears to be supernatural. How highly the human being values his intellect .... and how little he will achieve with it if God Himself does not stand by him and guide him into enlightenment. Yet on the other hand, human intellect is decisive for humanity .... It unconditionally accepts what it is intellectually presented with. It frequently and without hesitation surrenders its acquired spiritual truths, because God's adversary knows how to show his superiority by using convincing words. Hence he will find willing listeners everywhere, because the world prefers to hear that life after bodily death has come to an end. And it will therefore readily agree when expressions from the spiritual world are described as imagination, fraud or error and are therefore completely dismissed ....

Amen

# **Eruptions ... Diversity of stars ....**

***B.D. 1823 from February 21st 1941,  
taken from Book No. 27***

The natural law applicable to the universe .... is the indestructibility of everything in existence. Nothing can cease to exist instead, it can only ever change according to God's will. And this change, in turn, happens in the way that something becomes invisible in order to appear in a visible state elsewhere again. This law is inherent in even the tiniest work of creation, so that the apparent disintegration merely signifies a transformation of that which existed previously. Consequently, even large works of creation, such as stars, can take on different shapes; nevertheless, this process occurs over an extremely long time span, over thousands of years according to earthly time, so that they can never be observed by people, as far as it concerns the fundamental change of a work of creation. Then the eruptions of individual works of creation are mainly the cause for shaping new creations from similar creations of smaller dimensions. These new creations exhibit the same characteristics and composition as the work of creation they emerged from.

Thus, in the vicinity of a sun stars always exist whose same substances and natural laws demonstrate their affiliation with this very sun. From a worldly point of view, the sun therefore cannot be anything else but an infinitely enlarged formation of the same composition as its surrounding planets, since these are works of creations which emerged from it. As a result, all these stars should also be populated with the same beings. But this is where enormous differences become obvious. Not one work of creation harbours the same living organisms as another, and therefore the external structure of each star differs as well, and always in relation to its living inhabitants. And this, in turn, also excludes the same material composition .... Hence, only the core of each star is the basic substance, the external cover, however, corresponds to the living beings assigned to it. Everything that exists within the vicinity of a sun has emerged from this sun, that is, it was spewed out by it, but from the moment of its independence it assumed the properties which correspond to the living beings to which this work of creation shall serve as an abode. The infinitely varying degrees of maturity of the still imperfect spiritual beings also necessitate infinitely many creations of different structures, and herein lies the reason for the diversity of the stars.

Amen

## **Spiritual explanation for**

# **the eruptions ... Service in the light ...**

***B.D. 1826 from February 24th 1941,  
taken from Book No. 27***

In order to make the spiritual substance feel its banishment, it must become aware of both its own state of restraint as well as the freedom of will. It must experience the first as pain and regard the other as worth striving for, then it will always participate to release itself from the first state in order to attain freedom of will. So the beings of light must transmit the latter to works of creation whose spiritual substance still lingers in darkness. These must find the ray of light agreeable and constantly desire more. Hence, it must want to ascend to where there is an abundance of light. However, every emanation of light is the result of helpful activity, that is, in some form or other the activity of being of service must come first before emanations of light can happen on a regular basis. Although every external form is exposed to the emanation of light, yet the entirely hardened spirit turns away from it and takes an infinitely long time before it opens itself to the light, i.e., until it allows itself to be affected by it. But then the desire for it will burst through with elementary power. Then everything that previously was down below will push towards the surface and strive for light, and the spiritual

substance desiring it will be released from its long captivity through eruptions and will continue its process of development in a different external form. And such a powerful eruption is approaching the Earth, whose bound spiritual beings long for liberation, for light and helpful activity. And the spiritual substance languishing down below in darkness especially strives upwards when the spiritual beings on earth fail to make use of the abundance of light it receives and effectively ignores it. Then the immature spiritual substances will seek to acquire this abundance of light and strive for it with elementary power, which manifests itself through natural disasters and creates fundamental changes with regards to spiritual currents. For then the spiritual substance, having reached the earth's surface, will detect every spiritual current to a large extent and will therefore withdraw spiritual strength from already higher developed beings which disregard this strength and make no use of it, which often signifies these beings' physical death on earth .... The immature spiritual substance avails itself of spiritual strength by considerably changing its external form, that is, by having provided access for the light. From then on this spiritual substance can continue its process of development on earth, thus freely strive towards the light, it only must use the strength at its disposal through helpful activity. However, once the longing for light has awakened in the spiritual substance, it will no longer resist being of service in some way or other, for it experiences this activity as a means of receiving more light and at the same time feels the

loosening chain of its external form, and although the process of development now corresponds to the law of compulsion the being is nevertheless willing to take it, its own will, albeit inhibited, concurs with divine will.

Amen

## **Coming in the clouds .... Rapture? ....**

***B.D. 1827 from February 24th 1941,  
taken from Book No. 27***

Just a little while longer and you will see Me coming in the clouds, and you will cheer and rejoice and be happy that the Scripture has fulfilled itself. And the righteous will hear My voice sound delightful to them, but those who deny Me will be horror-struck and want to run away from Me. Yet the Judgment will catch up with them wherever it may be; for once the day has come which I specified as the Judgment everyone will be held to account and be incapable of escaping the Judgment. And My loyal followers will give thanks and sing My praises that I have revealed Myself to them, they will worship Me in spirit and in truth, and when they behold Me they will be imbued by profound love for Me and subsequently serve Me with most heartfelt dedication. For I will need

willing and devoted servants after the time of the Judgment. I want to establish a community and give it a task; it is My will that people who recognise Me and proclaim My teaching shall unite and if they work together the community shall be powerful everywhere. But I want to exclude those who are intolerant and haughty, for they endanger the small group of My faithful servants. I want to be in their midst and thus sincere humility and love has to be inherent in people with whom I Am in loving harmony. And if I sit enthroned in the clouds I will lift up whoever so loves Me that their hearts long to meet Me. And I will take them to a place where no suffering and sorrow exist .... I will create a new home for them, I will shape the earth anew and prepare it to receive these faithful servants of Mine who henceforth will work for Me and in My will.

And then there will be a time of peace on earth, people will live in love; they will honour and love God and in truth will be My children, to whom I descend in order to feast with them. And I will join people together and bless their union, and a new, spiritually highly developed generation will come forth which will receive My Word from Me .... which will humbly bow down to Me and yet be united with Me in deepest love ....

Amen

## **Fulfilment of duty ....**

## ***B.D. 1829 from February 24th 1941, taken from Book No. 27***

You should never be content just to fulfil your duty but should do more than that, you should voluntarily accept a task which people do not expect you to do but which you should do for love .... only then will you be lovingly active and only this effort will be valued and bring you blessings for eternity. People who dutifully carry out their earthly work believe themselves to have done enough. In that case their life is in fact a life of fulfilment of duty but nevertheless it is not a conscious service of love ....

Whatever a duty demands to be done invariably corresponds to worldly objectives. Anything that has a refining influence on the soul will neither be demanded nor carried out as a duty but it always has to be done in absolute freedom of will, and this is why a soul's progress can only be spoken of when the person works above and beyond his duty and will not stop such kind-hearted activity.

However, anything the human being accepts for himself or imposes on others as an obligation only has earthly value, since neighbourly love need not necessarily be the driving force of fulfilling a duty. There are, as a rule, human laws which intend to uphold worldly order, the fulfilment of which are therefore effectively necessary in order to combat people's weak will, for many people would not carry out what they are duty-bound to do if a sense of duty had not been cultivated in them. Everything



they do is thus somehow or other conditional and results in some kind of earthly benefit. An earthly way of life which only shows an endless string of deeds, all of which fit into the category of fulfilment of duty, by no means have to result in a psychological state of maturity, for precisely this fulfilment of duty prevents people from being truly lovingly active.

Although the fulfilment of duty cannot be portrayed to people as wrong or unnecessary, it nevertheless poses a certain danger for the human being's soul, for the more he uses it as a guiding principle of human life, the more significance he attaches to precisely this duty and the more he believes himself to be exempt from true activities of love, for he deems his time sufficiently used and yet spiritually he stays behind if he fails to love, i.e., despite being fully occupied by duties, he is not urged by love to do 'more' .... to help his fellow human beings both spiritually and physically with deeds which are never demanded by people and therefore love can never become a duty either. Fulfilment of duty on its own certainly ought to be recognised in an earthly way but it is of no importance for eternity, thus the human being must do his utmost and try to be helpful of his own free will. He should not be content with fulfilling his duty but of his own accord do 'more' .... he should give and help with love, so that his soul will find salvation, which only ever benefits from what the human being does of his own free will and in selfless neighbourly love ....

Amen

# **Confirmation of prophecies ... World events ....**

***B.D. 1842 from March 8th 1941,  
taken from Book No. 28***

This is given to you as confirmation that everything will be fulfilled as God's spirit has revealed to you. The world does not believe that the decisive hour is close at hand, it believes that the time which the Lord had revealed on earth has not yet come, and therefore it will not face the event in nature well prepared. And for this reason the Lord repeatedly reminds people not to forget about Him. But God's spirit does not err and when it speaks every word should be believed and fearlessly passed on because the speaker uses the language of God. He only repeats His will. And those whom He selects have the right knowledge. They accept and reiterate what is His will. Their human thought is guided to perceive what corresponds to the truth. Their power of judgment is sharpened, their love for justice and truth protects them from erroneous thought and when they speak, every word corresponds to the truth. And thus take the following message:

Every world event is related to humanity's spiritual condition. Admittedly, the reasons are mere earthly disputes, and therefore its development and its effect are seen from a purely worldly point of view. However, that the world event is primarily the consequence of humanity's spiritual low level, so to speak, and simultaneously should be a means to elevate same is beyond the understanding of worldly minded people and therefore they don't want to believe it either, in spite of all the signs. Hence the event in nature will find them unprepared and they have no opportunity to protect themselves or to escape. Consequently it is foolish to ignore God's advice when it is offered to people. It is the divine Creator's will that the conflict, which presently involves half the world, shall remain undecided because human beings shall not obtain their presumed right by force of arms. God gave people the commandment to love each other and this commandment is no longer heeded. Humanity inflicts every imaginable evil on itself and therefore also has to be struck severely; God Himself has to take on this office of judge that they should recognise a Lord above themselves Who knows of every injustice. That is why you should not invalidate God's voice; you should not question the truthfulness and not determine for yourselves the moment when this prophecy shall be fulfilled .... The world is in serious trouble and can only be saved by this natural disaster which will follow immediately after the great decisive battle (offensive), which will indeed decide a tremendous struggle between nations but which lacks all noble

causes and is merely a battle for power and importance .... And this battle will be stopped by a higher power, and it will come to pass as it is proclaimed ....

Amen

## **‘Hallowed be Thy name ....’**

***B.D. 1849 from March 15th 1941,  
taken from Book No. 28***

Hallowed be Thy name .... voice these words with deep devotion and, every day, remember the overwhelming love of the One Who gave you life .... and how His spirit is in you when you are in contact with Him .... You should pray to Him, speak to Him with profound faith, and profess this faith in Him by mentioning His name, by calling to Him in prayer, by praising and glorifying Him and by forever thanking Him .... And when you voice His name you should be conscious of the fact that you are speaking to the highest and most perfect Being Which you should approach with profound veneration, appealing for Its love and grace. When you become aware of how small and tiny you are compared to Him, when you lift your eyes to Him in silent reverence and entrust yourselves to Him, you will voice His name with profound depth of feeling, He will signify the most holiest of Beings and you will humbly go down on your knees to

Him .... For it is the Lord's will that you should also mention His name; it is His will that you should profess Him before the world. It is not enough that you only acknowledge Him in your hearts and only quietly enter into contact with Him on your own. It should become public knowledge that you want to belong to Him; you should pronounce His hallowed name with faith and courage, profess your love for Him and stand up to all external temptations to renounce Him. Voicing the divine name is extremely beneficial, for His name incorporates strength and each person can acquire this strength, provided that he entrusts himself to Him and passionately mentions His name .... by sincerely praying "Hallowed be Thy name ...."

Amen

## **Eruptions .... Activity of unbound spirits ....**

***B.D. 1851 from March 18th 1941,  
taken from Book No. 28***

As soon as the earth's core begins to move, an enormous roar will fill the air, for the earth's surroundings sense the outbreak of the spiritual substances in the earth's interior and is hugely affected by it. As a result of its sudden

freedom, the substance, which hitherto was banished into the hardest of forms, becomes extraordinarily active and influences the already more mature spirits such that the most remarkable changes in nature ensue, since the released spiritual substance, still being at the beginning of its development, tries to shape its process of development according to its own discretion. It would like to embody itself in creations which require a higher degree of maturity. But the spiritual substances in the form object to this, and thus a battle is also fought between the already more mature spirits and the still immature ones and this results in a turbulent eruption which can be heard in the world. This will be the start of that which shall horrify the whole world .... The spiritual substance inside of earth desires light and pushes towards the surface, and the sudden change from the region of the totally unredeemed into the realm of spirits which are already nearing redemption is well suited to cause the most incredible events in nature which people cannot explain in an earthly way, nevertheless they all have their reasons .... The influx of spiritual beings, having decided and thus agreed to become helpfully active, fills the space around the earth - where the eruptions took place - with this urge to be active, which cannot flourish as yet, and incites the still unbound spirits in the atmosphere into exceptional activity, so that such natural catastrophes are accompanied by inconceivable storms and outbreaks of natural forces, the intensity and effect of which are inconceivable to the human being. As a result he will also be entirely deprived of his thinking

ability, he will be so hard pressed by the spiritual substances that he will lose all rational judgment of the event and in this weak and passive state he puts up with everything.

Once the spiritual substance can manifest itself in some form or other and has allowed its urge of doing something to break through, the eruptions on earth will subside. That which wants to be helpful separates itself from that which remains in opposition to God, rises to the earth's surface, and joins a working spiritual being so that the latter's activity will be carried out with greater strength than before. All these beings are as yet still unbound and they therefore rage in quite a disastrous way. They are stronger than the already bound spirits in the plant and animal world, these spirits cannot offer sufficient resistance and are unable to defend themselves, so that their external form is destroyed by the unbound spirits, and thus many creations are being dissolved by these very natural forces. And this happens with divine approval, for when the time has come which God has set for the termination of such catastrophes, He will place this liberated spiritual substance in external forms again and assign them their work .... Thus all kinds of entirely new creations will arise again .... that which lives will cease to exist and new life will arise ordained by God .... This is why such natural disasters will not last long. The more unrestrained the released forces rage, the sooner will they be banished again; otherwise it would result in total destruction which, however, is not in

accordance with divine will. Only a change of what is in existence, that is, what is intended by God, is allowed, but not the destruction of what exists. Nevertheless, the changes are so enormous that the human being is faced by a divine expression of God which must shake him to the core, if he is not purely worldly minded and merely regards the process in a materialistic sense. If the voice of God does not speak to him during such events, then even the most powerful natural phenomena will fail in their purpose for his soul, and then the spirit in him will still be very far behind, with hardly any other possibility for the spiritual advancement of people who do not realise God's magnitude and omnipotence in such natural catastrophes.

Amen

## **Human contention that God's Word is completed ....**

***B.D. 1857 from March 22nd 1941,  
taken from Book No. 28***

It is a serious mistake to assume that God's Word is completed and to reject every divine revelation as fabrication of evil forces. Good and evil forces try to influence the human being. All good influences fulfil



God's will, evil forces act in opposition to divine will. Ignorant forces cannot and would not want to transmit good thoughts, due to their state of darkness they are still subject to God's adversary and therefore more susceptible to his influence than to the influence of the beings of light. However, as soon as they become aware they will give themselves into the care of the beings of light and submit to divine will, they recognise their lack of knowledge and now confer the information they receive from the beings of light to others. This has to be clarified first to disprove the erroneous assumption that forces of the beyond arbitrarily express themselves where such revelations are bestowed on humanity. The Lord Himself has taught on earth and made His Word accessible to people. It was His will that this Word should be recorded for future generations. With His Word He has announced to the people the working of His spirit. At the same time He has given the assurance that He will stay with them in His Word eternally .... 'I will send you the Comforter, the Spirit of truth ....'

However, there is no saying of the Lord which indicates that His Word must be considered to be complete .... It was supposed to remain unchanged and therefore not one Word should be added or taken away from the Gospel which might change the meaning of the divine Word that the Lord had given to the people. But human wisdom attempted to change and to improve .... The will to render God's Word more comprehensible often distorted or obscured its meaning with the result that even His

announced working of the spirit can no longer be understood properly and hence it is not acknowledged either. Humanity has completely lost the knowledge that God speaks and wants to speak to human beings time and again, that the audible Word of God in direct union with Him is, after all, what the human being should aspire to on earth. Instead human beings are deterred by the expression of divine will in this manner. God Himself approaches them in His Word yet they no longer know Him .... The Word is no longer alive in people, they are reading the dead Word but cannot grasp its meaning. A spiritual drought has set in, the well of living water is on the verge of becoming dry. And once again God brings forth a flow of living water from the rock in the wilderness .... He allows streams of living water to flow from the innermost being of those who, in longing for the deliciously refreshing drink, open their hearts and ears to receive His divine Word. And thus the Holy Scriptures are fulfilled .... Indeed, the Lord's Words during His life on earth would be invalid if God would no longer reveal Himself and not be with people in His Word. The human being has no authority to ascertain that His Work is finished; by taking this authority he only proves his ignorance and lack of comprehension of the written Word. He would thereby invalidate the numerous references to the working of the spirit and not understand the meaning of the divine Word himself. Consequently he belongs to those who are themselves misguided and who want to convey their misconception to other people, whilst not recognising the pure truth and

therefore withholding it from their fellow human beings. God's love is limitless and never expends itself .... This love will always and forever express itself through giving, and anyone living within love and requesting divine love may receive it at all times. God is love, God is the Word .... Whoever desires God's love receives His Word and may receive it eternally ....

Amen

## **Fatherly Words .... Faithful prayer and intercession ....**

***B.D. 1862 from March 24th 1941,  
taken from Book No. 28***

I will grant the prayer of anyone who confides in Me with complete confidence .... A life without struggle does not achieve maturity for the soul, the human being has to fight, and he can only be spared the battle if he puts his whole life into My hands of His own accord, if he entrusts himself to Me and faithfully relies on My help. Then he is the way I want My human children to be .... he acknowledges Me as His Father Whose omnipotence and love are so great that He will not let His child remain in adversity. And he never walks alone but always calls Me by his side .... he is not anxious and doubting but full of

confidence, he is not frightened but he has faith .... And I do not disappoint his faith .... Anyone who believes in Me like that will not ask in vain, I will help him and grant his expectations, and thereby his faith will become ever more profound and unshakable .... he will feel at peace for he fear nothing anymore, he knows himself to never be alone and forsaken .... The prayer's strength will sense whom the prayer is intended for .... It will result in spiritual clarity and strength of faith, people will sense that they receive strength and turn their spiritual vision upwards .... I Myself will send a flash of realisation into the hearts of those for whom My children faithfully pray. Whatever they request will be granted to them, and My love watches over those who are weak and in need of help so that they will not fall or go astray. For those who pray for their loved ones on earth and plead on behalf of their soul's salvation transfer the strength of prayer to them, and thus these can receive grace, for intercession is an act of neighbourly love, intercession is the most effective means to help them .... Then My spirit will seek to unite with them and will lead them towards realisation .... What a person cannot achieve of his own strength can be achieved by a faithful prayer which is sent up to Me on his behalf. And I will take special care of these souls, I will not leave them in ignorance, I will overshadow them with My grace, with My spirit, for a human child's love will not beseech Me in vain for My assistance. And thus be unconcerned, everyone takes the path he has to take in order to attain perfection .... as it happens it is good for his soul's higher development. And

if you faithfully put your trust in Me I will guide you through all adversities towards your eternal home ....

Amen

## **Sense of justice ... Judging one's fellow human being ....**

***B.D. 1869 from March 30th 1941,  
taken from Book No. 28***

The human being has to have an inherent sense of justice or he would be unable to pass judgment on apparently heartless conduct. Anyone who deems himself so exalted that he will not tolerate any objection because he believes himself infallible will never think righteously either, for he does not allow others the same rights he claims for himself. A substantial difference has to be made between people. Anyone being strictly critical of himself and his actions will also always make an effort to judge other people fairly. However, anyone who only looks for faults in his fellow human beings and believes himself without error will regard all conduct from a superior point of view, and thus his judgment is wrong.

Every human being can err; every human being can make

mistakes .... Yet he has to know himself, then he can fight his faults and improve himself .... But anyone who does not recognise a fault in himself will not strive for perfection either.

When he acts unkindly he will not be aware of it, he will not hold himself to account and is incapable of judging his actions fairly. He lacks a sense of justice; he will always consider his own actions beyond reproach but try to demean his fellow human being for the least mistake. It has to be clear to the human being that he has no right to accuse a fellow human being of a degrading action as long as he does not live up to a high moral standard himself. He should always consider his own shortcomings if he wants to criticise the failings of other people.

But someone with an inherent sense of justice will not hastily judge someone else, for he will try to put himself into the same situation and then also understand the failings and faults of the other person. However, in order to be able to do so he has to be truthful, he has to see things as they are .... he should not rate himself too highly and underrate his fellow human being, for then he will apply a different standard to his own faults than to the other person's faults, and that excludes all righteous thinking and judgment.

It is exceptionally valuable to firmly call oneself to account, then the human being will stay true to himself and not do his fellow human being an injustice out of selfishness by unfairly condemning his conduct and

putting himself above the other person. And thus the human being should first look at himself and his behaviour before he criticises his fellow human being and elevates himself as his judge ....

Amen

## **Immortality of the soul ....**

***B.D. 1874a from April 4th 1941,  
taken from Book No. 28***

The teaching of the immortality of the soul is not accepted by many people because they compare it to earthly transience. In their opinion nothing on earth is permanent, everything passes away, and hence they believe that they are no exception to this natural law. The earthly body decays indeed, that is, it seemingly disintegrates and passes away. But the human being does not consider that the apparent disappearance is only the means of transition into a new form. On reflection he will have to conclude that everything earthly serves some purpose, and he will observe that even the most insignificant creations are somehow related to one another and therefore not without purpose.

When such a work of creation fades away numerous other creations absorb the remainder of the first, which thus serves them and continues to live on in the new

creations. He only has to seriously observe an outer transformation and he would have to admit that the inner life cannot vanish either. And he should at least grant the human being this inner life too .... he has to make it clear to himself that the human soul, the emotional life, cannot be discontinued arbitrarily .... that this emotional life is the essential significance of every embodiment. The outer form is of no use unless the inner core is acknowledged by humanity.

## **Immortality of the soul ....**

***B.D. 1874b from April 4th 1941,  
taken from Book No. 28***

The construction of a human being always requires the same components: body, soul and spirit. The body .... the external form .... performs the functions which are determined by the soul. Consequently the body is just the agent through which the soul's will is accomplished. At the moment of death the soul no longer needs an agent for service as it did on earth .... i.e. in the visible work of creation .... because it changes its environment and moves into regions where nothing externally visible needs to be done. The body, which was just the instrument for the earthly path during which the soul should have formed itself into the carrier of the divine spirit, becomes unnecessary.



The spirit, the third component of the living being, lies in fact dormant in every human being and only becomes active when the will of the soul pays more attention to the spirit than to the body, that is, when the soul considers the earthly demands less important than the demands of the spirit, which always amounts to earthly needs becoming secondary. Although body, soul and spirit belong together they nevertheless can have separate goals. The soul can direct its will more towards the demands of the body, but it can also disregard those and make its will available to the spirit within itself. And it is precisely this direction of will that decides its life in the beyond, i.e. the state the soul finds itself in after the earthly life, which can be blissful or distressing. The earthly life, the function of the body, is therefore just a temporary condition for the soul. The soul impels the body to all actions on earth but it has by no means ceased to exist when the body cannot perform its function any longer. The soul has indeed left the body because it moves into regions where it no longer requires an exterior form.

But to consider the soul dead as well would be a completely wrong concept of its essence .... because the soul is something that cannot pass away. Indeed, when the human body is dead the soul can no longer determine its functions; it can, due to a lack of maturity because it had not given enough consideration to the spirit within itself, also fall into a state of inactivity; but it can never 'cease to exist'. Because the soul is something spiritual

that is everlasting, while the body consists of earthly substance, of matter, and is therefore subject to constant change and finally disintegrates into its components as soon as the soul has left the body ....

Amen

## **Decline of vegetation .... Storms - Tempests ....**

***B.D. 1888 from April 14th 1941,  
taken from Book No. 28***

It is by no means by chance that the earth's surface vegetation has changed as far as it involves stretches of land where human will and activity played a determining part. This particularly applies to forests or tree plantations which have fallen prey to human destructive will, which will not remain without influence on the climate as well as the condition of the soil.

Such deforestation represents a great danger to humanity if it takes place before its time, that is, before the spiritual substances in the plant creations have sufficiently matured to animate the next form. For these prematurely released spiritual substances don't leave the place of their interrupted stay without claiming appropriate compensation by pestering the spiritual

substances in their vicinity and, in their unconstrained state, frequently express themselves undesirably, from which they are not prevented by God either. Thus people in those areas will have to suffer extraordinary storms and devastations which will also severely impair the growth of the entire plant world. But where there is very little vegetation other disorders also manifest themselves. The water conditions leave much to be desired, that is, the absence of a constant supply of water turns the earth's soil into sand. And thus such stretches of land can become barren and desolate, and although people believe they have no influence over it they are nevertheless the actual cause of whole stretches of land becoming barren and excessively dry.

The danger is now that this will not be recognised and that people will thoughtlessly sacrifice constantly more areas of land to their greed for profit, for this is usually the reason why whole areas waste away. If the human being destroys creations for the sake of earthly gain it is a deliberate acknowledgment of the evil power. For the sake of money and monetary value he interferes with the divine plan of creation which gave everything its function and not least of all the whole world of plants on the earth's surface. But such interference also has to have an appropriate effect, albeit these consequences are not so immediately recognisable but require a certain length of time.

Storms and tempests will alarmingly increase, floods will make plant cultivation difficult, and this will result in a

decline of vegetation and simultaneously restrict the spiritual opportunities of development for the substances which want to take abode in the plant world corresponding to their degree of maturity and are thus prevented from doing so, which will result in constantly new storms and tempests ....

Amen

## **Confused thinking – Unbelief ... Faith – Grace ...**

***B.D. 1894 from April 21st 1941,  
taken from Book No. 28***

The explanation for their unbelief rests in people's confused thinking. When people join a school of thought, which can be called utterly wrong in comparison to the pure teaching of Christ, it is misguided thinking, and the less it corresponds to the truth, the more serious are the consequences. Thoughts which are opposite to the truth must, understandably, detract from true belief and prepare the ground for unbelief. However, a person will be unable to grasp a clear thought but will disjointedly believe one moment this and another that, i.e. he will deem it to be the truth. And thus his train of thought is confused, he will hardly recognise what is right as truth

and this state is scarcely satisfactory. It cannot result in a person's spiritual progress but instead will cause him constant anxiety and he will keep insisting on his point of view for a long time. He will walk past the pure truth because he excludes God. Hence he will try, by way of his own thinking, his own strength, to fathom what is incomprehensible to him, and his thoughts will therefore be led astray. Or his will for truth is not strong, consequently, it cannot be offered to him either, whereas the person who desires knowledge for its own sake will receive brightest wisdom. Belief and unbelief are based on opposite conditions. In order to have faith, the human being must have a childlike relationship with God. He must totally hand himself over to the eternal Deity .... he must consider himself small and insignificant and recognise in the eternal Deity a Being of profound perfection .... For this is faith .... The atheist, however, negates everything, he deems himself intelligent and wise and no instruction gets through to him. He will never subordinate himself to a higher Being because he denies His existence. Thus he is high and mighty; consequently, the preconditions are entirely different .... the believer's thoughts are clear and righteous, while the thoughts of the unbeliever lack order and therefore cannot reach a correct conclusion either. Spiritual clarity can never be given to an arrogant person since he does not pray for grace, therefore he cannot receive it. Without divine grace, however, the human being cannot think correctly. But the human being's will is frequently too weak in order to seek help from God Himself, and thus he will live

in ignorance until he prays for spiritual clarity and then humbly waits for divine grace ....

Amen

## **Cremation ... Accelerated disintegration process ....**

***B.D. 1899 from April 28th 1941,  
taken from Book No. 28***

Everything proceeds towards deliverance because it has to follow the path of higher development. When the spiritual essence separates itself from matter it has overcome the latter; but the spiritual essence has not always matured enough that it no longer needs an earthly (transformation) form and in that case it will re-enter a new form, which also consists of matter. However, when the soul, the spiritual essence within the human being, leaves the body, the earthly transformation has come to an end; that is, the soul escapes its last form on earth and enters, liberated from all matter, a new and entirely different realm than earth. The body, the final earthly form, is now destined for disintegration again; i.e. the spiritual substances which constitute the earthly body, also have to take the path of higher development, since these substances are still at the initial stage of

development, and for this purpose they will join divine works of creation again whose purpose is, after all, the higher development of the spirit. This can happen in various ways but it always has to include the possibility for active service. Consequently, the substance has to join a work of creation where it has to perform some kind of task and serve by fulfilling this task, since the substance can only develop through service. If the opportunity to serve is taken away, the path of higher development is interrupted, which is an extremely agonising condition for the spiritual substance. The time of spiritual suffering can seemingly be shortened but the spirit substance will not thank the human being who intervenes in its progress of development and prevents its service. As soon as the natural decomposition of a human body is prevented by accelerating its process of disintegration by cremation or by chemical means, the path of the spirit is far more painful and has to be so, because this process opposes divine order, it opposes the purpose which God has given every work of creation. It is an unauthorised action by people which does not concur with God's will. The human body should be returned to the earth as is its purpose ....

"From dust you have been taken, to dust you shall return" .... providing God's intervention does not determine otherwise by ending a human life in other ways than the human being's natural physical death. When the soul has freed itself from the body .... i.e. from the spiritual substance which forms the body .... the

body's job to serve the soul is fulfilled. But until it has completely disintegrated it still has other opportunities to be of service, even if the human being finds this difficult to understand, while an accelerated disintegration procedure will not allow the remains to carry out even the slightest act of service. Hence it is completely wrong to assume that the human body will join the soul as a result of this kind of purification process. The external form's spiritual substance has indeed the same function and eventually unites with countless other substances of soul and likewise walks the path of development on earth as a human soul .... but this cannot happen the way people erroneously believe. All substances are given an appointed time for their development which the human being cannot shorten at his own discretion by means of an external process .... if he does not completely use the only option of spiritual higher development on earth, i.e. that he, by his conduct, his right attitude towards God, his faith and his wholehearted actions of love, acquires a degree of maturity which can also shorten the physical form's earthly lifespan; however, it must always be left up to God's will which helpful task He will still assign to it ....

Amen

## **Comforting Words ....**



## ***B.D. 1923 from May 18th 1941, taken from Book No. 28***

Listen to the Word of comfort: remain courageous and strong in pain, do not waver in your faith, take refuge in prayer and do not deem yourselves abandoned, even if your world threatens to fall apart .... Faith moves mountains, and what seems impossible to you is made possible through firm faith, and if you call upon Me for help with full confidence, your prayer will not remain unanswered. Each person's path of life is predestined, thus he must travel it because the maturing of his soul depends on it. He would certainly travel this path willingly and gladly were he to know its necessity and the agonies in the beyond if he were spared this path on earth. Therefore never consider your earthly afflictions, for they will pass. Consider the infinitely long time in eternity, which would be far more painful without the suffering the human being has to endure on earth. And thus do not let yourselves become depressed by suffering and sorrow, instead, become stronger in faith for Me Who loves you and therefore often must painfully intervene in your life in order to save you for eternity. Never forget that I Am your Father, your friend, your brother and protector .... And come to Me with all your problems, hand yourselves willingly and without resistance over to My guidance and you will truly be guided well. Just do not let doubts torment you, counter them with profound faith and hope .... because My Word is truth, and if I

promise you My help, you need not be afraid.

Amen

# **Instincts of preliminary stages determine character ....**

***B.D. 1933a from May 25th 1941,  
taken from Book No. 28***

The current stage of human existence is more or less the same as the state of the spiritual substance within every external form, namely the substance will always have to fight the oppositions which are most powerful within itself, therefore the human being has to fight against evil instincts within himself during his earthly existence.

These are exceptionally well developed the more opportunity the spiritual essence has had to indulge itself during a preliminary stage. These instincts of the preliminary stages have left their mark on the spiritual essence, i.e. the human being has to fight particularly resolutely against such instincts .... while the human being who previously had completed his task willingly and consequently is already in a certain state of maturity will enjoy an easier life.

The will to serve liberates the substance correspondingly even while it is still surrounded by a form. And this now submissive substance will live in a form which outwardly also shows the being's willingness. Hence the soul's degree of maturity can be assessed by its external shape. In the embodiment as a human being only those substances of soul unite who share the same nature; but accordingly will also be the fight on earth because many substances of soul united and influence the being in much the same way as in the previous form. The sooner the being can learn to overcome the imperfections the less it will resist and can already become patient, willing and active during the preliminary stages .... However, if it holds on to an instinct within itself it will also have to suffer it as a human being and this determines his character ....

Amen

## **Heredity ... Disposition ... Parents ....**

***B.D. 1933b from May 29th 1941,  
taken from Book No. 28***

The human being's course of life corresponds to his nature, i.e. faults and imperfections adhere to his soul

from which it should free itself during its earthly life. These faults and imperfections are not the same in every person because every substance of soul has previously lived in a different external form in which certain good or bad peculiarities had developed to a greater or lesser degree. Consequently people's nature will be quite different too and likewise require different methods of teaching to promote what is good in them and to overcome what can be regarded as inadequate or bad. It would now be completely wrong to assume that all souls are formed alike at the moment of their embodiment on earth. There are in fact many differences and the human being assigns these differences between the beings to 'heredity'. Outwardly it may indeed appear as if the children would have to accept a certain burden during the course of their life, namely peculiarities of their being which can either be helpful or a hindrance to their spiritual development but for which they could not be held responsible, because they reason that their 'genetic make-up' is not their own fault and that it therefore requires more strength to combat and to overcome these inborn defects.

The human being has to combat all his defects and improve himself to acquire maturity of soul. And if specific instincts are predominant in him he should understand that human nature is not determined by parental disposition but that the human being had allowed precisely those weaknesses and imperfections to become part of his nature during the infinitely many

embodiments before the human stage, during which the being felt comfortable and did nothing to liberate itself from such faults and flaws. And now on earth it may well have the will to do so but it has a certain weakness. It considers its deficiency as its just right because it regards them as its inheritance without fault of its own. And yet it was its own volition to join people whose nature resembles its own during the time of its earthly life.

Precisely this similarity of nature had attracted the soul seeking incarnation, consequently one generally speaks of heredity even though the physical parents had no share in the nature of the souls in their care during the time on earth. Hence every soul has to deal with the task of higher development itself. This task can never be done by another human being, not even by the physical parents. Likewise, the parents are not responsible for the disposition of their children even though it may appear as if the children have to endure parental heredity. Every being is responsible for itself, although the human being as such should be educated to improve himself as long as he is still in the care of his physical parents, because every person has to accomplish the work on his soul himself otherwise he will not be able to liberate himself from his past guilt of sins ....

Amen

## **Will – Grace ... (Objection**

# Philippians 2 – 13)

***B.D. 1937 from June 3rd 1941, taken from Book No. 28***

Spiritual standstill sets in when the human being's will is too weak to overcome obstacles. No further progress can be made anymore. Although everything depends on God's grace, the human being must participate in order to become richly blessed, he must use his will and appeal for strength, then he will strive towards ascent. No way exists which excludes the human being's will, and thus he must activate his will first. No person can be released from this. Were God's grace designated to come **first**, the human being would be released from actively using his will. And this is an error which, in turn, results in further errors. God's grace and mercy certainly take hold of a person by providing him with every opportunity for his final deliverance. For it is an inconceivable grace on the part of God that the human being may travel the path of earthly life in order to return to Him again .... But in the stage of free will, only free will is decisive as to whether or not he will receive further blessings; otherwise life on earth would not be a probationary period which the human being has to pass. God wants to convey the pure truth to earth. Thus He must clarify where people are mistaken or have erred. He must rectify that which hitherto has been misunderstood, for He wants to separate the truth from the untruth. If the human being

resists God's effort to guide him into truth he also actively uses his will but in a God-opposing way and he can never become enlightened. God gave the human being the ability to think things through and to make a free decision. This is God's grace again, nevertheless, the free decision depends on the human being's will in turn, thus a person must **want** God's grace to take effect in him .... His will opens the heart to become receptive for God's grace, and his will must also make use of God's grace .... It is this clear realisation which lets a person develop a sense of responsibility in the first place, whereas the hitherto wrong attitude that the human being is incapable of doing anything without divine grace .... that this motivates the human will in the first place .... weakens his urge to be active. In that case one could not speak of a person's free will, if God Himself were to influence this will by conveying His grace. Unlimited means of help are certainly at a person's disposal, thus it is made easy for him to let his will become active, yet the latter must be done by the person himself of his own accord. The actual purpose of life is for a human being to make a decision for or against God of his own free will .... Consequently, God will never precipitate this decision by determining the human being's will, for this would truly defeat the purpose of life on earth. This is why people are repeatedly informed so that they will pay attention and release themselves from that which is mistaken, and from those human ideas and human interpretations which became erroneous without consciously intending to spread error. Yet precisely this

interpretation, that God Himself determines the human being's will, carries much weight for it leads to wrong thinking. Neither the Deity can be properly recognised nor does it strengthen the human being's sense of responsibility .... He will ultimately only rely on divine grace, which seizes the person depending on divine will .... which flows to him, providing that God has intended to bestow grace upon him. But in that case he could not be held accountable if he does **not** reach the goal given to him at the beginning of his embodiment. The crucial point can only be found in free will; however, anyone who argues the human being's free will regards himself as a puppet which is always and forever guided by a higher Power without taking any kind of active part in it. God's wisdom and love prevents a restriction of will, otherwise higher development would be impossible for the human soul and the long process on earth would be unnecessary if God's will were to select the aspirants for God's kingdom by conveying His grace to them, which people would subsequently seize and thus be safely guided by it into the kingdom of heaven.

Amen

**Redeeming the souls ....**  
**Bearers of light ....**  
**Knowledge - Light ....**



## ***B.D. 1947 from June 11th 1941, taken from Book No. 28***

Once the human being has chosen God, he has already fulfilled his earthly task, since from that moment onwards he has the will to serve God and to keep His commandments, even if this will is frequently still weak and the person often still transgresses. Nevertheless, with his desire to comply with divine will his past resistance to God has become null and void, he has recognised his origin and desires to return to it and his free decision has been made. From now on he is supported by forces who strengthen his will and increase his knowledge, and since these forces are already as one with God, he is consequently seized by God Himself and can no longer descend into his past guilt of sin, the sin of rebellion against God .... He has voluntarily handed himself over to God and will forever remain loyal to Him. Regression will be impossible, for the human being now strives consciously towards the goal of final unity. And then every hour on earth is merely a matter of maturing .... an increase of light, of knowledge, and this manifests itself in greater activity of love, in redeeming love .... Once the human being has released himself from the enemy's will, he proceeds with the active work of redeeming his fellow human beings, all other earthly work seems pointless and meaningless to him and all his thoughts and intentions relate to the work of helping his fellow human being's soul. And only then will he

accomplish the most valuable work .... he will join the activity of the light beings of the beyond and will work in a redeeming way .... But anyone who already takes part in the act of redemption on earth works with God for Him ..... His will as well as his work will be blessed. Although it then requires immense grace it will nevertheless be conveyed to the person so that he will subsequently be able to cope with every task posed to him. Redeeming the soul signifies that the person's hitherto dark state changes into light .... Spiritual darkness is ignorance, light, however, is knowledge ....

Consequently, the unredeemed souls must be offered knowledge in order to place them into this state of light. This task can therefore not be fulfilled by someone who has not yet become a bearer of light himself, even if he has great earthly knowledge at his disposal. The degree of worldly knowledge of a person wanting to do redeeming work on earth is therefore entirely unimportant .... The knowledge he wants to pass on has nothing in common with worldly knowledge. He is expected to convey divine wisdom to his fellow human beings but this can only be received by a person who had first shaped himself in a way that he can accept light and strength from God. Then he will be a labourer in the vineyard of the Lord in truth, for he will try to turn a fallow field into fertile soil. He will try to make the souls likewise receptive for the strength from God, he will try to impart spiritual knowledge to them and thus change the state of darkness among humanity into bright light.

And since this is the ultimate goal of embodiment on earth, everything that contributes towards spreading light among people must understandably be good and right. This is why the resolve to accomplish this great task will be blessed .... It will be strengthened and invigorated so that the person can achieve the task he had set himself. The beings of light in the beyond are likewise instructed to grant their help where it is needed .... by imparting strength to the person on earth and always directing his thoughts to this great assignment, so that the earthly light bearer won't tire in his work. For the redemption of the spirit is the reason and purpose of life on earth. And God, in His wisdom, knows every person's spiritual state, He will truly furnish someone wanting to do redemptive work with His strength and shower him with grace, for his will to be united with God enables him to do the kind of work on earth which corresponds to divine will. His spirit will be flowing through him and, furnished with light and strength .... with knowledge and power .... he will cope with his final earthly task and bring souls to the Lord, thus he will work in truth as a labourer in the vineyard of the Lord ....

Amen

## **Measures against the Christian faith ....**

## ***B.D. 1950 from June 12th 1941, taken from Book No. 28***

Anyone who entrusts himself to the Lord Jesus Christ in the ensuing time need not fear abandonment when confronted by difficulties. The adversary's power has indeed never had a more destructive influence upon believers than will be the case now. Incredibly harsh measures will be taken which intend that the human being should abandon the Christian faith, that he should deny Jesus Christ and adhere to a new course which represents completely different fundamental teachings to those of Jesus Christ. And much will be accomplished by these measures, many people will lose the knowledge of Him if they do not courageously stand firm against those who deem themselves mighty. There is One Who is much mightier and those who trust in Him need not worry. The Lord will give them everything, they will be knowledgeable and wise and speak, where necessary, with full conviction on behalf of their Lord and Saviour, they will be able to counter every contention; because the spirit of those who fight for Christ is awake and will manifest itself in the hour of need. Even if everything earthly seems to disappear, the Word of God, which He Himself gave to people on earth, will continue without fail. For God says 'My Word shall not pass away in all eternity ....'

On account of this Word a fierce battle will commence, but this battle is not related to world events .... It is a

battle which merely concerns the acknowledgement of Jesus Christ. This battle will indeed claim sacrifices, but anyone who wants to be strengthened by divine grace will also receive the strength to willingly endure even those sacrifices. He will readily speak on behalf of Jesus Christ and will no longer fear but undauntedly face events. And the Lord needs people who sacrifice themselves for Him and are always prepared to do God's will, because it is a critical time and requires full commitment. It brings events which can only be endured with faith in Jesus Christ but which also enable the human being's soul to mature fully and bring him the greatest reward, because only the devout human being will unite with the divine spirit which will teach him and provide him with strength through God's Word .... and repeatedly exhort him to remain faithful to the Lord and Redeemer ....the Divine Saviour .... when the world opposes Him and wants to remove Him from the hearts of human beings ....

Amen

## **Suicide .... Fate in the beyond ....**

***B.D. 1951 from June 13th 1941,  
taken from Book No. 28***

The path of the flesh has to be taken until the end, that is, every being also has to experience the embodiment as a human being. The earthly path prior to this cannot be deliberately shortened or interrupted. However, in the stage of free will the human being is able to use his free will and therefore also end his earthly life as a human being arbitrarily without being prevented. But the consequences of such interference in divine will are awful. A person like that is still immature, that is, he is without recognition or he would not take this step which deprives him of a great blessing ... to be able to improve his character until God Himself ends his life.

Nevertheless, he will become aware of his wretched action in the beyond and his remorse will be beyond description.

If it is God's will to end a life, irrespective of whether the person is still young and not ready for eternity, then God recognises the necessity of it and terminating the earthly life is an act of grace, either to avert peril from the soul or to offer this soul an opportunity in the beyond that will raise its state of maturity within a short period of time. The forcible termination of life is, however, spiritually a great step backwards, for the being is suddenly without strength to improve itself and depends on the mercy of the beings of light or people, that is to say, if they don't help it will forever remain on the same level of imperfection. The soul first has to come to realise this in the beyond which will trigger an indescribable state of remorse. But if the soul is willing it will use every

opportunity to be helpful, yet its struggle will be too difficult for words. In a manner of speaking, it has to carry on bearing the earthly suffering in the beyond, which it had wanted to escape; the same things it had thrown away are still clinging to it and torment it dreadfully.

Yet God is not without mercy even towards a soul which had disregarded His will, providing the soul is not entirely obstinate. After some time, which to the soul seems to last forever, it will also be given tasks in the beyond which will ease its situation. And then it will have to use its will again. If it agrees to help suffering souls in the beyond it will soon notice an obvious improvement in its circumstances. But this may well be after the time God had designated for its actual earthly life, thus it will not have arbitrarily shortened its earthly path after all and will still have to linger in the state of suffering in the beyond, that it thought unbearable on earth, until God takes pity on the soul.

Hence its intervention in divine will was entirely pointless; it deprived it of the grace to mature fully on earth but by no means ended the ordeal of earthly existence. Consequently, such souls are pitiable, for it will take a long time until they are redeemed and the awareness to have thrown God's blessing away is so agonising for the soul that it is in a sorry state in the beyond. Such souls are especially in need of people's prayers. Only people's love on earth can relieve their torments and impart the strength to improve their fate by using their will, in as much as the soul in the beyond is

prepared to be of service and thereby, after an apparently endless time, will be able to change its lightless abode which, understandably, is its share (fate?) until it is saved by God's love and mercy ....

Amen

## **Demonic activity ... Necessity of divine intervention ....**

***B.D. 1960 from June 19th 1941,  
taken from Book No. 28***

Just a little while longer and you will remember the Words I spoke on earth that the world will become chaotic in every respect. Soon you will realise where heartlessness between people will lead to. If you still harbour a spark of love within yourselves you will recognise the opponent's power, who incites everyone to conflict with each other. His activity is demonic, and as a result people also behave demonically in their unkindness. And thus I will intervene and by means of apparent disorder nevertheless restore order again, so that humanity's real purpose is made clear to them. When people in their delusion destroy everything, such an act of destruction from above is absolutely necessary so that



the injustice will be clearly revealed and humanity will recognise it as such.

And there will be acute distress, and in this distress people's pleading prayers will rise up to the Father in heaven, which is the purpose of My intervention, so that people will look for Me, so that they will remember Me again and take refuge in Me.

For there is no other way left to achieve this, only the harshest adversity will make them take the path to Me, and only the harshest adversity will yet be capable of changing humanity. But My spirit will be with all those who are loyal to Me. They will recognise Me in everything that is happening and faithfully await My help .... And they will speak on My behalf and try to explain to their fellow human beings the error of their lives and refer them to Me. And then, depending on their attitude towards Me, I will also take care of their hearts, and wherever a devout thought rises up to Me I will send comfort and help. I will bestow My love upon all those who recognise their wrong and thus call to Me appealingly. For I love My living creations and only want to save them from greatest danger .... from a danger which will far exceed the earthly suffering they will encounter. And I will permeate all those with My spirit who are willing to be of service to Me, so that they will be able to comply with their task and not waver in their faith when the time of affliction arrives ....

Amen

# **Inner voice ... Thought ... Deed ....**

***B.D. 2020 from August 8th 1941,  
taken from Book No. 30***

Anything a person's innermost feeling objects to does not comply with God's will either, providing his willingness to serve God determines his thoughts and actions. He is exposed to the most varied temptations from the adversary's side. Every weakness of will is used by him in order to cause him harm. Yet an earthly child devoted to God also feels the most subtle impulses directed against it, and therefore everything the human being affirms in his innermost heart will be right, and that which fills it with discomfort will be wrong. Even that which benefits the comfort of his body will make him feel slightly uneasy if it does not comply with divine will but corresponds to the adversary's will instead, for this reason the human being should pay attention to the gentle voice in his heart and always follow it. Each action originates from a thought and the thought is the influence of a good or evil power on the person. The thought is the spiritual flow of the power the human being hands himself over to. And the thought is followed by the deed with the use of God's strength .... If a positive thought comes to a person, that

is, if he receives the mediation of good spiritual beings, he cannot do anything but execute these thoughts by availing himself of the indwelling strength and activating his will. The more unresisting good spiritual forces find a person, the more diligently he performs his occupation, the more he utilises his thoughts, and this is tireless work, it is constant activity. And if the human being lets the good thoughts take effect in him, if he listens to the good spiritual beings, he can only carry out good deeds.

However, unscrupulous people also accept the transfers by evil forces and also activate their will by committing bad deeds. Yet they will not be prevented from doing so. If they do not heed the inner voice then all efforts by the good beings are in vain, their influence is minimal, consequently they withdraw from people until they look for God again of their own accord and thus He allows Himself to be found by them. If a person's striving for perfection is great, he will also recognise whether the inner voice gives him the right advice and he will also feel what he should reject, for God gives the striving person the right understanding, and he should only pay attention to his innermost voice, for he will be guided right at all times.

Amen

# **Catastrophe ... Fulfilment of the Scriptures ... God's**

# love for humanity ....

***B.D. 2033 from August 17th 1941,  
taken from Book No. 30***

Only a few people turn their attention to the signs of the time, yet these few know that the time has come which Jesus revealed, for it is coming to pass as it is written, and they realise that every period of time has been preordained for eternity .... There is no doubt that that a terrible catastrophe is about to befall earth .... God's love is infinite and so is His mercy, and whatever will come upon earth is only based on His love. For without this happening humanity would be doomed. God knows of the many misguided people, of their wrong will, of their heartlessness; He knows that humankind is in a state far removed from God, and He takes pity on their spiritual hardship. He has no other objective but to change this pitiable state of humanity, to remedy it, to save people from utmost distress. And He foresaw humanity's adversity and, during the time He lived on earth, announced what His love and mercy would bestow upon people in order to save them. Yet humanity cannot and does not want to believe, for it no longer recognises God, it laughs and scoffs instead of taking stock of itself and continues on the path which is leading to disaster. And the hour will come when the extent of adversity will be immense, when the elements of nature will rage such that people will be incapable of thinking and taking

actions, yet there is no other possibility for people to recognise their weakness; there is no way which could persuade humankind to turn to God without such suffering, and if it is not to go entirely astray it must accept this event which has been predetermined for eternity and will come to pass as the Lord proclaimed ....

Amen

## **Teaching of predestination ....**

***B.D. 2034 from August 18th 1941,  
taken from Book No. 30***

The teaching of predestination has to be clarified most decisively if people are not to be pushed into wrong thinking and completely mislead. It is a genuine danger to people who accept what is offered to them as a religious dogma without seriously reflecting on it. This teaching destroys every impulse in the human being; by suppressing the aspiration to ascend, the human being becomes inactive and completely surrenders himself to the actions of forces which now have power over him. The person does nothing to resolve this obvious inertia because he believes that God's grace will reveal itself to him when He so pleases. This assumption is proof of his

missing faith in God's infinite love and mercy, it is an assessment of the Eternal Deity in accordance with human understanding, because it infers that God's love depends on the worth or worthlessness of the person.

God's mercy includes all human beings; and divine love is only ineffective where human will offers resistance, but it is always concerned with turning this will towards itself. God is certainly pleased when people ask for Him, whose will thus enables the bestowing of grace. But His care and love is always concerned with those who do not yet want to be seized by His love. However, it would be completely wrong to assume that God's gift of grace is given arbitrarily, that receiving it can neither be prevented nor encouraged by the human being; it would be completely wrong to use human limitations in respect to the giving of God's love, i.e. by assuming that it depends on God's pleasure in the person. In that case the human being would be a lamentable creature, because he is in an imperfect state of maturity which would have to exclude God's benevolence; he is still sinful, i.e. his will is still striving towards God. God's benevolence is not aroused until the will turns towards God and this motivates God in giving His grace in abundance to the human being. But God will never impart His grace to the human being whose inner will is still in opposition to God. A person can indeed openly oppose God but his soul can nevertheless desire God, in which case the forces of the underworld are strongly influencing him to revolt against God, and then divine grace will help him to achieve

victory over these forces. This is undeniably caused by divine grace, it has helped the person whose heart had desired God. A human being who would receive divine grace without his will or in opposition to his will would be a predestined being, he would have to mature by means of grace. But such maturity excludes free will and would therefore never result in perfection ....

Amen

## **Mental activity ....**

***B.D. 2039a from August 21st 1941,  
taken from Book No. 30***

A purely spiritual exchange produces purely spiritual results, thus the will to accept spiritual knowledge has to precede the transfer of such by the giving forces. This is therefore a request for beneficial spiritual strength, consciously or unconsciously .... consciously through prayer for enlightenment, unconsciously through questions posted by a person which touch upon spiritual matters and which are consequently answered by knowledgeable spiritual beings. If, however, the human being is more in contact with the earth, that is, if he desires clarification about purely earthly things, he can give himself the answer in a solely intellectual way. The intellect is likewise a gift of God but it cannot be

compared to spiritual activity by the forces in the beyond, which are in a state of perfection and merely pass on God's flow of strength, for what they pass on is profound realisation and the knowledge of spiritual things which the intellect as such would never be able to ascertain. Earthly questions, however, can be fully solved, as then the strength of God becomes active, which flows to every living being and which even **that** person who has no spiritual questions at all to settle, may possess. Consequently, the mental knowledge of every earthly striving person can be very extensive and yet need not signify light for him. For this knowledge will be extinguished at the moment of death, whereas the transmissions from the spiritual kingdom remain the property of every soul, for it is everlasting knowledge, thus purest spiritual strength, which is sent by God through mediators to earth. The best evidence for this is the fact that such wisdom is offered to people without mental activity, whilst earthly solutions without exception necessitate mental work, thus using the energy of life from God ....

Amen

## **Mental activity ....**

***B.D. 2039b from August 21st 1941,  
taken from Book No. 30***



The human being cannot be compelled to get in touch with spiritual forces, but it is a deliberate act of free will. Consequently, he must also have the opportunity to be mentally active if he does not establish a connection with knowledgeable forces, only in that case is his activity limited insofar as he can only solve earthly questions. Then only his physical organism will be active; he will use the energy of life which flows to him entirely independently from support from the beyond, as long as he does not appeal to these forces for it. The thoughts the person is now thinking have no spiritual value at all, thus no value for eternity, they are not spiritual but earthly, i.e. transient knowledge. However, mental activity can also touch upon problems which lie beyond worldly things, but the human being, due to his will and his attitude towards God, resists the influence of knowledgeable beings from the beyond with the result that his thoughts will utterly contradict the truth .... Hence, only those spiritual forces will express themselves which are requested by the human being's will .... But at all times spiritual forces are at work as soon as spiritual questions are raised, whereas earthly questions only need the vitality which flows to him, even though the person believes that his intellectual thinking always solves every problem. Ignorant or lying forces will certainly let the person believe that he has gained the result by purely intellectual means, since it is their intention to deny all spiritual activity, in order to also destroy the belief in divine working. Consequently, the human being considers himself the originator of every

thought, and the forces supporting him will encourage this opinion, and only a person aspiring towards God understands the nature of thought. He feels the currents which flow to him from the kingdom of light. He willingly allows himself to be influenced by the good spiritual forces. And therefore, only the person aspiring towards God will know the truth, for that which flows to him in the form of thoughts is from God ... purest truth will be imparted according to His will through bearers of light to the human being, because God is the Truth Himself ....

Amen

## **God's permission ... Human free will ....**

***B.D. 2044 from August 26th 1941,  
taken from Book No. 30***

Human free will is the reason for everything people inflict on each other, which so often results in unspeakable suffering and yet is permitted by God. Although His almighty power could indeed prevent it but it would be a restriction of free will if the human being was prevented to carry out what he wants to do. If God took his free will away the human being would be forced back into a state of compulsion. It would be impossible

for him to test his free will during his period of life on earth. A human being has to be able to accomplish what he intends to do, only then can it be said that he has the means of self determination during life on earth. Only when the effect of free will, in a bad sense, is directed against people who are consciously connected with God and who pray to Him for protection, will God prevent the latter from being harmed by bad will, but then the bad will is judged as an accomplished act.

At the moment an endless number of people are subjected to the same ill will, thus they also share responsibility for the suffering of the time .... if they approve of actions which result from it. They will not be free from guilt until they reject acts of evil. Condoning an act of evil makes them partly responsible for the suffering that results from it. However, what countless many people consider right, although it is the greatest wrong, will not be reversed by God because people need to understand their wrongdoings themselves or they will always do the same again without recognising their wrong as such. Nevertheless, this does not mean that God's justice will not intervene when humanity's activity becomes so extensive that humanity itself is in danger. But even this intervention is merely to let people's free will become active again and, in view of the huge suffering, turn towards good .... so that the human being now, of his own free will, strives to make up for what he, due to his previous approval, either directly or indirectly has caused himself. God must permit humanity's actions,

He does not want to determine the will of a human being before making his own free decision. However, when he has finally decided, God will reduce the effects where necessary and permissible without interfering with the free will of the human being ....

Amen

## **Souls of the deceased close to earth ....**

***B.D. 2075 from September 17th 1941,  
taken from Book No. 30***

As long as the souls of the deceased still think of and desire earthly possessions and pleasures they will stay within the proximity of earth. Through their longing they are connected with everything they desire and will always stay close to it. Even in the beyond they cannot easily detach themselves from what they loved on earth, with the result that they find it difficult to strive to ascend in the beyond. Spiritual maturing becomes questionable while earthly desire is still captivating the soul, for desire generally excludes giving until the soul desires spiritual nourishment. Receiving this will also awaken or increase its urge to give. But if it is not yet receptive to spiritual sustenance it will not be offered to the soul, for then it

has not yet completely separated itself from earth and would never recognise the value of what is desired in the spiritual kingdom as the most precious possession. However, the desire for earthly possessions shows a lack of maturity of soul, and thus earth is surrounded by numerous souls in an inadequate state of maturity, which cannot detach themselves from what seemed dear and desirable to them in earthly life. Such souls can only be helped by prayer, for a loving prayer lets them feel something which they haven't felt until then .... they receive a flow of spiritual strength, which triggers in them something entirely different than the fulfilment of earthly longing. This influx of strength makes them feel extremely happy and they gradually turn away from the goals they had sought after until then. And thus a human being on earth can bestow upon the deceased immense help and a tremendous labour of love if he often forwards a prayer to them, which initiates a detachment from earth and its formerly loved surroundings. All earthly things are a hindrance to higher development, only when the longing for it is fought will spiritual matters step into the forefront, and only then will the ascending progress in the beyond begin, and the sooner the spiritual endeavour starts in the beyond the less the soul will have to fight, for the earthly longing will constantly lessen, the soul will distance itself from earth ever more, and it will have overcome matter when it feels the desire for spiritual possessions .... Then it will not just desire but also want to give, and this is the beginning of the ascent to the pinnacle ....

Amen

# **Misuse of the gifts which distinguish the human being from the animal ...**

***B.D. 2083 from September 22nd 1941, taken from Book No. 30***

Unadulterated pleasure in life is the goal and endeavour of every person who still lives in darkest spiritual night on earth. And as soon as he achieves it he will enjoy his life to the full and only live for his body while his soul goes without, and if the human being is satisfied with purely physical pleasures his state can be called exceedingly imperfect. It testifies to a purely materialistic attitude, for then the human beings will merely be an empty shell, he cannot be deemed any more, that is, more highly advanced than a creature which lacks intellect and free will, for the latter is not being used or is used in a completely wrong way by the person. The gifts which distinguish the human being from the animal are intended to achieve the soul's higher development; their use shall merely manage to achieve the soul's transformation. The human being, however, only uses these gifts to enhance his body's well-being, and thus he

is misusing them. In this case the circumstances of the individual person are not important, for the **striving** for the pleasures of life in itself is a misuse of his received energy of life and the gifts bestowed upon him by God's love. As to whether he will find fulfilment in his life does not change the fact that his desire worsens the darkness of soul, for his thoughts and intentions impede the soul's actual task. Hence the person's life can remain empty and deprived of earthly pleasure and still not gain him psychological higher development because his desire is orientated towards earthly pleasure. Fulfilment is often denied to them in order to redirect their thoughts and intentions towards spiritual experiences, and yet they fail to find the path into the spiritual kingdom. Their highest goal is and remains earthly happiness .... And such an attitude will not reduce their distance from God, thus it is the cause of a deficiency which will have far-reaching consequences at the end of their earthly life, and this deficiency can no longer be rectified once the soul has left its earthly body.

On the other hand, a short time on earth can suffice to make up for what had been neglected if the human being takes the shaping of his soul seriously. This is why ever more opportunities will approach the human being in his latter years of life which he only needs to make use of and which, if he is willing, can bring him incomparable blessings, for God will not leave misguided souls without help even if the human being does not acknowledge Him, i.e., even if through his attitude towards worldly

pleasures and earthly possessions he turns towards God's adversary. He struggles for his soul until his death. Time and again He is willing to help and guides him such that his thoughts will be turned to spiritual spheres. And time and again his will is given an opportunity to make a decision. For divine love is such that it will not let go of whatever wants to withdraw from Him. Even so, God will never decisively intervene in the human being's will but so evidently bring **those** people together who can complement each other, i.e., He brings badly informed people in contact with those who can serve them in a giving and instructive way. This task is often difficult as long as the world is still alluring, which weakens the will for the acceptance of spiritual truths. Yet occasionally just slight attempts will suffice to make a human being receptive to them .... namely, when the world gives him very little .... Unfulfilled desire can also lead to overcoming the desire, in which case it was richly blessed. Then the person's struggle with himself, against his own craving, was made easy for him by denying him the satisfaction. And this, too, is God's grace, which can lead to the right decision of the free will. One day people will thank God for what they so bitterly and harshly condemn, if it was successful .... or they will suffer bitter regret if their will ignored this grace as well ....

Amen

## Purpose of natural



# disasters ....

## ***B.D. 2086 from September 25th 1941, taken from Book No. 30***

It can be unhesitatingly stated that the earth will be afflicted by powerful natural disasters; indeed, these catastrophes should even be mentioned so that people will know that the respective events are not determined by coincidences. There is no such thing as a coincidence, everything is predetermined, and everything takes the path of higher development. And the forthcoming natural disaster will release countless beings and provide them with opportunities for new forms. At the same time, however the disasters are intended to affect people such that they will look for a connection with God. People only consider the latter very rarely now, this is why God wants to bring Himself closer to them again if only by means which cause fear and terror in people; but if events are proclaimed in advance a person will recognise the correlations and then entrust himself to the Power Which is able to help him. The forces of nature are the only means which can shake up the most unbelieving person and lead him back to faith. Yet they never last long and likewise the will to believe only lasts for as long as a person is in danger of losing his life.

However, the eternal Deity will never intervene with anyone such that a person is forced to believe .... Even in

greatest physical adversity He will allow him his freedom. He certainly fights for the still imperfect souls but He does not compel them. And therefore natural disasters will also have to occur within some conformity to law, they just happen more or less violently depending on the necessity for those endangered people who lack correct realisation. And for that reason they shall be informed of the forthcoming events .... Humankind shall become utterly helpless and with childlike trust call upon God for assistance; prior to this it shall already be informed of the dreadful time it is approaching, and if it is only of weak faith all announcements will be accepted with indifference since it will most likely assume that the announced event will not happen. And yet, people will remember it if their body and soul are in peril. And this is intended, for as horrendous as the effects of a natural disaster might be it always entails a shock to human thinking and this can also have a beneficial effect on people's faith, providing they had received the knowledge beforehand. For the whole of humanity is facing a turning point of life. And blessed is he who recognises God's will in everything sent. Then he will truly not be able to behave differently than according to His will and only ever see the great adversity of his fellow human beings and look at the disaster as a means which can ease this hardship .... And this disaster is imminent .... it will come like a thief in the night .... And it will just as quickly be over again, yet the result will be inconceivable ....

Amen

# **Danger of accepting established traditions .... Examination ....**

***B.D. 2091 from September 30th 1941,  
taken from Book No. 30***

It is incomprehensible when a person supports a traditionally adopted teaching which would barely stand up to serious scrutiny. Only someone hungry for truth scrutinises every teaching and will indeed be successful insofar as that he will be able to differentiate between misguided teachings and the truth and correspondingly decide for or against existing doctrines. He will accept what he recognises as truth and retain it as a precious possession. But he will also disassociate himself easily from that which seems untrue to him, he will consider it worthless and thus he will not hesitate to give it up, to reject it. And only then will he value the doctrine and be imbued by it. And since it came alive in him he will stand up for this teaching, whereas traditionally adopted teachings are lifeless possessions, for they are accepted and kept due to some sense of duty. The person dare not voice his own opinion and strictly adheres to the teaching

people imparted to him. Such a doctrine cannot lead to spiritual maturity in a person, for only that which he recognises as truth refines his nature. But in order to recognise the truth of a teaching the person must weigh up all pros and cons. If this is his serious will, he will recognise the truth and his work will begin .... to enlighten his fellow human beings as well. However, a person can only endorse **that** teaching which he himself regards to be true. Hence he must have examined it first before he can pass a teaching on. A certain sign of the value of a teaching is when it can be imparted to a fellow human being with complete confidence. If a person is so penetrated by it that he is capable of imparting a teaching understandably and acceptably then it can also be assumed that he has seriously examined it himself, for he cannot explain something that is still unclear to him, nor would it stand up to serious scrutiny and would therefore be discarded by himself as worthless. Thus, when it is being discussed, the battle of words will be won by **that** person who had formed an opinion about a doctrine and thought about it himself. He will find it easy to inform his fellow human being because he will have mastered the content of what he wants to pass on, whereas an adopted doctrine becomes more a game of words, because it cannot stand up to closer inspection and is therefore not suitable to be passed on. In that case people can only ever adhere to the wording of a teaching; however, the meaning of the wording causes confusion among people, just as, vice versa, the imparting of a teaching which was recognised to be true will lead to

bright light and realisation in a fellow human being. This is why the acceptance of traditional religious doctrines must be warned against time and again, for they offer little or nothing at all to people. But something that should make people happy must be equally acceptable for all people, provided they are permeated by the desire for truth and see in it a mission to pass on what is imparted to them. They are fully capable of differentiating between truth and lies, thus a thoughtless acceptance of established traditions will be out of the question ....

Amen

## **God's call to service ....**

### **Inner voice ....**

***B.D. 2099 from October 5th 1941,  
taken from Book No. 30***

You should subordinate yourselves to the Lord in every respect, that is, you should always be willing to do that which is pleasing to God. You should only ever accept His will and whatever the inner voice then advises you to do will be right, for God Himself manifests His will to you through the inner voice. Thus, you carry out your will, so to speak, and yet it goes hand in hand with God's will. In

that case, you no longer need to worry, for then you will live on earth under the protection of your spiritual friends who will mentally inform you of divine will. And spiritual striving will always be first required of you, although your earthly work ought not to be neglected, yet if you offer your services to God it is His will that you are at all times at His disposal, that you serve Him when He calls you to do so .... And you hear His call when you listen within. To be of service to God means to be ready for Him at all times and to follow His call. However, the call from above sounds gently and subtly in your heart, and in order to hear it you must practise humility, love, gentleness and peacefulness. Thereby you shape the heart's ear which will perceive the most subtle call and you will always know when the Lord is in need of you .... Then He will no longer call you in vain, for then you will hear His voice and hurry to be of service to Him ....

Amen

## **Creation of the beings .... Wrong will ....**

***B.D. 2100 from October 6th 1941,  
taken from Book No. 30***

Bear in mind that you are the living creations of the one

who opposed God, that you were called into existence by the will of the God opposing power and that you are therefore children of sin .... God did not withhold His strength from this spirit who once emerged from His strength as a perfect being, hence he made use of God's strength and, by drawing on divine strength, let countless beings arise from his will, and this was your beginning .... You are the products of a wrong will and yet of divine origin, since only God's strength made you become what God's adversary wanted. And this is why you are subject to him as long as your will still strives for the same .... separation from God .... for this was the fundamental idea, the motive for the apostasy from God .... to be free from His power .... to be free and to rule over the beings. And thus the most illuminated being created by God descended into the deepest abyss .... it rebelled against God and tried to instigate all beings having emerged from his will to also rebel against God .... And his created beings succumbed to his will although they were able to freely decide which lord to acknowledge. The beings were in his power because they surrendered their will to him, which was subsequently abused by God's adversary by binding it and thereby enslaving the originally free living creations .... However, everything that emerges from God's strength has the urge for freedom, and in order to return this freedom to the beings God seized the beings from their maker's power .... He placed them in a free state into the spiritual world and gave them the right of self-determination .... The beings, however, also abused their freedom and also became sinful by taking the

opponent's side. But divine strength is the fundamental substance of the beings, and divine strength must flow back to God without fail. And thus God wrestles for these fallen-away beings so that they will find the path to Him and offer Him their will ....

Human intellect cannot comprehend that nothing can ever be lost which emerges from God; it cannot understand what an enormous task it is to lead that which had distanced itself close to God again .... Nor can human intellect accept that the power of God's adversary was so great as to create beings, and that divine strength did not intervene to change his will, so that he would have had to acknowledge God as Lord above himself and also order his products to approach God and comply with His will .... Human intellect cannot comprehend that infinite times pass by before the transformation of these living creations' thinking takes place and they recognise God .... And therefore God informs people through spiritual channels of the knowledge of which power was active during the creation of the beings who are now experiencing their embodiment on earth .... These beings voluntarily aspired to be in opposition to God and would never ever return to God again had they been left in the state of free will; and since they had been created by the wrong will, the wrong will was also within them and this consequently **had** to strive contrary to God, for they did not know the power which was responsible for their aspiration. And thus the beings were subject to their creator, they were something imperfect, enslaved and



therefore alienated from God, which could not correspond to His will and nature.

God, as the most perfect Being, could not tolerate anything near Him which did not correspond to this state of perfection. Nevertheless, it was not the beings' own fault because they did not recognise the light as yet since they had emerged from darkness. God's love helped these beings and informed them of the light .... He gave them freedom of will by removing His adversary's power over the beings and thus freed the beings from his control. The imperfectly created beings, however, could not be changed by divine will to become perfect but had to decide for themselves, they had to strive towards God's presence of their own accord and distance themselves from the adversary. Due to their freedom of will they had been placed into a position to decide since they now knew about both powers. Yet their wrong will predominated and the beings turned towards their maker again and lost themselves to the darkness .... And God took pity on them, for the state of those without light was painful. His love wanted the beings in a happy state. And so He removed the beings' will and let them take an infinitely long path in a state without willpower which should lead them into perfection. And for this purpose God let the creation arise .... God shaped forms which were designed to shelter the passive beings .... Thus God created heaven and earth .... a spiritual and an earthly world, which was destined to be an abode for the imperfect beings until they had become perfect .... Now

the beings were forced to discard their arrogance and bow down to divine will. They had to endure a state which represented a constraint for the spiritual being which formerly enjoyed its freedom. It was deprived of its freedom because it had abused it .... However, the path through the works of creation will bring it closer again to its previous freedom until it finally receives its freedom again when it is a human being, in order to then pass the test as to whether it will use its free will in the right way. There is indeed a great risk that the being will not pass the test, yet such a test has to take place because the return to God is only of full value in free will .... thus it signifies that the being will come closer to God. The strength from God which was once used by the adversary for the creation of the beings will have flowed back to its origin, and at the same time the God-opposing will have changed into a God-resembling will, thus the being has become perfect as soon as it shares the same will as God .... The being, which had no knowledge of God when it was created, only recognised God's adversary as its lord; but now it has freed itself from his power and found the path home to its Father, from Whose strength it emerged ....

Amen

**Innermost feeling guiding  
principle for way of life ....**

## ***B.D. 2104 from October 9th 1941, taken from Book No. 30***

The human being's innermost feeling is the guiding principle for his way of life. As long as a person asks questions he neither negates nor affirms anything, and then his inner voice will speak to him to which he only needs to pay attention in order to be on the right path. Being able to affirm is often very difficult as long as faith is lacking, yet only the will makes the decision. If it is good, then the human being will unhesitatingly accept what he is told by his innermost feeling, for with his questioning he opens his heart to the influence of friends in the beyond. But a person whose will is still controlled by the adversary keeps his heart closed to these suggestions. Thus he opposes and rejects them, that is, he negates. Paying attention to the voice of his heart will only ever be done by a person who is willing to do what is right, for he asks questions and waits for an answer. An unwilling person lives without asking questions relating to spiritual knowledge, because he negates everything of a spiritual nature, i.e., a life beyond the earthly life. And someone who does not ask questions cannot receive an answer. A person's thinking mostly revolves around earthly things, and he considers the time spent on spiritual research a waste of time. In that case, however, he is still so materialistically inclined that he lacks the sentiment for the gentle voice within himself. Therefore he will not pay attention to his innermost feelings either.

Thus his inner voice will predominantly sound where the love for the world, the sense for all earthly things, for matter, begins to diminish .... Only then will a person occupy himself with deeper thoughts with the result that he will often question himself .... so that he then, in a manner of speaking, will also give himself the answer which, however, was actually mentally transmitted to him by spiritual friends .... For as soon as his will is good and does not reject God he will receive the truth mentally and he can confidently believe his inner voice .... hence his innermost sentiment .... and subsequently do what he is impelled to do. Only the will must aspire towards that which is good .... he must want to do what is right then he will invariably also be shown which path he should take ....

Amen

## **Process of transmission is an act of spiritual emanation of strength ....**

***B.D. 2105 from October 9th 1941,  
taken from Book No. 30***

Spiritual contact can always and forever be established, yet rarely in such obvious ways that the working of spiritual forces is clearly recognisable. If such contact

from the beyond to earth happens then it is also for a purpose and this, in turn, explains that the contents of the proclamations which are conveyed to people from above are carefully safeguarded. All reservations regarding their credibility must be put aside, for that which is intended for the whole human race and not just for an individual human being is not being arbitrarily or indiscriminately imparted to a person. The least contradiction in the contents would cause people to reject it. And since it is God's will to offer them a pure teaching He will also prevent the information from above being interspersed with errors. The giving forces are not arbitrarily permitted to teach; they receive their instructions from God and cannot add to it of their own will, for they only carry out the divine will. They are living in truth themselves and, understandably, will not distribute untruth. Ignorant beings, however, are powerless .... They are certainly able to harass the thoughts of people which are on the same level of imperfection as they are but they lack the ability to dictate correct manuscripts .... For worldly abilities are excluded in the beyond as soon as the state of maturity is imperfect .... The process of transmitting spiritual proclamations in this way is an act of spiritual transference of strength .... However, only a being of light is able to distribute spiritual strength, because it is also a recipient and bearer of strength. But ignorant beings or beings with inadequate knowledge also lack strength, consequently, such transcripts cannot take place because they are, after all, the outcome of emanation of spiritual

strength in the first place. People's allocated vitality is not enough to produce documents of spiritual content in such a short space of time.

Thus spiritual forces are undeniably at work, and other forces apart from the knowledgeable ones are incapable of giving something they don't possess themselves. Knowledgeable forces, however, are united with God, that is, their will is God's will, and whatever they undertake is done on God's instructions. Were they able to do so, ignorant forces would spread error all over the world in this way and the spiritual chaos would be incalculable. Immature beings are certainly able to mentally influence likewise immature people which results in a completely wrong way of thinking, a completely wrong attitude amongst humanity, but this has always been achieved through deliberation. However, people who receive transmissions without deliberation are experiencing remote effects of spiritual strength, that is, spiritual beings with extraordinary strength at their disposal pass these on to a receptive earthly child which only offers its will, i.e. which keeps itself open as a receiving terminal. This process is visibly recognisable, because the results exist .... they came into being without any means of help, they cannot be explained as a product of human intelligence, for intelligent thought is unable to produce such content within such a brief time span. Consequently it has to be the working of a force which originates from outside the earthly sphere. And if a force is being acknowledged then only good beings can be the givers,

for they alone can distribute and forward strength because they are permeated by strength themselves, since they are recipients of strength from God, thus they also share God's will. The fact that the process is extraordinary is very soon ignored and the content is most harshly criticised .... This, however, cannot be refuted and that itself should be enough to infer a giver who cannot be found in the realm of evil. The adversary truly uses other means than to refer humanity to that which is good and noble .... He does not preach love but hatred .... he does not try to bring enlightenment but intends to confuse people's thinking. But here is wisdom clearly and understandably presented to people which only informed forces are able to convey, and all knowledgeable beings work on the instruction of God ....

Amen

**‘Where two or three are gathered together in My name ....’**

***B.D. 2107 from October 10th 1941,  
taken from Book No. 30***

‘Where two or three are gathered together in My name, there Am I in the midst of them ....’ What promise lies

within these Words of the Lord! He announces His presence to those who meet in the name of Jesus. Thus it is His will that people should come together and remember the Lord .... It is His will that they should encourage each other to believe, that they help each other and speak about Him, that they therefore carry Him in their hearts and always mention His name. Then He will want to be with them, if only invisibly .... He wants them to be aware of His presence although they cannot see Him .... And therefore it is divine will that people should congregate in small circles in order to hear the divine Word. Yet He adds to this .... two or three .... People should consider that the Lord did not accidentally speak these Words .... they should consider that even in these Words rests a profound meaning. Communal prayers with many people cannot be God's will, for something that should be a deeply inner experience turns into a mechanical action. For no formalities take place where only a few people are gathered, and these penetrate the divine Word ever deeper because they discuss each other's points of view and also make a serious effort to live according to this Word. And this good will already draws God to them; this is why He gladdens the believers with His presence. But during large communal prayer meetings an exchange of thoughts is impossible. Each person is involved with his own thoughts and they don't always relate to the spiritual kingdom. People don't always deal with questions of eternity; often they are also very earthly-minded .... God will therefore never be amongst these for He is only present where He is most



sincerely aspired to. And there will only be a few in such a community who have the earnest will to be good and therefore appeal to God for the strength to be able to live up to their will. These will be gladdened by the Lord. But there are not many of them .... Most people merely fulfil a duty and their belief is more a formality and the divine promise can never be granted to them. This is why people should abide by the divine Word, they should meet in small circles and draw strength from God's Word, but they should never ever believe that it is pleasing to God when such gatherings are demanded as a matter of duty, since this excludes the profoundly heartfelt bond with the Lord unless his will is so exceptionally strong that the human being disregards all external impressions affecting him. Then the Lord will be with him too. Yet someone who complies with mere formalities has no living faith, thus he will not assign to these Words the significance which are actually inherent in these Words ....

Amen

## **Violation of free will by fellow human beings ....**

***B.D. 2110 from October 12th 1941,  
taken from Book No. 30***

The human being's resolve determines his actions and thoughts. He can certainly be opposed by another person's will and he can be prevented from implementing his own will, but then two equal forces will be fighting each other and the stronger resolve will be victorious; but this does not deny freedom of will. So therefore the human being himself inhibits his fellow human being, and this is in accordance with God's will as soon as the human will prevents his fellow human being from implementing heartless actions. In that case a strong will is a blessing for a fellow human being. Vice versa, however, it is very wrong to misuse a strong will by preventing a fellow human being from carrying out kind-hearted activities and spiritual striving and curtailing his own resolve. Such a battle against each other is based on heartlessness and can never be in accordance with God's will. The motive impelling a person's will into action is therefore always the decisive factor. The will remains free even if it is prevented from being implemented, this is why the will is judged and not always the deed .... if a person's will had no intention to accomplish a deed but was forced by his fellow human being into doing so. No human being on Earth should elevate himself for the sake of dominating his fellow human being, for this contradicts the right relationship between people in the eyes of God. Even those with great earthly power at their disposal should treat their subordinates like brothers; they should use their will by using their ruling power with love, by only ever striving towards that which is good and thus also trying to persuade their fellow human beings to make

correct use of their will, that is, to only do deeds which are pleasing to God. But as soon as a ruling power forces people into carrying out deeds which contradict the commandment of love, it also binds their will, i.e. it makes it impossible for them to use their free will and thus it must also bear the responsibility for all forcibly undertaken deeds. Hence, free will, in an earthly respect, is not curtailed by God, instead, only people disable each other's freedom of will. Yet a violation of will is only possible in an earthly way. In a spiritual respect no power on earth is able to influence freedom of will. No power on earth can force the human will into a specific attitude towards God, no power on earth can prevent its inclination towards God but neither can any power incline it towards Him if it is still in opposition to Him. The human being must use his own will to form his opinion of God and what he decides to do is entirely up to him. The will's apparent lack of freedom in an earthly respect can occasionally have a favourable effect on his opinion about God, for where he considers his freedom to be inhibited a person often looks for a spiritual balance .... He activates his free will where it cannot be prevented, and thus an external coercion can still be of benefit to him, since the actual purpose of life merely consists of the decision of will for or against God which, however, will never exclude the fact that it is wrong to use the strength of will between people to inhibit another person's will. Were the commandments of love observed, every person would want that which would benefit his fellow human being and all intentions of dominating

another person would be eliminated. Unkindness, however, impels people into taking ever more severe measures against each other .... The strong person will always use his will and override the will of the weak which, in a manner of speaking, is the influence of the power that once misused its free will for the apostasy from God ....

Amen

## **Belief in a continuation of life .... Consequences of earthly life in the beyond ....**

***B.D. 2113 from October 14th 1941,  
taken from Book No. 30***

Caring for the salvation of the soul is not being taken seriously and yet it should be the most important thing, for this is the human being's only purpose in life. Nevertheless, the human being cannot be forced to do so, it can only ever be presented to him again that he will have to accept the consequences of his activity on earth after his earthly life, that he, if he neglects his soul, will have to endure a far more meagre and agonising

existence than the most impoverished and excruciatingly painful earthly life can be. The human being is only living for the present, and he believes that this present will be over with his physical death. And therefore he won't make any provisions for the future. And yet he is only on earth for the sake of this future ....

The belief in a continuation of life after death cannot be forced onto him, consequently he cannot be offered any obvious evidence from the beyond so as not to restrict his freedom of faith. But if the human being would just have the good will to know the truth, the spiritual world would make itself perceptible to him, then he would heed the smallest sign, and the belief in a beyond would come alive in him. But the human being is generally not at all interested in knowing anything about an 'afterwards'. He lives on earth and is satisfied with this certainty, always providing that he won't know or feel anything anymore after his physical death. And he doesn't consider that only the external form has become lifeless, because the spirit .... the true life .... has escaped from it. He fails to consider that it is **unable** to die, that it is immortal, that it only leaves its external cover behind on earth in order to enter its true home. And he fails to consider that he is shaping the spiritual kingdom for himself on earth, or .... that it will correspond to his earthly life .... that it can be a dark, unfriendly and depressing or a radiantly bright and joyful environment for the human being's soul. He doesn't consider that he will remember his unused earthly life with severe unbearable regret .... since he will

never be able to say that the knowledge of it wasn't communicated to him.

Every person will receive instructions in this regard, yet not everyone will accept these instructions because he is unwilling, and the will cannot be compelled. Then they will only tend to their body, they will only pay attention to its well-being, whereas the soul remains ignored.

Humanity's adversity is immense, and consequently the physical adversity has to be extensive too, so that the human being will look within himself and become aware of the irrelevance of all earthly things and also of his body, so that he then will send his questions into infinity after all and as a result be guided into thinking differently ....

Amen

## **Divine providence .... Misguided will ....**

***B.D. 2117 from October 16th 1941,  
taken from Book No. 30***

The events in the life of a human being do not happen by coincidence, instead everything is divine providence and has been predetermined since eternity. Every person's life has been outlined in detail, and if it appears as if

human will is playing a part, then only because God has known the human will since eternity and therefore He also knows how the person is using his freedom of will. And in accordance with this will God had shaped human life even before it began. Thus the individual cannot change his life in a completely different way than that which God has determined, just as, on the other hand, no coincidences play any part in the planning of earthly life. Therefore, irrespective of whether changes in life are favourable or unfavourable, everything should be accepted with gratitude and submission, because they only intend to achieve the soul's higher development, they are only more opportunities for its maturing.

It is completely misguided to assume that a person's will or action might have been able to prevent this or that. Irrespective of how the human being's will decides, the results always correspond to God's eternal plan, although this does not absolve the human being from his responsibility if he uses his will wrongly. God has already taken this person's misguided will into account, i.e. the consequences of this turn into opportunities for ascent again. This sequence, however, does not relate to the person's misguided will, i.e. a person's misguided will can certainly accomplish a deed, the effect of this deed, however, is not decided by him but by God .... And thus God co-ordinates every event, He lets the occurrences follow each other in such a way that they benefit the person's soul, and a human being cannot do anything to prevent the plan that God devised once and for all. There

is no such thing as chance, no matter how miraculous events appear to be, the course of every single person's life is always God's will .... Because God will always allow for the person's free will, and as He has known this since eternity He has shaped his life in accordance with this free will ....

Amen

# **Transformation of the external shape after physical death ... Being spiritually dead ... Activity - Inactivity ....**

***B.D. 2144 from November 8th 1941, taken from Book No. 31***

The human being requires vital energy for every activity, thus activity signifies life. If this strength is withdrawn from him he will be incapable of reshaping himself or other things .... he will be lifeless. But as soon as the human being has become lifeless, the external shape will nevertheless change within itself. It will dissolve, and this process will last until all substances are taken in by a new



external shape again, i.e. once the spiritual substance has escaped the form, the remaining form will certainly be released from its previous purpose, nevertheless, it must find a new purpose .... it must contribute towards increasing some other external shape. The substance dissolves in order to be joined to a new external shape. This process once again requires a longer period of time .... Hence the old shape seemingly dissolves; in reality, however, the spiritual substances which the external shape also consists of enter into contact with other spiritual substances and form a new external shape because the spiritual substance, which had solidified into an external shape, must likewise undertake the path of higher development on earth, for it is still at the beginning of its development. As soon as spiritual substances are placed into this new external shape again, it will begin its function of service, thus the shape will awaken to life .... for activity is life. Each work of creation receives the flow of strength from God so that it can actively be of service, no matter in what way, and every activity results in higher development for the spiritual substance in the form. Consequently that which is alive .... thus active .... must advance in its development without fail. Only the state of death signifies a standstill of its development. But all matter shelters life within itself, for it constantly changes, albeit over various lengths of time. Even the hardest form, through external influences relating to light radiation .... thus the activity of the bearers of light .... will be stimulated to be active, although this is not noticeable to the human eye. But life

also stirs in this shape and accomplishes changes which therefore confirm its life. Matter can therefore not be called entirely dead, although for the human being it appears to be lifeless. And yet, a state of lifelessness exists and this occurs in the stage as a human being .... In this stage the being receives the greatest flow of vital energy which it should use for actively being of service. And despite of this it is possible for the human being to spend his life on earth in complete idleness .... as soon as he does not use the vital energy in order to fulfil the task which is the purpose of his earthly life .... if he neglects or refrains from doing what will gain him higher development .... if he avoids accomplishing acts of love .... the pursuance of activity for which God provides the human being with the flow of vital energy .... Then his higher development will come to a standstill. This signifies a state of lifelessness, of death, and this is the worst state because it can only be remedied by the being itself .... but since the state of death is a state of weakness, the being will no longer be able to release itself from it because it rejected the strength it had previously received .... Death of the external shape merely signifies a transformation into a new form, thus, in a manner of speaking, a further possibility for higher development of the spiritual substance which the external shape consists of. But to be spiritually dead is the most horrific state, because the final grace which is at the being's disposal has been left unused .... because the flow of vitality God conveyed to this being has not been used for helpful activity and the being remains on

the same level of development it was in at the beginning of its embodiment as a human being. Spiritual progress without activity is impossible; the being becomes weak as a result of its inactivity and enters the beyond without strength ....

Amen

**‘He who remains in love  
remains in Me and I in  
him ....’**

***B.D. 2147 from November 11th 1941,  
taken from Book No. 31***

Remain in Me so that I can unite with you. Your life shall be a continuous activity of love. You should do everything as a matter of innermost impulse, and this impulse shall be love, the most beautiful and sacred feeling, which you should allow to dominate you. Anyone who lives in love is engrossed in Me, anyone who lives in love remains forever united with Me, for he is what I Am Myself .... he is love, as I Myself Am love .... Then peace will be within you, for the marriage of your spirit with Me has taken place, it is no longer outside of Me but in Me, for it is My share for eternity. Then I Myself will be with you and where I Am there must be peace and love and harmony.

And if you live in unity with Me, your life on earth will neither be conflict nor worry, for then I will fight on your behalf and take your worries upon Me, for I love you because you are My Own since the beginning. But first you must completely hand yourselves over to Me, you must sacrifice everything to Me, you must so love Me that you willingly sacrifice everything for Me, and you must prove this love to Me by striving to treat your fellow human beings in the same way as you would like to treat Me. I want you to prove your love for Me through your love for your fellow human beings .... It is My will that you should help each other, that one is willing to suffer on behalf of the other, that you serve each other with love. Then your activity of love on earth will be blessed, it will result in the most magnificent reward. I will be with you and place you into a state of profound peace and silent beatitude. For this is the promise I gave you, and My Word always remains the same 'He who remains in love remains in Me and I in him ....'

Amen

**Prayers for souls in the  
beyond which had not  
acquired love on earth ....**

## ***B.D. 2165 from November 24th 1941, taken from Book No. 31***

An unredeemed soul's path of suffering is impossible to describe to people, and yet they should know that it must endure an inconceivably hopeless state because this knowledge is intended to impel people into helpfully supporting such souls, hence they are constantly admonished not to forget these souls. They will thank those people a thousand fold who ease their agony by praying for them. Souls in the beyond which leave people behind on earth with whom they were lovingly connected have an advantage compared to those which did not acquire love for themselves on earth. Loving thoughts and devout wishes follow the former, or such souls receive strength through heartfelt prayer, which can substantially improve their situation. Every loving thought is soothingly experienced by the souls and awakens love again, which then will manifest itself towards equally suffering souls. However, souls which lived without love on earth must starve and suffer unspeakably. They are quickly forgotten or they are only thought of unkindly, and this has appalling consequences on their state in the beyond. Every kind thought of people on earth for the souls in the beyond alleviates their torments, every bad thought increases them and the souls themselves are unable to defend themselves or enforce people's love for them.

Now the soul is perceptively affected by love or

heartlessness which either ease or impede its struggle towards ascent. Souls which entirely lack people's love on earth have to completely depend on themselves in utterly dark surroundings and suffer indescribable hardship. These souls should be particularly considered on earth in prayer so that they, too, feel the blessing of intercession, so that they feel the strength of love within themselves and thus an inner change takes place. For as soon as a loving thought fleetingly touches such lonely souls they notice it and turn towards the place of origin of this thought, they come close to the person who mercifully thought of them and observe him and his characteristics, his actions and his train of thought. They will never harass a person who is good to them either, although they themselves are rarely capable of good feelings. Yet they dwell on the reason why their state of suffering eases when they are close to these people and they sense noticeable relief through the prayer on behalf of the struggling souls in darkness. And they learn to recognise that love is the only means for improving their situation. And once the soul has gained this realisation then it will also become gentle and helpful towards other souls and they will have escaped the bitterest hardship. People on earth would be able to redeem infinitely many souls from their hardship if they tried to imagine the helplessness of these souls. For if they feel a spark of love within themselves their great suffering should move them and arouse their will to help these souls. People should include these poor souls which lack the strength to help themselves in their prayer, they should call upon

God for grace and mercy for these souls, they shall give them their love and never think heartlessly of a deceased person so as not to increase his pain. For then the soul will be in great danger of becoming completely hard and every good inclination in it dying .... But the souls should be redeemed and people on earth can contribute an awful lot towards achieving it ....

Amen

## **Intercession for people distanced from God ....**

***B.D. 2172 from December 2nd 1941,  
taken from Book No. 31***

People who deem themselves too superior to call upon God for help are furthest away from God .... they are neither able to believe in a helpful and omnipotent Power nor look at prayer as a bridge which leads to the divine Deity .... who therefore will not establish a connection either and are thus totally on their own if they are faced by difficulties which earthly help cannot resolve. For if a person cannot find the path to God in this adversity he demonstrates that he still remains in blatant opposition to God, that earthly life has not yet gained him higher development, that he therefore is still in a very

poor state if he has to give up his earthly life. He has not yet made a conscious effort in order to attain a higher level. And since he does not appeal for it in prayer he also lacks the strength to do so. And yet, even these people ought to sense the blessing of prayer, for they will be able to discover a perceptible softening of their nature as soon as a fellow human being prays on their behalf.

Intercession can achieve very much and most of humanity could be redeemed by now if one would appeal to God for love and grace on behalf of the other. Then the wilful rejection would not be so immense anymore, for God grants every prayer which reveals unselfish neighbourly love if the gift of realisation for a fellow human being is being appealed for. God's infinite love is instantly willing to fulfil such a prayer because it testifies to love for another person. However, the distance to God is only reduced through love, and if the being itself fails it can still be helped on earth and shown the right path through intercession.

The further away a person is from the eternal Deity the more inconceivable the thought of help is to him. And therefore he will not turn to God in prayer either. But since a change of thinking can only be achieved through heartfelt prayer, a person should not miss any opportunity to sincerely pray for his fellow human being who is still of weak faith. The power of prayer is tremendous and a person can achieve anything with a devout prayer, and it especially affects spiritual states, that is, the person will relinquish his resistance regarding all spiritual matters,



he will become reflective and think about what he previously adamantly rejected and will then arrive at a different result than before. A person who prays on behalf of his fellow human being for spiritual enlightenment has extraordinary influence over the latter which demonstrates itself by the fact that he is willing to listen to what is imparted to him, even if at first he was opposed to it, that he thinks about it and, if he later remembers it, that he will gladly and happily accept it. And thereby the distance to God will be diminished. Heartfelt prayer results in immense strength and must therefore take effect on his fellow human being as soon as this prayer is applied to him. This is why people who are distant from God are not hopelessly lost, for as soon as someone can be found who recognises their great spiritual hardship and would like to release them from it he has an effective means at his disposal .... the intimate intercession with God, which is very beneficially felt by the previously incorrigible person so that he cannot ignore this love. And he will be guided onto the right path and still attain realisation, if only after a very long time; but he is not hopelessly left at the mercy of the enemy, instead the beings struggling for good will remain victorious and help redeem the person from the state of being far away from God ....

Amen

## **Eruptions are an act of**

# **liberation for the spiritual substances bound in the solid form ....**

***B.D. 2175 from December 5th 1941,  
taken from Book No. 31***

Endless times have passed by already and endless times will still pass by until the spiritualisation of that which is the fundamental substance of Creation will be completed. This process is so inconceivably laborious and requires such an infinitely long time because the initial resistance of the spiritual substance cannot be forcibly broken, but it has to decide to surrender it voluntarily, and therefore it cannot be interfered with to speed up the process. Only the exertion of exceptionally hard pressure can weaken the spiritual substance's will of resistance, hence the consistency of the visible creations appear to be almost indestructible in their initial stages and their disintegration is only possible again through violent events. Such violent disintegrations only take place through God's will when the spiritual substance has become so compliant that it no longer requires the insufferable state of constraint. Then God will loosen its restraints, and the previously hard form will disintegrate and reshape itself into new external forms, but they no longer signify such a painful state for the spiritual

substance. Every violent breakdown of a formerly solid form is an act of liberation for the bound spirit within, at the same time, however, creations which shelter more mature spiritual substances will also become subject to change. For the forcible disintegration of a hard substance is a process which is felt by all spiritual beings far and wide. It is not a gradual decay but an elemental eruption of the spiritual substance which is momentarily granted freedom by God and which it uses in order to burst that which keeps it bound. Such eruptions entail momentous changes for **those** creations which are affected by the destruction.

All spiritual substances, including those already further developed, dispose of their old form in this way, unite with other released spiritual substances and take abode again in a new external form, depending whether these spirits are willing to fit in with a serving task. And thus through such violent disintegration the spiritual substance is induced to carry out a serving activity again, which signifies a relaxation from its previous constraint for the spiritual substance. This is why every forceful breakdown involves liberation, i.e. further development for the spiritual substance bound in the form, and is joyfully welcomed by it. It is only a sorrowful event for the spirit during the last stage of development, for it deprives this spirit of any further prospect of development on earth and therefore triggers dread and horror if it didn't make use of its last abode in the form while it had the opportunity. Yet such eruptions are

necessary for the sake of the immature spiritual substance which cannot be released from its solid form by any other means. For as soon as it decides to be of service after an infinitely long time of resistance to God, it will also be granted the opportunity to do so by God ....

Amen

**Harshest measures ....  
Fearless speaking ....  
Strong will ....**

***B.D. 2193 from December 24th 1941,  
taken from Book No. 31***

It requires strong-minded people to fearlessly spread divine revelations, for everything which signifies spiritual progress, which these revelations aim to achieve, will result in harshest countermeasures and war will be declared on all spiritual striving. But in addition, divine revelations are so implausible to people as long as they are still spiritually unenlightened. Every message from the spiritual kingdom requires an element of faith in order to be unhesitatingly accepted. Where faith does not exist, they will be rejected and efforts will be made to fight against the bearers of light, who only want to pass on divine wisdom .... People will want to ban the

distribution of truth and for this purpose establish almost unrealisable laws. And an irresolute person will yield to these laws and deny God his cooperation. Divine love, however, wants the truth to be spread. It seeks to guide people towards this knowledge and for this very reason reveals this knowledge to them through a person. But this person, too, will fearlessly have to pass on the information he heard through the grace of God and His spirit. For as soon as he is deemed worthy of receiving this extraordinary grace his path of ascent becomes easier but he also has the task of showing his fellow human beings the path leading upwards, i.e., of making the divine grace equally accessible to them. Thus, he must speak up and try to pass on what he received through spiritual mediation. And this needs courage regarding the worldly authority, even though the proclaimers of the divine Word should acknowledge every earthly authority providing it does not openly oppose God's commandments.

Anyone who tries to live according to these commandments will also recognise which worldly measures are justified or not .... and he will know which laws he has to follow first. Proclaiming the divine revelations to these people will not be unsuccessful .... They will be accepted due to the existing faith in a God of love and of mercy, of wisdom and of omnipotence. But where no faith exists at all, the proclaimer of the Word will have to fight with the sword of his tongue and may not be afraid if he is told to stop speaking. He is needed

as a mediator between God and people, and he must faithfully administer this position as a mediator .... He must untiringly pass on the Word he receives and mention everything that is revealed to him. For it is essential that humanity wakes up from its slumber and that it is given the information about God's obvious working which is based on His love for people who are close to their spiritual downfall. These are the people he wants to save and guide out of darkness into light .... He offers His grace to them and leaves it up to them to avail themselves of it .... And this gift of grace should be fearlessly mentioned because it is God's will ....

Amen

## **Wisdom, light and strength are as one ....**

***B.D. 2194 from December 25th 1941,  
taken from Book No. 31***

Wisdom is strength, for knowledge is light and light and strength are as one. Anyone who is wise, who therefore can also share his knowledge, imparts the light which is the strength from God, because the receiver feels the flow as strength again. A person to whom knowledge is imparted will surpass himself, for the spiritual strength

within him proliferates. Neither does it diminish thereafter, although the person shares it again. His knowledge will constantly grow, that is, one insight will follow another, and one clear picture after another will emerge in him where it was previously dark, thus a spiritual void .... A light has been kindled which can send its rays in all directions without losing its brilliance, but which can become a source of light if time and again it kindles new flames and thus banishes spiritual darkness where the light begins to shine. Once the human being has become knowledgeable, he will never allow this knowledge to lie fallow but he will always feel himself urged to share it, and thus the knowledge works as strength, for it impels the teacher into becoming active. Therefore, the knowledgeable beings in the beyond will likewise want to distribute this knowledge with increased vigour. At no time will the beings content themselves with having this knowledge themselves but will almost compete with each other to impart this knowledge.

And this is the effect of God's strength, which flows in the form of knowledge into everything that is receptive, be it the human being on earth or the entity in the beyond which enters the sphere of God's emanation of love and receives light and strength in the form of knowledge. That which comes forth from God will always stimulate activity, because God constantly generates life and everything alive is always active .... Spiritual life must therefore be a spiritual activity, it has to be a passing on of the flow of love and strength which originates in God

as the source of strength and should penetrate everything which was previously weak and dark, that is, the beings which are lacking all knowledge about God and His working must be guided into this knowledge, because ignorance is a state of imperfection and misery, which shall be changed into a state of perfection and blissful happiness of realisation about God's might and glory. Consequently, knowledge signifies light and strength. The state of darkness will be expelled and changed into a state of light and at the same time enable the being to also banish the darkness in other beings and to bring them close to the light, and it will make use of this ability because it can't help itself but be incessantly active ....

Amen

## **Book of Books ... Lamp without oil ....**

***B.D. 2203 from January 5th 1942,  
taken from Book No. 31***

A lamp without oil is but an empty vessel which does not serve its purpose; it does not emit any light because it lacks the food which the light must constantly receive. Even the Holy Scripture must be judged as a mere book as



long as it has no true light-spreading effect, that is, as long as it does not result in spiritual enlightenment .... The Holy Scriptures can truly offer the most profound wisdom for someone who, with absolute faith and a God-inclined heart, desires to draw wisdom from it, thus, as soon as the human being himself proves his hunger for light through this desire. Then the Book of Books will not merely be an empty vessel but become a source of light instead .... The human being's wisdom will increase because he desires food for his spirit and this nourishment turns his inner light into a bright flame whose radiance shines far and wide and can illuminate the darkest night. The Word of God is blessed with His strength and those who may receive the Word from God directly will therefore also constantly be permeated by God's strength. And this strength also flows to a person who accepts the Word with the same depth of feeling where it is made accessible for all people, as long as he desires to accept divine wisdom, as long as his one and only desire is light. For God will satisfy every hunger for His Word, He will give where the desire is present. Thus, the heart must long for spiritual nourishment, then it will be offered in the form of knowledge, for every Word in the Holy Bible will then become clear to the person and this knowledge will please and satisfy him. But how often does a person only read the written Word without allowing it to talk to his heart .... how often does he lack the sense and understanding for what he reads because he fails to pray for the grace of understanding, and then the Book is of no greater value than any other book which

merely serves the purpose of passing time. But then the lamp is lacking oil, it is without light and merely an empty vessel which fails to fulfil its purpose, for it does not emit light and therefore cannot illuminate a person's heart either. The Word of God comes to every person who desires it, for God Himself is the Word, and He reveals Himself in the Word in many different ways to anyone who strives towards Him .... He gives him the truth mentally or brings people together and speaks through them, or He addresses them through the Book of Books. But the willingness to receive the divine Word must always be present so that his desires can be granted. Then the spirit of God will always be at work, regardless of how and where the human being receives the divine Word, because the spirit of God can only take effect when the human being's hunger for spiritual nourishment, for light, is evident. This also excludes all error, for even where the latter had occurred through human will, the spirit of God will so guide the person's thoughts that he understands it correctly and thus his knowledge will correspond to the truth. Then his knowledge will resemble a light which brightly shines in all directions and sends its radiance into the darkness. And he may draw upon this knowledge at all times and everywhere .... The spirit of God is always willing to distribute knowledge; wherever a heartfelt desire exists the heart will be nourished, for it is God's will that the human hearts shall become brightly illuminated. It is His will that His Word shall not just be read or listened to on the surface but that it should penetrate deeply, so that it will remain as

spiritual knowledge and will be the soul's wealth in eternity one day ....

Amen

# **Satan's work of deception .... Mask .... Matter ....**

***B.D. 2204 from January 6th 1942,  
taken from Book No. 31***

It is Satan's work of deception when something is portrayed to people as a rescue mission but which, in reality, is a work of utmost heartlessness .... when people believe a most bitter injustice to be right .... when noble motives are feigned which are based on low and selfish thoughts. Satan will use words of love to appeal to people, and he will be very successful since, due to their heartlessness, people have become unable to recognise the foul play of Satan, who wants to lure them into ruin. He will always use means which appear to be good and noble. He will never fight under his true banner but always conceal his true character behind the mask of good. And therefore it is particularly important to stay alert so that people, who always want to do what is right, will not become victims of this pretence. The human

being should never judge by outward appearances. Word and action have to correspond, and where love is truly shown the work of God's adversary need not be feared. Satan, however, will never do a good deed since it is his goal to fight everything good and noble, consequently he tries to incite people into harming each other.

But God will never be a passive observer where His adversary is deluding people's thinking in order to keep the souls from the pure truth. And thus, where God's adversary is actively spreading error under the cover of love and humanitarianism, God is at the same time providing information about the true nature of the one who is now presiding over humanity. God will still leave him in full authority for a while, which he will use extensively, but the time for his destructive action on earth is limited because the true face of Satan shall be revealed and his actions exposed. Anyone whose will is turned towards God will recognise Satan's work of deception and turn away from him in disgust; however, many will allow themselves to be deceived by him and they will find it difficult to see through the intrigues of evil powers.

But as a warning you all should know that every promise of earthly advantages suggests the work of evil forces .... that good forces will never be involved in an endeavour which is to serve the improvement of earthly life, for this would result in the aspiration for matter which, however, should be overcome in earthly life .... But this is what God's adversary aims to achieve first and foremost .... to

enslave people with matter, to motivate their desire for it in order to once again bring them under his control. And thus the activity of Satan is revealed by his attempt to increase what the human being should gladly surrender ....

Amen

## **Coming into being and passing away ....**

***B.D. 2206 from January 8th 1942,  
taken from Book No. 31***

The fate of everything which is visible to you is to be transient, and yet it cannot be called senseless and futile, for the transience of every single work of creation is simultaneously the prerequisite for the emergence of new life. This should be understood spiritually as well as physically, for as soon as life escapes from one form, something new comes into being out of the external form in combination with other dissolving external forms, and the escaped spiritual substances united with equally mature spiritual substances animate new external forms once again, and thus new creations keep coming into existence as soon as old creations appear to dissolve. Coming into being and passing away is the eternal cycle

which aims to achieve constantly higher development. Coming into being and passing away, however, only affects that which is visible to you .... the spiritual substance concealed within is everlasting; it continues to exist for all eternity .... Consequently, everything visible, the material form, will in fact release the spiritual substance after a specific time, the spiritual substance itself, however, enters into a new form, i.e. into earthly matter, until it no longer requires it .... Only then will true life begin which will never end but last forever. The cycle of spiritual substances through the form will take eternities, since this time is so infinitely long for human understanding that one can indeed speak of eternities. And yet it is but a fleeting moment compared to the never-ending eternity in the state of freedom. Everything visible strives towards the state of freedom, whereas all free spirits look after that which is visible again, that is, after the banished spirits therein and provide them with new possibilities for liberation. Thus the free spirits let visible creations emerge for the bound spirits which the bound spirits have to overcome in order to release themselves. Bringing such creations into being is the activity of the spirits which, in a state of perfection and in harmony with God's will, use the strength of God for creating and giving life to many different kinds of works of creation.

Therefore, coming into being and passing away depends on the will of the free spirits again which, however, due to love for the unfree spirits and in profound wisdom, only

create what is most beneficial for the latter in accordance with divine will. This is why the emergence and disappearance of visible works of creation will always demonstrate some regularity, because it is implemented with profound wisdom and nothing in creation arises at random or without meaning and purpose. Such a well-planned work of creation must, therefore, also offer the highest opportunity of development for the immature spiritual substance; the passing away of visible things has to be just as necessary and successful as their emergence; passing away need not signify an end to what exists but only a transformation, because that which emerged from the divine creative power cannot cease to exist anymore even if it looks like that to the human eye. Consequently, only a constant transformation of that which shelters spiritual substance takes place, just as the spiritual substance keep changing by growing, since the spiritual substance having escaped the form unites with other substances of the same kind and therefore continues to need ever new external forms in which it can achieve the degree of maturity which will result in the unification with equally-matured spirits **again**. The apparent breaking down of visible creations therefore signifies spiritual progress, i.e. the merger of spiritual potencies, and thus the passing away of all visible things, is just as necessary as the emergence of new creations. And even if infinite times pass by, the love of the free spirits will nevertheless offer the still bound spirits every opportunity of development and subsequently even these spirits will be free one day and help the as yet

unredeemed spirits again. And for this period visible Creation will exist too, which constantly changes because only through continuous change is it possible for the spiritual substances to develop further .... Coming into being and passing away .... Without it there will be no salvation .... For all bound spirits will only be free when they awaken to eternal life, when they have travelled the path on earth through the creations, through constantly changing their external form, through continually coming into being and passing away ....

Amen

## **Last Judgment .... Rapture ....**

***B.D. 2211 from January 14th 1942,  
taken from Book No. 31***

The last Judgment will suddenly and unexpectedly come upon people. And it will slay every creature on earth, for the earth will change in itself. Everything that can be called alive will be destroyed by a blistering firestorm which will change the appearance of Earth beyond recognition to people who presently inhabit it. Yet it shall be proclaimed to them since a few will be amongst them who will live on the old as well as on the new earth, and



they shall testify to the miracles God performed on them. For they will experience the destruction of the old earth in the flesh and yet not be affected by it, for the Lord will approach them, and He will lift them away from the earth. These few are strong in faith and devoted to God in love, they live according to God's will and are placed under tremendous pressure by those people who lack all faith. And thus they are in utmost danger and will be rescued by the Lord Who will come and fetch them Himself. And a separation will happen; good will be separated from evil, the faithful from the unbelievers .... God will seize Satan's power over the spiritual substance by banishing it into the solid form again .... And thus the earth will be shaped anew ....

Nothing will remain in its old form because the time has come to an end which God gave to the spiritual beings for liberation from the form .... It will be a new era in the period of salvation which will be realised with surprise by the people who will be returned to this newly shaped earth in order to become the root of a new generation. They will know about the old earth and will now live on the newly shaped earth .... They will recognise the greatness of God, His wisdom and omnipotence and His infinite love, for their eyes will be presented with a scene which they will absorb with amazement and reverence. It is a realm of peace, delightful and graceful to behold with a most manifold array of exceedingly charming creations, yet completely divergent from those of the old earth. And people will cheer and rejoice elatedly for

having been granted the great blessing of inhabiting the new earth. And the horrors of experiencing the last Judgment will fade from their minds, even though it had not affected them. For God will let the event that brings destruction to everything living on earth happen before their eyes, yet they will emerge from it unscathed because God will move them in the flesh to a place of peace until He has accomplished the work of reshaping and then He will return them to Earth again. Then love, peace and harmony will unite the people who were allowed to experience this process of transformation; they will praise God, give thanks to Him and worship Him with profound reverence, they will live according to His will and God will bless them and let a new generation come forth from them which cannot be oppressed by the adversary for a long time, because all power has been taken away from him. And this will be a time of peace and of union with God, for God will stay in their midst because love dwells within these people ....

Amen

## **Love is the key to truth ....**

***B.D. 2218 from January 21st 1942,  
taken from Book No. 31***

Activity of love inevitably results in realisation, and thus

actions of love are the only way to truth. This is what the earthly children need to know first and foremost. They will never ever attain the truth in any other way. If they receive knowledge which appears acceptable to them without actively living a life of love, then it will be a work of deception by Satan, or, if they are offered the truth, they will not recognise it as such and thus reject it. The pure truth will indeed be offered to many yet dismissed precisely because people are lacking love .... But people like that cling to falsehood with tenacity and it is impossible to explain to them that they are mistaken, that they are being led astray by wrong teachings. Love is the key to truth, without it the access remains blocked ....

Truth, however, is everything that comes from God .... Truth cannot be intellectually ascertained but is received from God through the heart. The human being can certainly receive the truth mentally, yet then he will always experience the desire for God .... This desire, however, is love and love takes effect in deeds of selfless neighbourly love .... Only this testifies to love of God. And then the person will think correctly, that is, the thoughts he receives will correspond to the truth. They arise from the heart even though the person believes himself to have reached an intellectual conclusion. But an unloving person's thoughts will never correspond to truth, for then truth-fighting forces will exercise a strong influence on such people's thinking, since through their lack of love they open their hearts to such forces, thus they gain access and use their power by confusing people's

thinking.

God is truth, God is love .... one without the other is unthinkable. Consequently, there can only be truth where there is love .... Countless errors have come into the world due to people's heartlessness, and the truth has been displaced. It can only spread amongst humanity again if it changes itself to love, and therefore love has to be cultivated first before a person can attain realisation. All studies are futile if a person lacks love, for whatever knowledge he gains thereby .... will either not correspond to the truth or it is dead knowledge, in as much as it will not further the soul's higher development as long as it does not affect the heart, as long as it does not result in an activity of love. And this is why all spiritual knowledge has to be assessed by the guideline of love .... it has to flow from a helpful heart and teach helpful activity in turn, then it will be truth, and God Himself will be the source of such knowledge ....

Amen

## **Peter's successors .... Ecclesiastical-secular power ....**

***B.D. 2221 from January 27th 1942,***

## ***taken from Book No. 31***

Read the Bible and you will see that the spirit of truth has been pushed aside in a most obvious way. God's Word has been withheld from you so that those of you who are looking for truth shall not recognise it. The records are carefully maintained but to what extent these records comply with Christ's teaching is not scrutinised. And how often has the divine Word been changed, how often has God's Word been wrongly interpreted and how rarely was the wrong interpretation objected to. This deception of humanity cannot be emphasized often enough; after all, it has been the cause of all divisions and religious conflicts. When Jesus lived on earth He spoke about the kingdom of God, about a kingdom which is not of this world .... He did not speak about a worldly power, nor did He speak about an ecclesiastical power, about an organisation, He did not speak about men who were meant to rule His Own on behalf of God either .... He merely said to His disciples 'Go and teach all nations ....' He gave them the task to instruct people in His teaching of love and He promised His assistance if they remained in His spirit .... For as soon as they taught love they had to live within love themselves, thus the Lord Himself, Who is love, was with them. But where love rules all dominating control is unnecessary .... where love rules one person serves the other and where love rules commandments are superfluous unless the commandment of love given by God Himself is preached to people. Anything that teaches love complies with divine will, but the addition of

further commandments is not in accordance with God's will because the basis of any command is a dominant force .... But people should live together like brothers, they should merely submit to God's will if they want to acquire the kingdom of God. By no means should they rebel against the worldly power which God has indeed appointed for the sake of keeping order where it is violated, however, His kingdom is not of this world ....

He alone is Lord and Master in His kingdom, and He certainly needs no one on earth to represent Him and exercise their power over other people. But which Word of the Lord during His life on earth specifies such power?

(26.01.1942) He has lived a life of love, He gave love and taught love .... True love, however, excludes the need to rule .... The stronger should not rule the weaker even where the fulfilment of divine commandments had been taught. Because an enforced action is not to be very highly valued, regardless of how noble and good it is. Not until a person uses his free will are these actions done before God. And thus God only demands the human being's free will. But at no time are people on earth entitled to add their own commandments to the divine commandments. And even less may people be obliged to obey these commandments by threat of temporal or eternal punishment. For then a commandment would be observed to avoid punishment, which otherwise would have been ignored. Thus the fulfilment of such commandments cannot possibly have great value before God and for eternity. When Christ's disciples complied

with His instructions and spread the Gospel throughout the world God's activity was clearly visible because in the name of Jesus they healed the sick, they expelled evil spirits and performed miracles in order to reaffirm what they were teaching. God's spirit was with and within them; everything they achieved was the divine working of the spirit. They proclaimed the teaching of Christ, the divine teaching of love, and simultaneously exemplified love to their fellow human beings. Thus, they eliminated the desire to rule, for they were like brothers among themselves and served each other with love. This was the office Jesus Christ gave to his disciples for their future work .... He did not appoint one of the apostles as a person in charge, as a leader to whom all should succumb. However, what developed at a later time completely differed from what the Lord Himself stood for. An ecclesiastical-secular power came into being that also structured every commandment of love, which no longer corresponded to what Jesus Christ Himself had taught the people. Although servitude in love was demanded, it was no longer practiced by them. And this was of most decisive significance because what Jesus had condemned during His life on earth surfaced again .... people were commanded to do what they should have done voluntarily. And reputable men of distinction called themselves successors of the apostles who had met the duties of their office in greatest poverty .... and a structural establishment displaying enormous splendour called itself the only beatifying church, which Jesus Christ had supposedly installed with the words 'You are

Peter, the rock ....'

(27.01.1942) These words were interpreted thus by people who desired power; but these words do not by any means allow for the interpretation that Peter is the founder of an ecclesiastical power and that the heads of this church are the successors of the apostles .... those very apostles who, without status and distinction, only proclaimed the Gospel, the divine teaching of love, to the world. Peter was the most devout of them and Jesus emphasized his strong belief with the words 'You are Peter, the rock, on this rock I will build My church.' He calls the community of believers His church, because those who want to acquire God's kingdom have to join together with innermost faith and thus constitute His church. Such is His will, and He expressed this will with those words. However, it is not His will that eminent and exalted dignitaries should believe themselves to be the head of such a community and thus also exercise their power .... that untold customs and ceremonies let the truly essential part become unimportant; i.e. that due to the countless formalities, which are given too much merit, the divine teaching of love remains unnoticed, and that therefore the apostles' real task of spreading the Gospel throughout the world is no longer recognised. There can indeed also be men after God's heart amongst those rulers, and God will truly not deny His spirit and His mercy to them, but then their wisdom is not the result of their position or the exalted office they fill but due to their right way before God .... These then are Peter's true



successors because they are strong in faith, and from the strength of faith they draw wisdom, for then they are like a rock from whence the living water comes forth .... Then they are true representatives of the church of Christ, which is the community of believers ....

Amen

## **Selfishness .... God's intervention is the last resort ....**

***B.D. 2223 from January 29th 1942,  
taken from Book No. 31***

In their inconceivable selfishness humanity will destroy itself if God does not use an effective countermeasure in order to reduce this selfishness. The human being only thinks about himself and the fate of his fellow human beings generally leaves him unaffected. His thinking and behaviour is accordingly only ever calculating to obtain the greatest possible advantage for himself, which spiritually has a tremendously detrimental effect. Hence every day spent striving for earthly advantages is lived in vain. And at the present time only a small number of people in the world keep their spiritual progress in mind. But they do not indifferently ignore their fellow human

beings' adversity. Instead, they try to alleviate it where possible and make sacrifices themselves, for they consider other people's hardship more than their own hardship. And it is for their sake that God still hesitates to apply the last resort, because His love would like to spare people unspeakable suffering where it is possible to persuade them into actions of love without suffering.

God's intervention, however, will result in great suffering, for precisely this suffering is intended to change people's hearts, in view of their neighbour's misery and adversity they are supposed to forget their own hardship, thus fighting their selfish love and only ever striving to alleviate their fellow human beings' misery. Only then will their earthly life be spiritually successful for them. Yet regrettably, especially now people have extremely distinct earthly desires, they crave for the commodities of this earth. Every thought only relates to the question of how they can attain them. As a result they take no notice of world events and even less of the signs which announce the working of God. They don't pay any attention to the happenings which accompany the spiritual decline. They don't see the infringements which are already deemed acceptable, nor do they pay attention to the wrong concepts of 'right' and 'justice', and therefore they don't object to the spirit of the times either, the opposition to everything relating to religion .... rather, they consider everything to be right, which can clearly be traced to the opponent's influence.

And this is why God asserts His influence, that is, He so

evidently counteracts this spiritual shallowness that it can be seen by those who want to see. For He assumes all power .... He renders people powerless; He lets them feel that they, by themselves, are incapable of preventing God's intervention, that they will have to endure it without being able to change it in the slightest. And then they will only be able to change their character if they are willing to do so. They will be provided with endless opportunities to kindle the spark of love within themselves, to feed it into a flame and then become appropriately active with love .... If they don't make use of this last possibility they cannot be helped on earth anymore; for those whose selfishness is too extensive will not be able to recognise their real function even then, they will fear for their life and their possessions and, if possible, try to replace what they have lost. In that case God's intervention will have been in vain for them, then they will have to bear the consequences of their unspiritual state, since this is what they want, for they cannot be forcibly released from their selfishness ....

Amen

## **The spirit of lies and its instruments ....**

***B.D. 2231 from February 8th 1942,***

## ***taken from Book No. 31***

The spirit of lies rules the world, and anyone who desires the world and its goods is enslaved by this spirit of lies. For only there can he assert himself, only there will homage be paid to him by being listened to and affirmed. In contrast, the spirit of truth will only find admission among people who try to detach themselves from the world and its goods, who have no desire for them whatsoever but turn themselves and their thoughts towards divine things, who consider their actual purpose and affirm a spiritual life. That is where the lying spirit is denied access. For God Himself will grant his protection to these people, and He wrests them from the one who brings lies into the world. People who hold on to the world thereby profess their affiliation to the one to whom the world is his power, for they desire that which is still his share .... unredeemed matter .... which still shelters much of the evil spirit within itself. And since he wants to win the world entirely for himself he uses every opportunity to increase people's greed for matter, hence he presents himself in a desirable way .... He uses lies to do so, for the truth would enlighten people and make them lose the longing for earthly possessions. And thus he aims to intersperse every truth with error, he tries to lead people into erroneous thinking, he seeks to obscure their spirit, that is, to entangle it in earthly passions and cravings, so that the spirit within themselves is surrounded by the most dense layers and unable to offer the soul the slightest clarification. And he aims to pull

down everything divine, stifle everything noble, obscure the truth, eradicate love, spread hatred and strife and gradually shape people such that they become like him; that they will adopt all those qualities which characterise evil.

The love for truth dwells only in very few people, and they despise the world. However, their goal is God, Who is the Truth, and they seek to obtain spiritual values which last for eternity. And thus they lift themselves above the world and the prince of lies has no more influence on them. And yet he wants to oppress them and to this end uses those who, on the surface, also strive for the truth, that is, who appear to look for truth but inwardly are devoted to the price of lies .... who love themselves and their life and try to make it as comfortable as possible, who live in the midst of the world and yet try to deny their connection with it .... who, without the inner urge to renounce the world, pretend to live a life of self-denial before the eyes of their fellow human beings and thus are fond of lies. These are used by the opponent as his instruments, by letting them speak under the cover of truth, as the prince of lies wants. And thus lies are mixed with truth, and humanity accepts everything that is presented as truth and yet is the greatest untruth, for it cannot recognise it because it doesn't desire the truth, and since the lie corresponds to their desire more it is accepted without hesitation. Yet the spirit of truth will establish itself as soon as people willingly separate themselves from matter .... as soon as they desire spiritual

wealth and strive towards God .... And he will defeat the spirit of lies, for anyone who recognises the truth will stand up for it and try to spread it, and the lie will be displaced and with it the one who came into the world through the lie will be overcome ....

Amen

## Heavenly bliss ....

***B.D. 2233 from February 12th 1942,  
taken from Book No. 31***

Any comparison intended to illustrate the beatitudes of Heaven to people would be inappropriate, for nothing on earth can even roughly describe these joys, nothing can be likened to them should an attempt be made to reveal a picture of them to people. The souls' infinite happiness in eternity is not caused by something tangible, this is why a person cannot imagine anything either, instead, he must content himself with the Lord's promise 'Eye has not seen, nor ear heard, nor have entered into the heart of man the things which I have prepared for those who love Me ....' The knowledge of the delights of eternal life would, in fact, be extremely disadvantageous for the souls' maturing, because the human being shall become perfect and thus he must be good of his own inner accord and not for the sake of reward. What a perfect being can

expect in eternity will make it so incomparably happy, that the human being would do anything as well as suffer anything were he to know the degree of bliss; were he to know what this bliss consists of. He can only be informed of the fact that the feeling of love is decisive in the beyond, that no happiness is thinkable without it, that love connects everything and that this creates a state of bliss which is inconceivable for people on earth. For there is vanishingly little love on earth, compared to the light beings' degree of love in the beyond; consequently, the human being cannot imagine that love is the epitome of bliss, even though love on earth, that is, the kind-hearted activity and the feeling of love, is already experienced and desired as something delightful on earth, once it is known to the human being, for only divine love causes happiness, the love which is giving, hence unselfish. Desiring love only brings happiness if the object of the desire is God and His love .... because this desiring love simultaneously results in fulfilment, since divine love flows to every person desiring it. If love for God already causes happiness on earth, how much happier will the being be in eternity if God, in His infinite love, comes close to it and satisfies its burning desire .... The delights of this fulfilled longing are indescribable and cannot be expressed in words since it is a purely spiritual process providing the being finds union with God and receives His emanation of love. Consequently, no human being can imagine what eternal bliss is like as long as he still lives on earth, for God keeps this knowledge concealed from him until he has gained the

spiritual maturity in order to gain an insight into the spiritual kingdom which will reveal the eternal glory to him if it is God's will.

Amen

## Catastrophe ....

***B.D. 2246 from February 28th 1942,  
taken from Book No. 31***

The approaching bad weather catastrophe is of crucial importance for all people insofar as that it will also change world events, and that people will then be facing other responsibilities and happenings whose effects are no less difficult and distressing. The survivors will have to go through worrying times at first, for they won't know if and when this natural disaster will repeat itself. Also, many people won't know the whereabouts of their loved ones, many will stay behind all alone and forsaken, and sorrow and grief will be everywhere, there will hardly be a house without unhappy people, and in the country where God's voice has spoken there will be no town without ruins. And then love will have to prove itself, and one will have to help bear the suffering of the other if people want to live a life which is at least endurable and not despair altogether. The suffering on earth has taken on different shapes but people cannot be entirely



alleviated of it as long as they haven't converted to God and tried to fulfil their spiritual task. And this is why even those who so far have remained untouched by world events will have to be affected. And thus the world conflagration will be followed by an incredibly difficult time which is felt wherever heartlessness is prevalent.

People cannot imagine that a natural disaster of this magnitude is about to happen on earth, and at first its extent will not be recognised either, for it will take a long time before the news of it will have travelled around the world, and this uncertainty worsens the suffering and worry, since all outside contact will have been cut off and will be difficult to re-establish. And the ruling authority will put pressure on people and bring them in to carry out work which will almost go beyond their strength, and they will be unable to defend themselves and live a wretched life without any prospect of improvement. And yet, such suffering is necessary if people are to be lead to their real purpose, that is, to establish contact with God and to appeal to Him for advice and help. And then the Word of God shall be made accessible to them, then they shall be informed of God's activity, of His will and His divine teaching of love, then they shall be referred to life after death, to the transience of all worldly things, to the meaning and purpose of earthly life and their task, which consists of shaping their souls and of living a way of life on earth which corresponds to God's will ....

The hour will soon arrive when God will speak to humanity such that it will turn the whole world into

turmoil. For one night will bring unspeakable misery to those people whose countries will be affected by this disaster, and the dawning day will be dreadful, for it will present the survivors with a sight of devastation which exceeds all fears and all imagination. Yet God's will is irrevocable, for He knows that human thinking needs to be shaken up, he know the souls' adversity, and in order to help them in their adversity everything will come to pass as it has been predestined since eternity ....

Amen

## **Recognising the truth is a duty to advocate it ....**

***B.D. 2247 from March 1st 1942,  
taken from Book No. 31***

In a world of scorners and blasphemers the truth will hardly be able to establish itself, for they negate everything of a divine nature and therefore also the truth which comes from God. But every person who knows the truth, who thus recognises it, is nevertheless duty bound to advocate it, even towards those who always want to fight against the truth. To deviate from the truth with them would be the same as complying with the adversary of truth. The truth will always be fought, for it comes

from above .... however, materialistically minded people only want to acknowledge that which comes from below, from the world, and that will always contradict the truth. If the truth is to be spread on earth its advocate may by no means love the world, nor may he fear people who want to prevent him from spreading the truth, instead, by completely renouncing all earthly advantages, he must rather be willing to sacrifice his life than to withhold the truth or speak contrary to his conviction. This requirement is indeed not an easy one to comply with; after all, a person's physical life is still too valuable as to give it up for the sake of a truth which is not desired by fellow human beings and is more likely to be rejected. And yet it is expected by God as soon as He has deemed people worthy to receive the truth from Him. Recognising the pure truth is also a commitment to pass it on and to inform an uninformed person of God's activity. And if people treat this gift with hostility the human being must not become intimidated and speak fearfully or keep silent, instead, he should even fearlessly stand up for the truth where the ruling power demands silence. It is, after all, God Himself he advocates .... And the informed person should never deny God which, however, he would do were he to divert from the truth, that is, were he to say something against better knowledge which does not correspond to truth or unquestioningly allows untruth to be spread when he recognises it as such. As soon as the human being denies God he becomes weak, on the other hand, if he endorses the truth, the flow of strength to stand firm against every hostile argument will come to

him. And he will remain victorious over the scorers and blasphemers who only favour lies and will therefore always fight the truth ....

Amen

## **Voluntary kind-hearted service ....**

***B.D. 2267 from March 18th 1942,  
taken from Book No. 31***

Continuous higher development is guaranteed as long as the being's will is still bound; thus, as long as it still travels the path through the works of creation, because it is **of service**, albeit it is effectively forced into this helpful activity. Nevertheless, it is willing to be of service; otherwise it would not have been assigned its function. The willingness to serve is the first condition for constantly higher development. In the human stage, however, it is left up to the being again as to whether or not it is lovingly active. His soul has reached a state of maturity that the greatest shackle, the bound will, can be replaced by free will, but then he will no longer be forced into a serving activity but must accomplish it of his own free will, which will subsequently result in the soul's higher development again. And therefore this stage also

holds a certain danger for the human being, that is, for his soul, if it fails, if it does not use its free will for kind-hearted activity, on account of which God has arranged people's life on earth such that they will need each other, in order to provide them with the opportunity to be of service to each other. This is truly not arbitrarily arranged, and the various living conditions serve the wise purpose of making it easier for a person to be of service. Admittedly, circumstances will force him to be helpful, but he can nevertheless refuse or accomplish the work reluctantly which, however, will be judged by God accordingly and will hamper the soul's maturing. For only kind-hearted service will result in the soul's degree of maturity and release it from its bound state. To all intents and purposes, human life is also a life of compulsion which takes place within the framework of natural laws, so that the human being very frequently questions his freedom of will. And yet the human being has much freedom, because he can think, act and want as he likes, and thus he can also infringe against the divine order if he has no control over his instincts and abandons himself to dark forces. The inner battle between good and evil is left utterly up to himself, and this will be more or less difficult for him depending on whether he is lovingly active, thus, whether he helps with love. Only his voluntary kind-hearted services will actually make him aware of his freedom of will, for only then will he recognise that he is by no means forced into doing it, that he is just as entitled to the same freedom of will if he wants to do the opposite. All lack of love increases the

will to dominate, whereas every kind-hearted action increases his inner instinct to serve. And if this helpful activity is accomplished voluntarily and with love it will make a person happy, whereas serving under duress, that is, against his will, will exasperate him and arouse his inner objections. In that case the human being is controlled by the evil force which wants to prevent him from redeeming himself. This is why earthly life is a responsible one, because so many opportunities exist to be of kind-hearted service which enables the soul to redeem itself and these opportunities are not used accordingly. And the less people recognise and fulfil their purpose of life the more these opportunities will increase .... in order to awaken their sense of love in view of their fellow human beings' immense adversity and to encourage their helpful activity.

Amen

## **Selfish love .... Not much willingness for redemptive work ....**

***B.D. 2268 from March 18th 1942,  
taken from Book No. 31***

It can be said that there is not much willingness to

accomplish redemptive work on earth since, due to their way of life, people have increased their distance from God and this ever expanding distance also signifies constantly greater weakness of will. But the distance from God also signifies lack of knowledge, and therefore the human being does not realise the necessity and the blessing of redemptive work; he is unaware of the consequences in the beyond and thus does nothing to reduce the state of being far-away from God. This is a certain constraint of will, for although the human being's will is free, the opponent nevertheless still exerts great power over him, namely, when a person's way of life does not correspond to divine commandments. The human being certainly has freedom of will, insofar that he can act and think as he likes .... because he can neither be forced by the evil power nor does God force him in any way .... But if he is evil-minded, then he voluntarily turns to the one who had once abused his will, and the latter will also take possession of the person's will who turns to him. Then it will be difficult for a person to use his free will, and this becomes increasingly more difficult the more power he grants God's adversary over himself. If a person wants to release himself from his power and also wants to release others or help them to do so, he must comply with divine will and, first of all, practise love. After all, love is the strength which counters the opponent, who has become totally heartless. Every work of love liberates the human being, since he detaches himself from the one who wanted to revoke God's order, who did not acknowledge God as the eternal Love and

whose power goes hand in hand with absolute heartlessness. Redemptive work is therefore any work whose driving force is love. But nowadays people's every activity is determined by selfish love .... Each person only thinks of his own advantage in his work, yet the desire to help his fellow human beings with it is only rarely present. This is why little spiritual success comes from such work. Were people more connected to God their selfish love would constantly lessen and their love for other people would grow to the same extent. Then a person would feel urged from within to accomplish works of love .... he would only ever want to help and completely liberate himself from the control of the merciless control. However, since the will for redemptive work is only seldom to be found, the opponent has great power on earth. And this manifests itself such that he impels people into ever greater heartlessness and that they follow him willingly and almost surpass each other with works of destruction and feelings of hatred and revenge. And this consistently increases the distance from God until they are completely subject to the influence of evil again which would result in total spiritual ruin were God not to use His power and put to a stop to it .... He will once again revoke His adversary's power over the spiritual beings by banishing them into matter again for an infinitely long time to come ....

Amen



# Heavenly glory ... Spiritual vision ....

***B.D. 2284 from April 1st 1942, taken from Book No. 32***

God has withheld the knowledge about the glory of eternal life from people because it would influence their actions and thoughts insofar as that the human being would be unable to be anything else but good in order to attain the eternal glory for himself. In that case, however, he would never be able to become perfect, for perfection presupposes a good way of life of one's own accord but not for the sake of reward. If a person is good of his own accord, that is, if he shapes himself into love, the knowledge of the eternal glory will indeed be revealed to him on earth already, depending on his soul's degree of maturity. His ability to conceive things in the spiritual domain will be awakened, and figurative impressions will be imparted to him which his spirit will pass on to the soul. This is the spiritual vision which presupposes a certain degree of psychological maturity. Then these people will not be harmed by the knowledge of the eternal glory, i.e., it is only the consequence of their correct way of life before God. Even if a person is informed of the fact that life after death is incomparably beautiful and full of delight for a human being who shapes himself into love, this reference is nevertheless

not coercion, because it is up to the person to believe it or not. And then again, it will only be believed by a person who makes an effort to live according to God's will, whereas the other one lacks faith. Consequently, spiritual vision can only be attained by a profoundly faithful person living up to God's will, for the glories of eternity will only be revealed to him. But this vision, which is proof of his soul's maturity, will always be granted to a person shortly before the completion of his physical life, for he will not be required to stay much longer on earth since he will have fulfilled his purpose and established a heartfelt relationship with God. Only for the sake of humanity does God not call Him to Himself, so that it will be offered a small testimony of the truthfulness of the divine Word 'Eye has not seen, nor ear heard, nor have entered into the heart of man the things which I have prepared for those who love Me ....' For earthly eyes cannot behold such things; the spiritual eye, however, can only receive these impressions when a specific degree of perfection has been reached. What the spiritual eye then beholds is difficult for a person to describe because it exceeds the earthly human being's comprehension and Words cannot even roughly explain it. Even so, the imparted impressions should be enough for his fellow human beings to become profoundly faithful and encourage them to live a God-pleasing way of life. However, if a human being opposes this with his will, not even the most glorious description of the eternal bliss would manage to change it, for the realisation and the knowledge of life in the beyond in a state of perfection is

the result of a God-inclined will. But God does not change this will by force; instead, He will allow it to remain free.

Amen

## **God is Love .... The mystery of love ....**

***B.D. 2289 from April 4th 1942, taken from Book No. 32***

The greatest mystery is the love of God, and this mystery can only be revealed through love, that is, only a person who is actively kind-hearted himself is capable of understanding divine love. Each loving spiritual thought is an emanation of God, Who is Love in Himself. And the willingness to accept such a thought, that is, to direct it from the heart, where it is born, to the brain, hence to effectively take possession of it, is the willingness to receive this emanation of love from God. For the heart's willingness is the prerequisite for God's love to become effective .... God is Love .... This is a mystery and it will remain a mystery for people for as long as they belong to this earth and often still in the beyond. For they associate the concept of love with a Being. In their eyes it is a characterisation of a Being, and yet Love is the Being

Itself .... Love is something spiritual which does not explain the character but is in itself a Being .... love it that which is good, divine, when the word is used in relation to people .... whereas God Himself is only imaginable as Love, yet it will only become understandable to those people who are so permeated by love themselves that they, during their activity of love, also feel the closeness of God. For what they feel is only love again, and yet they are close to God, because God and love are one and the same. Everything that shapes itself into love is in heartfelt contact with God, i.e., shaping oneself into love is adapting the hitherto imperfect to the perfect. Love is something perfect .... God is perfection, thus love and God must be one and the same. But lack of love is a degree of imperfection; it is also a state of distance from God, because God without love is inconceivable. For this reason loving activity will always trigger a feeling of happiness, and this is the proximity of God which can be markedly felt by the soul, consequently, **all** increased activity of love will also manifest itself in an increased feeling of happiness, inner peace and firm self-confidence, because all this is divine, i.e., the evidence of God's closeness which can only have a spiritual effect, thus in emotions of the soul and not in the body's well-being. God's proximity in turn generates love, for since God is Love in Himself, His presence must manifest itself in a feeling of love again. And this love flows back to God as its origin .... the person having shaped himself into love, that is, his soul, unites with God .... Love flows to love, and thus the unification takes

place between the being with the Primordial Being,  
Which in Itself is only Love ....

Amen

# **Christianity .... Formalities ... Fight against schools of thought permitted ....**

***B.D. 2292 from April 8th 1942, taken  
from Book No. 32***

That which you believe to own must first be acquired, because you cannot call something your own as long as you are satisfied with the formality. The teaching of Christ has been forced to become a formality, and this formality is now incorrectly called Christianity.

Consequently, people who comply with this formality call themselves Christians. They presume to possess the teaching proclaimed by Christ, they believe to be followers of the church of Christ and yet they can be a long way from it if they do not live in accordance with the teaching of Christ. Now then, if you want to be true Christians you have to make an effort to delve deeply into the divine teaching of love which Jesus Christ has

proclaimed on earth. Only then will it become your possession, then you will own something wonderful, and only then may you call yourselves Christians.

Today's Christendom is not widespread because there are only few people left on this earth who live in harmony with Christ's teaching, and they are found everywhere, i.e. in every denomination and school of thought are people to whom the divine teaching of love has become the guiding principle for their earthly way of life. And these are the true Christians, they neither observe external appearances nor do they depend on specific organisations created by people, which claim to have been founded by God. Spiritual attachment is indeed very beneficial for the soul's development, whereas a formal unification is rather more a hindrance since it incorporates the danger that the formal unification will be more observed than the teaching, which should constitute the core of every spiritual endeavour. And for this reason the very formality, i.e. the structure, which has developed as a shell to enclose the core, will become rotten and collapse ....

Everything built by people in the course of time will vanish, and then it remains to be seen who can claim the right knowledge, profound faith and the pure teaching of Christ as his own .... The human being now has to prove the depth of his Christianity and to what extent he has become dependent on the formalities which are mere human work and therefore cannot continue to exist either. Because everything made by human beings does

not last, and only what is of God will remain .... But God through Jesus Christ gave the divine teaching of love in a pure and unaltered form to humanity, and it will also remain as such. However, anything which was added or changed by people is approaching its disintegration. And thus no school of thought which deviates from the teaching of Christ will continue to exist. For this reason God permits the fight against the different schools of thought even though it is not His will that everything revealing spiritual endeavour on earth should be fought against. But His eternally true Word will be sent to earth with all the more clarity, it will be made accessible to people time and again as the pure teaching of Christ, so that they can make it their spiritual possession and then shape themselves into real Christians if they live in accordance with this teaching ....

Amen

## **Battle for spiritual supremacy ....**

***B.D. 2301 from April 13th 1942,  
taken from Book No. 32***

Fateful is the battle for spiritual supremacy which will flare up to an extent not experienced by the world

before. Evil spirits want to forcefully displace the virtuous ones and this is indeed a course of action which divine love no longer wants to watch passively and decisively will end the battle itself. All attempts aim to cause the spiritual aspirants such severe difficulties that they discontinue their striving, that they turn towards the world so that the world can then claim victory, so to speak. If the world would succeed to eradicate the belief in an existing Deity and in the divine Saviour Jesus Christ then it would have gained victory over the other believers, and the outcome of such a victory would be grave, because then all of humanity would be heading for disaster since all further spiritual development would be out of the question.

This battle has been fought many times before yet never in such relentless way as it is now planned. Because the adversary himself is at work now, and he stops at nothing to assume control over humanity and will find willing agents, i.e. people who are willing to do anything, and thus believers will experience tremendous difficulties. Harshest measures will be taken for no reason at all against those who in their heart still believe in God and the divine Saviour, by attempting to make their lives unbearable. For they are superior to the unbelievers and scorners and can contradict every contention, and since God wants to use these willing people who are exposed to the particular onslaught by the worldly power during the coming time, He will not permit that His servants shall be tormented to the point that they will surrender



their faith .... on the contrary, He will endow them with great strength and reinforce their faith, and they, for their part, will now enter the battle, they will fight for the name of God and both camps will find their supporters. And then the battle will erupt with full intensity, the virtuous spiritual world will struggle for supremacy over the bad elements and the world apparently wins because it succeeds to intimidate people into parting with their faith because they do not believe that they can endure the events. And during this hardship God's love is consistently concerned for the human race. He will closely guard His small flock and not permit that it should fall victim to the powers who are so obviously fighting against God ....

Amen

## **Emotional and intellectual thinking ... Truth ...**

***B.D. 2302 from April 14th 1942,  
taken from Book No. 32***

Every human being deems himself as living in a state of realisation if he advocates an opinion he formed intellectually. Nevertheless, this opinion need not always correspond to truth. God gave the human being intellect

and free will, but He also gave him a heart .... As long as the intellect wants to find a solution for a spiritual question without the heart, he will hardly come close to the truth, for the truth comes forth from God and can only be received by the spirit and not from the body which is, after all, of matter. Intellectual thought is merely a function of the body .... but the heart is the seat of all emotions, the heart also shelters the divine spark of love and therefore the spirit, which is a part of God. A thought born in the heart, thus originating from the divine spiritual spark, can therefore always claim to be based on truth, for the spirit only imparts purest truth .... But whether the thought was born in the heart or is merely a product of rational thinking depends on the heart's ability to love. The more deeply the human being is able to love, that is, the more he strives for unity with God through loving activity, the clearer the thoughts will arise from his heart and enter the person's consciousness. For these thoughts are spiritual strength which flows forth from beings united with God and into the heart of someone who likewise unites with God through his activity of love. Whereas intellectual thinking is merely the function of physical organs, thus the utilisation of the human being's received vital energy, which can also be used by the person who exists without love, i.e. whose heart has little ability to love. Intellectual and emotional thinking should thus be separated. The latter will always arrive at the truth, whereas intellectual thinking need not always be the truth, even if one can speak of well developed reasoning power.

Only love is decisive, i.e. determinant of the truth. The human being has little information about the nature of thought, and therefore the difference is not clear to him. The thought born in the heart only has one thing in common with intellectually gained spiritual knowledge, both have to reach the brain in order to penetrate into the person's consciousness, and this makes the human being assume that every thought originates in the brain, that it therefore was intellectually achieved.

Nevertheless, the mental knowledge of a loving person, hence a person whose life is a constant activity of love, has to be entirely differently judged than the purely intellectual thinking of someone with little capacity to love. The former will come close to the truth, whereas the latter offers no guarantee for truth and knowledge. For God reserves the truth for Himself and only distributes it to those who acknowledge Him, desire Him and demonstrate this through activity of love.

Consequently, that which flows forth from a loving heart can be accepted as truth without hesitation, for such thoughts are subject to a certain surveillance through knowledgeable spiritual beings, whose responsibility is the transfer of thoughts and which therefore diligently watch that the person will think correctly. For through his activity of love the human being acquires the right and the claim for the light beings assistance, which now guard the person from thoughts which contradict the truth ....

Amen

# **Philosophy of life with Jesus Christ ....**

***B.D. 2304 from April 16th 1942,  
taken from Book No. 32***

Only a philosophy of life affirmed by Jesus Christ and therefore based on the divine doctrine of love will be a blessing for a nation and guarantee its spiritual as well as earthly flourishing. A nation which adopts such a philosophy of life remains profoundly united with the One proclaiming the divine doctrine of love, it will mature spiritually and not be subjected to such great afflictions since it makes every effort to live according to God's will and therefore does not require much suffering in order to change. A population which models itself on the divine Redeemer, which acknowledges Him and thus has an affirmative attitude towards Him, does not merely live a worldly life and will therefore not only be interested in material goods but also strive for spiritual possessions, it will live an inner life and strive towards ascent for, due to its faith, it is more knowledgeable, because faith requires loving activity and the latter leads to knowledge. And knowledgeable people consciously live their lives with God, that is, they will never turn away from Him and pay tribute to the world. Hence they will

have conquered matter already because, having been seized by the love of God, they see their goal of life in the union with Him. Consequently, a nation which has released itself from matter is highly evolved but will never try to assert itself against other nations. It is peaceful and willing to help, it won't seek to increase its power or try to make an impression, it lives its life quietly and in seclusion, hence, it will have little esteem in the world yet be held in high regard by God. Such a nation will never be able to understand that a different way of thinking could ever establish itself which negates everything of divine origin, which therefore also excludes the divine doctrine of love and wants to replace it with human teachings. Yet the latter will not last long and the nation which adhered to the latter will go under, for nothing will remain that is not of divine origin, which must also include a philosophy of life without Jesus Christ. And even if people wage a battle against Him, they will never be able to destroy His teaching, the divine teaching of love, and a worldview without Christ will destroy itself, just as a nation having adopted this point of view will sooner or later cause its own downfall ....

Amen

## **Disposition ... Instincts of preliminary stages ....**

## ***B.D. 2321 from May 3rd 1942, taken from Book No. 32***

The human being's disposition does not release him from having to justify himself for his actions and thoughts. For every person has strength and grace at his disposal to overcome every bad inclination if only he wants to do so. Besides, the soul brought characteristics into its human embodiment which it certainly could have discarded during its previous forms and as a human being is now allotted tasks which correspond to its present disposition, i.e., which offer the soul the opportunity to emerge victorious from its battle against this disposition. Yet in order to succeed free will always has to become active and this, too, will be strengthened by God in accordance with its attitude towards Him. If a person musters the will to appeal to God for help in his battle against himself, against his own weaknesses and faults, then the strength to release himself from them will indeed flow to the person. Admittedly, this requires a considerable struggle but it cannot be spared to him, because during its preliminary stages the soul had exceeded its designated limits .... i.e., the spiritual substance which stayed in already less restricting forms used this lack of restriction to the absolute limit. It effectively developed its instincts to the highest degree which it then, in its embodiment as a human being, has to reduce again and this requires greater willpower. Likewise, the spiritual substance can have tempered itself during the preliminary stages,

hence not made full use of its designated limits, with the result that it now has a less difficult battle of higher development on earth. But the disposition has at all times been taken into account through the living condition in which the being, according to its inclination, also has the opportunity to master them. Indeed, many a person seemingly has to fight harder, yet nothing impossible will ever be expected of him since unmeasured strength and grace is always at his disposal, but it has to be requested by him, because the soul has used its previously granted freedom in the wrong way and this does not relieve it from its responsibility ....

Amen

## **Divine justice ....**

## **Intervention ... Disaster ....**

***B.D. 2340 from May 19th 1942, taken from Book No. 32***

Divine justice will become apparent by the very event which is destined to humanity in the forthcoming time, for the countries whose leaders start the blaze that will extend all across earth will be severely struck. The blame of these countries shall be revealed by the approaching event which human will can neither avoid nor lessen. All

people on earth shall recognise that God's justice leaves nothing without punishment and that He intervenes once the measure of injustice has been reached.

God gave people free will which is now so abused that it requires retribution, so that righteously thinking and behaving people recognise the hand of God and despise what is sanctioned by the former. The conflict of nations will have spread wide and far and the fire will not be easily extinguished. As a result, God will end this blaze Himself by removing people's opportunity of continuing the struggle through a natural event of unimaginable extent. He will render powerless what previously was strong and mighty, and He will prove that His will and His might are stronger. And anyone who is not yet completely enslaved by God's adversary will also recognise where he has gone wrong and make an effort to lead a righteous way of life ....

Amen

## **The soul - Carrier of all works of creation ....**

***B.D. 2344 from May 24th 1942, taken from Book No. 32***

The substances of soul demonstrate in their composition



an extreme finely constructed formation that would strike the human being as enchanting if he could see it. There is nothing that is not present in this creation .... Everything in creation can be found in miniature in the soul because the individual substances had animated every work of creation and therefore also retained the shape of these previous forms, who multiply by continuous association and therefore constantly change and perfect the overall image. A human being's comprehension would not suffice to imagine all these works of creation, yet one day he will, overwhelmed by the wisdom and omnipotence of the Creator, behold the image that reveals to him the most amazing magnificence. The least and most insignificant work of creation holds again thousands of miniature creations within itself which in turn also exhibit everything that is represented in God's great work of creation. The human soul, however, is carrier of all these creations, i.e. it is composed of countless substances, each one has already fulfilled its task in creation and hence was permitted to unite for the last and greatest task .... to complete the infinitely long earthly progress as a human soul. No other work of wonder in all of God's great creation is so extraordinary beautifully shaped as the human soul .... And it is proof of its perfection when the soul can behold itself as in a mirror and perceive its own glory, i.e. when it sees itself in the most radiant light in many thousand-fold shapes and formations, and thus the contemplation of itself causes it unimaginable happiness because the vision of the entire work of creation is an overwhelmingly

beautiful experience for the soul. And the soul's contemplations will never end because the image reshapes itself time and again; constantly more enchanting works of creation emerge since God's wonders are endless and so is what His love provides to His living creations who are perfect and thus enlightened .... They always and ever feel His love and as a result experience ever increasing happiness .... There will be no conclusion, no limit of what the spiritual eye may behold .... And nothing remains unchanged, which denotes a state of bliss for the being which progressively increases and therefore requires constant transformation of the being's spiritual vision ....

Amen

## **Jesus Christ was dedicated to God body and soul ....**

***B.D. 2345 from May 24th 1942, taken from Book No. 32***

Jesus Christ's body no longer opposed its soul; it demanded nothing for itself than the soul wanted, which had completely united with the spirit .... This was the state of Jesus, the man, when He had accomplished His act .... It was a state of utter dedication to God and total

renouncement of everything belonging to the world .... His body, being entirely spiritualised, was totally independent from the earth and its laws, i.e. the spiritual substances of His human body had merged with those of the soul and effectively subordinated themselves to the spirit's will, which was most closely united with the Father-Spirit, and thus the earthly body together with the soul became one with the eternal Deity .... This fusion was so extraordinarily significant and entails such far-reaching consequences which the soul is incapable of understanding as long as it hasn't found the union with God itself. It was an act of immense self-denial, profoundest love and boundless dedication to God .... The soul of Jesus, the man, simultaneously drew its external shell, the body, into the sphere of God's emanation of love, and both His soul and His body were permeated by God's spirit of love, by His strength and His light .... Jesus, the man, was full of strength and light .... He was powerful and wise, and every creature obeyed Him, the whole of Creation complied with Him, for God was in Him in all fullness since neither the soul nor the body offered Him resistance any longer, and this boundless dedication also resulted in God's boundless activity .... Now it was God Himself Who manifested Himself in everything Jesus did and said. God's love takes hold of everything that hands itself over to Him, it permeates every creation as soon as its inherent spirit does not offer any resistance to the divine love .... Wherever this resistance is removed there can only be the love of God, therefore .... since God is love .... God can only be where He finds no opposition

resisting Him .... Everything of God is divine as long as it offers no resistance. Only resistance turns God's creation into something external to Him until it relinquishes its resistance of its own accord .... Jesus, the man, was utterly devoted to God and thus no longer external to God but fused with Him, thus One with God .... and therefore totally transfigured, because the union with God is a state of bright light .... And when Jesus Christ passed away from this world He took His body along with His soul into eternity, for nothing adhered to Him anymore which required further development, both body and soul were perfect; every spiritual substance was so inclined towards God that it was permeated by God's light and love, that it was like God, because it had completely united with the eternal Deity ....

Amen

## Hour of death ....

***B.D. 2348 from May 27th 1942, taken from Book No. 32***

The soul's separation from the body is usually a painful experience for the body because a certain degree of maturity is necessary for a painless separation, which is rarely achieved by the person. The human being's hour of death will always make him aware that he no longer will

be able to strive, that he no longer will be able to achieve anything by himself when he has left the human shell. And depending on the state of his soul the hour of death will then become more or less difficult for him. As long as the human being is on earth he still has the choice to purify himself, and the soul in the beyond will thank its Creator for having been given this opportunity before its departure that it will not have to suffer as much in the beyond. Since God is righteous the soul has to accept its fate in the beyond and needs far greater suffering to attain the degree of maturity. Nevertheless it is not possible to enter the spheres of light without it, consequently this higher degree of maturity has to be achieved through suffering and pain and thus a long struggle before death should always be viewed as an ascent. It is true that people only see the state of suffering, which contributes towards their fear of death since the hour of death seems unbearable to them, and yet it is only bestowed upon the human being by the greatest love to provide for him a brighter light in the beyond.

And this love is the foundation of everything .... God only sends suffering and pain to earth for the purpose of removing a person's physical desires, that he then will pay more attention to his soul and attempt to perfect it. Every suffering which results in this is blessed by God .... Time on earth passes quickly and with good will can be used to abandon everything worldly, then the soul shapes itself in accordance to God's will and at the end of its earthly life

requires no further exceptional suffering to enter the kingdom of light. However, suffering always contributes towards higher maturity and is therefore a blessing for the human being who otherwise would have to dispose of his errors and failings in the beyond which would also be rather wretched .... thus his suffering cannot be prevented even though the hour of death apparently proceeds silently and without pain. God knows every human being's state of soul and his willingness to fight all impurities; hence He complies with the human being by offering him the opportunity to accomplish his goal .... by allowing the hour of death to be his last opportunity for arriving in eternity purged and purified ....

Amen

## **False Christs .... Signs and miracles ....**

***B.D. 2353 from May 31th 1942, taken from Book No. 32***

False Christs will arise and perform signs and miracles in My name .... This is what I announced to you ahead of time and My Words are true. Yet you try to explain these Words wrongly if you assume that the same power dwells within an evil force, an emissary of Satan, which made Me work

signs and miracles during My life on earth. Heaven and Earth are at all times subject to **My** will, they are governed by My will, and this will of Mine upholds every creation, because a will that is contrary to Mine would signify the decline of everything I let arise if I granted him power over it. And yet, signs and miracles will be performed, but they only ever appear as such to those people who are his followers, for they are spiritually blind, they don't know the true correlation of all things, and they will consider everything as signs and miracles which seems extraordinary to them but which every human being would be able to accomplish by mustering all his willpower. You are all in possession of abilities which you need only develop in order to accomplish many things. Yet your weakness of will prevents you from developing your abilities, and therefore something seems to you a miracle which, however, is within the scope of possibility for every single person .... And thus all signs and miracles, which I mentioned to you, will be understandable to every enlightened person, yet those who still live in spiritual darkness will conclude that it is supernatural strength. And they will grant divine strength to those who are My opponents yet appear in My name in order to deceive humanity. The darker the spiritual night is which enshrouds people, the easier it will be to make them believe in miracles, they will accept every extraordinary activity by evil forces as such, yet the extraordinary working of light .... of people whose will is inclined towards God .... will not be acknowledged by them, and this alone is already a sign that people are

under the spell of the one who seeks to fight against God. And yet they will make use of My name .... that is, they will proclaim themselves as Messiah, they will promise people deliverance from every adversity through them and their teachings, for they will only try to win them over by describing themselves as representatives of the One Who has all power over Heaven and Earth. And everyone is a false Christ who preaches a wrong teaching in My name .... and who tries to confirm this teaching through extraordinary working which, however, can never be looked upon as a miracle ....

Amen

## **Spiritual rebirth ....**

***B.D. 2360 from June 7th 1942, taken from Book No. 32***

The turning point in life is the rebirth of the spirit .... it is the moment when you become conscious of the spiritual strength flowing to you through My love. As soon as you feel yourselves inseparably united with Me, as soon as you become conscious of the fact that you cannot exist without Me, as soon as you feel My presence and this consciousness determines your whole life, the spiritual spark in you strives towards its Father-Spirit and you have woken up to the real life, you are reborn in spirit .... And



from now on you strive towards Me consciously, your intentions and thoughts are inclined towards Me, your actions correspond to My will. And I take hold of you and draw you up to Me .... I won't let you go anywhere on your own anymore, I will go with you wherever you go, I Am around you and pay attention to every thought looking for Me .... I hear your heart's every question, every appeal for help, every sigh for My love and I will help you, even if you don't feel it instantly .... My love for you is boundless and My care never-ending, and thus I won't leave any one of My living creations without help. And I particularly take care of My children, for they are My children who have found Me and confide in Me of their own accord .... They have all My love .... Spiritual rebirth is like the rising sun .... it appears increasingly more radiant in the firmament until it is in the sky in full splendour, permeating My works of creation with light and warmth, giving life to new creations and keeping them alive .... Standstill no longer exists for a spiritually reborn person. He will become increasingly brighter and shining since he is, after all, permeated by My strength of love, by My spirit .... And thus he gains ever more light and strength and likewise illuminates everything in his surroundings.

Spiritual rebirth is the awakening to eternal life, and the spiritually reborn person will likewise be able to awaken the lifeless to life, for wherever his light is shining it penetrates the darkness with its bright radiance, and where there is light there is life .... where there is light I Myself Am present, and I bring life to all those who desire

it, who consciously want it from Me, who likewise turn to Me with yearning, thus, who acknowledge Me. I give you My Word and thereby the visible sign of My love, I give you strength, which will manifest itself in increased longing for Me again, for this longing is the sign that My Father-Spirit draws the spiritual spark in you to Himself .... and thus you shall be happy when you yearn for Me, for My spirit strives towards you in the same way. And your hearts cannot let go of Me again, for I do not let them do so once they have given themselves to Me .... I Am the Spirit of Truth, I Am Life, I Am Love and the Primary Origin of everything in existence. Whomever I grant My love will exist from eternity to eternity .... He will live and know the full truth; there is no deception and illusion where he is; he will be what I Am .... a spirit, full of power and strength from Me .... He will radiate love and be incredibly happy for being able to impart My spirit to the living creations again, for being able to bring what was once lifeless to life .... He will resemble Me in everything, for My spirit permeates him and thus he cannot be any different than I Am, a being full of love, strength, wisdom and power .... And thus you will be the most blissfully happy creatures in eternity, united with one another and always near to Me .... And you will receive what you desire, for you will only ever desire My love, and this will permeate you continually, so that you can work for your own infinite happiness in My kingdom, which everyone who unites with Me in time and eternity can share ....

Amen

# Ending the struggle between the nations ....

***B.D. 2361 from June 6th 1942, taken  
from Book No. 32***

An immense conflict between the nations will find its end according to divine decree. This will by no means correspond to the nations' wishes; in fact, they will be horrified when they realise the outcome which entirely opposes their expectations. Yet human will is powerless wherever God expresses His will. And every day prior to this still signifies a gift for people if they use these days for the salvation of their soul by turning away from the world and towards God before God manifestly reveals Himself. People have already been affected by indescribably harsh suffering and yet it only brought a few closer to the Deity, for humanity pays no attention to that which is given to them by God but only to that which it is offered by the world .... Thus it does not make use of God's grace; instead it constantly tries to increase its earthly possessions. And even where people's belongings are destroyed they will only wholeheartedly strive to regain what they lost. And thus their struggle against each other becomes more and more bitter and can no longer be resolved in an earthly manner but has to be

brought to an end by God if it is not to lead to a complete breakdown and utter godlessness.

For people lack faith in a just and wise God, otherwise they would already see by the world event to what extent humanity has distanced itself from God and why God permitted such a world event to take place. For God's will does not prevent people's will from accomplishing that which they precipitated by their heartlessness. However, the forthcoming event will raise great doubt about the existence of a Deity Which Itself destroys that which it created with Its Might .... But these doubts will only surface in people who do not act with love .... whereas the loving person will be enlightened and know that nothing can happen without God's will, thus he will recognise that God had sent the event .... And he will know that nothing will come upon the earth without purpose and reason and that everything can benefit the soul in some way or other. He, too, will be severely shocked by the scale of the event but he will also realise that the human race must be shaken out of its faithless existence so that it will take stock of itself and give its way of life a different direction in order to come closer to God. And blessed is he who will still derive a benefit for his soul from this forthcoming event, for he will lose nothing but only gain, even if his earthly possessions have been destroyed .... He will have found God through it and gained infinitely more than he had lost ....

Amen

# **Thinking apparatus .... Influx of good or evil strength ....**

***B.D. 2363 from June 9th 1942, taken  
from Book No. 32***

Spiritual knowledge ceaselessly flows to you from the spiritual kingdom which you need only accept in order to possess it. Your will is decisive as to what kind of spiritual knowledge you take hold of, for you can make the spiritual transmission of light as well as that of darkness your possession, depending on your will. The human being's thinking apparatus is so delicately constructed that it is being activated by every emanation, i.e. as soon as thoughts surround him like waves it becomes active by accepting what he agrees to, which is thus favoured by the person's will. For this makes the decision .... it effectively accepts part of it whilst rejecting everything else, depending on its attitude towards that which is good and divine or towards the power which is hostile to God. For the influx of thoughts from both powers, from the illuminated or spiritually dark forces, is either beneficially or unpleasantly experienced by the person, who therefore accepts the one and rejects the other.

Hence, it depends on his basic attitude towards God which mental information the human being's will allows to take effect in himself, for once his thinking apparatus has received it, it will constantly remain at his disposal, for it will always rise to the surface as soon as the person wants to deal with it. If, therefore, the human being's will is directed towards God, the mental knowledge will be accordingly so, i.e. it will only consist of such communications which flow to him from the realm of light, which thus do not contradict the divine will.

The human being will predominantly concern himself with spiritual things and disregard worldly matters, he will feel a spiritual hunger and thus accept from the spiritual transmissions that which corresponds to his desire while disregarding everything else. And so every person forms his own mental knowledge; it will be imparted to him from all sides, that is, good and evil forces endeavour to open their world of thought to the human being and make him inclined to accept their offer. If the human being unites himself with God in thoughts or in prayer he will, understandably, also accept the mental information given to him by forces which are united with God, and these forces will prevent the opposing power from influencing him, and this, once again, is expressed through the human being's will, through its affirmative or negative attitude regarding the offered mental knowledge. This is why someone with the desire for God can be assured that he thinks correctly, for through his desire for God he makes himself receptive to the spiritual

influx of good forces and feels that the mental information given by the opposing power is wrong and merits its rejection. The virtuous spiritual forces diligently train his power of judgment and watch out that the willing human being shall not fall prey to evil influences ....

Amen

## **Misguided teachings are barriers for the seeker of God ....**

***B.D. 2372 from June 17th 1942,  
taken from Book No. 32***

The spiritually seeking human being experiences a certain lack of freedom as long as he cannot intellectually free himself from human teachings which don't correspond to the truth. Such doctrines prevent him from cognition and thus he thereby erects his own limitation of knowledge because pure truth cannot be given to him until he has liberated himself or .... if it is given to him he does not recognise it as such. Although God moves indeed towards the seeking human being, He wants to be unreservedly accepted.

Misguided opinions, however, are barriers erected by the human being which, in a manner of speaking, still signify a partition between God and the person. Every false doctrine that the human being won't give up is such a barrier which still separates the person from God. God will now stimulate the human being to pull the barrier down, i.e. other people will shake his convictions by unfavourably criticising his misguided teachings and the person will thus become inclined to quash these. If he does, he will soon gain insight because now he is taught by God Himself Who will send him the right thoughts, which the human being readily accepts. But as long as he holds on to his misguided opinions he cannot become enlightened. He finds no connection, and therefore his knowledge is patchwork and not sufficient to teach other people either, for someone can only give that what he owns himself and not what he is lacking. However, the more willing a human being is to walk the right path, i.e. to live in accordance with divine will, the more certainly God will guide him towards cognition, it just takes a long time to remove those obstructions which make it impossible to achieve cognition.

One must try with great patience to disprove another person's false opinions. The love of a fellow human being can achieve this as long as he knows the truth and thus can also impart the truth. The human being is always victorious when truth is on his side because the truth is of God and God cannot be defeated. Anyone seeking God will find Him without fail because He makes Himself



known to anyone who sincerely endeavours to find Him ....

Amen

# **'The wisdom of the wise will be destroyed ....'**

***B.D. 2375 from June 20th 1942,  
taken from Book No. 32***

The weapon of the worldly scholar is the presentation of evidence, and by using this weapon he will always be able to assert himself in the world, that is, his wisdom will be irrefutable as soon as he can provide the evidence for the knowledge he has gained. By comparison, spiritual knowledge cannot be substantiated with proof, it cannot be scientifically gained nor systematically conveyed to people, for spiritual knowledge is not the product of a person's intellectual thought but the product of a loving heart. Spiritual knowledge has therefore nothing in common with earthly wisdom and can therefore not be judged by worldly scholars either, for spiritual knowledge is entirely alien to them; they are completely incapable of all criticism as long as they have not been accepted into the circle of knowledgeable people as a result of their wholehearted activity of love. And thus the worldly scholar will not be able to use his wisdom as evidence in

order to disprove spiritual truths. For he will have to admit a shortcoming, he will have to admit that his worldly knowledge is not sufficient in order to penetrate spiritual areas. However, the spiritual knowledge gained through activity of love will revoke earthly wisdom as soon as this wisdom refers to areas which lie beyond the earth. Spiritual knowledge will yield different results than those gained by worldly scholars; consequently, the spiritually knowledgeable person will bypass and regard all presentation of evidence as unreliable and similarly regard people's reasoning power as untrustworthy; and thus people who have penetrated spiritual knowledge do not hold worldly knowledge in high esteem. They consider it unsound since it does not contribute in the slightest to leading people into realisation and because divine wisdom can never ever be gained through it. But, moreover, despite the presentation of evidence the wisdom of the worldly wise will turn out to be wrong. For people who have never paid attention to the divine spirit, whose thoughts were therefore never spiritually inclined, will have to realise that people without worldly education have superior knowledge to them, and thus they will also have to acknowledge the truth of what contradicts their researches and subsequent results .....

They will have to realise that intellectual activity alone is no guarantee for correct wisdom .... 'I will destroy the wisdom of the wise, and will bring the understanding of the prudent to nothing ....' And this is in accordance with the worldly researcher's spiritual attitude towards God,

since no person can know the truth without spiritual enlightenment; and without acknowledging and striving towards God a person cannot become enlightened, since the latter is a flow of strength from God, which can only happen to vessels which are open for this influx, otherwise the flow of strength cannot find a receptacle. All spiritual products for which the spiritual strength from God was not requested or used are worthless, and they will time and again be superseded or dismissed, for intellectual thought does not stop after one result because it is never completely convinced of its truth. In contrast, spiritual results developed in unison with the divine spirit always and forever remain unchangeable because they correspond to truth and are also recognised as such by people who sincerely struggle for truth. A purely intellectual person remains far from the truth, he neither desires it nor does he recognise it when it is offered to him, and thus he will become neither wise nor truth loving. Therefore his weapon, the presentation of evidence, will be taken out of his hand, for his presentation of evidence cannot prevail against spiritual results, which are God's direct emanation, since his opponents fight with a weapon he does not possess .....

What has been announced through the working of the spirit will visibly manifest itself and thereby provide the evidence that truth only exists where the spirit of God is desired, and that this truth far surpasses the knowledge of the worldly wise, so that people realise that wisdom does not depend on human intellect but solely on the right attitude towards God and a corresponding way of

life .... For only then will the strength from God, His spirit, be desired and also be able to take effect ....

Amen

## **Needy souls beg for prayers ....**

***B.D. 2381 from June 24th 1942,  
taken from Book No. 32***

Listen to the pleas of the dead .... Do not refuse them your intercession when they remind you of themselves, and know that without your help they have to suffer indescribably. The fate of an unredeemed soul is extremely sad, and you don't know whether a soul is redeemed or whether it is suffering in this painful state and requires your help. You can only help these poor souls with prayer because then they feel your love and this gives them the strength to improve their own fate. They change their will, and this is first and foremost necessary to initiate a transformation of their sad situation. The souls are grateful for even the least amount of support because they completely depend on you or on the mercy of the souls who have already attained a higher degree of maturity. But these are only permitted to help them when the souls' will requests a

change of their present situation .... However, the will of such souls is weak if not completely inactive and therefore they often have to languish for an infinite length of time if they do not receive support by means of intercession which gives them the strength to change their will, i.e. to activate their will. If you could understand such souls' suffering you would not let them ask in vain .... because every thought of a deceased is their way of bringing themselves to your attention and a call for help in need.

Humanity is very unkind to each other and without belief in life after death. That is why it does not remember its deceased and thus they suffer greatly. Time and again they push themselves into the thoughts of the human being to induce him to pray for them. There is immense hardship in the beyond and even the souls of unknown deceased come close to those who compassionately remember the poor souls .... because they experience every gift of prayer as beneficial, as an increase of strength and will to ascend. Deeply compassionate people on earth are always surrounded by needy souls who are hoping for their help. Even the resolve to help such souls is a gift of strength to them and every loving thought which includes them strengthens their will. And then helpful beings in the beyond can come to aid these souls by conveying the strength which is necessary to lessen their overwhelming suffering. Human beings do not really know how to value prayer as a gift of mercy. They can achieve everything by right prayer because God

Himself has offered this blessing to them and imposes no restrictions. However, the soul cannot help itself in the beyond but depends on help. And you should give them this love and help to save them from the most painful condition and to facilitate the start of their self-deliverance .... Once the soul has overcome the point of weakness then its aspiration only strives upwards and its greatest need is remedied. However, it has to receive the strength for this by means of loving intercession because only the action of love leads to the redemption of the soul. If the soul itself is too weak to do works of love the human being should lovingly support it so that it receives the strength which it needs for its progress. For that reason you should not forget the needy souls .... because they implore you to help them ....

Amen

## **Infallibility of the head of church ....**

***B.D. 2383a from June 25th 1942,  
taken from Book No. 32***

Every religious doctrine should be examined before it is accepted. God demands this from you in order to reduce the adversary's influence, because then you will also

understand how he works yourselves. His objective is to infiltrate the divine truth with inaccuracies, but the human being can certainly become aware of it if he seriously examines what he is offered with the desire only to accept the divine, the truth. The opponent uses human will, i.e. he influences people to arbitrarily add other teachings to the divine teaching and to pass them on as God-given teachings. But human work is not without error and consequently the pure divine teaching is spoilt too, and even more so the less people scrutinise and think for themselves. And once again it is the opponent's doing that human doctrines inherently prevent their scrutiny and contemplation .... that people are therefore required to accept each religious doctrine unconditionally and scrutiny of it is made out to be wrong. This furthers the activity of the prince of lies very much indeed. But God requires people to have a living faith, i.e. a faith of heart, a faith which affirms with full conviction what it is taught. Anyone who seriously thinks about it will be able to affirm every divine truth wholeheartedly, however, he will never be able to accept the action of Satan. He will soon recognise it as human work and, having found it to be worthless, thus abandon it with an easy heart. Examine everything and hold on to the best ....

And because scrutiny inevitably has to entail the recognition and rejection of every error, the adversary knew how to prevent the examination of religious dogma by establishing a teaching which was intended to

eliminate human thought and which thus has resulted in very nasty consequences .... This concerns the teaching of infallibility of the head of church, which apparently relieves the human being of every responsibility yet leads him into deep spiritual darkness if it is accepted and regarded as divine truth. Because any misguided teaching could then be added as divine truth without permitting criticism or rejection. And thus the door was opened to every error .... a field had been made available to the adversary's activity on which he could scatter his seed widely ....

## **Infallibility of the head of church ....**

***B.D. 2383b from June 25th 1942,  
taken from Book No. 32***

People's obligation to believe the teaching of infallibility of the head of church means that every additional teaching or rule set up by the head of church has to be approved or accepted without criticism, and thus the human being's thought and choice are eliminated, even though they are indispensable if the human being is to give account of his relationship to God one day. Every person has to answer for himself, consequently he has to make his own decision with complete freedom of will ....



However, in order to make a decision he has to be able to examine and consider what he should decide on .... It should not be the case that an individual person decides and this person then demands of thousands and thousands of people to follow his decision, subsequently expressing this demand in the form of a commandment .... (a doctrine) .... which is undeniably the case if every church commandment were to be acknowledged as in accordance with God's will, because its foundation is the (alleged) infallibility of the head of church. These teachings are now unreservedly accepted without the human being clarifying their meaning and purpose, resulting in routine actions which are unrelated to free decision, profound faith and deeply felt closeness to God ....

A church service evolved which, in reality, is not a service to God. Customs were introduced which are more or less formalities .... The adversary's actions succeeded in alienating people from the truth under the guise of piety, to stop them from using their own thoughts and thus their free decision too, since all this is suppressed by God's adversary due to the dogma of infallibility. Because once this teaching has been made plausible to a person he will no longer need to have an opinion about it. Thus he accepts without scrutiny, he need not make a decision because someone else has already made a decision on his behalf and free will is not utilized. Instead, the person has to believe what is given to him as religious dogma if he does not want to come into conflict with the particular

religious dogma, which the church makes out to be so very important, that the head of church can never err or take wrong measures when he makes a decision concerning the church.

God only values free decision-making, but this has to be made by the person himself and thus the pros and cons of religious dogma have to be considered by him. Only what he can affirm in his heart can be called faith, and not what he finds himself compelled to affirm .... Because religious dogma intended by God will bear up to every scrutiny and will be even more convincingly accepted the more the human being delves into it .... However, anything that is not of God does not stand up to scrutiny and will be rejected by every person who seriously struggles for knowledge ....

Amen

**Forthcoming event .... God's intervention .... Time of adversity ....**

***B.D. 2388a from June 29th 1942,  
taken from Book No. 32***

The nations will rage against each other without mercy

and inflict the greatest possible damage on themselves. People will be gravely affected by this and suffering and grief will be their constant companions. People's heartlessness is immense and will even keep growing, and thus they will draw divine intervention ever closer to themselves. There is not much time left before it comes to pass what God has revealed to people through his spirit, and yet, people will be taken by surprise, for in their unbelief they don't believe that they will be affected by it themselves. They don't believe that their spiritual hardship is such that it will necessitate this intervention and that the time for it has come. For they don't try to understand each other, everyone just wants to achieve his own advantage and harm his fellow human being. And this is the beginning of an unimaginably meagre time .... Ideals will be lost which can never be replaced again .... The time has come of which the Lord has spoken on earth, and the said intervention will result in such appalling suffering that people will believe they are incapable of enduring this forthcoming time.

And yet, no-one will be able to escape but, in fear of their life, everyone will hear Gods voice speaking loudly and clearly to humanity. The extent of the destruction will make many people equally poor, great demands will be made on people's love, for only active neighbourly love will be able to handle this misery while raising the spiritual low at the same time. For a loving person will not leave his fellow human being without help and this activity of love will lead to spiritual growth. Every day

until then shall be valued, and there will not be many more of them .... The day will come surprisingly soon which will signify a major change in many ways .... And despite their inner upheaval only devout people will remain calm and recognise the real state of affairs. And in their awareness of humanity's spiritual hardship they will try to also lead their fellow human beings to have faith. For the event will happen for the sake of their souls, and if a person then cares for his soul God's intervention will also have borne fruit. Yet again, there will only be a few, for their spiritual blindness will prevent people from realising ....

## **Forthcoming event ... God's intervention ... Time of adversity ....**

***B.D. 2388b from June 29th 1942,  
taken from Book No. 32***

Only a few people will derive benefit for their souls from this event which will repeat itself three times in short intervals. It will deprive people of their thinking ability for it will be so huge that all considerations will fall by the wayside and everything will turn into chaotic confusion. Only His children will be manifestly protected

by the Lord, for He will later need them to work for Him. Those who trustfully pray to Him in advance for strength and support will also receive strength and support from Him if they require it. And even if it looks as if everything is lost .... He will direct all events and will know why He allows such a disaster to befall humanity, and He will also put a stop to it when the time is right. The strength of faith shall demonstrate itself in the aftermath. For this event will signify to the devout a confirmation of the divine Word, and then they will support the faith with utter assurance and conviction, and they will be invincible. The less people are burdened by earthly possessions the more receptive they will be for the divine Word, and therefore God will destroy anything that impedes their path of ascent. Afterwards there will be inconceivable misery amongst people, and yet they would be able to lessen it for themselves if they were willing to help each other.

And God will bless all active neighbourly love, and He will help people to endure the earthly hardship. For whatever God takes away He can also replace again if the human being needs it. Yet his heart ought to detach itself therefrom, he should not consider earthly possessions the most important things on earth but realise that they are unimportant and transient and that the bond with God is the only strength and comfort-giving means in order to endure even the greatest suffering. This event has been destined since eternity, it shall, after all, be the last opportunity for salvation for countless people on the

wrong path, who only live for earthly things and therefore need to be shaken up in order to seriously reflect on the purpose and goal of earthly life. Yet only a small fraction will derive benefit from it, while the others will re-establish the old living conditions with increased vigour, and they will use any means to acquire earthly possessions again. And this is the time when the new beginning shall be opposed by God's Word, when people will separate into those who will give up everything just to be able to remain loyal to God and those who will reject everything of a spiritual nature and instead desire the world and its possessions with increased longing. And then the forces of light will clearly be fighting against the powers of darkness ....

Amen

**Retribution - Atonement  
and educational means ....  
Approval of committing an  
evil deed is sin ....**

***B.D. 2390 from June 30th 1942,  
taken from Book No. 32***

Every wrongdoing will generally result in just punishment

on earth already, so that the human being can learn to recognise the wrongdoing by this alone. For as soon as he must suffer what he has done to others, he will become conscious of his guilt and might feel despicable about himself. Therefore this punishment is atonement and educational means at the same time and can entail a double blessing. According to divine justice every wrongdoing must be atoned for, consequently it would have to be atoned for in the beyond if it is not recognised and regretted on earth and if it has not found God's forgiveness. The battle for supremacy, for power, honour and esteem lets humanity nowadays use means which can never be approved of, and thus it amasses guilt upon guilt, which it must also rightfully atone for in earthly life, if it is not to endure indescribable suffering in the beyond as a result. And this is likewise a cause for the distress which is presently happening on earth. With every approval of an evil deed the human being becomes complicit in it .... Thus he does not recognise his wrongdoing as yet and must therefore endure the same suffering in order to become aware of it. For not only the accomplished deed is sin, but also the approval of it, as this betrays the person's attitude, his instinct for wicked deeds. This also explains why so many people are affected by adversity and destitution even though they are not the implementers of despicable deeds .... However, as long as they do not see any wrong in them, their disposition is not virtuous; consequently they must be educated and experience the results or effect of evil deeds for themselves. In this case the will counts as an

accomplished deed and leads to retribution which, at the same time, is an educational means in order to make people stop and think about the iniquity of their actions and to change their thinking accordingly. For each evil deed gives birth to constantly new evil deeds, and these result in increasingly worse suffering as just punishment ....

Amen

## **Contact with the deceased ... Souls close to Earth ....**

***B.D. 2401 from July 8th 1942, taken from Book No. 32***

Countless souls are close to earth whose state of maturity is still very low and who therefore still harbour the desire for earth because the higher spheres are still inaccessible to them. These souls are often still unaware of the fact that they no longer belong to earth, that is, they still don't know that their physical life on earth has come to an end, and therefore they still remain in their old environment and want to talk to people without, however, being heard by them. Sometimes it can take a long time until they realise that they have nothing to do



with the Earth anymore. It takes a long time until they find themselves in their new environment and finally stay away from Earth. This stage of ignorance is not very satisfactory for the soul, for it finds no understanding and help anywhere because it turns to people who cannot help in the way it desires to be helped. Only the realisation that it has passed away from earth for good and that people can only offer their help through prayer motivates the soul to reflect on its present state and to consider the possibility that it might be able to change this state itself. Then it will pay attention to every opportunity which raises its degree of maturity. Only then will it take stock of itself and try to hold itself to account, which will often result in bitter remorse that it did not use earthly life in accordance with God's will. And during this remorseful mood it is often visited by beings of light which approach it under a cover so as not to be recognised as beings of light. These draw the soul's attention to the suffering of other souls and try to awaken its compassion for them. Then it will depend on its inner attitude as to whether the beings of light will provide it with strength or leave it to its fate again until its compassion for the needy souls outweighs its own suffering and the beings of light continue their influence anew, and then with successful results. Earth is surrounded by countless souls which, in a manner of speaking, still live on earth, but unknown to those people who define everything they cannot see and touch as non-existent, and who therefore refuse to believe that the souls of the deceased surround the people who stay

behind. For they can only be seen with spiritual eyes, however, the physical eye is blind, consequently the souls are unable to make themselves known by any means, because people do not react to them, since they are dependent on the divine natural laws in which God Himself has placed them. They only see and hear with physical organs, but the souls of the deceased require spiritual vision.

And so there is no connection between the souls of the deceased and people on earth, in a purely worldly sense; only an entirely spiritual connection exists, and this can only be established if the human being on earth is willing to harmonise with the souls, that is, if the human being on earth believes in the soul's life after death and as a result of this belief tries to communicate with these souls. Consciously getting in touch with the spiritual world is the prerequisite so that contact can be established between people and the souls in the beyond, which makes a mutual understanding possible. And then it depends on who is more knowledgeable, the human being or the soul in the beyond. For the informed participant shall instruct the uninformed one. If the soul in the beyond is in a very immature stage, then the human being can convey his knowledge to it by speaking to the soul, which the souls can understand and hear very well. But, if a human being lacks knowledge, he will be instructed by knowledgeable spiritual beings once his will desires this instruction.

And thus you humans on earth can very beneficially

influence the souls which are close to earth, since the state of their maturity is usually inadequate, with little knowledge and therefore not much strength. By transmitting the knowledge with loving thoughts they can be helped insofar as it enables the souls to detach themselves more easily from earth and at the same time turn their attention to equally suffering souls in the beyond. This can awaken love in them and they will subsequently be introduced to further knowledge by the beings of light, which recognise the souls' change of heart, and then, on their part, helpfully support the souls.

Amen

## **Why prayer is necessary ...**

***B.D. 2409 from July 15th 1942, taken from Book No. 32***

People's endeavours at present only apply to matter, and this means a standstill of spiritual development. There is a danger that the human being will regress if he will not come to recognise his state of poverty, for God's adversary is trying to pull the souls down in order to win them for himself completely. And the more he succeeds the harder it becomes to escape from him again and turn towards higher spheres. The human being's will is weakened and can only change with God's help, which

categorically requires calling upon Him for help. And this makes prayer therefore the first and most important requirement .... As long as the human being is still able to pray he is not hopelessly lost, since every call for strength in spiritual adversity will be answered, and if the human being can no longer recognise the spiritual adversity he is in, which is also due to the adversary's influence, and thus ignores the blessing of prayer, he will then be led by God into situations which will make him realise his own helplessness in earthly difficulties, so that he will then take his refuge in prayer and call upon God in his adversity. He is always ready to help, He will not deny His support to any petitioner, He gives strength to the weak and alleviates every adversity, but He wants that His help shall be consciously desired; He wants the human being to come to Him as a petitioner, because this is the admission of his lack of power and strength, which God has to demand of the being which had once, in arrogance, in conscious awareness of its power, turned away from the One from Whom it had received its strength.

The being shall become a recipient of strength again as it had been in the very beginning, nevertheless it shall work with and not in opposition to God, and therefore it first has to realise that it is an utterly weak being without God's love, in order to motivate it to join God again, from Whom it had voluntarily distanced itself. Therefore the unity with God has to take place in free will again, and therefore the being cannot be given strength against its will. But it is expressing its will through prayer, through

the desire to be given strength, which God will always fulfil. For He only wants to be acknowledged as the Giver of strength and that the being abandons its former resistance through prayer and willingly seeks to unite with God again, so that it then can be permeated by God's strength and thus become a recipient of strength once more, as it was originally destined to be ....

Amen

## **Spiritual coercion .... Human commandments .... Fighting the teaching of Christ ....**

***B.D. 2412 from July 17th 1942, taken from Book No. 32***

All spiritual coercion has to be condemned because the human being's action resulting from it cannot be valued by God.

Only complete freedom of will determines the value of people's actions. Therefore they should be informed of Christ's teaching, but they should not be duty bound to lead a specific lifestyle as a result of rules and regulations, which they will then dutifully and habitually observe. People should certainly be educated to think

and behave correctly, but they should only ever be shown the rights or wrongs of their actions. They have to be advised to practise love but they should never be urged into actions by rules which do not match their inner will. Only the commandment of love should be observed and therefore also taught .... because anyone who fulfils the commandment of love shapes his heart such that it will want to carry out of its own accord those things which correspond to God's will. However, commandments which oblige a person to conduct his life in a certain way, even though a failure to comply with them does not demonstrate heartlessness towards other people, are not given by God, i.e. they are outside of Christ's teaching, because this teaching only preaches love which, however, does not aim to achieve the fulfilment of divine commandments by means of external force.

The human being has to be able to shape himself in utmost freedom of will if this transformation of thought is to be of value for eternity. Freedom of will, however, is restricted as soon as a dutiful transformation is demanded. Every good deed which does not arise from the heart, i.e. which is not accomplished by the inner urge to carry out an action of love, will only be valued for what it is in reality .... an implementation of duty without warmth of heart. And there is great danger that the human being will give too little account to himself about his thoughts and actions because he believes to have done what he was meant to do on earth, and this belief has its foundation in the commandments which people

had added to the teaching of Christ. Only the divine teaching of love is to be understood as the teaching of Christ, but never humanly decreed commandments which aim to achieve something else than just true actions of love ....

Where love is taught love also has to be practised, and actions of love should be understood to be everything that is beneficial to other people. Thus the human being is merely expected to do good to his fellow human being, and therefore the divine teaching of love will only expect people to fulfil those requirements which protect their fellow human beings from damage or are of benefit to him. When the human being considers the wellbeing of his fellow human being he is living within love, because it is urging him to help other people. This is the true activity of love which is required from people by God and which was constantly practised by Jesus Christ on earth. However, if people are demanded to do something, even though failing to comply by no means damages or injures other people, then this is due to humanly decreed laws which should not be confused with the teaching of Christ.

Nevertheless, there is great danger that the commandments of love will be ignored in favour of these humanly added commandments and that the significance of Christ's teaching of love will not be recognised, which is evidenced by the fact that humanity, ignorant of its true value, wants to replace Christ's teaching of love completely. Because it pays more attention to commandments which more or less enslave the human

being because they represent spiritual coercion to him.

The world takes offence to this and is now attempting to fight against and replace everything, including the pure teaching of Christ, which is only preaching love.

Everything added by people to the divine teaching of love was only done to infiltrate the pure teaching of Christ with error, because it is deviating from what Jesus Christ has left to people as His Work. However, only what is of God will remain .... but human work will pass away ....

Amen

## **‘Eye has not seen ....’**

***B.D. 2415 from July 19th 1942, taken from Book No. 32***

Eye has not seen, nor ear heard, nor have entered into the heart of man the things which God has prepared for those who love Him .... God has withheld the knowledge of this from people, He merely expects their faith in the glories of the beyond, in fact it cannot be shown to them as long as they live on earth, because what God has in store for His children is nothing of an earthly nature, it cannot be perceived with earthly eyes and felt with earthly senses. Nevertheless, His Word is truth .... and thus the soul can expect an exceedingly happy state in which it can see and experience the most wonderful things. Nothing on



earth exists which could be used as a comparison and even roughly correspond to the truth. It is a state of blissful happiness; it is a continuous view in the spiritual world whose inconceivable diversity reveals itself to the spiritual eye. All spiritual beings are united with each other in utter harmony and equilibrium; there is constant activity of love, a coming together and complementing of each other, a continuous service to God and reception of spiritual strength, a continuous giving of happiness and increase of strength of love .... It is an indescribable bliss, merely one look at this glory would prompt humanity to live a completely different way of life, yet this would not be judged in the same way as a right way of life before God without knowing the reward. The human being shall be good of his own innermost accord if he wants to partake in these joys in the beyond. Nevertheless, God made this promise to people, and as soon as a human being accepts it as truth, as soon as he believes, the knowledge about this blissful state in the beyond will no longer be a danger to him, for then he will be so united with God that he will strive to be good of his own accord and will not feel obliged to live a good way of life because of promises. For God has prepared these glories for those who love Him. Love for God is the condition, but this must be born in the innermost heart and only the degree of love will be judged, not a deed which is accomplished for the sake of reward. But where love is present, the reward is not thought of .... Where love is present, there must also be happiness and bliss, for God Himself is love, and God's presence is the most wonderful

and happiest state for the soul, love is the fulfilment;  
God's love is the epitome of heavenly beatitude.

Amen

## **Indications of natural event ... Jesus' reference on earth ...**

***B.D. 2437 from August 5th 1942,  
taken from Book No. 33***

It is not coincidence that increased indications in nature suggest an eruption of the elements, for God sends these signs in advance in order to prepare people for an exceptional natural event which will suddenly and unexpectedly take people by surprise and result in inconceivable misery. People are meant to associate these indications with His Word, for Jesus Christ already mentioned this time when He lived on earth, because He wanted to point out to people the eventual consequences of their way of life. This time is now approaching; people should heed the signs which announce the event .... They should not ignore anything that deviates from the framework of natural law. God announces Himself, that is, His intervention in the existing world order, it is not His will that people should

experience anything unprepared which should and can advance them spiritually if the correlation of all happenings is explained to them. For this reason God constantly refers to the forthcoming time and informs people that the time has come which necessitates divine intervention. Then it is left up to every individual person himself what he makes of this warning .... If he believes, he will adjust his life accordingly, he will make contact with God and humbly entrust his destiny to Him .... They will not be in as much danger as those people who lack all faith in an intervention. The latter will not prepare themselves either, instead, all references and admonitions will bypass their ears unheeded. And the natural event will be dreadful for them.

For profound faith gives a person the confidence that they are protected by God in every danger; yet an unbeliever will have nothing to hold on to if he does not recognise a Lord above Himself at the last minute and commends himself to His mercy. God sends His messengers long before the event already in order to stimulate humanity's thinking, and these indications can be recognised by everyone who wants to recognise them. They will give rise to thought because they don't just occur once but repeat themselves often and at regular intervals, so that they will have to be noticed by everyone. But every person usually devises his own explanation and this depending on his attitude towards God. As soon as he associates these phenomena with God's will, he pays attention to them and thereby

benefits, since he prepares himself for the time ahead, which is of great advantage for his soul. What God has proclaimed in Word and Scripture will irrevocably come to pass, only the point in time is unknown to people .... For this reason they should pay attention to the signs which God had mentioned. And thus they will know that the earth will be facing severe tremors which will cause incredible suffering to the human race .... Then it is up to every person to shape himself such that he can brace himself for the coming time .... He should persevere and appeal for strong faith so as not to weaken in view of the work of destruction which is in store for humanity. And God will take care of every person who pays attention to His Word and consciously expects the divine intervention ....

Amen

## **Path of life predetermined by God .... Free will .... Deed and effect ....**

***B.D. 2441 from August 8th 1942,  
taken from Book No. 33***

The smallest events in earthly life have their purpose, even when it is not evident to the human being. There are

no coincidences but only divine providence, because every person's path of life has been predetermined in detail, although always in accordance with the will of the human being, which God has foreseen since eternity. This is of such immense importance that people should know of it, yet this very teaching often results in misguided thoughts .... in as much as the human being now believes himself to be exempt of all responsibility for all events, since everything has to happen in accordance with God's eternal will anyway. The blessing of embodiment also includes free will for the human being, and now he can behave and think according to this very will. Thus he lives his life as he wants; however, he also needs to have the opportunity to test his will, i.e. to choose between good and evil. Consequently, only the will to spiritually transform his soul is completely free, while the will of the human being in relation to earthly matters is effectively still constrained .... although by virtue of his will he can in fact determine earthly events but he can only carry them out, the result, however, will never depend on him alone.

The result of human volition is governed by God, and namely in accordance with the wisest plan in a manner that it can benefit the development of the soul should the human will once again be thus inclined.

Consequently, God's will can prevent every human being's plan, or he first has to have God's approval before it can be carried out. But this approval will even be given by God if an action does not correspond to divine will, so

that the freedom of will is not reduced. However, whether or not it is as successful as the person had hoped for does not depend on the person. Everything comes to pass in accordance with God's will, and whatever journey of life lies ahead of a person is God's will, Who offers the human being the opportunity to achieve maturity in a manner that his soul can benefit from it. On the other hand, however, the human being has to answer for his will if he wants to do something bad, even if divine intervention prevents an outcome. Corresponding to the person's will, which God has known since eternity, he is confronted by all events as God has ordained. He has used the will of people, which is known to Him, as a guiding principle for their earthly life and now effectively gives this will free rein, while protecting those people who are devoted to Him from all adverse results of other people's bad will ....

Amen

## **Heartlessness .... The world's battle against the teaching of love ....**

***B.D. 2445 from August 10th 1942,  
taken from Book No. 33***

Humanity's conduct cannot be reconciled with the teaching of Christ, for this requires actions of love, people's relationships with each other should be like that of brothers. But at the present time all people face each other with hostility, outwardly often united yet in their hearts only ever bearing their own advantage in mind and regarding their fellow human being as an opponent, because they either feel harmed or disadvantaged by him. The human race is completely devoid of love and therefore also opposed to Christianity, opposed to the divine teaching of love, which it no longer wants to comply with. For it requires effort to practise love, it requires a separation from material things, a shelving of one's own wishes and cravings; it signifies a sacrifice of that which is dear to a person .... Selfish love must be fought against; the human being must educate himself to become modest to enable him to help his fellow human being by giving to him what he gives up. This sacrifice can only be made out of love and therefore love must be practised .... Yet only rarely will a person make this sacrifice for his fellow human beings .... Each person only thinks of himself, this is why he finds the teaching of Christ inconvenient and supports people's intentions to eradicate it .... Where heartlessness exists, the battle against the divine teaching of love will be waged without hesitation. And this heartlessness is widespread throughout the world, people outdo each other with brutalities they inflict upon their fellow human beings, and thus the whole world can be held responsible for the immense world event which purely arose from humanity's

heartlessness and which results in ever greater cruelty and must therefore be described as the activity of hell, as the activity of demonic forces. And yet, people do not recognise their low spiritual level. They only look at the purely external consequences of the world event and not at the spiritual state of those whose great heartlessness also incites their fellow human beings to act with unkindness. And as long as this deplorable state of affairs is not recognised, it cannot be remedied either; as long as the human being does not recognise heartlessness as the greatest evil he will not make any effort to live a life of love, i.e., he will not treat his fellow human being with kindness .... And neither will he approve of Christ's teaching, he will reject it, because his compliance with it will not gain him any earthly advantage. However, he will also act accordingly .... love will be pushed aside again and only result in greater heartlessness .... One person will endeavour to destroy the other without inhibition, he will no longer be able to distinguish between right and wrong and thus exceed himself in bitterness and cruelty, and all love will grow cold, lowering the spiritual level to the extreme, and a world without love cannot survive, it is doomed to destruction and with it everything which does not strive to redeem itself through love ....

Amen

## **Wisdom without love is**



# **unthinkable ... Everlasting knowledge ...**

***B.D. 2446a from August 11th 1942,  
taken from Book No. 33***

In order to become wise it is imperative for a person to live a life of love, actions of love must absolutely come first if he wants to receive divine wisdom. Wisdom without love is unthinkable, this is why people deeming themselves wise will be mistaken if they lack love. This must be taken into account first if a fellow human being wants to correctly judge the value or irrelevance regarding a person's supposed knowledge. Wisdom can only be found where the source, the provider of it, is wise himself ... where wisdom can be conveyed because the Provider Himself is Wisdom. All thoughts of wisdom are therefore emanations of the One Who is Love in Himself, on account of which these thoughts must also be accepted by a loving heart, otherwise they would not be recognised as wise thoughts. For wisdom is something spiritual which can only be received by the person's indwelling spirit, but the person's spirit only begins to function if it is stimulated through actions of love. Without love everything is dead, even the supposed knowledge which only touches upon earthly things is without spiritual value or is misguided knowledge that can never be called wisdom. People can certainly possess

worldly knowledge, which also corresponds to truth, but it will only concern things which are irrelevant for the soul, that is, for its higher development, yet this knowledge will be extinguished at the moment of death, thus it is transient and without value for eternity. Nevertheless, the world will only accept this as knowledge because it can be proven, thus it is effectively irrefutable. Spiritual knowledge, however, will not be acknowledged because no evidence can be presented for it. Yet only a person in possession of spiritual knowledge is wise, since he will take it along into eternity. He will gain this wisdom through selfless actions of love because both are divine and that which comes forth from God will never vanish. The more closely a person unites with God through kind-hearted activity, the wiser he must become, because the divine gifts flowing to him are not offered to a limited extent, instead, the person can receive them without restriction and thus he will become wise because he lives a life of love.

Amen

## **Inner Earth activity ... Eruptions ...**

***B.D. 2448 from August 13th 1942,  
taken from Book No. 33***

Over the course of time changes occurred on earth, both in the interior as well as on the surface of earth. These are the result of the uninterrupted rotations around its own axis which caused shifts, and the elevations and depressions they created are still changing even now, that is, they are still shifting locally. Thus the Earth does not retain its external shape but has already gone through the most diverse alterations, even though its structure has remained the same. In contrast, the Earth's interior is constantly active and also triggers changes on the surface of the earth from within. This can be noticed in the vegetation which, throughout millennia, has also changed and will never remain the same, even though these changes do not happen over a short period of time and therefore cannot be observed by people during their life on earth. These changes generally occur so slowly and are barely noticeable to the eye, and therefore require a very long time. However, every now and then unbridled activity erupts in the interior of the Earth and sudden transformations manifest themselves which cause immense destructions on the Earth's surface and signify fear and horror for people. In that case the hitherto solid form dissolves and, incapable of withstanding the elements' violent activity inside the Earth, is pushed with enormous force from the inside of the Earth to the surface where it spreads out and, in a completely new environment, tries to adapt itself to the existing mass of earth or to creations in nature .... Such elementary eruptions also understandably result in a complete transformation on the Earth's surface .... They destroy the

existing environment, revoke people's established order and result in inconceivable chaos which causes severe confusion and anguish in people because they are unable to cope with such eruptions and are thereby thrown into entirely different living conditions. However, a transformation of the Earth's surface has become necessary, although it can only be spiritually explained, since, from an earthly point of view, there is no recognisable progress in such a transformation, only a destruction and annihilation of what exists. But spiritually it is hugely significant.

The spiritual substance from within the Earth pushes upwards; it wants to start its process of development in the form. And it will need to live through countless phases until the spiritual substance can reach the final stage of its embodiment on earth. Having been bound in the hardest form for an unimaginably long time, the still undeveloped spiritual substance is given a certain amount of freedom so that it can release itself from this solid form, which it subsequently does with elementary force. People experience this manifestation of strength as a natural disaster which is, depending on its extent, more or less devastating for them. Although all spiritual substances will be constrained again, at first they will nevertheless inundate the plant and animal world and, to an even greater degree, people, by disturbing their tranquillity and posing a grave danger to them. It takes a very long time before such a change on the Earth's surface takes place, because it cannot happen arbitrarily,

but only with God's permission, which He gives when the higher development of the spiritual beings grinds to a halt .... That is, when the being is in possession of free will and free will is no longer made use of. Then a balance must come about, and this happens when the still immature spiritual substance pushes the already further advanced spiritual substance into further phases of development, so that the latter will soon attain possession of free will. For this reason the Earth will always have to expect such changes from time to time and in different places, which have their natural origin in the constant activity of the elements in the interior of the Earth. Hence, the enlightened person understands natural disasters, for he not only realises the earthly, but also the spiritual necessity for this very same occurrence, and will always look upon them as God's reign. He is aware of the necessity for higher development of the spiritual substances as well as of the beings' low spiritual state, which animate the earth in the final external form, and of the opportunity for their deliverance .... Yet such natural events, which result in immense destruction, are incomprehensible to unenlightened people and neither do they recognise the spiritual nor the earthly value. Consequently, they will be horror-struck when the Earth's interior begins to move and they find themselves utterly helpless and at the mercy of the raging of the elements. Nevertheless, that which was decided from the very beginning will come to pass without fail as soon as the Creator of Heaven and Earth deems the time to be right.

Amen

# **Most basic way of life in the coming time ... The individual person's fate ...**

***B.D. 2454 from August 22nd 1942, taken from Book No. 33***

The coming time will bring a tremendous change of the existing living conditions and people will be forced to lead a completely different life in the midst of disorder and dreadful chaos, for the forthcoming natural disaster will cause immense destruction and it will take a long time until the former order can be restored again. Every person will have to content himself with a most basic way of life, he will be unable to lay any kind of claim to a comfortable life and be exposed to deprivations and tribulations which seem almost unbearable to him. And yet he will often ask himself the question of why he is subjected to this aggravated life and be unable to give any other answer than that the state of his soul needs this test. And if he comes to this conclusion by himself he will also try to adapt to the aggravated living conditions and as compensation envisage an easier life in the beyond, in which case it will also become more bearable on earth,

for he should come to the realisation that everything that befalls people corresponds to God's eternal counsel. And then he will also have a compassionate heart for his fellow human being, he will help wherever it is feasible and those who believe in God and are striving towards Him will mutually ease the adversity. For love dwells within them and this helps to endure and overcome everything because it provides the human being with strength from God, Who is love Itself. The human being's attitude towards their neighbours' hardship will determine how long he has to live in poverty and difficult living conditions on earth himself .... He can improve these by being willing to help his neighbour, for then God will also provide him with the opportunity to put his will into action by giving to him what he needs himself so that he can also share it with those who, like him, live in most wretched conditions and thus lead a tough existence.

The individual person's intelligence will not be decisive since it will not be able to accomplish much because all previous living conditions will have changed and only utmost patience and a willingness to make sacrifices will make life bearable amongst each other. For it depends on this which kind of fate God will bestow upon the individual to endure. God Himself is love, and this love does not want people's suffering but their happiness; except that this happiness cannot be granted to them as long as they themselves do not recognise that God is love. However, in order to learn to recognise Him a heart has to become loving, and love generally awakens

through great adversity and distress. And thus God has to send those upon humanity in order to fan the spark of love in every person's heart, and depending how he will then prove himself he will also be considered on the part of the eternal Deity. And so he can very quickly prepare a tolerable life for himself again if he also does everything on his part to ease his fellow human beings' adversity. And he will truly be offered enough opportunity to let his heart speak .... He will be able to be lovingly active in many different ways .... Spiritually as well as earthly demands will be made on him which he only needs to fulfil in order to also reduce his own hardship and make his life more bearable ....

Amen

## **Immorality ... Unwritten laws ....**

***B.D. 2461 from August 30th 1942,  
taken from Book No. 33***

General immorality accompanies the time of people's unkindness and the fact that people no longer show any consideration towards their fellow human being's feelings and thus no longer exert any kind of self-restraint is also a sign of spiritual deterioration. And a



generation without manners and without meaningful morality is heading for disaster .... Admittedly, people find this incomprehensible, since they consider decency a mere human addition and that the times justify giving full expression to all instincts. And their points of view are encouraged by the completely wrong opinion that moral laws merely prevent people from enjoying life and therefore must be abolished. No nation will ever survive if it does not want to accept any laws as a guiding principle which give people moral stability so that they will live their life within the framework of a certain social order .... These are unwritten laws which people have nevertheless accepted until now, because they have all recognised both the necessity as well as the blessings of such laws and, for the sake of human order, have submitted to them without argument .... These laws are increasingly more forgotten or they are knowingly discarded by people because they prevent them from living up to their sensuality. This clearly shows a decline of spiritual development, for the more sensual a person is, the less he strives towards God; he desires the world, that is, everything that gives pleasure to the body, and for the sake of the body disposes of all consideration towards his fellow human beings. As a result, the human being falls prey to spiritual forces which had lived a life of uninhibited pleasure on earth, which indulged their cravings and thus had led a sinful life. These spiritual forces exert tremendous influence on these people and use them such that the human being pays less and less attention to the unwritten laws, that he unreservedly

indulges himself in an easy way of life and that no limits exist for him than the fulfilment of his lust. This attitude towards worldly pleasures will never be conducive to spiritual development, for anything the body demands will always disadvantage the soul. Besides, spiritual aspiration will be laughed at and ridiculed, and this without all inhibition, because people will have lost all sense of decency and good manners .... Hence, the individual person's point of view will not be respected either but will be deemed hostile and therefore be discarded, often in the most shameless fashion. For immorality and spiritual deterioration go hand in hand. People indeed speak about being enlightened and, yet, they are less enlightened than ever before .... They speak of spiritual advancement and, yet, they remain far behind, for they don't understand it as the progress of the soul, instead, they only mean a wrong way of thinking, which they nevertheless find worth striving for. They try to construct a new morality for themselves which aids and abets an easy way of life and intend to portray it as ideal. And thus new laws will come into being and old laws will be revoked, and humanity will change accordingly and lose every guideline for a virtuous, God-pleasing life which is intended to improve the human being's soul ....

Amen

## **Will and grace ... (Which**

# **comes first? ....)**

***B.D. 2468 from September 9th 1942,  
taken from Book No. 33***

Divine love seeks to enlighten people and people don't accept the light .... However, the human being has free will, therefore he cannot forcibly be guided into realisation; thus the grace of God flowing to a person is not used because his will resists it. Consequently, the will must come first .... God's grace can only become effective if the human being is willing to let it take effect in him. The world is in spiritual darkness, for although God constantly wants to help people with His grace, they pay no attention to it and remain dark and unenlightened .... For this reason people must learn in different ways how little they are enlightened by God's spirit .... They themselves must come across contradictions on the part of those they presume to possess truth and light .... They must see themselves confronted by questions the answers to which are beyond their knowledge, so that they will then take the path towards realisation of their own accord. For God's love and care constantly guide His living creations such that they can find the truth if the will for it arises in them. The gifts of the spirit are truly the only guarantee for pure truth, and anything that does not concur with it can unhesitatingly be rejected as falsehood. Spiritual gifts must be interconnected; they must provide clear and understandable explanations

about God's activity and reign in the universe, in the earthly as well as in the spiritual realm .... But they must also be accepted as such, that is, their divine origin must be acknowledged if they are to effect a person as a manifestation of God's strength. For the gifts of the spirit are gifts of grace, offered by God's greater than great love to people to make the path of ascent easier for them .... But these gifts of grace can only be effective if the human being accepts them as such, if he does not offer resistance by rejecting them but faithfully allows their effect on him, and this requires his will. If, however, he offers resistance, that is, if he inwardly rejects them, the effect is out of the question, otherwise a person would be guided into light, i.e., into knowledge, against his will, which would curtail his freedom of will. Grace is an endowment, thus it is a gift the human being is not entitled to; nevertheless, God expects people to respect His gift of grace, he expects it to be appealed for and gratefully received if it is to take effect as grace .... Consequently, it is also right to say that God's grace comes first; however, if the grace is ineffective people will not feel it as grace either ....

Amen

**Will and deed ....**  
**Responsibility ....**

## ***B.D. 2489 from October 1st 1942, taken from Book No. 33***

The will brings forth the deed. The will is therefore decisive although only the deed is the verification of the will. Without the will the deed cannot be carried out; but even without the deed the will has to be justified before God because it manifests the human being's nature, the impulse for good or for evil. In order to implement the will the human being has to use the energy of life which flows through him, thus he can accomplish good as well as bad deeds, but to do so he always has to use the strength which God Himself has given him. Consequently, if he commits a bad deed he accomplishes it with the help of divine strength and thus does something for which he is accountable before God. He has, in fact, used his will to increase the strength of God's adversary with the strength he receives from God because every bad deed is surrender to the evil power and therefore increases it. The human will turns away from God and towards the evil power with every deed which opposes God and bad intention.

If the human will is good, i.e. directed towards God, then he will always use the energy of life to benefit other people. He will be constantly occupied with helping others, i.e. he will allow his will to become a deed. If the deeds are the result of love, i.e. if love causes the human will to become active, then his will is turned towards God. Therefore the will has voluntarily chosen God and every

deed resulting from this will is justified before God, and God evaluates this deed in accordance with the 'will to love' ....

Amen

## **Matter and Spirit ....**

***B.D. 2494 from October 4th 1942,  
taken from Book No. 33***

What is the world and its matter .... this question occupies many people and yet they are unable to solve it by virtue of intellectual thought. Everything visible is matter, i.e. substance that has solidified as a form. The substance, as it were, only became visible due to hardening since previous to that it was invisible, that is, spiritual substance. Spiritual substance is God's emanated strength which, in accordance with His will, becomes what it is as soon as God has intended it to become a specific form. This form, in turn, is the unification of innumerable substances; hence it is a structure that can be dissolved to release every single substance again, if it is God's will. Consequently, any form can be destroyed, matter is something that has no eternal existence because it is merely the cover for spiritual substances which are intended to evolve and as a result don't stay in these covers forever. Although matter itself is also

spiritual substance, i.e. in accordance with God's will solidified spiritual strength, it develops by means of continuous dissolution, dispersion and re-shaping so that it can, after an infinitely long time, occupy such a form itself too. Thus everything visible is spiritual strength that is still at the beginning of development, whereas the more mature spirit is invisible to the human eye and uses a visible form to live in.

Hence, in every form lives something spiritual, a being which is unconscious of itself but which longs for the unification with similar beings to increase the fullness of strength with this union, since every being strives for perfection. As soon as matter dissolves, i.e. when a form disintegrates, the released spiritual being strives towards equal spiritual beings which merge to give life to a new form. This process forms the basis for the uninterrupted becoming and passing in nature, it is therefore the cause of constant life and death in nature .... The spiritual substances pass through the whole of creation, partly alone, partly merged in immense numbers.

Corresponding to these are the size and kind of the forms that surround them. Everything that encloses these spiritual beings is matter. But matter itself consists of spiritual substances which are at the beginning of their development and thus can be visible to the human eye because only the already more mature spirit is invisible. Consequently, everything visible must be considered to be imperfect, i.e. spiritual substance which is very distant from God, which is starting its way of development. The

spirit concealed within the visible form has already travelled this way and now strives towards God. Therefore a destruction, i.e. a passing away or dissolution of the form, or the transience of matter, corresponds to God's will because it enables the spiritual substance to continue its development ....

Amen

## **Contact with the beyond ... Willingness to give ... (Spiritualism) ....**

***B.D. 2496 from October 5th 1942,  
taken from Book No. 33***

It is incomparably valuable to enter a state which results in contact with the spiritual kingdom, because only through such a connection is it possible to be guided into truth. And therefore it is, in fact, God's will that this contact shall be upheld as long as the human being strives for the truth. Only the desire for truth justifies such a connection, for the purpose of a connection from this side to the beyond is to convey the pure truth to earth. Nevertheless, every person believes that he wants the truth as soon as he makes contact with the beyond. But it is often only curiosity, hence, the desire to receive



information about the kingdom of the beyond, without being aware of the task that the received knowledge should be passed on to uninformed fellow human beings. For he who receives shall give as well. If a person's selfish love is strongly accentuated, he will only accept the knowledge from the spiritual realm for himself. This does not correspond to God's will, for all actions and thoughts should be based on the commandment of neighbourly love. A loving heart receives and distributes again what it receives .... However, if a person is unwilling to give, he will also lose the right to receive gifts. If he nevertheless maintains contact with the beyond, there is no guarantee that he will receive pure truth, for then beings will also push close, which, on account of their selfish love, are still far removed from the truth. Hence, not all proclamations need to correspond to truth if they were received by a person who has not offered his service to God, that is, who has not declared to Him his will to work for Him and the distribution of the pure truth. This conscious intention to be of service to God protects the human being from untruthful spiritual gifts, for God only conveys the truth to earth for the purpose of distribution amongst humanity. The reception of spiritual gifts must be the result of a loving heart, love for his fellow human being must first make the person capable and worthy of receiving spiritual gifts. But people with a very low degree of love can also establish contact with the beyond; they will also constantly receive messages from the spiritual kingdom, but these will always correspond to the being or the soul's degree of maturity of the person

who establishes the connection. Every person having declared himself willing to receive messages from the spiritual kingdom will be taken possession of. All spiritual beings want to express themselves, and they do so according to their degree of maturity, that is, according to their knowledge. But the partition between truth and untruth is erected by the human being himself through the degree of his desire for truth. The desire of anyone striving for the pure truth will be met by bearers of truth, by beings of light which are united with God. They can only impart pure truth and also protect the recipient from accepting error, for they have so much strength that they can push all imperfect beings away from the vicinity of a person who only desires the truth and wants to receive it in order to distribute it to the human race living in darkness.

Amen

**God's will ....**  
**Commandments .... Peace**  
**and order ....**  
**Consequences ....**

***B.D. 2507 from October 12th 1942,***

## ***taken from Book No. 33***

It is God's will that you should live in peace with each other, that you help each other with love and bear your suffering together. If you live up to His will, your life will be a peaceful and blessed one, suffering and sorrow will remain at bay, for then your way of life will benefit your soul .... You will practice neighbourly love and thereby prove your love for God to Him, and your conduct will be pleasing to God. But how do you relate to each other at the moment? .... You are fighting each other, you are damaging your neighbours, and heartlessness has reached highest perfection. Hence you must suffer, you must endure much adversity which shall teach you to bear the suffering together and to help each other. The will of God must be complied with; otherwise the human being violates divine law. The life of a person who adapts himself to divine will can only be a peaceful one, just as everything on earth will be harmonious and peaceful if people accept God's will as their own. But as soon as a person opposes this divine will, a certain disorder will prevail in his life which is not pleasant for him, for the human being testifies to his wrong will by acting in opposition to divine will. Compliance with divine will, order and peace are cause and effect, but likewise suffering, grief, discord and earthly chaos will be the consequences of acting in opposition to divine will .... Therefore God gave His commandments so that people should know God's will. He provided certain guidelines for people's way of life on earth, according to which the

human being shall conduct his life, and He also informed people of the results if a life does not correspond to these guidelines. The divine commandments were given to benefit people so that he who lives up to them may receive eternal life. Non-compliance, however, will result in the soul's death. Divine will must be observed because, as long as the human being or his soul opposes this will, he still testifies to his apostasy from God, he is still opposed to God. Consequently, his life on earth must be an unpleasant state of affairs for him so that it will impel him into changing his will, so that he joins God, Whom he previously had not recognised. For this reason earthly suffering is unavoidably necessary for someone who ignores God's will or utterly opposes Him. God only requires the human being's will to subordinate itself to divine will, so that the human being will do what God, through His commandments, expects him to do, then he will fulfil God's will, and then he will be granted a life of harmony and peace for the soul among the chaos and confusion of the world that was caused by unkindness.

Amen

## **Three ways of imparting the divine Word ....**

***B.D. 2510 from October 13th 1942,***

## ***taken from Book No. 33***

The Gospel must be proclaimed throughout the world, the teaching of love has to be made accessible to all people and this happens in various ways. Those having been taught by God are called to enlighten other people in the first instance, thus to convey the received teachings to them .... to proclaim the Gospel to those who want to accept it. It is a richly blessed mission to work for fellow people's salvation of soul, to instruct them according to God's will and to motivate their conscious work of improving their souls. And this work is expected by God from everyone who has been taught by God Himself. And God constantly teaches those people who willingly open their hearts to Him, He preaches the Gospel to them which they hear within themselves through the inner voice. And this Gospel does not divert from that which has been traditionally handed down, from the Holy Scriptures .... And this is another possibility of receiving the divine Word, and again it teaches love, the love for God and one's fellow human being and for the one who faithfully accepts this Word. And thus everyone has the opportunity to be instructed in the Gospel as soon as he, with the right faith, desires to know God's Word. It will also become understandable to him, for the will to penetrate divine wisdoms also gives a person the power of realisation, which enables him to regard the divine Words as the Word of God and thus can also be taught by God if he devoutly and hungrily reads the Holy Scripture and not just accepts the Word but

seriously tries to grasp its meaning too. Yet the divine Word can also be spiritually conveyed to a person, however, this way is only known to a few people and yet it is the easiest for everyone. This is the direct communication in the form of thoughts, a mental transference of the divine Word, of the Gospel, to people which, however, always requires the person's willingness to receive. If, therefore, a human being desires to be initiated into the divine teaching of love the Gospel will always be proclaimed to him in one way, because it is God's will that humanity shall be instructed and live in truth ....

Amen

## **Pre-historic human beings ... Responsibility ...**

***B.D. 2513 from October 16th 1942,  
taken from Book No. 33***

Throughout infinitely long periods of time earth has evolved such that it can be home to countless living beings and therefore complies with its true task as a place of education for the spirit .... During this time of evolution the living beings still had a different nature, they were more or less akin to the evolving earth as far as

any living being was at all able to live. There were numerous developmental periods and from a certain point onwards earth was able to shelter living beings on its surface. However, as earth evolved the more these increased in number, and thus the development of earth's external form advanced as well as the living beings, which were assigned to earth for the purpose of higher development. It took an inconceivably long time yet this process of evolution was necessary because the spirit within, on the surface and above earth first had to prove itself during the condition of constraint, which the spirit in every work of creation is subjected to. During this time of development the spirit passed its test and could slowly evolve into a living being. The living conditions were considerably more difficult but it asserted itself and gradually evolved into some kind of human being which, however, was completely different from the present day human being.

The being was still constrained, i.e. it acted instinctively, to some extent it was still guided and did not have its own free will and intellect. Although outwardly the being resembled the human being, it was still on the level of the animal world in every other respect and lived in accordance with divine natural law and therefore instinctively, without consciousness of its actions. This being was not accountable yet, its life was subject to the law of compulsion, motivated by its inherent instincts, which in turn expressed themselves in the beings in accordance with divine will. These living beings were

compatible with the primitive conditions of the earth's surface, but to a certain extent they contributed towards the earth's development by multiplying themselves and with their unconscious actions accelerated the changes on the earth's surface, which became increasingly more suitable to shelter more evolved living beings until the first human beings, equipped with free will and intellect, were assigned to live on this earth. They could make use of everything on earth and, instructed by God Himself, live or were supposed to live a conscious life, which was the actual meaning and purpose of their embodiment on earth. However, now the human being was also answerable to God for his actions and thoughts. He had achieved a certain degree of maturity which enabled him to live in keeping with God's will and in view of this ability he now was also responsible how he used his life, since it was up to him to utilise all his gifts. However, he was informed of the consequences of his life during this incarnation on earth and thus he is able to make use of his free will ....

Amen

**Present-day human  
being ... Abilities ...**

***B.D. 2514 from October 16th 1942,***



## ***taken from Book No. 33***

No other age has had as highly evolved beings as the present one and yet this higher development is used for the wrong reasons .... The present-day human being has passed through countless stages of development and now, during the last stage, has many abilities which he can use extremely successfully .... One of these abilities is to place himself into a spiritual state. Anyone who has acquired this ability can already claim to have considerable maturity because he now also lives in the other realm .... However, he does not take his impressions from this realm to earth because they are only absorbed by the spirit who will not pass them on until the human soul is suitably qualified to understand the experience in the spiritual realm and can then be relevantly instructed. The more the soul questions the spirit within itself for information the more it receives. Thus humanity could indeed be on a high spiritual level if it took advantage of everything at its disposal during earthly life. Instead, people are content to live their earthly lives but fail to consider their spiritual state. Consequently their innermost being is approaching the pre-historic condition once again, in which they ignored their soul and just lived an animal life which excluded any higher development. They no longer live earthly life consciously, they are similarly driven - namely by spiritual forces which want to suppress all spiritual higher development. And thus they are approaching the pre-historic state once more but are now fully responsible for their actions because free will

and intellect were given to them by God for the purpose of spiritual progress ....

Amen

# **Abilities .... Task ....**

## **Regression ... New earth ....**

***B.D. 2515 from October 17th 1942,  
taken from Book No. 33***

The human being is the highest evolved living being on earth and therefore is also given a task which matches his degree of maturity. He is able to fulfil this task if he wants to, and precisely this will is tested (is supposed to prove itself), is meant to make the decision. For only the will determines whether the human being completes the task, whether he uses his abilities and lives expediently during his final embodiment. He is by no means forced to do so and therefore earthly life will give him countless tasks to carry out. Thus the actual task is not particularly emphasized, instead he should carry it out as part of his earthly activities .... to shape himself into highest possible maturity on earth .... If he ignores this task he nevertheless goes on living his earthly life, but his soul's imperfect degree of maturity remains. And for this he has to justify himself before God, because he was only given

his earthly life to perfect his soul. Hence he misused it if he merely performed his earthly activities for his own advantage, or he disregarded it and thus disrespected God's mercy. The earth was his home and he was allowed to incarnate as a highly developed being; he was already in a state of maturity with many abilities of his own yet he lived his life no more consciously than the pre-historic human being. He only used his intellect and volition for an earthly activity of no lasting value, and he used God's strength to do so .... he merely used it for worldly ends, to increase his own comfort such that it only increased other people's desire to do the same. And thereby the earth became unsuitable for the soul's higher development, i.e. the world predominates and keeps such hold of the human being that he completely forgets his soul. Hence the time has come which necessitates a change if human beings should get to know their true task and live correctly again. The earth has to change again, it has to become again what it once had been and should be .... a place of education for the spirit where the world does not predominate but is purely the means to an end .... The world has to be created again, it has to be restructured, it has to shelter human beings who consciously strive towards their final maturity, who use all their God-given abilities purely for the attainment of their souls' maturity because they realise that this is the true purpose of their embodiment on earth ....

Amen

# **Fatherly Words .... 'Ask, and it shall be given to you ....'**

***B.D. 2516 from October 17th 1942,  
taken from Book No. 33***

Faithfully entrust everything to Me that weighs you down .... Admittedly, I know all your difficulties, I know all your problems, yet you shall find your path to Me, you shall come to Me like children to the Father and appeal for His support, and I will help you .... And therefore you should not worry for I will take all your worry upon Myself if you ask Me to do so .... How weak is your trust, how weak your faith in My love, when you doubt that your prayers will be granted .... Ask, and it shall be given to you .... This is the promise I gave you, and you, who are of little faith, shall restore your weak will in this promise; bear in mind that My Words are the purest truth and that they must come true, and thus you should present your petitions to Me without doubt, so that I, as your loving Father, can give to you according to your faith. I only look at the strength of your faith, and this is also the guarantee that your prayer will be granted. If, however, your faith is shallow, the prayer you send to Me will not be as profound and heartfelt as is required for Me to answer it. For I do not pay attention to the words but certainly to your devotion to Me a profound faith causes. I only read the mirror of your soul and know your depth of faith and how heartfelt

your prayer is. And where such heartfelt prayer can be heard I Am always willing to help. Faithful trust in the answer to your prayer will therefore always lead to the right result, for I will never disappoint a person's strong faith. But I will certainly bless those who always remember My promise and present all their worries and difficulties to Me. My love will prove itself to them, for they will attain everything from Me. However, as long as they still waver in faith I will retain the answer to their prayer, for I want them to join Me with all their heart and confide everything to Me. Weak faith, however, prevents a sincere connection with Me. But I want to be recognised as a loving Father Who will not let His child remain in adversity ....

Amen

## **Notice of an event .... Spiritual transformation .... (Rome?)**

***B.D. 2521 from October 22nd 1942,  
taken from Book No. 33***

Those of you who are not yet living in truth will have to surrender much of your spiritual wealth because the time will come when you shall witness the collapse of much

that you had deemed indestructible. You will realise that human work will not last even if it had managed to survive for a long time. You will find it inconceivable that divine providence will initiate a work of destruction which simultaneously will denote a major spiritual change and strongly disturb the thoughts of people who believe themselves to know the truth. And you won't be able to find any other explanation than God's unmistakable demonstration that you are misguided. This mistake is already too deep-rooted in you that you could liberate yourselves from it and therefore God wants to help you .... He wants to show you that everything has to yield to His will, including that which has survived for thousands of years. God gave human beings free will, subsequently He had to withdraw His will where human will opposed it. Thus he did not prevent the structure of an establishment which did not correspond to His will. However, His will was secretly respected and observed, unnoticed by the world and therefore little known, yet resisting hostile interference. But humanity was pleased with this structural work which asserted itself with much pomp and splendour and which found many followers. But one day even this work will come to an end and this end will happen in full view of all people ....

A building deemed indestructible will tremble and result in an event which will claim many victims in every sense. God's intervention will shock people's thoughts. But God wants to prove to people that all human creations deteriorate and that everything which comes from God

directly will continue. He wants to inform people that they are misguided, He wants to make them receptive for the pure truth. And in view of the disastrous change many people will stop and think, they will question the credibility of their previous teachings because the breakdown has robbed them of all faith. And this event is not far away, the whole world will be involved and, if they are faithful, recognise an obvious sign sent by God to the people on earth for the salvation of their souls ....

Amen

## **Wrong interpretation of the Holy Scriptures .... Misguided teachings ....**

***B.D. 2524 from October 26th 1942,  
taken from Book No. 33***

Many words of the Holy Scriptures are wrongly interpreted by people and thus they are misled into believing something which is far removed from the truth. As a result of these wrong interpretations teachings developed which were passed on from person to person time after time so that the error kept spreading and became increasingly more difficult to be recognised as such. God has always given His Word to human beings in

relation to their spiritual level, and it was always comprehensible to anyone who wanted to understand it correctly. However, as soon as His Word was deliberated upon rationally .... as soon as the human being tried to ascertain its meaning purely as a matter of research without the sincere will to shape himself, i.e. his soul, by means of the divine Word, the Word became difficult for people to understand .... Their thoughts went astray.

In view of these conditions teachings developed which corrupted the divine Word in as much as they did not correspond to what Jesus Christ had preached on earth. God's Word is certainly quoted, however it is given a completely different meaning and now humanity does not understand His Word in a corresponding manner but human explanations have changed the meaning.

Consequently, the divine Word became spoilt and in this state it was presented to people again as divine Word, who will now not accept anything else and eagerly defend this spoilt Word. And it is extremely difficult to bring the pure truth to them and to convince them that they are defending something entirely human .... that they are making a cult out of an entirely human product and that this human product is unreliable. Until they have come to this conviction themselves they will also claim that the truth is error, and the advocates of truth will find it very difficult to associate with them because they will not be open to any instruction in this regard, they will present themselves as the guardians of truth and not accept any instruction which they deem as coming to



them from the kingdom of darkness.

And thus light argues with darkness, but the light is not recognised until a serious pursuit for truth paves the way amongst people and they have a sudden, blinding realisation that they merely believed in misguided teachings. And then there will still be time for all people who deem themselves small and ignorant before God since they will be granted the grace to attain realisation, because then they will no longer wilfully reject but eagerly accept the truth .... which they subsequently will recognise as truth ....

Amen

**'I will come like a thief in the night ....'**

***B.D. 2534 from November 2nd 1942,  
taken from Book No. 33***

People carelessly pay no attention to the signs of the time, nothing seems unusual to them, and they accept every happening without realising its significance. And they do not believe the proclamations about the impending natural disaster either, for they think that the time which is mentioned in the Scriptures has not yet come .... They do not accept any kind of explanation

because the thought that people of the present time should be the victims is inconvenient to them. Therefore the forthcoming event cannot be made plausible to them either and they will be taken by surprise and be unprepared when the day arrives. And these are the people to whom the Lord says 'I will come like a thief in the night ....' They will be fast asleep and will have made no preparations, and their souls will suffer serious hardship when they are recalled from earth. They will not be able to call upon God anymore because the magnitude of the disaster will deprive them of every thought .... God's love will not let anything happen to humanity without informing them first .... And He warns them a long time in advance yet He will not force people to believe these warnings.

However, anyone who pays attention to the signs will not find it difficult to believe. And anyone who is in contact with God will also feel God's admonition in his heart. He will become aware of the signs of the time himself and he will try to attain God's grace, that is, he will appeal for it and commend himself to God's mercy .... Only a short time separates you humans from this event, and you should use this time so that you can expect it with composure .... You should not entertain the thought that you are perfect and have no need of mercy, you should humbly entrust yourselves to God's love and always believe that your last hour has come .... you should listen to the admonitions of those who, as representatives of God, bring you His Word; you should know that the hour is

not far away and always be ready. And God's love and mercy will help you during the hours of adversity. He will remember you as you remember Him .... He will spare your life if it is helpful for you, or He will remove you from the earth and grant you a better life in the beyond if you are worthy of it .... But woe to those who approach this hour unprepared and lose their life .... Their fate in the beyond will truly not be an easy one. And God wants to protect people from this by announcing the forthcoming events to them and admonishing them to turn around if their way of life does not correspond to His will. And thereby He will demonstrate the Words of the Holy Scriptures 'I will come like a thief in the night, therefore watch and pray ....'

Amen

## **Battle .... Works of destruction .... Against God's will ....**

***B.D. 2535 from November 3rd 1942,  
taken from Book No. 33***

A world of battle will smother love and this signifies the spiritual breakdown of that world. For where love is present there is also peace. Combatants, however, shelter

the spark of hatred in their chest and hatred wants to destroy and inflicts countless wounds to the opponent. But since every work of destruction entails the devastation of the divine creation and is therefore a violation of the Creator's will, God will never be able to sanction such works of destruction, and thus the battle will never correspond to divine will .... unless a battle is waged against blatant heartlessness, for a righteous cause which will be a blessing for the world. Hence, love for one's neighbour must be the driving force for a battle. Without it people would have to endure suffering through no fault of their own, which a responsible ruler's sense of justice wants to stop happening. In that case a war is justified, and God will lead him to victory for the sake of these suffering people. Every evil deed will result in evil deeds time and again, and thus a battle evoked without justification will give rise to countless evil deeds again. Once the heartlessness has reached its climax, humanity will be ready for its downfall, for humanity's conduct is not only directed against their fellow human beings but also against God, by destroying God's creations. Apart from the dreadful earthly consequences every act of destruction also has inconceivable spiritual results which affect the human race itself. Every work of destruction interferes with divine will insofar as that it destroys the divine order, thus it callously destroys the works which God's wisdom and love had created, which must therefore understandably have a direct effect on the perpetrators themselves. God is righteous and His punishment will come upon the guilty, and guilty are

those people whose actions only ever express heartlessness. Love will never be able to prevail among people who fight each other and aim to cause damage in order to render the other incapable of fighting .... Everything came forth from God's love; consequently, love was the divine creative power. Lack of love must therefore signify the ruin of what God's love created .... And thus the heartlessness is directed against God. It is something that God can never approve of and therefore He cannot support a battle which will drive heartlessness to perfection. God is love .... and anything that lacks love is part of God's adversary.

Amen

## **Are the dead resting? ....**

***B.D. 2553 from November 16th 1942,  
taken from Book No. 33***

The belief that the souls rest after death is only justified in so far as immature souls remain in a state of complete inactivity due to lack of strength. However, this is not a condition of comfortable rest but a state of torment, confinement and helplessness and therefore not a condition worth striving for. The souls in the beyond are only permitted to be active in a certain state of maturity when they receive constant strength to work. But then

they use this strength without restriction. However, since their activity does not depend on earthly matter it also has to be different than the work on earth; it cannot be compared to the latter since the conditions in the spiritual realm which require or permit an action are entirely different. There is a steady flow of teaching and passing on of spiritual knowledge, it is a purely spiritual process which bestows much happiness and bliss on the giving souls and reduces the receiving souls' torment by becoming recipients of strength .... It is indeed a labour of love but it can only be compared to earthly activity while the souls in their state of darkness still believe themselves to live on earth, where, due to their own desires, they create imaginary surroundings and in this imagination also have to perform kind deeds.

However, the more enlightened the soul becomes the further it distances itself from earth in its thoughts and now its actions no longer depend on earthly matter, not even in its imagination. The work of these souls in the beyond, in the spiritual realm, thus consists of purely spiritually conveying their received knowledge. Every giving and strength-receiving soul has entrusted protégées on earth or in the beyond for which it cares lovingly with tireless dedication. It has to try to mentally guide its protégées into the truth, it has to influence their thoughts and thus create clarity but without forcing the will of those souls, and this requires immense patience and love. Because two completely isolated beings, who can act and think entirely independently, are

facing each other and thus correct thinking may not be forcefully transmitted if the still immature spirit is not to be prevented from gaining an equally high degree of maturity. Spiritual knowledge has to be given to uninformed souls in a way that it is accepted without resistance and awakens their longing for more gifts. The receiving being consequently has to accept it entirely voluntarily, only then will the transmitted knowledge become strength and enlighten. And this act of transmission is an effort which can only be performed with love because it is usually rather laborious.

But the state of a soul condemned to inactivity is so pitiful that the beings of light constantly try to help them, that they willingly accept the most arduous work to release these souls from their situation. However, on the other hand it adds to their happiness when their labour of love is successful because this work draws unimaginable circles, since every receiving being in turn will pass on its knowledge in the awakened urge to likewise help the souls of darkness and thus do redeeming work ....

Amen

**Lack of understanding for  
the prophecies ....  
Necessity ....**

## ***B.D. 2555 from November 18th 1942, taken from Book No. 33***

Only a few people realise the seriousness of the time, and therefore the coming events can only be made plausible to a few. As long as they merely strive for the well-being of their body they will only pay attention to happenings which are related to it and cannot and will not understand a change of world events caused by spiritual urgency. For spiritual experiences are unfamiliar to them and all such references are deemed insignificant and unimportant, if not entirely wrong, by them. To announce the coming happenings to them at present will have little success and yet, they, too, shall be warned so that no-one will live to see the day in complete ignorance. For what they do not want to believe as yet can suddenly appear credible to them and motivate them to direct their mind towards God and call upon Him in distress. Spiritual thoughts are often inconvenient to a person since they only undermine his earthly life; as a result, he discards them when they surface and thus he cannot come to realisation either. As soon as a fellow human being wants to inform him and convey spiritual gifts to him he declines or ignores the gift. And thus he will not use the time which still separates him from the great natural event, so it will take him by surprise and completely bewilder him. And yet he cannot be helped in any other way but by mentioning the momentous change even though he is not fully capable or willing to take it in.



For even the certainty that the prophecy will fulfil itself can already lead the person to sudden realisation.

God's love comes to meet every person, and He sends his admonitions and warnings to everyone, for He knows people's weaknesses and wants to help them when they are in trouble. But most of the time people won't let themselves be helped because they don't think they need it. And yet they suffer immense hardship for they have no inner contact with God, they have distanced themselves from Him and therefore won't listen to His voice which is speaking to them through a human mouth. They do not recognise it as God's voice and thus it will not affect them because they close themselves to its effect. Every day they live on earth in ignorance of spiritual life is a lost day and there are not many more, for the great earthly adversity has not yet come to an end and humanity is facing a bigger one still, which is inevitable for the sake of people's spiritual development. It will cost many people's lives and bring their opportunity for development on earth to an end. God wants to help them while there is still time and He sends His servants and representatives to them so that they will speak in His name and remind them to consider their souls and strive for higher spiritual development. And if they listen to them they can more easily endure what will come to pass, because they will realise that nothing that happens on earth is without meaning and purpose and that spiritual development is the ultimate purpose of earthly life ....

Amen

# **False prophets ... Test the spirits ....**

***B.D. 2566 from November 29th 1942,  
taken from Book No. 33***

The Lord warns you to 'Take heed that ye be not deceived by false prophets ....'. He thereby wants to remind you to test everything first before you accept it as truth. 'Test the spirits whether they are of God ....' Consequently, prophets will also emerge from the darkness who assume the right to spread their teachings in the world as truth. Then it will be up to people to scrutinise their sermons. And they will certainly be able to do so if they want to know the truth and appeal to God for enlightenment. For God gave them an indication as to what to look out for; He announced to them in advance that false prophets, false spirits, will express themselves. But they will deny Christ, they will not acknowledge Him as the Son of God, as the Redeemer of the world, they will doubt Jesus' divinity and therefore not live in love, for love recognises and professes Jesus Christ. And thus you will recognise false prophets by the fact that they act entirely without love, even though they seek to win people over for themselves with sweet words and enticing speeches. They promise to save the world and want to deprive it of

its faith in Jesus Christ, they want to seduce you and of whom the Lord cautions you. They preach love yet their actions are completely devoid of love and their words are deceptive and hypocritical; it is not the spirit of God which speaks through them but the spirit of the one from below instead .... However, where Jesus Christ is professed in the world, that is, where the spirit of God expresses itself, you should listen to it .... For it will preach the same love which revealed itself to the world in Jesus Christ, it will show you the path to God, it will teach you the love which alone will lead to God .... it will try to impart the blessings of the act of Salvation upon you and constantly refer you to Jesus Christ, the divine Redeemer, Who came into the world in order to take your sins upon Himself through His death on the cross. Jesus Christ came in the flesh; He took the path on earth in order to show you how you can liberate yourselves from the bondage of the world, from the adversary's bondage .... He took the path on earth for your sake, for your Salvation .... You ought to follow him and to this end you must acknowledge Him .... Hence you can recognise a true prophet by the fact that he will lead you to Jesus Christ, in that case you can give credence to his words, for the spirit which testifies to Him is the spirit of God .... Yet reject the voice of the one who opposes Christ, for he speaks on behalf of God's adversary, who wants to lead people into sin and guides them towards their ruin .... Test the spirits to see whether they are of God .... However, if God sends His servants to you who testify to Him, then listen to them and comply with their teaching, for they

are His representatives through whom He speaks to you Himself so that you will find the right path to Him ....

Amen

## **Fatherly Words of love ....**

***B.D. 2752 from May 24th 1943, taken from Book No. 34/35/36***

Simply remain devoted to Me in love, then you will have nothing to fear, regardless of what will happen. And do not forget that I Am in control of your destiny, that everything that comes upon you is good. Do not forget that My love arranges your life such that it will benefit your higher development. Believe in My love, then you will also understand everything, you will patiently endure even the most difficult situation and confidently expect My help if life seems unbearable to you. After all, My love and My will only intend to bring about your perfection, and My wisdom knows the means and ways for you; therefore trust Me that I only have your spiritual well-being at heart and will not send you anything which would not benefit the latter. Become like little children, let yourselves be guided by Me without hesitation, always hoping and believing that I will not let you take the wrong path, even if the path is stony and laborious. Your soul will thank Me one day that I let you suffer during your life

on earth. What is the short earthly life compared to eternity .... where glories await you which for you, as human beings, are beyond your imagination. Why do you despair if you believe in Me? ..... I Am Love .... and love would truly not let you suffer if you did not need this suffering for your soul .... I let you suffer because I love you and want to help you, and because you will not find the path to Me by any other means. Your path is thorny and laborious, yet the wide passable path does not lead to Me, instead, it leads into My adversary's camp, and My love can never allow you to enter this path which will inevitably lead to disaster. Trust Me and willingly hand yourselves over to Me, take the cross upon you and appeal to Me to help you carry it; don't become disheartened and despondent but be glad that, through suffering, you become aware of My love which you shall recognise in all distress. Be patient and wait for My help which is certain to come if only you believe .... And if you are overcome by weakness, if you waver in faith, then pray .... Call upon Me for strength, send merely a thought up to Me and commend yourselves to My grace .... I will truly not leave you without comfort, I will strengthen you and your soul will rejoice. For it will feel My presence and experience the strength it receives from a heartfelt prayer to Me. For as long as you can enter into a dialogue with Me, you will not be lonely and forsaken, for I will always hear you and I Am constantly concerned that your soul shall mature as long as you still live on earth. And I will help you, even if your body does not feel this help ..... My help applies to that which is immortal, because this

immortal part belongs to Me and thus shall also attain Me. And so you should recognise My love at all times and humbly accept everything from My hand, be it joy or suffering .... Your adversity on earth can be called small compared to the adversity in the beyond, which I want to spare you by treating you harshly on earth. Be faithful and trust Me .... One day you will realise that I was only motivated by love to send such immense suffering upon the earth, that I made you learn the hard way in order to win you over for My kingdom, in order to help you gain eternal life in blissful happiness in this kingdom. As long as you are still burdened by earthly difficulties you do not recognise your Father's love completely, yet I call to you with comforting Words: Don't let go of your love for Me, so that My love will be able to take hold of you and compensate you a thousand fold for all earthly suffering and adversities .... Take refuge in Me, so that I can help you carry your suffering and don't despair, for your life on earth won't last forever .... I will finish it when your hour has come and call your soul to Me ....

Amen

**Belief in the soul's life  
after death .... God's  
mercy ....**

## ***B.D. 2767 from June 7th 1943, taken from Book No. 34/35/36***

God's mercy shows you a path which, if you walk this path, will inevitably result in progress. No gift from above is as beneficial as the offering of the divine Word because it gives you the guiding principle for your earthly way of life and informs you of God's will. Implementing the divine Word is spiritual progress and thus the meaning and purpose of life on earth. Humanity's spiritual poverty, its disturbingly low emotional degree of maturity, is not acknowledged by people, they do not believe in spiritual higher development on earth because they are psychologically and physically only attached to earth. All their intentions and efforts purely aspire towards the acquisition of earthly goods, and the perfection of soul as the purpose of earthly life is considered to be a mere fantasy or imagination which came forth from human will itself and cannot be proven. Only few believe in life after death but only this belief makes the necessity for higher development on earth understandable, because only then all of creation makes sense .... namely to serve the higher development of the spirit .... But since this belief is lacking in people, since they negate the soul's life after death, they do not recognise a spiritual purpose of creation either, they merely regard everything from the point of view that earthly life itself is meaning and purpose and that everything simply exists to serve the body in order to provide it with the greatest possible

comfort. And this attitude does not improve the human degree of maturity but is more likely to reduce it if the human being does not receive help, if God's love does not intervene with His mercy and enlightens him. And this mercy is now flowing to them yet it is not understood by many people or they would be highly delighted and able to accomplish their struggle on earth with increased resistance. But human beings are spiritually blind .... they do not know the purest truth from heaven and only have eyes for the world, they understand all worldly things but lack the inner urge to look beyond these to know the hidden things because no one can provide them with the evidence of life after death ....

(Break)

## **Significance of Jesus' crucifixion and consequences of rejection ....**

***B.D. 2768 from June 8th 1943, taken from Book No. 34/35/36***

Jesus Christ died on the cross for the whole of humanity and humanity wants to describe this crucifixion as a



minor point, as a sentence of execution for a national activist or even as an entirely unlikely myth .... Therefore people deprive themselves of every entitlement to God's mercy since they do not acknowledge this greatest work of mercy, hence God's mercy cannot express itself in them either. As a result their will remains feeble, God's adversary aims to subdue human will in his favour, i.e. the individual does not have the strength to resist this influence if he does not accept Christ's act of Salvation. Jesus' sacrifice on behalf of humanity can never be lessened by it. However, people who attempt to devalue or to completely invalidate Christ's act of Salvation resemble the people during Jesus' time on earth in spirit, thus they also have to accept the same consequences, they have to prepare themselves for much destruction as was the fate of those who were hostile towards Jesus Christ on earth, who refused to acknowledge Him as Son of God and Saviour of the world. Since those people were followers of Satan they allowed themselves to become so influenced by him that they opposed all evidence of Jesus Christ in order to belittle Him and to suppress His spiritual accomplishment.

And now humanity is striving to destroy what still testifies of Jesus' time on earth and, in comparison, this resembles the same chaos as took place in those days. Spiritually and physically this chaos will express itself in complete destruction which human will can no longer evade .... Christ's crucifixion was the only means to transform human thought on earth, i.e. Jesus Christ's sacrifice on

behalf of humanity strengthened the fragile willpower of the human being, enabling him to resist the opponent's demands with conviction without becoming overwhelmed by him. Thus the acknowledgment of God in Jesus Christ is at the same time the most reliable guarantee for the human being to detach himself from the adversary. Jesus Christ's crucifixion has gained people a stronger will. The human being cannot apply this will in any other way since without Jesus Christ he would still be subject to the power of God's opponent and would lack sufficient willpower to liberate himself. Thus the intention of the world to deny Jesus Christ is extremely significant as it lessens the strength of resistance and constantly increases the influence of God's adversary. Humanity's conduct therefore reveals ever more heartlessness as a result of this influence which can only be offset and neutralised by Christ's crucifixion. The souls of human beings are in utmost danger because they will fail when they are expected to confess Jesus Christ before the world. Only the belief in Christ's crucifixion enables people to do so because only then is their will strong enough to overcome every resistance. And Jesus Christ paid for this strength of will for human beings with His death on the cross .... He has released them from the adversary's captivity if they believe in Him ....

Amen

## **Incarnation ... Instincts ...**

# Preliminary stages ....

***B.D. 2775 from June 15th 1943,  
taken from Book No. 34/35/36***

The incarnation of a soul can take place when all substances, which have taken the earthly path within the many diverse creations and are thus developed, have joined together. The soul substance of every work of creation has to be present in order to incarnate .... i.e. the human body becomes the cover for a soul which contains all works of creation in miniature within itself. The previous infinitely long earthly progress has resulted in the unification of all these substances who then await their last embodiment. They will be assimilated as soul into the human outer shell to experience the last stage of development. This incarnation is of varied duration due to the different substances' state of maturity, which have had a certain amount of freedom during their preliminary stages already albeit they had acted under compulsion in accordance with God's will. However, in the last stages before embodiment as human being this compulsory condition was gradually eased so that certain instincts could be lessened or even increased. This subsequently resulted in a higher or lower degree of maturity which, in turn, determines the duration of the last embodiment as human being. As soon as all soul substances have united as a human soul they strive for the last embodiment on earth, because they know that

the human shell is their last physical cover and that they can be free from all earthly restrictions afterwards. For that reason the soul will only spend time where it is offered an opportunity to incarnate. Understandably it will incarnate where people's nature adapts to its own degree of maturity, i.e. where people have the same instincts and attributes that match its own nature.

However, this does not exclude that a differently inclined soul would not try to incarnate with unfamiliar natured people in order to hasten its embodiment. But then it often has to struggle with added difficulties during its earthly life as its nature is not taken into account and it is unable to fulfil the expected requirements.

Nevertheless, since the soul knows the path of its earthly life in advance it is not stopped if it makes this choice itself, since it has the resources at its disposal to achieve its final maturity in every embodiment. Due to its earlier many diverse shapes it has every aptitude within itself at various degrees and can increase or reduce them at will. Thus it is not incapable and the strength to do so is likewise given in accordance with its will. However, if it strives half-heartedly it will remain in the same state of maturity prior to its incarnation as a human being, in that case the incarnation has not resulted in higher development. Although at the time of death it will shed its physical cover but its desires and instincts, which it was meant to overcome during its earthly life, still connect it to the material world. Therefore it has not taken full advantage of its earthly incarnation, and when

it realises that it has wasted the right to become a child of God and can no longer achieve it either, it experiences an indescribable state of remorse; even though it still has infinitely many opportunities in the beyond to arrive at the contemplation of God. Yet one day an incarnated soul has to give account before God how it has used earth's opportunities and what spiritual progress it has achieved at the time of death, because the embodiment as human being is a mercy that cannot be valued highly enough; it is a gift which the human being should cherish appropriately by doing whatever advances his development because he cannot return to earth again once he has left it ....

Amen

## **The will to live .... Fear of death**

***B.D. 2776 from June 16th 1943,  
taken from Book No. 34/35/36***

The human will to live is very strongly developed as long as his soul's maturity is still very low, which is quite understandable since the world still captivates him and pretends to fulfil his wishes. The human being finds it extremely difficult to give up his earthly life as long as he

lacks faith in life after death, because the latter makes him look at all life on earth differently. A profoundly devout person merely looks at earthly life as in intermediate place, as a school which he has to attend in order to be admitted into the kingdom where real life begins. And this faith will also give him the strength to overcome all obstacles and difficulties of earthly life, whereas the unbeliever often breaks down and discards his life assuming that he is able to permanently end it himself. Anyone with profound faith will gladly give up his life if it is demanded of him because he directs his attention towards the life after the death of his body and his longing towards the union with God, since he feels that this is primarily the true life. As long as the human being only pays attention to the earth and its goods he inhibits his aspirations to ascend, he desires the world with every fibre of his being and the thought that he will have to leave this world one day is intolerable and depressing to him.

And this reveals his state of mind because his love for the world diminishes his love for God and other people, and thus the person is still spiritually immature, i.e. his soul has not yet united with the spirit within himself, he is not yet aware and knows nothing better than his earthly life. In that case he finds every thought of death appalling, he wants to live to enjoy, he desires worldly goods and disregards spiritual values. And this spiritual low level cannot be criticized enough since the human being is now in great danger to lose his earthly as well as his

spiritual life. If he does not use his earthly life to find a connection to God he will live in vain and it is better that he should suffer the loss of his earthly life than to fall into deepest love with matter, which amounts to spiritual death. Earthly life is a mercy given to the human being for higher development and for rising above matter in order to enter the spiritual kingdom .... However, if the human being's real task on earth is disregarded he chains himself to matter and forcibly has to be pulled away by the termination of his earthly life. As long as the thought of physical death is intolerable to a person he is not paying any attention to his real earthly task. The will to live is so strong in him that he will do anything to protect and lengthen it in the belief that his life is in his own hands, and yet again he feels fearful of having to lose it prematurely. Only in view of the beyond, in the belief of the soul's life after death, the terror of death begins to subside and then the human being understands that his earthly life is a mere preliminary stage for the real life which will last eternally ....

Amen

## **Temptation in form of earthly amusements ....**

***B.D. 2778 from June 18th 1943,***

## ***taken from Book No. 37***

You should not think that the opponent will bypass you even if you strive towards God .... His influence is unrestricted as long as the human being's will is weak. Only a strong will can offer him the resistance which he cannot overcome. The will is always decisive as to whether he gains control over a person. But if the will weakens his influence becomes stronger again, and the temptations approach a person in the most varied of ways. For this reason he must constantly struggle, he must constantly appeal for strength and grace, for strengthening of his will, he must constantly be on his guard so as not to succumb to the temptations of evil, he must watch and pray .... for the prize is worth the battle .... The world and its enticements approach the human being time and again, it is the adversary's most effective means to cause the human being's downfall, for everything which belongs to the world separates the human being from God. He cannot possess God and the world at the same time, he must sacrifice one if he wants to win the other. The world, however, only offers illusive goods which are phantoms that make a person only temporarily happy and which crumble into nothingness. They have no lasting value but still destroy spiritual values, that is, they distract the human being from spiritual striving, and this is a regression on the path of development. The opponent constantly intends to detach the human being from God, therefore he repeatedly approaches him in the form of worldly amusements, he entices him with worldly



pleasures, he tries to turn his mind to them and thereby desert God. And if a person does not oppose him with a firm will he will succumb, and the opponent will have won his game. The human being's body enjoys the experiences but the soul gets into difficulties, for to the same extent as the person enjoys earthly pleasures the soul has to go short. If the soul can become stronger than the body then it will succeed in making the person feel discontented; these are the inner admonitions and warnings which are imparted to the person through the inner voice, if only he pays attention to them. Then he will make every effort to overcome his inclination for the world and with increased determination strive spiritually again. And this determination will also give him the strength and the grace of being able to achieve it.

But the voice of the world is frequently stronger than the inner voice, in that case the latter will fade away unheard, he will throw himself increasingly deeper into the whirlpool of worldly pleasures, he wants to enjoy himself and gets caught in the opponent's nets of lies, who will tie the human to himself ever more firmly by offering him the pleasures of the world and making him totally unreceptive to spiritual possessions. He has bound his will and the person will find it very difficult to release himself from him, for the human must turn away from him of his own accord and desire God before the strength and grace can take effect in him. And therefore beware of the temptations by the world! .... Consider that God's adversary will approach you time and again and that only

your will is able to banish him. And in order for this will to become strong enough, you must watch and pray .... Pay attention to the danger which constantly lies in wait for you in the shape of worldly temptation, and constantly request the strength from God to withstand them, for every fall is a spiritual regression, and every overcoming will bring you closer to the goal. What God offers you is incomparably more valuable and can never ever be compensated by worldly goods, worldly pleasures or amusements. Be vigilant and know that you are constantly put under pressure by God's adversary, who intends to make you fall .... Therefore appeal to God for strength and strengthening of your will so that you can resist every temptation ....

Amen

## **Sacrificial love ....**

***B.D. 2783 from June 22nd 1943,  
taken from Book No. 37***

Love enables a person to make any sacrifice, and thus your love should be such that you will gladly and joyfully give up everything if this will help your neighbour. Sacrificial love is inexpressibly beneficial; both for your souls as well as for the soul of a fellow human being who thereby learns to love as well, for the love which touches

him will also kindle the indwelling spark of love, which can develop into a flame. A person's deed must be inspired by love, only then will it be true love which not only expresses itself in words and feelings but in active care as well. The bliss of accomplishing a kind deed which helps a fellow human being makes a person feel very happy .... Thus love by itself is already rewarding, because it is pleasing and encourages constantly new actions of love. A love which is willing to make sacrifices does not consider itself; a person gives of what he owns without thinking if it benefits someone else, he gives to others and is happy that he can help his fellow human being .... Only this kind of love will result in his soul's maturity, which is his goal on earth, for it will make his heart receptive for the divine Love Itself, Which requires such a prepared soul as an abode in order to stay and work in a person. Through his love, the human being draws God, Who is Love Itself, close to him, and he will never be without love because divine love will fill his heart and his whole nature will change into love .... He will adapt himself to God; he will find the union with Him on earth already, which is the purpose and goal of his life on earth .... Anyone making a sacrifice out of love for his neighbour gives up very little in exchange for so much more .... As long as he is still fond of earthly possessions, as long as the commodities of the world mean everything to him, he will be incapable of any kind-hearted deed, for his selfish love will be too great and will prevent him from giving for his fellow human being's sake. Only love will make him do this, the love for his fellow human being

will make his possessions seem worthless to him, he will only try to help and will no longer calculate the advantages he would gain from his wealth, he will give gladly and joyfully because he will be motivated to do so by love .... But anyone without love is incapable of parting with the possessions of the world, nor will he ever experience pure joy, he will not get to know the happiness which kind-hearted activity triggers in a person .... And in order to help those people, in order to teach them actions of love, God allows adversity to come upon the earth .... harsh conditions, which should encourage every person to practise love; an adversity which intends to kindle the spark of love in every person in order to act with love. Once he has felt the happiness of kind-hearted activity, his heart will no longer be so hardened. Hence you humans should practise love, you should give what is dear and valuable to you if you can reduce people's adversity with it .... you should not think long as to whether it will be to your advantage or disadvantage; you should be impelled by the love in your heart, and this does not stop and think .... It makes sacrifices and gladly gives what it owns, it only wants to help and ease a fellow human being's fate .... And if you can make sacrifices, you will not become poorer but gain far more riches, for God's strength of love will flow to you, which exceeds the value of all earthly possessions .... You will sacrifice earthly goods and exchange them for spiritual possessions, and these possessions will be yours to keep, they cannot be taken away from you, even if you leave the Earth and enter the spiritual kingdom .... Every

sacrifice you have made out of love for your fellow human beings will increase your eternal possessions. For this reason you should spend your life on earth with continuous actions of love, you should be of service and give to others, offer help and advice to those who are still weak and require physical and spiritual assistance. You should make sacrifices in order to also awaken love in your fellow human being ..... so that you will fulfil your mission on earth ....

Amen

## **Lack of spiritual knowledge ....**

***B.D. 2784 from June 22nd 1943,  
taken from Book No. 37***

The lack of spiritual knowledge will become particularly apparent in the coming battle of faith, because then people will endorse or accept what they can affirm with conviction or, on the basis of ignorance regarding spiritual matters, discard all faith and fight against it. Only the knowledgeable person will know the correlation between all things, he will know the meaning and purpose of Creation and the human being's task on earth. And since he is profoundly faithful and can endorse

everything with conviction, he will also recognise God's guidance and His will, therefore making his path on earth considerably easier despite the hostilities of the world, and he will victoriously pass the tests of faith. His knowledge will be his weapon, his strength and his fortitude .... Nothing can dishearten an informed person as soon as he knows that he is in contact with God. Nor has a knowledgeable person any doubts about the outcome of the battle of faith, whereas someone without spiritual knowledge is constantly subject to uncertainties and considerations, because the believers' conviction makes him hesitant and although he certainly has a vague idea, he has no guarantee for the accuracy of his assumptions. The informed person understands every phase of the battle of faith; nothing will surprise him because he knows that everything God's Word had revealed to people must come to pass. He himself became knowledgeable through the Word of God and therefore also knows the outcome of a battle which purely concerns the spiritual light, because the darkness fights against all enlightened beings. And thus the one side will fight with blind fury against any representative of divine truth; the laws people will have to submit to will neither demonstrate wisdom nor love .... Progress will not be aspired to, instead, an act of destruction will take place the intention of which will be to eradicate all spiritual information, which will particularly affect organisations whose teachings advocate faith in Jesus Christ as Redeemer of the world, for these will come under most brutal attack .... And the uninformed person

will find no explanation for it .... he will discard his shallow faith as well and listen to even less informed people, but hardly any will seek advice with the believers, who alone would be able to provide an explanation. And yet, only this knowledge can explain the events in the world to them, only a knowledgeable person can truthfully explain the necessity and expediency of the battle of faith to his fellow human beings, only a knowledgeable person can comfort his fellow human beings and draw their attention to the One Who can and will help them if they entrust themselves to Him and bear up against their enemies .... And these knowledgeable people will be able to speak with conviction, God Himself will speak through their mouths in order to still win those over for Himself who are weak and undecided, whose will has not yet entirely turned away from God and who therefore cannot deny Him either. This is why God conveys this knowledge to earth in advance; He trains His Own fighters by guiding them into truth and informing them of the approaching time, so that they will gain strength from the truth of His Word once the time has come when He will need them to work for Him ....

Amen

# **Listening within ... Gifts from above ... Everything**

# **that is good is divine ....**

***B.D. 2787 from June 25th 1943,  
taken from Book No. 37***

Every spiritual gift requires undivided attention for the divine expression of will; for this means that the human being must listen within in order to hear this declaration of will. God's will can only be revealed to someone who withdraws into his inner life, since God's voice is only perceptible in the human being's heart; hence, a person has to listen within if he wants to hear God's voice. And thus a person must first detach himself from the world, i.e., he must completely free his thoughts from earthly interests, he must establish a bond with the spiritual kingdom through consciously focussing within and enter into a silent communication with the spiritual beings in a perfect state or with the eternal Deity Himself. He has to present his spiritual adversity to God and appeal for being guided towards realisation, he has to try to live according to divine will and have the serious will to become worthy of God's voice, then God will also let His voice be heard in the heart of someone who wants to hear it. For God requires people who clearly and understandably convey to fellow human beings what the voice of the heart has imparted to them, consequently He will also always be willing to instruct people according to the truth.

Therefore, He also expects the attention of those who are prepared to pass on the knowledge they receive. For



this knowledge is so extensive that people can be offered something new every day and every hour. But it must also be accurately communicated, and thus the teacher himself must be knowledgeable and always and forever accept this knowledge, and this requires constant mental concentration, that is, the recipient must willingly detach the soul from the body and utterly hand himself over to the working of spiritual forces .... he must listen to what his spiritual friends impart to him and know that every message from the spiritual kingdom is offered to him according to God's will .... that he therefore receives the truth which he should pass on in exactly the same way. Thus, his own mental concepts must not precede the knowledge he receives but he must strictly keep to that which is offered to him from above. As soon as the person fails to listen to this voice in his heart he cannot be instructed either, for God will not manifest Himself more markedly as not to endanger people's religious liberty. However, to the listener His voice sounds so clear and pure that he cannot misunderstand it, and thus he grows in wisdom because he is instructed by God Himself, Who also avails Himself of His heavenly messengers in order to impart the truth through His devoted earthly child to people on earth ....

But God is at all times the Giver of gifts from above, for it is God's voice which can be audibly perceived by a person if he attentively listens within. Everything that is good is a divine gift .... everything that urges a person to do good, that teaches him to love and points him into the direction

of God .... And these instructions are always given to a person when his striving applies to God and the eternal truth and when his heart has made itself receptive through the will to hear the voice of God and through a God-pleasing way of life .... otherwise the desire for God will not be rooted within the person. But then his thoughts will be influenced by God Himself and the spiritual beings devoted to God, and these thoughts will predominantly arise in his heart and need only be grasped by the person's will by means of listening inwards to the divine gifts he is offered. If the person lives a life of love these thoughts will make such an indelible impression on him that he will accept these thoughts without doubting that it is the divine voice, since through love he is already so united with God that he knows His will and always strives to fulfil it ....

Amen

## **Will for descendants ....**

## **Waiting souls ....**

***B.D. 2795 from July 3rd 1943, taken from Book No. 37***

Countless souls are waiting for embodiment and thus new generations have to arise time and again. Human beings

have to be born all the time so that souls can occupy their bodies during their final period of development on earth. Hence people's willingness is always necessary for the embodiment of a soul, and at the same time it is also an act of love for the unredeemed soul if people offer it the opportunity for its final incarnation on earth. Only the will to awaken a new life should be the reason for a union between a man and a woman; without this will the bodily function, which is only intended for the awakening of a human life, is unlawfully performed. Many sins are committed in this respect, i.e. the divine will is not taken into account, the body is not educated to carry out its correct task and subsequently many souls wait in vain and cannot incarnate even though they have the degree of development which permits an earthly embodiment. These souls remain close to earth and try to persuade people to unite, especially people who are in love, since love has to be the motivating force for a union to bring forth new life. Love between two human beings is essential to give the awakened soul during its short time on earth the opportunity to achieve the kind of maturity which will result in its entrance into the realm of light. A loveless union provides the opportunity for embodiment to those souls whose bad instincts are still particularly strong and who, as a result, have to struggle considerably during their earthly life to overcome these instincts ....

The human will to have children is, however, mostly due to love for each other, and it is of great advantage for the incarnating soul if this love prevails because the spark of

love leaps into the new-born being and it can gain spiritual maturity on earth much easier. Nevertheless, the effort to avoid descendants can be harmful to the souls who are willing to incarnate, in as much as people's sexuality adds to the same urges in the new being whose soul consequently constantly has to fight against them during its earthly life. Souls who cannot incarnate nevertheless stay close to people and trouble them, i.e. they try to influence people to unite for the purpose of procreation. Understandably, in that case physical desires will always be stronger since the souls only try to influence people along the lines of their inclination, they just want to transfer physical lusts to get the opportunity for their own embodiment. Consequently, people who unite sexually without love shoulder a tremendous responsibility as they are surrounded by souls who want to incarnate, and their lust attracts equally disposed souls who use these uninhibited moments to occupy a newly created being which now starts its earthly path of life as a human being. And such souls are mainly predominant because only few souls entered life as a result of love and a conscious will for descendants. For this reason human generations will become consistently less spiritual because there is little love between people who were also born without love ....

Amen

## **Strength of the divine**

# Word .... Prophet .... The Lord's return ....

***B.D. 2797 from July 4th 1943, taken from Book No. 37***

Everyone will noticeably feel the strength of the divine Word when the last days come. Many threads lead from the kingdom of the beyond to earth, God conveys His Word to people everywhere who partly hear it mentally or as the inner voice, and His Word will give strength to people everywhere. But even where the directly imparted Word is conveyed to fellow human beings it will make them stronger if they devoutly accept it and allow themselves to be affected by it. For it is certain that God will not leave His Own without help at a time when afflictions and adversities are rife and which requires tremendous strength. And therefore He blesses His Word with His strength so that all who hear it become aware of this strength if they believe. God's adversary will exercise all his power and try to pull everything down that won't offer him resistance. However, the Word of God is the best defence against him, the Word of God protects a person from his onslaughts, since God Himself is with the person in His Word and the enemy is powerless against Him.

If the human being believes then he will not need to fear

anything, irrespective of what will happen to him. The world will certainly use any means in order to shake his faith, it will want to force him into renouncing it, yet God's Word is stronger than the world .... Anyone in possession of it will ignore its voice, for he is closer to God than to the world and is permeated by His strength, but the human being will also remain in contact with God through His Word. In the last days, however, someone will appear who will loudly and distinctly preach the Word of God to people .... he will be guided by God's spirit and God's spirit will express itself through him. His Words will be impressive and even within the adversary's ranks not remain without effect .... Those who belong to the world will pursue him but be unable to harm him until his mission on earth has been fulfilled. He will proclaim the Lord's second coming, he will reproach people's way of life and inform them of things which are new to them, he will encourage them to love and criticize their heartlessness with sharp words; his speeches will be forthright and aim to win people over for the kingdom of God.

And the strength coming forth from his words will verify the truth of what he is preaching. God Himself will speak through the mouth of His servant on earth and many will recognise His voice .... Yet eventually he will be captured, for Satan will incite the people who are enslaved by him to seize him. Then the Lord's coming will be imminent, for then the heartlessness on earth will have reached its peak and even the believers will be at great risk of

beginning to waver. Then the Lord Himself will come to take His Own home, to save them from the enmity of those who are enslaved by the darkness .... And things will come to pass which are beyond people's imagination ....

Amen

# **Professional missionaries ... Academic knowledge ...**

***B.D. 2800 from July 6th 1943, taken from Book No. 37***

Every mission on earth with the aim of redeeming the bound souls is pleasing to God and thus has His blessing, but those who have accepted such a mission as their task in life must also endeavour to spread the pure truth. Not everyone can therefore carry out this work if he does not know the truth himself. And the human being's will is once again the decisive factor .... it depends on the reason which impels him to tackle this work. His good will to be of service to God and to lead lost souls to Him will also grant him the pure truth which enables him to accomplish redemptive work on earth. This is why such an intention must first be preceded by the realisation of his own lack of knowledge, which prompts him to genuinely

turn to God with an appeal for spiritual enlightenment. Only this fulfils the first condition for a profession, which must arise from the heart, but it must not be a profession in the sense of the word. However, the danger of the latter exists once a person deems himself knowledgeable due to academically accepted knowledge which nevertheless does not enable him to work as a teacher, because he does not recognise the truth as yet and therefore cannot pass it on either. In that case he will never be able to instruct his fellow human beings correctly. He will not be able to explain the purpose and goal of earthly life to them because he has no knowledge of the very first beginning and the ultimate goal of everything which must take the path across earth. He will merely strictly adhere to dogmatic teachings, which are certainly passed on again academically but which do not stimulate the soul's activity and would be able to awaken its indwelling spirit. The human being merely accepts the knowledge intellectually but it fails to enter his heart and therefore does not achieve the soul's transformation which, however, is absolutely essential for the soul's redemption from its bound state. This academic knowledge can therefore never be enough for a mission on earth whose aim is the redemption of erring souls .... And thus it is also understandable why professional missionaries have such little success unless profound humility towards God and deepest love for their fellow human beings impels them to take up this office .... For only the latter are true servants of God whose work amongst people can be a blessing for them. True service



to God solely consists of helping to redeem that which had emerged from God and separated from Him but which the eternal Love will never turn away from .... And as soon as a person sets himself this task in life and, in recognition of his own ignorance, desires God's support, he will be of service to God. Then he will be able to fulfil his task conscientiously and successfully, he will fulfil his mission on earth and contribute towards the redemption of the bound souls .... Whereas the actual profession of a servant of God is no guarantee that he had first fulfilled the condition and thus he must also be denied the ability of being able to instruct his fellow human beings of the truth. Consequently, the redemption of these souls is questionable, because only truth can set people free, because only the pure truth is redemptive ....

Amen

## **End of the world conflagration .... Establishing divine order ....**

***B.D. 2803 from July 8th 1943, taken  
from Book No. 37***

It is impossible to restore worldly order again as long as people are full of hatred and envy, for these are God-

opposing qualities which will have to destroy all order, since anything that is opposed to God is also in opposition to divine order. And this is a state of extreme heartlessness which will never manifest itself constructively but will always have a destructive effect. Understandably, a destructive state like that cannot go on indefinitely, and therefore God Himself will call a halt to it in a way which, admittedly, will also result in enormous disorder, but in which God's wisdom is nevertheless recognised as the only means to restore order again. Humanity itself will make no attempt to end a battle which causes suffering and boundless misery across the whole world. Consequently, it must be ended in a different way; nevertheless, it will not reduce the suffering on earth because it is needed by the human race. People must return to the old order, they must learn again to forego their neighbour's possessions, which they aspire to own and for which they fight with the most appalling weapons. Their addiction to earthly commodities will cause the world conflagration, which will be difficult to extinguish .... Yet people will not achieve any earthly gain, on the contrary, they will incur immense losses, the extent of which humanity has no knowledge of. For every victory will have been bought at the expense of indescribable losses, both in regards to material assets as well as to human life. However, humanity has become insensitive to such losses, it ignores what human will has caused, and thus, divine will itself shall intervene in order to forcibly initiate a change of world events .... because people's thinking can only be

turned around when they feel that they are helpless, that a stronger Power than themselves takes the control out of their hands and utterly shatters their will. The spiritual darkness they are in is the cause of their heartless actions, whereas their heartlessness is the cause of darkness again .... They must realise in a flash that their thinking is wrong, that they are chasing after the wrong goals and that they will come to a deadlock if they don't return to divine order and radically change their way of life. The divine intervention is intended to cause this flash of realisation, even though they are still far removed from believing in a higher Power, Which controls their destiny .... Nevertheless, they can only attain faith through deliberation, and their thinking shall be stimulated when they see that everything turns out differently than it was humanly possible to foresee. The spiritual as well as earthly chaos conjured up by human determination would, without God's intervention, increase and lead to final destruction, because humanity no longer respects divine order, apart from a few who are devoted to God and strive to fulfil His will. But they do not arrest the process of development, they are merely the cause for intensified measures against divine order; and the time has come when humanity subjects itself to God's adversary and their thoughts and actions become increasingly uncaring. God's intervention will entail inexpressible suffering and destitution but it is the only option to lead people back to divine order and to change their spiritual state, although this will only be the case with a small amount of people. And therefore the time of

the final annihilation of those who are inconvertible is coming ever closer, as is proclaimed in Word and Scripture ....

Amen

## **Hatred and its consequences ....**

***B.D. 2810 from July 12th 1943, taken from Book No. 37***

The demon of hatred is poisoning the whole world .... And people enslave themselves to him. But hatred destroys, whereas love builds up, and the work of devastation on earth will happen on an ever increasing scale the more hatred rages amongst humanity. God's work of destruction will not end this hatred either, instead it will only make individual people here and there come to their senses, and they will subsequently realise by whom they allowed themselves to be dominated. And for the sake of these few will God manifest Himself and show His power and strength. The majority, however, will carry on living in hatred and keep trying to assert itself with means born of hatred and which inflame ever more hatred. For hatred is intensified unkindness, hatred is the most dreadful attribute because it has indescribably destructive

consequences, not just in an earthly but also in a spiritual way. For it eradicates all noble impulses or puts them at great risk. The person who lives in hatred is flung to and fro by demons, his striving towards ascent is constantly in jeopardy because he will repeatedly be thrown back again as soon as he allows himself to be carried away by hatred, because he keeps handing himself over to the power of the one who only tries to convey hatred and unkindness to people. And his power over such a person is great. And it is even greater when the whole of the human race lives in hatred .... This has to signify a spiritual decline which will have alarming effects insofar as that people willingly implement what they are told to do by God's malicious opposing power .... that they will destroy all possessions in order to damage their fellow human beings. God's adversary is eager to release all spirits which were banished by God into creations. For this reason all his thoughts and intentions aim to destroy that which was created through God's will. But since his will and power cannot take hold of the works of creation, he seeks to force his will onto people .... He plants hatred into them and thereby impels them to implement what is impossible for him .... to destroy the creation .... Thus he uses the people enslaved by him as his henchmen, he places satanic thoughts in them, he stirs up hatred in them and thus drives them to cause immense damage to each other. People willingly carry out the impulses their soul's greatest enemy gives to them .... Their actions give rise to constantly renewed hatred and hatred produces ever new works of destruction .... Such a poisoned human

race will progressively move towards its downfall, for it will hardly find the path back to loving activity ....

Amen

# **The raging of natural forces ... Total changes of living conditions ...**

***B.D. 2811 from July 14th 1943, taken from Book No. 37***

It is impossible to make people believe that their earthly life will completely change during the forthcoming time. They count on an end to their time of suffering, followed by economic development and flourishing and improved living conditions, and on a time of tranquillity and peace which will replace the time of upheavals and suffering. They don't want to believe that a far more difficult time is still ahead of them, that they cannot expect any improvement but will still have to endure indescribable suffering and misery. And they dismiss any reference to this as fallacy or imagination. It is therefore very difficult to make them change their lifestyle, to encourage them to conduct themselves in a way which is pleasing to God and to consciously work at improving their souls. For only faith in this would make them seriously strive to attain

God's pleasure. Instead, they take no notice of it and ignore God's every admonition, although He speaks to them through adversity and sorrow. This lack of belief exacerbates the spiritual darkness; there is no way to enlighten them because the light itself will be extinguished if it is kindled in order to illuminate them .... God Himself takes pity upon these people and tries to enlighten their spirits, but they close themselves to it and can never attain the truth. Only the truth can save them, yet they don't want to hear it because it completely contradicts their future plans, because it deprives them of their hope for earthly improvement and an end of their state of suffering and expects of them a transformation of their souls and a change of their present way of thinking. They don't want to believe, consequently, there is no other means to make them believe but through steadily worsening earthly plights .... for only through these will they stop being so extremely earthly minded. And this increased earthly suffering will come about through an event which will dwarf everything which came before it, because people will be left at the mercy of the raging of natural forces which human will cannot control. For only when they recognise a higher Power will they bow down to this Authority and humbly ask for help. Thousands of people will certainly be severely affected and the suffering should be enough to make them realise their own helplessness and prompt them to sincerely call upon God for help ....

However, for as long as people are the creators of great

adversity it will result in increased hatred and often greater ungodliness, because in their immense adversity they are no longer able to recognise the God of love. But as soon as they are faced by a Power Which they will have to acknowledge because It visibly expresses Itself, the possibility also exists that they will bow down to this Power and appeal to It for mercy. Then God can helpfully intervene. Although it is indeed an extremely painful means of education, it must nevertheless be used if at least a small part of humanity is still to be saved, that is, if in the last hour they will still recognise God in the raging of natural forces and establish contact with Him, without which there will be no salvation. And thus the most powerful event lies ahead of humanity, which it will be unable to escape but which cannot be averted by God because humanity does not heed His admonitions and warnings nor does it change its conduct, but continues to go on living thoughtlessly without paying attention to Him. The slightest God-inclined will would prevent this event from happening and prompt God to show mercy and forbearance, yet people distance themselves increasingly further from God and act in opposition to His will. And since God foresaw this will from the very beginning He has also known for an infinitely long time the effect of people's wrong will and uses the final means in order to win those people over for Himself who are as yet not entirely opposed to Him .... He will make the Earth tremble and thereby instil fear and terror in people .... He will speak to them through the elements of nature, He will let the forces of nature erupt and express



Himself loudly and clearly through these .... And this event will entail immense changes; it will cause a complete turnaround in every individual person's lifestyle, and the consequences of the natural disaster will be so very significant that everyone will have to pay attention to it, thus no-one will remain unaffected by it. And blessed is he who will still change his thoughts; blessed is he who will still be able to recognise the hand of God in everything that will still be imposed on humanity in the coming time; blessed is he who will still find his way back to God, who strives to fulfil His will and establishes the right relationship with Him .... He will be helped by God in his adversity and the difficult time will not be in vain for him if it pulls his soul back from the abyss before it is too late.

Amen

## **Conditions for receiving the divine Word ....**

***B.D. 2829 from July 28th 1943, taken from Book No. 37***

The acceptance of the divine Word requires constant willingness and joyful dedication to God. This is why it can only be achieved by people with a God-orientated

will, who strive to live a God-pleasing way of life and who put their spiritual aspiration above all else because they desire to be with God and want to be of service to Him. For only the desire for Him enables the human being to hear the divine voice within himself, the desire for Him makes him quick of hearing and sensitive to everything that comes from God. God's gift is at every person's disposal without discrimination; nevertheless, it does not impose itself and will therefore only be recognised by someone who pays attention and opens his senses to the spiritual flow, who thus consciously and attentively listens inside and thus can also receive the divine gift from within. The divine gift is to be found in the heart, it is the treasure which only needs to be unearthed, which requires no external practices in order to gain possession of it. It is within reach of everyone who merely makes the effort to bring it to light .... God's love offers itself to people in His Word, and people's love must accept His gift, the human heart must strive towards Him with the same love in order to then be able to receive His Word as a token of His love ....

For the Word is the sign of His love which He wants to give to all people through a person. A willing and loving person must become the bridge from Earth to the beyond, he must readily place himself at His disposal, he must yearn for God's love and thereby make his heart receptive for the divine Love Itself .... he must desire unity with God and willingly lend his ear to the divine voice which can only reveal itself through such a person.

Only a person who carefully listens can hear; and a person only listens carefully if he believes in a Power Which manifests Itself for love of humanity .... The recipient must believe in a God of love, wisdom and omnipotence, so that he will look for and find in faith the reason for the divine Word which is conveyed to Earth .... And he must live a life of love, for only love draws the Eternal Love close to him. Love for his fellow human beings drives him to pass on the received Word, and anyone who accepts this task of spreading the divine Word amongst people will also always be endowed by God and be able to hear His Word .... God will constantly offer him delectable gifts, He will reveal Himself to him and educate him for a task which is so extremely important that God will bless everyone who places himself at His disposal as a labourer in His vineyard ....

Amen

## **Language of nature - Creation and Creator ....**

***B.D. 2834 from August 1st 1943,  
taken from Book No. 37***

Let nature speak to you .... it illustrates indescribable works of wonder and constantly reveals My love and

omnipotence to you .... Listen and behold .... Look at each creature and become aware of My creative will and My strength .... and of Myself in all My works of creation. See, how uniquely delightful and varied these creations are and how meaningful each one fulfils its intended purpose and how the purpose of every work of creation is the preservation of all creation .... Let Me speak to you Myself through nature and listen to My voice, then you will recognise My omnipotence, love and wisdom and bow before it, then you will know that you are the greatest work of creation on earth made by My hand and understand how infinitely much I care that you remain within Me .... Since each work of creation only came into being because of you, it is a mere preliminary stage from which you evolved into what you are now, into free, independent creations which can become infinitely more than they are now.

Observe nature and see its development, its progression, which can be recognised in all creations of nature. The tiniest being is My work, the tiniest blade of grass is My thought which took on shape. And every creature obeys My will, it does what I have assigned it to do and serves the human being again by ensuring his existence. Nothing is without purpose and aim, nothing happens without My will, everything is based on My wisdom and love. Should My wisdom not be evident to you because you don't know of the relationship between all works of creation then recognise My love, which consistently expresses itself in the wonders of nature.

See how everything around you grows and flourishes, how it matures and bears fruit, see, how the same process repeats itself over and over again .... for you .... to protect you human beings and to preserve everything that is alive on earth .... I shaped innumerable creations of most diverse proportions, of most diverse forms and purposes, and if you open your eyes and ears nothing escapes you and My infinite love and wisdom has to become evident to you .... Because I give so that you can receive, I create so that you can benefit from it, I maintain and care for the creation so that your heart can rejoice in it and you recognise Me .... Me, Who I Am since eternity and Whose existence you doubt .... Whose will and being you want to exclude and Whose creations you regard as having evolved by themselves.

You blindly pass by all wonders of creation and don't understand the language of nature, you see the creation but not the Creator within; indeed, you see the effect but not the cause, the will, which is the foundation of every creation. You believe yourselves to be full of wisdom and able to discover the origin of all things yet your knowledge is patchwork as long as you don't acknowledge Me as the primary origin of creation. I move close to you in every work of nature, it is the expression of Myself, it is a thought that took shape in accordance to My will; every natural creation is proof of My existence because nothing would exist without Me, because My will alone called into being what you see and what surrounds you. And nothing can be or become without My will,

nothing can exist if My will and My wisdom do not approve. But My will, My love, My wisdom and My power must also teach you to believe in an Entity, they must make you realise that they belong to a Being which also wants to speak to you through the wonders of nature, which wants to be closely united with you because you, also being His work of creation, are the sole reason for the origin of all creation ....

I want you to become aware but then you have to listen to the language of creation, to the voice which expresses itself in nature, you have to communicate with Me, the intrinsic Creator of all things, and I will answer your questions and give to you according to your will to seek the truth, providing you acknowledge Me as the provider of truth. I Am near to you at all times, as soon as you desire to hear Me, as soon as you send just one thought upwards to Me. And therefore you shall find Me wherever you are, but more likely if you look for Me in solitude, where everything around you reminds you of the Creator, Whose will created heaven and earth, because His love decided to give the essence, which formerly had separated from Him, the opportunity to come closer to Him once again. And the knowledge of this shall be given to you human beings, the knowledge of this you shall desire yourselves, and therefore you should listen to the language of nature because through it I speak to those of you who want to hear Me ....

Amen

# **Characteristic of truth ....**

## **Meaning of the letter ....**

### **Scrutiny and ability ....**

***B.D. 2849 from August 13th 1943,  
taken from Book No. 37***

Truth is what is good, and a loving person will precisely know how to differentiate between good and bad, whereas a heartless person still steeped in selfish love only deems what is useful to him and what gives him an advantage to be good. He does not distinguish between good and bad and therefore not between truth and error either. He does not recognise the Divine or the truth since he does not strive for them as a result of his unkindness. Therefore, where love is revealed, love for God and one's neighbour, the truth is also advocated. So the characteristic of truth is that it breathes love and emanates love; that it teaches love and leads to God, for everything that is good and noble must unite people with God. Consequently, the truth can never be identified by the meaning of the letter but only by its effect .... If it nurtures love, it can only come from God; if knowledge, however, encourages selfish love then it is the work of God's adversary who seeks to alienate people from God

and can never provide truth. This is the guideline you must use if you want to check the information .... if you are unable to recognise what is offered to you. If you are able to love and be helpful your heart will educate you, providing you don't resist this voice of the heart through previous intellectually accepted knowledge. The truth is not academically conveyed to a person, instead it is dictated to him by the spirit, and your indwelling spirit enlightens you so that you are able to recognise the pure truth no matter where and how it is offered to you. Yet the heart's ability and willingness to love is the first condition if the spirit is to take effect in you. But then you will brightly and clearly recognise that everything good and referring to God must be the truth which originates from God Himself. Then you will not doubt anymore because the truth will make you happy once you have penetrated it with help of the divine spirit, which will guide your thinking towards the right realisation.

Therefore, let the spirit become active in you; don't forestall its working by trying to scrutinise intellectually what can only be done by your heart. Pay attention to your feeling; accept the effect of what is offered to you as truth without resistance. And you will affirm what is good and reject what is bad, thus you will be able to discern truth from error. Yet do not consult your book knowledge. If the latter was not offered to you by spiritually enlightened people, by people who were likewise able and willing to love, you only received the information of letters which lack inner life. Life, however,



is only awakened by love. Thus only a loving person is capable of grasping the true meaning of letters. And this will always concur with the eternal Truth which God conveys to earth when the pure truth is no longer endorsed by it. God's love and goodness truly knows how to protect His truth and to offer it in an unspoilt form to a truth desiring person, but if a person's desire is not exclusively inclined towards the truth then his ability to scrutinise it will also wane; then he will hardly be able to distinguish truth from error. And every weakness of will, all lack of desire for truth is used by God's adversary in order to reinforce error in a person, in order to make him doubt and to undermine the truth, because it is the adversary's endeavour to displace the truth which leads to God .... And you can only withdraw from this power by sincerely appealing to God for spiritual enlightenment if you confront Him as weak and ignorant little children who plead for strength and grace and for recognition of the pure truth .... God will truly not leave this prayer unanswered; He will strengthen you and enable you to distinguish the truth from error ....

Amen

**Teaching of re-incarnation  
is misguided ... Law ...**

## ***B.D. 2873 from September 7th 1943, taken from Book No. 37***

The divine laws are eternally unchanging, and all higher development in the physical as well as in the spiritual kingdom takes place in accordance with these laws. Physical and spiritual creations of the most diverse variety exist. And their only purpose is to guide the spirit which is distant from God back to Him. Yet every stage of development is as different as are the individual creations. Thus they will always be inhabited by spirits whose degree of maturity matches their nature. There will always be a progressive development as long as the spirit moves through the physical creation in a compulsory state .... However, a standstill or decline of development can occur during the final stage of the physical creation as human being .... but at the end of human life the spirit will irrevocably enter the beyond where no further physical creations exist. But even in the spiritual realm a standstill or decline can occur because the being retains its free will which is, however, considerably weakened if it has only achieved a low degree of maturity. Similar to earthly life, higher development in the spiritual realm also depends on activity, and this activity is and has to remain completely ambiguous to people on earth as they cannot comprehend its significance but which, on the other hand, depends on earthly creations.

In effect, people believe that every activity necessitates

earthly, i.e. physical, creations. Consequently they support the view that the soul will return to the realm where it formerly had neglected its higher development, that it will return to earth to carry on where it had left off .... that it can repeat its interrupted progress of development anytime until final perfection .... And this assumption leads to a teaching which does not comply with the truth but which finds approval everywhere and is therefore widespread .... to the teaching of re-incarnation on earth .... Only few people understand the disastrous effects of this teaching for humanity if it is not disproved and corrected. This teaching, in a way, overrules the divine law that, in accordance with the plan of divine wisdom, everything must advance if it wants to progress. Re-incarnation on earth would be a regression for the soul approved by God, thus it would completely contradict the divine law which commands and demonstrates consistent progress. Although the being itself can indeed voluntarily descend but God's will would never return it to a state which it had already overcome once before. And it will never be permitted to arbitrarily repeat a course of action which it had previously failed. For it still has thousands upon thousands of opportunities to develop further but they always take place on different creations and under completely different conditions ....

Amen

# **Delusions .... Spiritual working group ....**

***B.D. 2874 from September 8th 1943,  
taken from Book No. 37***

In the spiritual realm the soul is the creator of its own surroundings. It lives in a region created by its own wishes and desires, by its thoughts and its will. Although the objects are no longer of a physical nature they are not spiritually eternal either: they are, in fact, illusions, they are desired ideals which disappear as soon as the soul's longing for them increases. And in this self-created world the soul, as on earth, can oppose and overcome or succumb and add to its longing for matter which, in its state of darkness, it imagines to be real. Thus the soul can believe to live on earth and for an infinitely long time remain subject to this delusion until it either gradually becomes aware of its imperfect state and gives up its longing for earthly goods or it gets more and more involved with them, which is comparable to spiritual regression and finally results in its banishment into the solid form; because the soul's desire will always be fulfilled in so far as the matter, which the being longs for, becomes its outer cover. Thus the soul's degeneration in the beyond results in its re-incarnation, it has to repeat the long process of earthly development again and, thousands of years later, as a human being, take its last

earthly test of life once more ....

Whereas higher development in the spiritual kingdom is independent from physical surroundings because the soul only ascends when it has liberated itself from its earthly desires. In that case, however, earthly life is no longer necessary because it has the same opportunity for loving service in the beyond; in a manner of speaking it becomes part of a spiritual working group which is incredibly active in a way that is not yet comprehensible to human beings. All beings in the beyond have the opportunity to progress further and in the state of awareness these opportunities are used with great enthusiasm. However, the souls which are still in darkness have to strive towards God of their own free will. And to activate this will is the work of the beings of light whose perfection has resulted in knowledge, which they now lovingly try to impart on those who are as yet dark in spirit. Thus the spiritual kingdom offers many opportunities to help souls attain spiritual maturity ....

Amen

**Phase of development  
unique during a period of  
salvation ... Incarnation of**

# **beings of light ... Mission - Child of God ...**

***B.D. 2875 from September 9th 1943,  
taken from Book No. 37***

Each phase of the soul's development occurs only once during a period of salvation even if it neglects to utilise the state of free will. In that case the phase of development passes without effect for the soul and it has to accept the consequences of this in the spiritual realm. But the completely God-opposing spirit, whose resistance could not be broken during its infinitely long earthly progress, is given the opportunity again in a new period of creation; where it can, embodied within a solid form, live through a new phase of development in a newly beginning earthly period. And then the spiritual substances which, in a compulsory state, have to develop into a human soul again, are permitted to occupy a human body once more for its final test of will. This re-incarnation can indeed take place but the process has such enormous implications that it should be explained to people as something extremely frightening, albeit it is also an act of God's mercy for the release of the spirit after its endless time of captivity.

However, the idea that the soul re-incarnates onto the same earth again for the purpose of finishing its

development is misguided .... If God returns a soul from the spiritual realm of light to earth it is merely an act of kindness because this soul has to fulfil a task of liberating the constrained spirit on earth .... Hence an already fully matured being of light incarnates on earth to spiritually help others while it apparently has to advance on the path of spiritual development like any other human being. A return to earth for the purpose of achieving complete maturity, to make up for the neglect of a past earthly life, does not correspond to God's wisdom because it would interrupt the progressive development; a return from the spiritual into the physical state would be a regression and thus a sign of the soul's intention to distance itself from God, thus it does not indicate spiritual aspiration. Those who strive towards God truly have enough opportunities in the spiritual realm, where the spirit can prove itself and thus mature and develop further.

On the other hand, highly developed spiritual beings who have not yet reached the degree of childship to God, can become a child of God by incarnating on earth for the purpose of a mission, which is always linked to extremely difficult living conditions and requires a previously achieved specific degree of maturity in the beyond. The teaching of re-incarnation is a humanly devised teaching which corresponds to their wishes and therefore is defended time and again because many people are no longer able to correctly understand the truth from above and thus change it to fit in with their wishes. Because

their longing for this earthly world is still too strong and the thought of being permitted to return to earth is reassuring and comforting. But this teaching is an obstacle to the human being's spiritual development and therefore will have to be challenged time and again by those who shall spread the pure truth ....

Amen

## **The working of the spirit .... Guarantee for pure truth ....**

***B.D. 2877 from September 10th 1943,  
taken from Book No. 37***

All efforts on this side to penetrate the depth of divine wisdom can only be successful if the spirit within the human being has come alive and thus can accept the spiritual transmissions from the beyond .... if, through loving activity, the human being's soul develops the ability to hear the inner voice of the spirit, which then would like to convey the received messages to the soul. For only then can pure truth be conveyed to a person, because the spirit in the human being cannot err as it is part of the divine spirit. The human being has to muster the will to silently listen within, he must make an effort to keep all external impressions at bay and lend his ear to



the spirit in a completely conscious state; he must try to prevent himself from becoming weak and falling into a state in which he can be taken over by an unknown will, even though it does not exclude the possibility that the unknown will is good and belongs to a being which likewise would like to impart the truth to the person. In a few cases these spiritual beings are indeed under control so that nothing but pure truth can be transferred. However, the human being as such is not capable of checking as long he himself is unable to hear the voice of the spirit, which also expresses itself mentally to the human being. But at all times he should strive to attain a state in which he can hear the voice of the spirit such that it can be repeated word for word, that it can be heard in a completely conscious state and also be conveyed to fellow human beings. This is the working of the spirit which God promised to His Own .... He promised to stay with them in the Word, and the Word must come forth from Him directly, it must originate from Him, even if it is transmitted to earth by His messengers. Then it will incorporate profound wisdom, it will be the pure truth which can never be infringed upon, which can never be refuted, because the inwardly heard voice of the spirit cannot be drowned out by any other means. To receive the inner Word in a conscious state by using one's own free will is the only guarantee for the pure and unadulterated truth .... Anyone who hears this Word is in heartfelt union with God, Who is Truth Himself and thus must also be the Giver of truth. Consequently, all spiritual results must concur with this divine Word which is the

obvious manifestation of the spirit which works in and through a person and through this person also reveals itself to a fellow human being. And he, in turn, will be able to examine the truth of the spiritual gifts if he, through a life of unselfish neighbourly love, has awakened his spiritual spark and thus recognises that the offered gifts are true. Wisdom and truth can only ever be present where the spirit of God is working in a person, and therefore a value has to be attached to such proclamations which only divine transmissions can lay claim to .... God Himself is speaking to people, and His Word is truth ....

Amen

**Knowledge of the spirit's  
work in a person ....  
Exceptional opportunity  
for God to reveal  
Himself ....**

***B.D. 2878 from September 11th 1943,  
taken from Book No. 37***

God can only reveal Himself in the Word to a few people,

because most people have lost the knowledge of the spirit's work in the human being and thus are not preparing themselves to hear the divine Word within themselves. This is a process which first requires belief in the working of the spirit, but this belief is lacking in people and they can only arrive at this knowledge through love. Because this will guide their thoughts in the right direction, and the person can also mentally be introduced to this knowledge. But he will never recognise this knowledge as the working of the spirit and not be fully convinced of it himself. However, God's spirit wants to express itself clearly and precisely .... God wants to reveal Himself to people, hence He will speak to them .... He will convey His Word to them .... as soon as they believe in Him, in His love, His wisdom and His omnipotence. Because then they will also want to enter into contact with God, they will start a dialogue with Him and in response hear His voice within themselves. The strength of the spirit will communicate itself to them, and a lucid understanding of the most diverse subjects will be the result. The information of the working of the spirit in a person should be passed on to people but it will rarely be believed, and yet, without belief it cannot be experienced. Only a person's profound love will result in this belief, since then the spirit of God will work in him and give him the idea to listen inwardly. This is the beginning of a person's actual instruction and thus an introduction to the most profound knowledge. God can only express Himself when a deeply devoted heart turns to Him, but then he will impart His wisdom without

limitation ....

Consequently, the working of the spirit is of utmost importance because it is the only means to find the truth and to penetrate into divine wisdom's deepest profundity. Hence it is the only means of receiving information which could never be acquired rationally, which will provide the person with remarkable insight and knowledge relating to God and the human being, to creation and the spiritual kingdom .... Profound understanding is only possible where the spirit of God is able to work, and yet, the working of the spirit solely depends on a person's will, because this has to become active first, it has to accomplish the human being's inner change, which is a prerequisite for the working of the spirit in a person. The human being's will has to decide to improve his soul, it has to impel actions of love, it has to establish the innermost contact with God, and inwardly it has to listen attentively in order to hear His Word, which is then given to him by the voice of the spirit. But most people fail to listen inwardly, even if they comply with all other conditions, because they lack the information that God Himself is working in the devout human being. This knowledge was lost, and it is difficult to persuade them to put the rule to the test .... to comply with all conditions and then to listen carefully ....

For this reason the divine Word is hardly ever transmitted to earth in the most natural way, by God speaking to people, by submitting all wisdom to them Himself and by instructing them like a teacher instructs his students. But

as soon as a human being is doing everything to perceive the working of the spirit, as soon as he makes himself available for reception by consciously listening within himself, profound knowledge will be made accessible to him. Because this knowledge is intended for the benefit of his fellow human beings, he is meant to pass it on, he is supposed to support it, he is meant to become the mediator between God and the people, who cannot be addressed by Him Himself because they are unable to hear Him .... He should become the distributor of truth on earth, he should let his light shine everywhere and make God's love known to people, which is ascending to earth in the Word and offering the truth, because the lies, which are endangering souls, shall be removed. He is to bear witness to His wisdom by describing to people God's reign and action in creation and the spiritual kingdom, and he should proclaim His omnipotence, which achieves whatever is determined by God's will .... He should present God to people as the most perfect Being in order to arouse their love for Him and to spurn their will to subordinate themselves to this Being, to love and be of service to It for all eternity ....

Amen

# **Reminder to inform people of the battle of faith ....**

## ***B.D. 2880 from September 13th 1943, taken from Book No. 37***

There will be a great desire for spiritual nourishment as soon as the earth's upheaval has taken place but it will merely be temporary; motivated by the serious hardship people are at first willing recipients and God's Word shall provide them with comfort and strength. They will certainly recognise it as the Word of God, they will be faithful, but only for a short period of time. Because the world and its demands become more important again and they forget their hardship, thus they also forget Him Who allowed this hardship to happen. Their thoughts and aspirations only seek to re-establish the old life-style and they find it inconvenient to observe the commandments presented to them by the Word of God. Consequently people agree with the actions against the faith and its followers and only a small group will hold on to the Word; only a few people will stand firm against all confrontations and remain loyal to God and the faith. And yet the earlier desire shall be fulfilled to the utmost extent; God's Word shall be offered to human beings wherever possible so that many people will receive knowledge of it, since during the subsequent battle of faith everyone will once again be divinely reminded of it. The believers will be full of strength and accomplish extraordinary deeds, and find the strength for this entirely in their profound faith ....

And even disbelievers will be able to recognise the power

of faith because they had been introduced to the teachings of Christ beforehand and much becomes clear to them as they witness the proof of what they had been told. God leaves no option unused, He leaves no stone unturned, and wherever people can yet be helped He will help them, providing they are willing. And God will instruct many servants to speak in accordance with His will where it concerns the spreading of His teachings and to inform people of the forthcoming event. The battle of faith is unavoidable and will be conducted as never before. And the stronger people adhere to their faith the more brutal the adversary will proceed to annihilate it completely. But the believers have great strength too and can endure much, because God Himself will give them strength, because He strengthens them with His Word and because He will always be with those who defend Him and the faith before the world. You should tell people of this in advance, you should inform them of the coming battle of faith, you should tell them about the strength of faith and the strength of the believers whose leader in the battle against the world is Jesus Christ Himself .... And many from the opponent's side will join, many will become faithful in view of the things which take place .... For God Himself will work through His servants on earth in order to save what will not entirely oppose Him ....

Amen

# Childship to God ... Severe trials ...

***B.D. 2882 from September 14th 1943,  
taken from Book No. 37***

Earth, as a place for further spiritual education, has been chosen to shape people into the purest beings of light, into children of God, who can attain the highest degree of happiness and the beholding of God. The achievement of this degree is only possible on this earth. Although other works of creation are equally destined for the maturing of spiritual beings which are not perfect as yet, and their degree of maturity can still constantly be increased, the degree of childship to God can nevertheless only be attained by the soul on earth, on account of which people are also confronted by the full gravity of earthly life, and this is even harder the closer the soul is to its goal. The soul must be able to leave the earth in a totally purified state, spiritually reborn and in most heartfelt union with God. It must experience every trial, it must work and create with profound love for God and its fellow human beings, it must have surmounted all worldliness in order to enter the spiritual kingdom free and unburdened. Only a few people depart from this earth as perfected beings of light, and only a few people can behold God straight after their life on earth, for only a few become victorious over matter, because earthly life



always and forever makes its demands on people and this is one of the most powerful temptations which approaches a person. Time and again people must try to liberate themselves; time and again spiritual life must come to the fore, and every thought must be directed upwards. In order to attain the childship to God, God's grace must be able to be especially effective on people, a person must make constant use of the grace flowing to him without measure; he must accept everything that contributes towards purifying the soul, he must experience all suffering as grace and be grateful to God that His love has destined him for higher spheres and wants to draw him to Himself. Not many people can achieve such a high degree of maturity that God can send them even the harshest suffering without becoming disheartened .... These few, however, are blessed, even if their earthly life seems most difficult to bear for them .... Their marriage with God is the most beautiful reward awaiting such souls at their death, and for the sake of this the soul will patiently wait until its earthly end comes. All burdens and troubles, all suffering and sorrow seem small once it is released from its earthly cover, once it is able to behold God and has become the most blissfully happy being in the spiritual kingdom .... once it comes into its inheritance of the Father as God's child and works with Him in His will.

Amen

# Suitability for scrutinising spiritual gifts ....

***B.D. 2894 from September 24th 1943,  
taken from Book No. 37***

The result of inadequate research will always be negative when it concerns the scrutiny of spiritual products, since the will for rejection already predominates and this resolve is influenced by the opponent of truth. The will to advocate the truth once a person has realised it is absolutely essential for recognising the truth. Yet, precisely this will is lacking in him and, consequently, his reasoning power will be clouded and he will either be not suitable to examine or his judgment will no longer be reliable. Every serious examiner must undertake this task impartially; he must sincerely look for the truth and be willing to accept the recognised truth without prejudice. Then he will only reject that which he cannot inwardly affirm, and he will be supported by beings which want to help him know the truth and will guide his thinking correctly. For this reason, only people who do not follow a specific school of thought are suitable to examine spiritual results, otherwise their thinking is no longer unbiased, for the teachings intended to be scrutinised will clash with the doctrines of their school of thought and then it will require an exceptionally firm will in order to become completely free from the latter. And so the

most convinced followers are often gained amongst people whose thoughts are not committed to teachings of a different school of thought, because they will scrutinise everything without resistance and subsequently also penetrate deeper into the spiritual information offered to them and consequently also recognise it as truth, because the truth speaks for itself as long as it is not interspersed by error which clouds a person's understanding. Then the bearers of the pure truth and the followers of other schools of thought will, understandably, oppose each other, because the latter are convinced of their points of view and therefore don't examine other spiritual gifts seriously enough but, on the other hand, always feel affronted as soon as they are confronted with views which were offered from the spiritual kingdom. There will only ever be individual people with the will and the ability to scrutinise spiritual gifts, and therefore only a few people will recognise the truth in them. Nevertheless, the attempt should be made everywhere to persuade people to examine the gifts from above, so that people will take notice of them and that it will awaken their desire for truth which can also train their ability to weigh up the different points of view against each other and then choose that which is right. Then it will still remain up to a person's free will to form his own opinion of the spiritual gifts .... for he will not be forced by any means to accept or to reject them ....

Amen

# **The opponent's mask .... 'By their fruits ye shall know them ....'**

***B.D. 2904 from September 30th 1943,  
taken from Book No. 37***

Only divine influences can motivate the human being to act kindly, the forces from below will never teach a person to love or try to make him decide to live in a God-pleasing way. 'By their fruits ye shall know them ....' which powers people hand themselves over to. And this should suffice you, who are doubtful. Which spirit should teach you love if not God Himself? .... Love is divine and will therefore never be endorsed by beings which are averted from God .... And once love is taught and practiced the adversary's power will be broken, hence he would deprive himself of a weapon if, for the sake of a mask, he first tried to encourage actions of love; he himself would put the best means into people's hands to realise that he and his activity are averted from God .... But he tries to deceive people, to weaken their every power of judgment, and he indeed wraps the cloak of love around himself, he presents himself as good and noble and then influences people to act contrary to love .... He presents himself as a representative of good and only tries to attain advantages for himself and his own kind which,

however, are only purely earthly recognisable and are always achieved at the expense of other people. He does not urge people to accomplish works of love even though he approaches people under the guise of love .... Nor does he pursue spiritual goals, and thereby you also recognise the working from above or from below ....

As soon as the transformation of the innermost being into love is being taught you must acknowledge the divine origin and know that only messengers from heaven convey such teaching to you. For the human being redeems himself by means of love, by means of love he liberates himself from the control of God's adversary. He, however, tries to tie people to him again and impels them to commit the most heartless actions, he incites them to openly wage battle against God, against everything that is good, he tries to divert people's thoughts from doing good and only to strive for material things, and his influence aims to destroy everything that testifies to God and of God. And thus he first seeks to encourage people's selfish love, he will never preach neighbourly love to them .... for only in this way will he gain souls for himself. However, divine love reveals itself by teaching people unselfish love, by showing them the path which leads towards regaining the original state which consisted of the purest form of love .... And this is why everything that teaches love must be of divine origin, it must inevitably testify to God, because God Himself is love and He tries to lead everything that once had fallen away from Him back to Him, which is only possible if the human being

becomes love himself, wherefore the light beings' every effort applies only to one goal, to instruct people of the teaching of love and to help them to attain God ....

Amen

## **Keep death in mind ....**

***B.D. 2912 from October 6th 1943,  
taken from Book No. 37***

Imagine the hour of your death and ask yourselves whether you are well prepared for eternity .... Consider your relationship with God and how you have used the pound He has given you for your time on earth .... Ask yourselves whether you could stand before God's judgment seat, whether your earthly life is right with God, whether you have shown love, and whether you are ready to depart from earth at any hour without fear of having to give account to God .... Consider that your strength will also come to an end with death and that you cannot do anything by yourselves if you depart from this earth with an immature soul. Ask yourselves whether you are satisfied with yourselves and can depart from this world in peace .... And exercise the strictest self criticism, and after that make an effort to perfect yourselves ....

Make use of every day that is given to you, as long as you are on earth you can still achieve a lot. You have the

opportunity to purify yourselves even now, because you have the strength to do so and can increase it with actions of love .... Keep death in mind and recognise yourselves as a weak creature who cannot delay for an hour once God has determined your hour of death. And with deeply felt sincerity ask God for His mercy, for His grace, for His support, that He will give you His love and with His love also the strength which guarantees your ascent. Keep only this goal in mind, that you may awaken to eternal life when your earthly life is over, and then live in accord with this goal, carry out God's will and always think that every day could be your last day on earth .... Then you will prepare yourselves, you will live consciously and without fear pass across into the kingdom of peace, your true home ....

Amen

## **Atonement of guilt without Christ's act of Salvation ....**

***B.D. 2929 from October 17th 1943,  
taken from Book No. 37***

The extent of a human being's guilt remains unchanged if he does not acknowledge Christ's act of Salvation, i.e. he has to remove the guilt completely, he has to seriously

reflect on it entirely on his own .... he eternally has to make

Amends because the human being's guilt is immense .... It is not just a matter of sins he committed on earth, which alone would suffice to expel the soul for an infinitely long time from the face of God, but the past rebellion against God cannot be atoned during his earthly life and thus has to be carried across into eternity in order to find the Saviour there in due course. The being has to languish in darkness for eternity, it is forever without freedom and has to endure a state of most agonising constraint, for eternity it is without the divine light of mercy, it has distanced itself furthest from God and suffers most bitter hardship .... because it willingly defies God and cannot be forced to change its will. Thus it has to make

Amends for its guilt because it did not liberate itself of its own free will; but divine will cannot liberate it because this would be in complete contradiction to God's wisdom and love. Consequently the fallen soul punishes itself if it does not accept Salvation through Jesus Christ, if it refuses to acknowledge His sacrifice ....

All sins will be forgiven, all restriction of liberty will be taken from him and all atonement avoided when the human being places himself under the cross of Christ, when he allows himself to be redeemed by His blood, which Jesus Christ shed for all human beings and their guilt. He made this enormous sacrifice for love of humanity because He knew of the infinitely long path of



suffering in the beyond, He took pity on the beings' extreme hardship in the beyond, He wanted to lessen it, He wanted to atone the guilt in order to guide people towards eternal bliss, to give them everlasting happiness. Christ's death on the cross is the purchase price for eternal life and all guilt has been atoned by it .... Yet it is an unavoidable prerequisite .... that the human being acknowledges this act of Salvation so that his guilt will be part of the guilt Jesus Christ has paid for with His death on the cross .... Otherwise it will remain unchanged and after physical death taken across into the spiritual kingdom as a burden, which the being can never remove because it cannot find the strength to redeem itself. And therefore Jesus Christ is the only way to eternal life, there will be adversity without Him but salvation with Him .... without Him the human being is weak and his will opposes God, with Him he strives towards God and can receive his strength from Him, the increased willpower which Jesus had bought on the cross for him. And for this reason is Jesus Christ the Saviour of the world, the Saviour of all people who place their guilt and themselves at His feet, who faithfully entrust themselves to Him and request His help .... Jesus Christ had made the sacrifice on the cross for them so that they may be released from all guilt and sin ....

Amen

## **Blessings of the last**

# **days .... Death before the event .... The beyond ....**

***B.D. 3135 from May 28th 1944, taken from Book No. 41***

God will be merciful to those who still recognise their wrongdoing in time and distance themselves from it, but He will inflict severe punishment without mercy on those who are unyieldingly cruel, who have no compassion even for their fellow human beings and thus pass judgment on themselves through their unkindness. And the approaching time will testify of people's depravity, the most unimaginable means intended for destruction will be devised; and people will not hesitate to use these means to accomplish their plans, and humanity's despair will increase. The leaders, as well as their followers who agreed and supported their plans, will be held responsible for everything. For God is just and He passes judgment according to thoughts, words and deeds .... Nothing is hidden from Him; He looks into the human heart and every genuine emotion determines the amount of mercy at its disposal, that it is granted to him when the end has come .... For the end will come without fail .... It will be accelerated by people's behaviour and thus an era will come to an end that would not result in a better human generation even if God extended His patience and offered humanity many more opportunities to change

themselves. But they no longer make use of them and thus God will put an end to earthly life ....

This period of development was particularly gracious for humanity and could have sufficed completely for its salvation. Although God will support people until the end with remarkable gifts of grace they will be mostly ignored, just as everything in relation to God or the benefit of their own souls will generally not be taken notice of. Thus a longer stay on this earth would be inappropriate, that is, it will only benefit the body but not the immortal soul. Therefore the soul's earthly opportunity will be taken away, but it still has the assurance for further development in the beyond if it does not reject God's Word in the beyond too, and only if it loses its physical life before the Last Judgment, before the end of this earth, and is accepted into the realm of the beyond. Death before this event is even an exceptional mercy for the human being if he has not made his decision on earth. Afterwards in the beyond he will still find ample opportunity to be helpful and serve with love and in so doing continue his interrupted development, indeed he can even start it if he does not refuse to listen to helpful souls. In that case he can regress even further and return into most solid matter, after which he has to repeat the long earthly path before he can embody himself as a human being again. Thus God still has many blessings available before He destroys the old earth but He will not force people's will, and depending on how they accept His mercy they will derive

benefit for their souls .... they will remain empty and incapable on earth as well as in the beyond if they ignore and reject all blessings, or they will rapidly achieve higher development by readily allowing every gift of grace to take effect on themselves and thereby receive much more strength. For God is exceedingly gracious and merciful but also just, and He will give to people according to their will ....

Amen

## **Correctly used mental activity .... Will ....**

***B.D. 3137 from May 29th 1944, taken from Book No. 41***

Making correct use of the gift of intelligence is absolutely essential for the soul's higher development, since the human being was given intellect so that he can mentally process everything that exists and happens around him and thereby reach conclusions which consciously make him seek the eternally Divine. By using the intellect, free will becomes active in him, for a person will only want something if his intellect has portrayed the benefit of this volition to him, thus the will is always the result of thinking .... And the correct use of

intellect, i.e., to want what is good and to detest evil, must inevitably advance the soul's maturity. One cannot speak of correct use of intellect if the latter impels someone to behave badly; in that case the gifts of intellect are being misused. With serious and sensible deliberation, a person can easily recognise the activity of a wise creative Power which brought everything surrounding him into existence and that this creative Power continues to care for its creations. Once a person has come this far then the intellect will be able to persuade the will into making contact with this creative Power, for he has to regard himself as an independently thinking being, thus as His living creation, subsequently he also has to acknowledge the Creator as an equally thinking Being of supreme perfection, and this awareness is enough to establish a connection with the Creator.

Every human being can arrive at this conclusion if he uses his intellect in order to come closer to the truth. The fact that his mental activity will be correctly guided afterwards is this Creator's working as soon as the person has consciously established a connection with Him. However, the human being was given intellect in order to use it until the moment of contact, thus it was added to free will in order to enable the latter's move in the right direction which leads to the goal, to contact with God. The only condition is that a person must want what is good of his own volition, then his reasoning will invariably lead him to the goal. Thus the intellect has to be used for activating the will to consciously establish a connection

with God, yet prior to that this will must have made a decision in favour of God, otherwise the mental activity will have been used incorrectly by refraining from all serious deliberation and merely assessing the advantages and disadvantages of his surroundings and what takes place therein. In that case, he will not be making full use of the gift of reasoning and the result will be accordingly .... he will never reach the goal, instead he will always doubt or be mistaken, for he is influenced by good or evil forces according to his will. With earnest use, the mind can even change an ill-will, and this is indeed its task. For this reason the human being has to justify himself if he misuses the gift of intelligence, if he fails to use it for its actual purpose .... to come closer to the truth, which God does not withhold from anyone who seriously strives for it through earnest mental activity. With the right determination he will be extremely successful and after serious deliberation, he will also influence his determination to aim towards the same goal ....

Amen

## **God's intervention ... The end of the struggle ...**

***B.D. 3143 from June 1st 1944, taken***

## ***from Book No. 41***

The more the world becomes entangled in error the more it distances itself from God and the more heartless are the actions and thoughts of people who are worldly minded. And the increased unkindness also propels people into actions which surpass all previous happenings, and so people induce God's intervention themselves. People no longer realise that what they are doing is wrong. Global affairs will be steered into a direction for which no earthly solution can be found anymore, people's thinking is wrong and far removed from the truth, goodness will be persecuted and evil respected, and thus divine order will be revoked which is bound to result in a complete decline. And so the day which puts an end to the chaos comes ever closer, for the situation is so disastrous for humanity that God has set an end to it. And this end is approaching, the end of people raging against each other, the end of the war between nations which could never find God's approval because it is a battle for power which is not based on noble motives. People's hatred and heartlessness have given rise to it, yet they learn nothing in this battle, they have become more heartless than ever and their hate has deepened and manages to achieve such disgraceful deeds that they cannot be surpassed. And God will put a stop to this activity in a way that He shall thereby be recognised .... He will send a dreadful tribulation upon humankind which cannot be averted by their own will. He will terrify them and let them feel their own impotence because the

elements of nature will be unleashed, leaving people defenceless and at their mercy.

And this day will not be long in coming. It will arrive so suddenly and unexpectedly that it will cause sheer horror, it will only take hours and yet be of such drastic significance that everything will have changed afterwards and people will only gradually become aware of the disaster when they have realised the full extent of the divine intervention. For God wants to reveal Himself with His intervention, He wants to show them that He Himself will bring about the end because people cannot find an end, because they would rather tear each other apart than give in and bring the indescribable adversity to a close. And this is why the end will be different from how people imagine it, God will demonstrate His power and remove the weapons from the hands of the earthly rulers, He will decide, and the outcome of the war between the nations will disappoint those people who wanted to achieve with violence what they were not entitled to and who therefore shall recognise their helplessness. For it is God Who ultimately determines world events, even if human will thinks that it directs them. And God's wisdom also recognises the most effective means for people and uses it in order to control the chaos which is the result of heartlessness and therefore has to lead to the downfall if God Himself will not put an end to it.

And the period of war will be followed by a new time of conflict which, however, will not erupt for the sake of worldly power but for spiritual supremacy, because the



end is near and this spiritual battle will still have to be fought, the battle which concerns the faith in Jesus Christ, the divine Redeemer and His teaching ....

Amen

## **Unwritten law ... Love has grown cold ....**

***B.D. 3144 from June 2nd 1944, taken from Book No. 41***

It is an unwritten law that people should help each other, that the strong should help the weak, that adversity and misery should be alleviated and that everyone should give what the other person needs. And this unwritten law is no longer adhered to because earthly authorities do not sanction it. People only comply with what is forcibly demanded of them, and this is no act of neighbourly love, even though it is presented as kind-hearted activity. Only what a person does out of profound love and mercy for his fellow human being can be regarded by God as an act of neighbourly love. However, this inner impetus is missing in people because they no longer know love. Even the support they are expected to give to their fellow human being are activities which lack the true guiding principle .... This is lawfully applied love, not the kind of

love God had demanded of people, as it should be in order to shape God-like humans who will find the unification with God again. And yet, God has placed this law into people's hearts, for every person knows how he should behave in order to live a God-pleasing life on earth. However, the inner voice impelling him is hushed up, it is not listened to, and its admonitions gradually fade out until it is completely silent. And even if God's servants preach love to people, even if the blessing or harm of their way of life is made clear to them, they ignore these admonitions as well, they are only interested in their own wellbeing and go past their fellow human beings, their weakness and helplessness, unmoved, they are inwardly dead, the spark of love is smothered, they deteriorate into heartlessness and hatred and are capable of any actions which cause harm to other people's body and soul. This state will not change anymore; it will not change for the better unless God forcefully manifests Himself, unless He raises His voice so loudly that people will be overcome by fear and horror and seriously take stock of themselves and reconsider their way of life. They will not listen to the voice of the believers and of their own accord they cannot return to the path love. And since He does not want people to go astray who merely need an impetus in order to take stock of themselves, God Himself will appear. Love may not be excluded in life or humanity will approach total destruction. For once love has grown cold, God will be infinitely far away from the being He once brought into existence from His love. Heartlessness,

however, withdraws all strength from the being, and thus people will steer towards the abyss, towards destruction, if they disregard love, which is the fundamental substance of the divine work of creation. Where love does not exist, God cannot be present .... But God is the Preserver of all things, and without Him and His strength His works of creation will dissolve, including the Earth and with it every creature, as soon as love disappears from it, as soon as the human being has become so heartless that God will withdraw His love from him, because as pure Love He can only be present where love exists ....

Amen

## **Intervention by God ....**

***B.D. 3151 from June 7th 1944, taken from Book No. 41***

The incomprehensible is about to happen .... God Himself will speak to people in a way which will generate fear and horror. This time will soon be here, for humanity can no longer expect consideration seeing that it is completely devoid of love. It will start the ball rolling itself, it will give rise to the intervention itself, for it constantly violates God's commandments, the commandment of love for God and one's neighbour. And it scrupulously

carries out satanic actions which are bound to lead to ruin if God does not intervene and thereby still save souls who find their way to Him in adversity. And this is the sign of the time which God proclaimed long in advance, that the end of the preceding bitterly fierce battle will be determined by God because He wants to reveal Himself and His power. He Himself will terminate the conflict, yet differently than people expect .... Through His intervention, which consequently is of decisive importance for the whole world, He will steer worldly events in a different direction. People will have to realise that they are powerless and that a higher Power conducts global affairs. And they will have to bow to this Power .... The adversity, which human will had already made almost unbearable for many people, will be severe; yet then they will have to struggle with tribulations sent to them by God Himself and cannot revolt against them because they cannot hold anyone responsible for it.

Yet people's conduct prior to this cannot be called human anymore, and thus God will reveal His might to them .... Where people previously wanted to demonstrate their power and brutally proceeded against their fellow human beings, that is where God will show Himself in His actions, and compared to Him all are weak and defenceless and their shameful rage will fall back onto those who mercilessly only want to cause destruction simply because they feel powerful. No-one can possibly imagine the ensuing chaos once people's unbridled feelings of hatred and vengeance break through, and this

destructive will signifies the disintegration of that which God the Lord created before it has reached its goal. People of the present time are typified by their constant will of destruction which is a sign that they are enslaved by the power which tries to obliterate everything in order to prevent the souls from drawing closer to God. People are not aware that the violent destruction of created things, be they human, animal or solid matter, has terrible consequences, how the immature spiritual substances within rage and wreak havoc and what turmoil this signifies in the spiritual kingdom. They pester and detrimentally affect people's souls and even the believers feel their influence and become disheartened and discouraged. A mighty will must therefore put an end to it for the sake of the spiritual beings which endeavour to approach God and are supposed to be diverted by God's adversary through his compliant servants on earth.

And this is why God's voice will resound immediately after the implementation of a plan which will exceed every atrocity ever devised by people. There is only a little time left, first a horrifying event has to take place for the whole world to pay attention to in order to hear God's voice even more clearly. Many victims will yet have to fall prey, i.e., they will have to sacrifice their lives for a dishonest cause so that those people in need of coming to their senses will pay heed, for they all contribute towards the chaos and thus are also partly to blame if they don't realise the injustice and stop supporting it. The divine voice always and forever admonishes and warns, it

points out wrong-doing to everyone yet it also demands to be heeded or else it will resound with a voice of thunder to everyone's horror and pass judgment according to law and justice.

For the blame rests with everyone and only those can be acquitted who detest humanity's behaviour and want to belong to God, for they recognise the injustice and fear and know that the wrath of God will strike the evil-doers .... And the hour will come suddenly and unexpectedly, for it is the last great blessing before the end, so that anyone will still be converted who doesn't live carelessly and recognises God in the natural disaster, which is inevitable in accordance with God's will ....

Amen

## **Activity of love ... Duty ... Disguise of light ...**

***B.D. 3156 from June 12th 1944,  
taken from Book No. 41***

Wisdom and love are divine and will therefore never be found where God's adversary is at work. Nevertheless, he, too, will want to conceal himself behind a cloak of wisdom and love, and spiritually blind people will not recognise that a mere fabrication aims to conceal the

true face of the one whose activity in the world intends to ruin people. Yet the spiritually illuminated person will recognise his game of deceit, and thus it is his task to unmask God's adversary, to expose that which is adverse to God and to enlighten people about his underhanded activity. Love will be pretended where the true nature is unkindness, and wisdom will be feigned by those without knowledge .... And thus the activity of the dark power is to dispel all brightness in order to cast people into profound darkness. Loving activity should be selfless, it should be a sacrifice, but it should be performed of one's own accord without any external compulsion, for only then can it be judged to be an activity of love, otherwise they would be imposed duties which are certainly acknowledged on earth but before God only the activity of the human being's free will is of value. For only love redeems .... And this love will also bring forth wisdom which, however, can never be found where love is compensated for by duty. For this reason the implementation of an action must inevitably reveal heartfelt love if a human being's knowledge is to be recognised as knowledge which corresponds to the truth, as divine wisdom. Where one does not exist the other cannot be either. And therefore the knowledge imparted to people has to be seriously scrutinised, for someone opposed to God, someone who wants to lead people into misguided thinking and impels them into heartlessness will use such means which shine a deceptive light by simulating the divine and thereby causing serious psychological damage to people. And they don't recognise him, they thoughtlessly accept what

they are being offered and he uses his followers to influence other people in the same way as he influences them .... so that they, under the disguise of love and wisdom, behave and teach the opposite .... so that they force themselves to act with love and spread error amongst people .... It will remain a constant battle between light and darkness, and anyone who is enlightened shall fight against the darkness; anyone enlightened shall let his light shine and make corrections where people have been taught wrongly. And neither should someone enlightened shy away from taking an open stand against the activity under the mask of light and piety, he should call for a genuine activity of love and explain to people the pointlessness of a forcibly implemented activity of love, he should convey the wisdom he received from God, which enlightened his spirit as a result of unselfish actions of love. For love and wisdom will always have to lead to God, but if people are not in contact with God they possess neither love nor wisdom, and if it appears like that before the world then it will only be the mask of the one who opposes God and tries to spread unkindness and untruth amongst humanity. And you should openly declare war on him, for you can be assured of God's support, Whose instructions you live up to by teaching divine love, which alone results in wisdom ....

Amen



# Assessing religious dogma ... Divisions ...

***B.D. 3159a from June 16th 1944,  
taken from Book No. 41***

Few people understand the value of divine revelations and thus rarely accept the messages unconditionally .... Consequently, numerous opportunities are not utilised which results in limited knowledge and often deadlock where progress could have been made. People's spiritual ignorance could be resolved, their state of darkness could be turned into enlightenment, and yet they prefer the night and shun the light, they are still in opposition to the world of light which caringly gives to everyone who places their trust in it. This is due to a lack of faith in God's mercy and His willingness to help people when they are in need. Nevertheless it is a proven need and consists of the fact that countless misconceptions prevent people from understanding God correctly, from loving Him and from revealing this love by gladly helping other people. This need consists of a dead faith which will fail when it is tested, because when the human being has to make a serious decision he can only stay committed if he is firmly convinced that his knowledge and faith are more valuable than what opposes him. For this reason faith and knowledge have to concur, i.e. whatever a person should believe has to be credible and

reveal wisdom when he seriously reflects on it. God does not demand to believe something that he could not accept after serious consideration. Whatever appears to be unacceptable, whatever - after serious examination - lacks wisdom, has to be a human addition to what God has demanded to believe.

However, the credibility of dogma is apparent by the love it emanates, by God's love for everything He has created; consequently, love and wisdom indicate a divine being which cares for His living creations. And thus every religious doctrine can initially be assessed from this perspective. It has to be said that anyone willing to teach is first of all duty bound to make such an assessment, since he should only teach what he himself has identified as truth. This prerequisite is usually disregarded and for that reason alone significantly supports the spread of errors. Every teacher has to be fully convinced of what he teaches. And conviction can only be gained after serious assessment. Then the teacher can safely pass on what he has recognised as true to people who are less able to make such an assessment but who, if taught correctly, nevertheless can know that the teaching is credible because it confirms God's love and wisdom to them. Those who genuinely want to evaluate dogma will not lack the ability to think if they want to know the truth, on condition that the examiner also lives within love, otherwise he cannot represent the truth but has to represent errors and lies since, due to his unkindness, he has given himself to the one who fights against God.

In view of this it is understandable that and why an initially pure and unadulterated teaching given to people has been considerably changed, why it was not possible for written records to remain authentic, because serious assessment of their credibility and truth was evaded by the demand to categorically believe everything that was being taught. Pure truth will stand up to any kind of investigation and thus remain unchanged. But divisions occurred in due course, different schools of thought and their individual doctrines constantly offered the opportunity of comparison, and had they been compared with divine wisdom and love, every serious examiner could have known which doctrines were human work and should have been denounced as misguided beliefs. Consequently, the people who were capable of verifying the truth but failed to do so and unscrupulously passed on doctrines which on closer examination they should have rejected, are mostly to blame and will also be held accountable. As a result they had spread errors and lies.

However, there have always been people who, of their own accord, had undertaken such assessments and as reformers tried to change the old doctrines. And again, it depended on their degree of maturity how much they were living in truth and could convey it as such .... Hence, time and again human beings had been given the opportunity to form an opinion about religious doctrines, since due to the disputes between different schools of thought, due to the divisions within the church, they were made aware of the different teachings but nevertheless it

was demanded that they had to be believed. Now the intellect and the heart had to become active if an evaluation were to be carried out, and that required the person's will and his desire to know the truth. Every follower of a doctrine supports his doctrine and yet different doctrines cannot claim to be the truth as there is only one truth. And every human being should endeavour to acquire this truth .... Thus it is indeed absolutely essential for a human being to form a personal opinion about every religious instruction otherwise it cannot ever become his spiritual possession even if he supports it with words. But then such words are not an innermost conviction, since conviction absolutely necessitates mental deliberation and this thought process can only be correctly guided by appealing to the divine spirit.

However, if teachers offer the pure truth a person will find it much easier to gain inner conviction if he reflects on it himself, while it takes a stronger will and desire for truth to identify misguided teachings as wrong. And this is why the teacher is wholly responsible if he, due to his own indifference or negligence, fails to carry out an assessment and spreads spiritual information of which he is not completely convinced himself. For if he has offered himself for teaching work he may only teach what he himself - after serious assessment - considers to be acceptable, otherwise he sins against those who believe to receive wisdom from him and whom he urges into wrong thinking with misguided teachings. Furthermore, it

is his duty to encourage people to evaluate the teachings too so that they, in turn, may gain conviction, or a living faith, and become able to differentiate between error and truth ....

Amen

## **Assessing religious dogma ... Divisions ...**

***B.D. 3159b from June 17th 1944,  
taken from Book No. 41***

Intellectual knowledge acquired by the human being without prayer to God for spiritual enlightenment is incomplete and therefore cannot be described as consistent. Hence there can still be unsolved issues and these in particular give cause to doubt because different supporters also explain them differently. It is now self-evident that the different results also have to be assessed by anyone who only wants to accept the truth. Human knowledge is never above reproach, and that controversial issues always relate to human knowledge, human interpretations, is obvious from the fact that it is disputed, because pure truth originating from God is always the same and will never show different results.

A person without good will and a desire for truth will

receive God's transmitted truth incorrectly as his thoughts are subject to evil influences which confuse him and render the truth incomprehensible; on the other hand, a person who genuinely strives for truth also questions misguided knowledge. It does not give him complete assurance of truth and thus he evaluates it, provided he is not prohibited to do so and unconditional acceptance is demanded of him which is, however, at all times and without question Satan's doing. For it will never be an injustice before God to sincerely seek the truth, and that the human being should form an opinion of what is presented to him as truth is part of it. Nor should the human being be guided by other people's idea of truth but form his own judgment, particularly when he is expected or offers himself to distribute knowledge and teach other people.

God does not deny His help to the human being who humbly asks for His mercy, but whether the highly respected dignitary of the world or the scientist holding a worldly elevated position, be it in a spiritual or secular office, bends himself in deepest humility before God as the sole Provider of truth and thus complies with the first condition for its receipt has to be doubted, if his teachings do not offer flawless explanations or are in contradiction to each other. Error exists for as long as there are divisions and different interpretations because there is only one truth, and to ascertain this truth the human being will have to make contact with the eternal Deity Himself, he will have to ask Him for spiritual

enlightenment and by a God-pleasing way of life become worthy of being taught by Him directly .... However, God knows how and in which way He shall teach the human being who strives and prays for truth but the end result will always be pure truth since it is God's will that His living creations shall live in truth, hence He also enlightens them in accordance with their will ....

Amen

## **Blessing of exchanging ideas ....**

***B.D. 3160 from June 17th 1944,  
taken from Book No. 41***

The exchange of spiritual thoughts will always benefit the striving for truth, for only those who genuinely desire the latter will entertain such an exchange of ideas and thus will also be supported and advised by the spiritual forces which are mediators of mental knowledge that corresponds to truth. And these forces will always and forever support the human being, they increase his knowledge and motivate his will to make use of this knowledge, which always signifies spiritual progress. The beings of light also bring spiritual aspirants together to provide them with the opportunity to exchange ideas.

And questions as well as answers will be posed and offered at the behest of these beings of light, which participate in people's trains of thought and raise the subject which people consider important to know. Beings of light particularly gladly look after those people who listen to their whisperings, that is, those who themselves enjoy **such** conversations which are of spiritual origin, for then they will be able to give them unlimited information, they will be able to instruct in the form of a dialogue, the contents of which is always adapted to the human being's state of maturity. And the involved parties will always derive benefit for their souls from this, for every gift offered to people by the beings of light is an illumination of strength from God which has to have a constructive and knowledge-increasing effect. The beings of light will always be people's advisors as long as they merely desire the pure truth and their correct attitude towards God motivates their spiritual conversations. A higher degree of maturity has to be the inevitable result, for once the mental knowledge has been accepted it will also stimulate the person to use it for himself or for his fellow human being, and both mean spiritual progress. Spiritual conversations should therefore frequently take place, they are, after all, not the mental results of the individual person but transfers of strength from the spiritual kingdom, which will always result in an increase of spiritual substance, for anything that comes from the spiritual kingdom directly enters the human soul and increases its spiritual substance. Thus it is an influx of strength which must lead to the human



being's higher development. The exchange of ideas is also a form of instruction from the spiritual kingdom, but it is not always appreciated as such, since the human being does not always recognise the origin of the thoughts which are spoken, even though he ought to realise that people are always surrounded by beings of light as soon as a spiritual question is being discussed, provided that people have the serious intention to reach God and make every effort to recognise Him. To those He sends His messengers, they bring light on His instructions to all those who pose questions to God or to each other. For every exchange of thoughts is a matter of question-and-answer which, depending on the desire for truth, will also be truthful yet only be recognised as truth if prior to such exchange of thoughts the human beings appeals in heartfelt prayer for God to enlighten his spirit ....

Amen

## **Afflictions and trials are means to attain perfection ....**

***B.D. 3163 from June 20th 1944,  
taken from Book No. 41***

The trials and affliction imposed on a human being are

rarely recognised as a means to attain highest perfection. God knows every individual person's degree of maturity, He knows their hearts, and He truly does not miss the slightest movement which speaks for or against Him. And therefore He also knows which degree of development each human can still reach, and accordingly He will bestow suffering or strokes of fate upon the person if the possibility still exists to thereby raise the soul's maturity. Before its embodiment as a human being the soul knew full well what would happen to it during its life on earth, it entered its final embodiment in full agreement by hoping it would emerge from it victoriously. It beheld its pleasures as well as its sufferings on its path of life and yet did not let them frighten it from going, since, on the other hand, it also knew of God's help and His grace and foresaw the possibility to completely outgrow matter and dispose of its shell for good. For this reason so many a soul accepts a particularly difficult earthly fate, because it also foresaw the consequences of a correctly lived earthly life and knows the final goal and deems it reachable. Yet in earthly life it loses its past awareness, and therefore it fails to make use of the opportunities and is in danger of not reaching its goal. And therefore God provides it with help by creating opportunities on earth which enable the soul to mature fully. And then the human being will have to surmount greater opposition, as suffering and sadness are given to him on earth for which he has to appeal to God for strength in order to overcome them. A life without battle would always keep him at the same stage of development and he would have lived his

life in vain. It is not that he has to atone for his sins on earth, like it is wrongly taught, but it only matters that he moves from the abyss, in which he still finds himself, to higher spheres, that he transforms himself into a being of light, that he works at improving himself by discarding everything which still prevents him from receiving an undreamt of abundance of light.

He must effectively purify a still opaque shell through suffering and misery, he must remove every impurity from it so that the light will then be able shine through it, for this purification has to take place of a person's own will, it cannot be implemented by God without the human being's will. Suffering and love are the only means to be cleansed from all impurities, and a great extent of suffering is the expression of great divine love at the same time, which wants to help the person to become such that God can make him infinitely happy in eternity. Sorely afflicted people on earth are therefore especially seized by His love, even though it seems incomprehensible to them. Life on earth is short compared to eternity, and one day the soul will look back with gratitude and praise on its short time on earth in which the suffering resulted in its higher maturity which it would never have attained without suffering. A person on earth has immeasurable blessings at his disposal so that he can endure even the worst suffering if, in heartfelt prayer, He draws strength from God, for He has assured him of this. He will let no-one leave Him without having strengthened him who confides his adversity to

Him in firm faith so that He can and will help him. For the suffering is never greater than the One Who imposes it, Who has truly enough power to help people in every need. Therefore, always keep His love, wisdom and omnipotence in mind if you are burdened by severe suffering and you will feel comforted and patiently wait for His help ....

Amen

## **Course of life predetermined depending on will ....**

***B.D. 3176 from June 30th 1944,  
taken from Book No. 41***

The human being's course of life corresponds to the soul's state of maturity at the time of its embodiment on earth, that means, God so delineated its earthly life that it provides the soul with the best possibility for higher development. If the human being has the interest of his soul at heart he will indeed make use of every opportunity and reach his goal while he is still on earth, he will adapt himself to the eternal Deity by living a way of life according to God's will. But he can also let all opportunities pass by without making use of them, and

this signifies spiritual standstill, a deficiency in his development. And this shortcoming shall be balanced out again, therefore life often makes great demands on him which require all his strength if he wants to comply with them. He is effectively offered another opportunity to practise neighbourly love insofar as something is expected of him which requires all his will but which presupposes helpful neighbourly love. If he lives up to these requirements he must activate his will and work for the benefit of his fellow human beings. And this activity can lead to the soul's maturity, because its driving force is neighbourly love and this is the most effective means to attain maturity of soul. If the human being practises neighbourly love from an early age, he will use every opportunity offered to him for his spiritual advancement, for then he will also brightly and clearly recognise the meaning and purpose of his earthly existence.

If, however, he is half-hearted and sluggish and if his heart is hardened towards his fellow human beings' suffering, then he will also let every possibility for development pass by, he will only think of himself and ignore his fellow human beings' hardship, then he will also live in complete ignorance of his actual task on earth and therefore will not consciously strive to ascend. It is possible that the soul, prior to its incarnation as a human being, can already have been exceedingly willing, and this willingness led to its earthly life in which it can attain a very high spiritual level, for according to its will God provides it with the opportunity to become active.

Thus the human being will find life relatively easy insofar as his soul will not offer resistance but willingly strive to fulfil the commandments of God because it receives strength as a result of its willingness. For it is the strength of love which results in activity of love again. A willing soul does not resist carrying out loving deeds because love dwells within it and because a loving heart will constantly stimulate loving activity. And therefore he will be offered an abundance of opportunities, regardless of how he uses them. The less a person resists his inner urges the sooner the soul will mature, for then it will be constantly driven to carry out deeds of love, and thus the soul gradually changes into love, it complies with its task on earth, and every experience contributes towards its higher development. For the soul's earthly life is predetermined depending on its will, which it can therefore cover with great success .... so that it will attain the maturity on earth which allows it to enter the kingdom of light immediately after its physical death ....

Amen

## **God permits the battle of faith ....**

***B.D. 3184 from July 9th 1944, taken from Book No. 42***

People will experience serious psychological conflicts as a result of worldly laws, and this time is not far away. They will be required to openly declare their faith, and God allows this to happen because it is necessary that people should give serious thought to the question of their salvation which they had disregarded so far. He allows them to be put under pressure by the earthly power, to experience serious difficulties due to their faith, so that they have to make a clear decision regarding their belief. He allows every human being his freedom, that is, God will not force anyone to acknowledge Him if he is not warned by his inner voice to remain loyal to God and thus feels the inner urge to confess Him before the world. God will indeed allow this inner voice and observer to speak where there is still doubt and the human being is weak-willed. He will help all those who are hitherto undecided, He will send them devout people and through them touch their hearts, He will come close to everyone in His Word, in suffering and in need; He will reveal Himself to them, and with the good intention to recognise God and to fulfil His will a human being will also know how he should decide, because then the beings of light, who care for him, will also guide his thoughts right. But many people will discard what should be their most precious possession .... their faith in Jesus Christ as the divine Saviour ....

They will choose the world without hesitation and cause serious distress to their souls. And God cautions them in advance by confronting them Himself through His

servants .... by teaching them to know the strength of faith and thus giving them remarkable evidence which can result in faith if they are not entirely opposed to God. And for that reason He will allow the battle against the faith, He will allow it to assume shapes which indicate the depravity of people because He Himself wants to speak during this time in order to save those people who need a convincing reason to believe. Therefore He will not prevent the earthly power when it openly advances against people who confess God. And then people are forced to make a decision, and this decision is vitally important for the souls as it will determine the soul's fate in eternity, whether it will awaken to life or to death after it departs from this earth. To help people make the right decision God will try beforehand to make them understand, He will try to influence them through His earthly and spiritual servants who will help them if they are uncertain what they should do. But He will not force their will and therefore it is necessary that people are compelled by earthly means to make a decision in order that the freedom of their actions is guaranteed ....

Amen

**Love is the most effective  
weapon against evil ....**



## ***B.D. 3187 from July 11th 1944, taken from Book No. 42***

The human being's most powerful weapon against all evil is love .... Anyone in possession of love is protected by God Himself, because He dwells in him and truly everything must give way to His power. Evil takes flight from this weapon or allows itself to be overcome. For love is its most effective foe which it cannot bear up against. Love subjugates everything that comes into contact with it, if it does not visibly escape from it. This is why love will always be a person's most effective weapon; he will always be successful in battle and need not fear anything if he uses this weapon to fight with .... This should be heeded during every situation in life, during every dispute and above all during the final time of battle, when love itself will come under attack. For God's adversary will very strongly insist that even kind-hearted activity should be suppressed and thus made impossible to accomplish. He will put pressure on people into passing laws which will restrain the kind-hearted actions expected by God. He will not shy away from using people to declare something to be wrong, which alone corresponds to God's will, he will demand unkindness where God requests actions of love, because he can only triumph over people if they no longer use this weapon of love. And this denotes a great danger for the human soul which must be fought against completely consciously. Therefore God admonishes people to continuous kind-

hearted activity, He explains to them the blessings and the strength a person can draw from constant actions of love. He must not let himself be misled by secular laws and only ever do what his heart tells him to do, for without love he will descend into darkness and the adversary will have reached his goal .... Love is divine, and he who remains in love carries God within himself and need not fear any power, regardless of how much it threatens him. He who remains in love inwardly resists the intentions of the world which is governed by the adversary. And this resistance cannot be broken by anyone, for the adversary's power is too weak to affect the strength of love. Love may not be banished or it would mean total downfall. Only those who love will live; heartlessness, however, will inevitably result in the soul's death. It is the adversary's intended goal to pull all the soul's striving towards the light into darkness. But he has no power over the one who lives a life of love, and he who lives in love shall also give love to his neighbour, so that he will recognise the strength of love and likewise strive for it by practising love wherever the opportunity presents itself to him. Only someone having shaped himself into love will be strong in the coming time. He will not be afraid of anything, he will try to balance each onslaught with love and he will erect a wall around himself which no-one will be able to pull down. Love is the mightiest factor on earth, it is the key to wisdom, it is the bridge into eternal life, it is the guarantee for God's love, and thus it also signifies light and strength, and both are life .... enabling the soul to be active in all wisdom for

all eternity. Only love leads to the goal, only through love will the soul in the human being attain the original state again, only love brings God closer to him and may therefore never be excluded. And at no time ever should people give in to the laws which inhibit their activity of love and which is therefore always the work of the one who, as God's adversary, is devoid of all love and therefore fights against it ....

Amen

## **The adversary's mask ....**

***B.D. 3191 from July 16th 1944, taken from Book No. 42***

People allow themselves to become beguiled by the adversary's mask and do not recognise his game of deceit. For this reason he is gaining ground everywhere since God does not set him a limit as long as the human being himself grants him power over his will. But he is using this power in every respect by means of increasingly bigger works of deception in order to mislead people. They could certainly see through it if they were striving for righteousness and justice .... But such endeavour is the last thing on their mind, everyone is merely interested in themselves and their advantage and no-one questions to what extent the next person has the same right. It is

selfish love by which the human being delivers himself to the opponent and which also blinds and disables him to become conscious of his activity. But if the human being himself does not resist he will fall prey to this control and all clarity of thought will be lost to him. Because the goal of God's opponent is to confuse people's thoughts so that they will increasingly fall away from God and become unable to withdraw from his lure by themselves, that he will rage and unreservedly pull them into ruin without meeting any resistance, because only the human will is decisive and this is too weak. (Because) The adversary represents the world and therefore is a friend of those who are attached to the world.

But he is approaching under the cover of piety, and thus people allow themselves to be beguiled by him. He feigns goodness to them but his actions are evil, since he propels people into heartlessness, into self interest, into pursuit of earthly wealth, into increased physical comfort, and all this is a decline of the soul's development, it is a disregard for the real purpose of earthly life, the maturing of the soul. And people do not recognise it because they are enslaved by the power which aims to separate them from God. Yet even this enemy of souls takes the name of God in his mouth, he wears this cloak in order to remain unknown, and his cunning is successful and puts untold people under his spell. But woe unto them when his cunning is revealed, when the mask drops and his true face appears .... Then they can only save themselves from his power with great

difficulty, for they had left Him, Who is Lord of all creation, Who can redeem the human being whose will is willing to be redeemed. But the enemy's cunning consists of first removing a person's belief in the help of the divine Redeemer as well as in His Divinity Itself. And those who are spiritually blind will follow his banner and voluntarily separate themselves from their soul's Saviour. Humanity, however, does not recognise the dark power's activity, it sees light where there is utmost darkness, because making believe that there is light even though it is darkest night is also an act of Satan's deception. And they flee the true light and do not accept the cautions and warnings which are given to them by the appointed messengers .... They worship an idol whose power in fact merely consists of weakening the human will but who is powerless when this will turns towards God.

And you will recognise this idol by the fact that he will not do anything to increase your faith in a loving, wise and all-powerful God. That the name of God will indeed come forth from his mouth, but he will not give him authority by deliberately calling on Him, that he will ignore love and for this reason is far removed from God, the eternal love, that he will not acknowledge Jesus Christ, the divine Redeemer, and thus he is an obvious opponent of Him, who will put humanity, which is in need of redemption, into bondage once again if it follows him and puts itself under his banner ....

Amen

# **Scrutiny of spiritual results by worldly researchers ....**

***B.D. 3192 from July 18th 1944, taken  
from Book No. 42***

Worldly acquired knowledge is not sufficient in order to act as a spiritual teacher. And therefore people cannot be called upon for scrutiny or clarification of spiritual scriptures or results if they only possess purely worldly knowledge and then entirely rationally try to ascertain what kind of value should be attached to these spiritual results. Such intended dissemination will always be unsuccessful, because spiritual knowledge can only be gained under certain preconditions, but without knowledge such scrutiny is not possible. However, if these preconditions are met on part of the examiners, then the same preconditions apply again to those who are interested in the results of the scrutiny. These preconditions are: sincere striving for God, for truth and for living a way of life according to divine will, for a life of love .... In that case, however, the human being need no longer investigate but God Himself will guide him into truth .... He will not need earthly knowledge and will still become knowledgeable, the spiritual sphere will be normal and familiar to him, he will not consider it

outlandish as a critic and researcher; instead, he will live in this kingdom himself which will no longer belong to the material world but will be purely spiritual. Anyone who wants to investigate the spiritual kingdom can only do so if he completely hands himself over to God and puts the world second. But anyone who purely scientifically tries to examine spiritual subjects as a matter of worldly striving will not come to any results; the area will remain unfamiliar to him, he will purely gather existing results but never provide a truthful explanation because he lacks all conviction himself, which he can only gain by seriously striving for truth without any material or worldly interests. For this reason the world will be unable to employ teachers who research occult fields and pass on their knowledge, for this would be a purely intellectual activity without involving the heart. But spiritual areas can only be investigated by way of the heart. Although the intellect is not entirely excluded, the mental knowledge is conveyed to him from the heart, and this activity of heart requires great love, which not every worldly researcher has. If people therefore believe that they can scientifically fathom knowledge which originates from God, they will always have to take incorrect results into account, for the divine truth, the knowledge about spiritual things, is not a commodity which everyone can lay claim to who does not pay the correct purchase price for it ....

God truly will not deny it to any person, yet the striving for God, for highest realisation, for perfection, must drive

the person to obtain this knowledge. Then people will be able to achieve greatest success if they pass the gained knowledge on to their fellow human beings with the same aspiration to help them attain maturity of soul. God will always and forever remain the Provider of truth, and God looks into the hearts of people who strive towards it and distributes His gifts of grace according to worthiness and desire .... His spirit descends upon those who love Him and strive to live according to His will. Consequently, these conditions must have been fulfilled first before the human spirit can become enlightened and clearly recognise the correlation between the eternal Deity, Creation and the living beings, and thus can derive knowledge from it which he can also advocate as truth and pass on to his fellow human beings. But such a person will not pursue earthly goals; he will not try to acquire earthly success, honour and fame through his knowledge but only conduct spiritual research for the sake of the pure truth, and if he wants to pass it on to his fellow human being then only as a result of an inner urge to also give him the happiness he does not yet possess. However, the worldly interested investigator will never ever attain the right realisation .... His result will always remain patchwork, he will add to already existing mental knowledge, he will intellectually try to find a connection and he will be mistaken as long as he does not have God as a teacher, but He will not enlighten him as long as he still belongs to the world. For the spiritual kingdom is subject to laws which are impossible for the beings of light to violate, but which they do not want to violate



either since their will acts entirely in accordance with divine will. The laws must be complied with both by the Giver as well as the taker, and one of these laws is: Nothing can be achieved without God but everything with Him .... God, however, is love .... Subsequently, someone who wants to be taught by God must strive towards Him with all senses, and to strive towards God means to be active with love. Hence it will never ever be possible to penetrate the truth without love .... And if the worldly investigator is not lovingly active, his thoughts cannot correspond to truth either, because it contradicts the divine law, the requirements God expects of a person and which he must first meet without fail, before the pure truth can be offered to him. And even if he comes across this pure truth in his research, if he scrutinises the knowledge that was conveyed to devout people through God's love .... he will not recognise it as truth, because his thinking is still clouded by the influences of the enemy of truth, to whom he grants power over himself through his lack of love.

God is Truth, and only through love can it be found. Even if the human being searches and investigates incessantly, he will not reach the goal by intellectual means and will therefore also be completely incapable of offering truthful results to his fellow human beings. His points of view will not be convincing and will give rise to doubts and arguments as soon as they form a serious opinion of them. Conclusions can certainly be drawn from existing spiritual information, so that a spiritual kingdom, the

activity of spiritual beings, cannot be denied; nevertheless, in order to penetrate the spiritual realm, the knowledge of it is not enough if the preconditions are not in place which allow the human being's soul to enter the spiritual realm. This sphere can therefore never ever become the subject of worldly research, and worldly research is everything that is approached without heartfelt devotion to God, without unselfish acts of love in order to gain possession of the truth, in order to explain a field so that it will be completely clear to humanity and on which a solid teaching can be based, so that therefore the gained knowledge can be structured in a way so that it is accessible to humanity and enriches its knowledge. This will never be possible, for the spiritual kingdom remains closed to those who do not seek God deep within their heart and testify to this through their love for Him and their neighbour ....

Amen

## **The inner voice ....**

***B.D. 3199 from July 25th 1944, taken from Book No. 42***

Listen to the voice of your heart, it will show you the right way. A person's will is often undecided which proves that he is influenced by different spiritual forces which want

to win him over for them. At this time the person must make a decision; he must not remain indecisive but ought to turn his will in one direction, and then he should pay attention to the inner voice which wants to advise him to use his will correctly. The more diligently he aspires to take the right path, the more clearly he will perceive this voice. Then it will warn him during temptations, it will strengthen his resistance, it will admonish him and always faithfully tell him if the person is in danger of wanting to take his own paths which don't entirely correspond to God's will. But it is almost imperceptibly faint in those who live their life unscrupulously, who care little about right and wrong. And frequently it will be silenced completely because the person fails to listen and the gentle voice will be drowned out by the voice of the world. In that case, the human being will be in great danger, he must make his own decisions and is more likely to allow himself to be determined by ungodly forces and he will act accordingly. A person with the will to live a good life, thus to live according to God's will, is never left without spiritual guidance, he will be guided, his thoughts will be directed, i.e., although his freedom of will is not being curtailed, the thoughts will come so close to him that he has to accept them if he does not consciously reject them. And if he is weak-willed the spiritual forces will try twice as hard to convey their thoughts to him and he will merely need to listen within, i.e., the human being need only enter into a silent dialogue with himself, and he will be mentally clearly instructed as to what he should or shouldn't do.

However, people often don't remain in this short contemplation, their thoughts fly all over the place, one moment here, one moment there, and this results in indecision, in hesitation, both in regards to good as well as to evil .... For this reason you are admonished time and again to pay attention to the voice of the heart, so that you will act clearly and determinedly and not digress from the right path. An indecisive resolve offers God's adversary an excellent target, for this is the start of his control over the former, and every temptation confronts the will with a decision to be for or against it. If, however, the person pays attention to his inner voice he will not have to fight for long, he will resist the temptation since he will be supported by the forces of light as soon as he pays attention to them and complies with their admonitions. Then he will also grow in strength, for his will entitles the beings of light to give him strength, whereas a lack of will prevents them from doing so. For no human being receives strength against his will, although the beings of light are concerned for the human being's soul with utmost love. Yet their activity is subject to divine law as well, which respects free will first and foremost. The inner voice, however, is only audible to someone who voluntarily listens within, and therefore it can never be considered coercion, it can be heard or ignored, it can be complied with but also disregarded, all depending on the person's will. It merely gently admonishes and warns the person, it assists the weak and guides the undecided; it will never push itself to the fore but will only be heard by someone who listens. But he

will be guided correctly and able to live his life without worry, for if he complies with the voice of his heart he will also know that he conducts himself correctly and lives in accordance with God's will ....

Amen

## **Total change earthly and spiritually ....**

***B.D. 3204 from July 29th 1944, taken from Book No. 42***

Extensive changes are at hand in the physical as well as in the spiritual realm .... because the unavoidable spiritual upheaval also calls for a total earthly change in every way. This first occurs in the creations of nature which have to be completely transformed since their present structure is no longer adequate for the spirit's process of maturity. The spiritual substance which is now striving towards higher development has to travel the path of development in a shorter time than before and needs different forms to serve, although in a condition of constraint. And this change of nature drastically affects the human generation which lives on earth before its transformation. The preceding time will lack all order, there is a complete disintegration process even in

respect to worldly issues; people will violate the divine order, they will carry out an extremely strong destructive will, there will be unsurpassed chaos and people will be entirely earthly minded except for a few who consciously pray for and receive divine mercy. And since an offence against the divine order ultimately has to result in destruction, it is obvious that everything in existence has to be, if not destroyed, at least transformed to restore order, which is absolutely essential for the development of the spiritual substances.

The creations of nature change in accordance with God' will .... the human spirit, which previously had completely separated itself from God, will take these creations as their abode; and since the new period of redemption has a shorter duration than the previous one, the new creations will be of a completely different consistency than those of the old earth .... They will be somewhat harder and thus more compelling which is a far more agonising condition for the constrained spirit than any previous earthly progress has been. Thus the God-opposing will is intended to be shattered within a shorter period of time in order to liberate it for continuation of its evolutionary progress in other creations. As a result, the whole process of transformation also signifies a complete spiritual change.

The time will come when no opposing power can prevent the souls' ascent because they have resisted temptations and trials and no longer require them. They have the degree of maturity which, in unity with God, has become a

recipient of light and strength. They live a blessed and peaceful existence which is in fact eternal life, but experienced on earth because they will start a new human generation, which is necessary for the higher development of the immature spiritual substances in creation, i.e. they have to fulfil earthly tasks to help the still struggling spiritual substances to ascend. Thus it is a heavenly paradise on earth, and blessed is the person who is permitted to experience this peaceful state as an inhabitant of the new earth. It will be a time of calm, of peace, because the battle between light and darkness has temporarily ceased, darkness being the furthest distance from God and light being the closest proximity to Him. The furthest away from God is banished and requires a period of time for its redemption which ensures a peaceful spiritual life for those who are closest to God, which will be unimaginably beautiful for the human beings who survive the end of the old earth, because they had remained faithful to God during the previous extremely difficult time of battle and can now exchange the chaotic condition for a state of profound peace and divine order.

God's spirit will govern them, His love will look after them, He Himself will stay as Father with His children audibly as well as visibly, and after the conclusion of the old era, which ends with the Last Judgment, a new period of redemption will begin .... And this Last Judgment amounts to the disintegration of everything on this earth .... solid matter, plant and animal life as well as the

human generation shall experience a total change, as God's love and wisdom has ordained and His omnipotence will bring about .... so that the God-opposing spirit will give up its resistance and change ....

Amen

## **Unification of spirit and soul .... Rebirth ....**

***B.D. 3205 from July 29th 1944, taken from Book No. 42***

The soul will feel an irresistible urge to ascend when, due to its actions of love, it unites with the spirit within itself, since the latter seeks to influence and lead it to the kingdom which is its true home. And, to the same degree, it will detach itself from earth, i.e. its intentions and thoughts will no longer be directed towards the body and its wishes but will be focussed on spiritual values. As soon as this stage has been reached the soul will be reborn in spirit, it will have started a new chapter in life, it will have recognised its true purpose of earthly life and become conscious of its earthly task. From this point on it cannot turn back, it cannot regress into the previous condition when it had no spiritual knowledge and only paid attention to earthly life. And from now on it will gather



spiritual wealth, by consciously striving to ascend it will open itself to mental influences from the spiritual realm and will thus act with kindness, because the beings of light express themselves through the spiritual spark within the human being and this consistently encourages actions of love.

The more the human being acts with kindness the more capable he becomes of hearing the voice of the spirit within himself and increases his knowledge. He can fulfil his actions of love in two ways: he can help his fellow human beings worldly as well as spiritually; he can help other people by supporting them in times of earthly distress, but he can also take care of another person's soul by teaching and giving what he previously has received from his spirit .... spiritual knowledge which corresponds to the truth .... He can pass on everlasting wealth and thereby help other souls to ascend too, and this loving action is extremely beneficial, it is the kind of support for which the souls will be eternally grateful. Because spiritual help always denotes an awakening to life, as long as the human being accepts help, as long as he does not reject this help. However, as soon as the human being has started on the spiritual path himself he will never want to ascend alone but will always encourage his fellow human beings because he realises that spiritual aspiration is the most important part of life, since it can lead to the goal, providing the person is willing.

The soul no longer feels comfortable on earth and

constantly strives to escape; and for that reason it can lift itself anytime and anywhere into the spiritual realm, as the bridge shall always be built from there if the human being desires to enter the spiritual realm. The beings of light are always willing to impart the strength they receive from God to the human soul, and the spiritual spark within the human being is always willing to pass on the spiritual gifts to the soul, because the spiritual spark is in permanent unity with the light-giving world and therefore with God, Who communicates the knowledge of truth through the beings of light to any human being who wants to receive it. This is because the soul's desire, its thoughts and intentions determine the amount of spiritual gifts it receives, which are unrestricted providing the soul shares the received spiritual wealth with other people for their benefit too ....

Amen

## **Helplessness in the beyond .... Law ....**

***B.D. 3206 from July 30th 1944, taken  
from Book No. 42***

If the soul does not receive strength it will remain inactive. This condition of inertia can only be remedied

by actions of love which the soul is unwilling to do when it finds itself in this helpless state in the beyond.

However, on earth this willingness can be stimulated by the Word of God. The human being can be shown that deeds of love are a blessing to him, and then he can take God's Word to heart, he can reflect on it and voluntarily decide to act kindly, because on earth he does not lack the strength to do what he wants to do. Then the soul will receive spiritual strength and further its development. But it is different in the beyond where the helpless soul can do nothing else but want .... And whether or not the being will receive strength depends on this will. Thus the soul in the beyond is reliant on the help of more mature beings, whereas the human being on earth can use his will without help from spiritual beings. Therefore the human being should not remain indifferent if he does not reach his goal on earth in the mistaken belief that he can make up his neglect of earthly development in the beyond. This is a deceptive hope which he shall bitterly regret one day, albeit the state in the beyond is not entirely hopeless. The soul has to endure appalling distress which it can easily avoid by seriously striving to ascend while it is still on earth. The state of helplessness is something terribly dismal, it is a state which the soul cannot remedy at will, rather, it is dependent on the love of other beings. And this love, which corresponds to its own love towards other suffering souls, is at times difficult to perceive by the soul.

Thus an uncaring soul can spend eternities in its helpless

state without being approached by a caring being if it holds on to its selfish love, if it merely cares about itself and its fate without compassion for another soul's fate. According to divine law it cannot receive what it is unwilling to give to other souls, and its selfish love prevents the approach of beings of light to bring relief. And since it is unwilling to give or to help itself it cannot be given anything or helped either. Worst of all, it cannot be given God's Word which could remove the soul's spiritual blindness since God's Word is light, and as a result of its unkindness the soul is still unable to accept light. On earth, however, the Word of God is even offered to unkind people, because this is God's mercy for the lost souls on earth who may accept or reject it in line with their will .... Whereas the being in the beyond is only touched by God's mercy in as much as it is free to want and to stimulate loving thoughts within itself, after which it will receive strength too. Yet many a soul is so hardened that it cannot have loving thoughts, and then it is in an intolerable situation which it is unable to end by itself.

However, these souls are surrounded by fellow sufferers who could kindle their love, and thus they can improve their situation at any time if they allow themselves to love .... because even the least resolve to help their fellow sufferers will give them strength. As soon as they notice this influx of strength they become more helpful, and this helpfulness towards other souls results in inner happiness, and then they have overcome the helpless

state, the state of complete inertia. From this point on they can also receive God's Word, i.e. the teaching beings of light can approach them and reveal God's laws and why they have to be fulfilled. The light beings' lessons then have to start so that the uninformed souls can receive light and strength, i.e. knowledge which they then can pass on with lovingly care to improve the fate of suffering souls. But such helpless souls might have to do without help for eternities, and this condition could be easily avoided if the human being would make the best of his opportunities on earth in order to enter the beyond with a maturity which will give him light and strength and enable him to be blissfully active in the spiritual realm ....

Amen

## **Signs of the last days .... Battle of faith .... Chaos ....**

***B.D. 3209 from August 2nd 1944,  
taken from Book No. 42***

To specify (know?) the moment of spiritual change would not benefit humanity since the precise knowledge is an interference with free will, because at the approach of the predicted time the human being would feel obliged to change his way of life. But it is not God's will that

people shall receive knowledge of the day and hour when He sits in judgment over them, they shall only know that the end is near and by the signs of the time become aware of this end. However, if devout human beings ask Him for clarification He will answer them in a manner that is helpful for the salvation of their soul ....

The Last Judgment is preceded by the last days, which last just a few months and are characterized by an exceptionally rigorous battle of faith. As soon as this battle of faith is carried out quite openly, as soon as all secrecy is ignored and all spiritual aspirations are bluntly and recklessly attacked, as soon as laws and decrees are endorsed which prohibit people's spiritual pursuits, as soon as all divine commandments are no longer observed, as soon as all believers are persecuted and have no more rights, the last days have entered into their final phase and the Last Judgment can be expected daily and hourly .... However, before this battle of faith flares up, humanity will find itself in a spiritual and worldly chaos; there will be noticeable regression in every respect. And this regression will be initiated by people who are dominated by Satan. He will show himself in earthly devastation and destruction, in heartless laws, in a God- opposing way of life, in civil disobedience and rebellion against the governing powers and in brutal oppression by the latter, in restriction of freedom and in evasion of law and justice.

These conditions will ensue after a huge earthly tremor, which takes place in accordance with God's will in order

to terminate a conflict between nations that human will fails to end. For the people who are affected by this earthly tremor it will denote a change of their accustomed way of life, it will be a time of greatest deprivation and most difficult living conditions, and although this time will be favourable for the spreading of the divine Word it will not signify a revival of a worldly-clerical power. People will indeed eagerly strive to improve their earthly living conditions but these efforts will not be compatible with spiritual aspirations, with the belief in an Authority Which holds them to account and with the divine commandments that require love. And that is why everything that interferes with the return to the former good living standard comes under attack. Thus the battle of faith will start soon after the divine intervention which turns global affairs into a different direction. The events will follow each other quickly as they are hastened by people's low spirit, and this spiritual low shows itself in people's heartless actions, in their thinking, which shows extreme depravity and which prepares deeds that can only be called satanic. And thereby you can identify the moment in time when God's intervention can be anticipated. The global affairs themselves shall be a timetable to you, by the actions people are capable of doing you can see that they have totally distanced themselves from God and this clearly contradicts the opinion that this human race can still expect a spiritual renaissance.

The people who faithfully remain with God will indeed

intensify their intimate relationship with Him, they will be in truth His church which will stand firm amid misery and affliction, but it is just a small group. The world, however, denies God, it is hostile towards all who support God, and this spiritual need signifies that the end is near .... Therefore pay attention to the signs of the time, pay attention to humanity's conduct, to their desertion of God and their preference of the world, when people are evidently influenced by Satan, when they are enslaved by him and do everything to disobey the divine commandments, when nothing is sacred to them any longer, neither the life of their fellow human beings nor their possessions; when lies triumph and the truth is treated with hostility you know that the end is not far. Then you can watch the events unfold as they are revealed to you, because it will all take place during the lifetime of a man who, in a manner of speaking, hastens the disintegration, who pays homage to the destructive principle, who is not constructively but destructively active. And this man's end is also the end of the world, i.e. the end of the world in its present form and the end of those people who presently inhabit the earth, which are separate from those who belong to God. And now you know that there is not much time, that you are not given a long period of time and that the end is upon you shortly. And for this reason you have to prepare yourselves, you have to live as if every day is your last because you don't know when you will be called back and whether you will live to see the end of the earth. If, however, you are needed as defenders of God during the time of battle



before the end, God will also guide your thoughts correctly and you will know when the time has come .... the time of the divine intervention by means of unleashing the forces of nature, the time of the battle of faith and the time of the Last Judgment .... It is God's will that you make people aware, thus He will also enlighten your spirit and guide your thoughts in a manner that you understand correctly and only voice and reveal to your fellow human beings what you have understood properly ....

Amen

## **Destiny of life is God's will ....**

***B.D. 3211 from August 3rd 1944,  
taken from Book No. 42***

World events will run their course according to God's will, and thus earthly life will equally take its course for every individual person as it was determined by God. No-one can avoid his destiny; by way of thoroughly trusting prayer he can merely reach a point where God will help him to bear up to it if he is too weak himself. And therefore the human being is unable to shape his own destiny differently, even if he believes otherwise, for the way it

turns out is the way God has intended it for eternity, and He Himself places the thoughts into a person's heart so that he will do precisely that which corresponds to His divine plan. The human being certainly has free will but earthly events must always be looked upon as God's will or permission which entirely coincides with the eternal Plan. For God has known every human being's spiritual state for eternity. And thus nothing comes upon the human being which His profoundly wise will does not consider to be beneficial for his soul. Consequently, it is not possible for the human being to avert anything from himself, only through heartfelt prayer can he increase the effect on his body, if it is favourable, or reduce it, if it is damaging to him. For this reason the human being can leave himself to God's reign and activity with complete confidence, since whatever happens will be good for his soul, and the strength of faith can indeed make every earthly happening bearable if the person fully and trustingly hands himself over to the Father in Heaven and allows Him alone to reign. Without the slightest worry he can let everything happen to him, for nothing exists which wouldn't have met with God's approval first, thus is considered good for his soul and therefore imposed upon him. Hence the human being need not fear anything either, he need not be afraid of forthcoming events as soon as he intimately unites himself with God, after all, his whole course of life proceeds in accordance to his attitude towards God. And if he realises this he will calmly and collectedly await what is given to him, since he knows that only God's love is the reason if joy or

suffering comes upon him. For He has known for eternity what means the earthly child needs in order to be able to mature psychologically, and He employs these means .... Everything will happen without fail as He determined, and no human being will be able to change it of his own strength. This is why all worries a person has about his future are unnecessary for he cannot improve it if it is not conducive for him, just as it need not become worse if the person's faith is so strong that he will remain in close contact with God. For His will shall always be done in Heaven and on Earth, no human being can oppose His will, and His will is truly wiser and therefore always good ....

Amen

## **Law - Justice - Races .... Nations ....**

***B.D. 3227a from August 20th 1944,  
taken from Book No. 42***

It is unworthy of a whole nation if it is not accountable to itself regarding its thoughts and actions. The conduct of a nation's people should be impeccable towards each other; but they should also observe the commandment of neighbourly love towards other nations, even if this is not

to be understood such that actions and thoughts should extend to individual members but that all feelings and intentions towards another nation should be honourable and decent and not lack a feeling of justice, i.e. they should not be denied what the people of a nation claim for themselves. Law and justice should apply to all people, and the affiliation to a specific race or nation should not determine the actions implemented against them. God set no restriction when He gave people the commandment of neighbourly love, for every fellow human being shall be regarded as a brother, as God's living creation, who should also be treated with brotherly feelings. Hence, the human being should not impose this restriction himself, he should not think that he is entitled to exclude certain people from neighbourly love; he should practise the commandment of neighbourly love without distinction and thus also be accountable to himself when he disregards this commandment. And therefore he must be clear about his thoughts and actions as to how far they correspond to the divine commandments .... He cannot make different judgments at his pleasure and own discretion, he cannot sin against one person and believe his sin to be justified because he deems himself to belong to a different circle, which was drawn by racial or national affiliation.

This dividing line does not exist before God, before God all human beings are equal, and right and wrong remain right and wrong everywhere. It is not acceptable that the human being claims rights for himself which he denies to

other people, and if people's thoughts become so misguided that they believe themselves to be right even when they act wrongly, then the human being's spiritual development has already sunk low, for then he places earthly life high above the latter, otherwise he would be unable to defend a way of thinking which arose from the striving for his own advantage .... Anything a human being requires for himself he must inevitably also grant to his fellow human being, and he should never ever set up his own laws if he does not want to fear that he will not be considered by God in a way he would like, but that he will be measured by the same yardstick he measured himself ....

## **Law - Justice - Races .... Nations ....**

***B.D. 3227b from August 22nd 1944,  
taken from Book No. 42***

The earth embraces the most diverse nations and races which, on the whole, also differ in their degree of development. Yet no nation received the right from God to oppress less developed nations or to deprive them of their rights. They should certainly exert an educational influence if they are spiritually more highly advanced, they should protect weaker nations against stronger

oppressors, but a specific ethnic origin should never stop them from fulfilling their human duties towards a fellow human being. For they should always bear in mind that all people are God's living creations, and that no-one is entitled to cast certain fellow human beings out of the community of states or to pressurise them and plunge them into hardship. One day they will have to justify themselves for this, and they will be judged as they themselves had judged .... anyone who treated his fellow human beings harshly or without love, regardless from which ethnic group they originated, will also only reap harshness and unkindness, he will find no mercy and should never expect a mild judgment, for he will receive according to his attitude, to his will and his actions .... And therefore the human being should always be accountable to himself as to whether his thoughts and actions are just. Justice, however, demands the same rights for everyone without distinction. As soon as selfish love is strong, the sense of justice recedes, then the human being will unscrupulously take for himself what belongs to his fellow human being. And if whole nations are dominated by this way of thinking, there will never be peace on earth, for the strong will suppress the weak, or those of equal strength will inflict suffering and misery on each other and the adversity will find no end. No heartless action can be justified with the objection that other laws apply to other races or nations, that they may not claim the same humane consideration which a person of their own ethnic origin is entitled to. All people are equal before God, the same law applies, always and forever,

before God .... love your neighbour as yourself .... and every human being is a neighbour, irrespective of his racial or national affiliation. And as long as whole nations are trapped in erroneously thinking that they have different rights than the former, injustice will also get out of hand; people will be in a constant state of dispute, time and again hostilities will find renewed nourishment which will give rise to increasingly worse thoughts and actions, for the commandment of neighbourly love will remain ignored and this will result in actions which are sinful. The same standard for oneself and one's own desire should always be applied; what a person wants for himself he should not take away from his fellow human being, otherwise injustice will constantly grow and, with it, a state which will also confuse people's thinking .... They will lose the power of judgment between right and wrong, because they themselves will have relinquished it since they themselves don't want to think righteously and fairly ....

Amen

**Helping or fighting ....  
Different purposes for  
suffering ....**

## ***B.D. 3230 from August 24th 1944, taken from Book No. 42***

In the state of freedom of will the being would not have to fear God's adversary if only it would live in love. Then it will have defeated him, because God's adversary is utterly defenceless against love. Hence, the human being would also be able to free himself from temptations and challenges, for they have no influence on him as soon as he acts with love. The latter, however, depends on a person's free will, and therefore the human being himself is the reason for an earthly existence which is either a constant battle or helpful love .... God knows every person's heart and gives the human being what he needs, but He also lets a person go short if he does not require His help, His comfort and His counsel because he inwardly opposes Him and therefore does not exercise love, which demonstrates his God-devoted will .... God and love are one and the same, and therefore a loving human being is also united with God and thus has to be superior to God's adversary. If the human being is willing to actively engage himself in neighbourly love he will not be quite so besieged by the temptations of the world; he effectively has already overcome them which, however, does not rule out that he will have to endure suffering, because suffering is not only intended to lead a person to God whose will is still turned away from God but it shall also purify the person who strives towards God. However, the suffering in these two stages is experienced



differently. The former revolts against it because he does not want to bow down to a Power Which restricts his enjoyment of life .... He still desires the world and experiences all suffering as disadvantage, as an inadequate enjoyment of life and thus a constraint he refuses to accept. And it can require a lot of suffering before he has surrendered, and this kind of battle is the adversary's work, who still uses the world and its pleasures to gain the human being for himself, who continues to place all these before his eyes in order to intensify his desire and thereby alienate him from God. But if the human being is actively helpful, then the suffering will merely serve him to become perfect, to achieve maturity of his soul, then God's adversary will have little control over him, then he will turn away from the world and due to his suffering join God ever more closely.

This difference has to be recognised when the disparity of suffering is being considered, when good and bad people are affected by it .... people, who are still completely averted from God and those who seemingly no longer require suffering in order to find Him .... Each time the suffering serves a different purpose, yet the final purpose is the complete union with God. The greatest danger for the human being is his inclination towards the world and his lack of love, for then he will still be wholly enslaved by the one who wants to ruin him. And then he will need strict teaching methods in order to change. Only when his inclination towards the world

subsides can love ignite in him, and then the suffering can take on different characteristics, yet it cannot be entirely spared to him as long as the soul is not totally purified. Practising neighbourly love is therefore a decisive factor for his degree of development, it is a decisive factor for the intensity of his suffering, for wherever love is practised, and thus where God is present Himself, the suffering will be more bearable because the human being will be able to receive God's emanation of strength and therefore the suffering will not depress him as much. He need not fight anymore but only bear it and wait for God's help which will remove all suffering from him when the time is right. The human being must be helpful or fight, and namely in accordance with his will and his ability to love .... Being helpful will come easily to him, yet fighting will require great strength if he does not want to succumb to the power which will use whatever it takes to pull him into darkness and which will continue to exert an influence on the human being as long as he lives without love, for then he is still far removed from God. Only love sets him free from this power, only love makes him strong, for the loving human being is united with God and receives his strength from Him in order to defeat the adversary ....

Amen

## **Life ... Awakening the**

# **divine spark in the person ....**

***B.D. 3240 from September 2nd 1944,  
taken from Book No. 42***

The divine spiritual spark in the human being is his actual life, consequently, one can only speak of rebirth when the spirit in the human being has been awakened, when it can start to become active and thus the spiritual life begins .... In that case the human being is spiritually reborn, for his physical birth only makes sense and serves its purpose when spiritual rebirth has taken place. The divine spiritual spark has consciously been acknowledged by the person's soul even if the person is not yet able to rationally differentiate between the two concepts of soul and spirit. For the process of unification of spirit and soul can happen without a person's knowledge, since this is only conveyed to him when it occurred. Only then will the spirit explain to the soul what the unity of the spirit with the soul means, and only then will the soul strive towards ever closer union with its spirit and will accept the most valuable knowledge from it. And from then on the human being will be alive, that is, he will utilise his knowledge and consciously work for the kingdom of God; he will eagerly work at distributing the obtained information and at imparting the knowledge to his fellow human beings .... Life is continuous activity .... Admittedly, the human being

is certainly physically alive without having awakened his indwelling spiritual spark, that is, he is active in an earthly way and thus works for his earthly life, for his body and for earthly goals. But this is not the true life, the life which is everlasting, the life Jesus had spoken about and which He promised to anyone who believes in Him .... True life is the never-ending life of the spirit, the attainment of which is the purpose of life on earth. This purpose will only be achieved when the human being's spirit has come to life.

Spiritual rebirth is the most worthwhile goal to strive for, because it will yield indescribable gain for the human being's soul. That which is offered by the earth is impermanent and only benefits the body but never the soul. In contrast, what the spirit offers the soul will refresh it and quench its thirst, it is its nourishment, thus it is strength for living; it is a precious commodity which can no longer perish, which induces happiness and encourages diligent activity and therefore can be called the elixir of life, because death, which previously had threatened the soul and would be its inevitable share had rebirth not taken place, will no longer be possible. The carnal body is the shell which harbours the divine spark and it is up to the person's free will as to whether he bursts the shell, whether he strives to awaken the Divine within himself to life. If the soul, the bearer of the will, turns towards the divine spirit by trying to penetrate the shell, by trying to liberate itself from all earthly wishes, from bad habits and vices, if it tries to dissolve the shell

through activity of love, the divine spiritual spark will start to move, it will make contact with the human being's soul, it will help it rise above itself, it will constantly whisper advice and instructions and thus guide the soul as soon as it allows itself to be guided. From then on the divine spark in the person will take the lead and this will truly be right .... Then the spirit and soul will no longer oppose each other but pursue their goal together .... they will strive towards the eternal home and pay no attention to the body, the earth and everything of an earthly nature, even though the human being still lives on earth. The human being is alive, even if earthly matters are of no further interest to him, for his spirit is alive and is constantly active. The human being only works for the spiritual kingdom, for the kingdom of God, he works at improving himself and his fellow human beings, he is incessantly active, for the indwelling spiritual spark will not allow him to rest, that is, to rest idly, as it is harmful and synonymous with death .... with a state which is painful in eternity and should therefore be feared as the worst fate that can befall the human soul. However, once the spirit has come alive then death will no longer exist, for the spirit is immortal and also draws the soul into eternal life, into everlasting glory ....

Amen

## **The servants' mission who**

# receive the Word directly ....

***B.D. 3241 from September 2nd 1944,  
taken from Book No. 42***

My Word can only be directly conveyed to a few people, because only a few believe that I speak to people Myself and because this faith is absolutely necessary for Me to be able to express Myself in a person .... People lack faith in My work, in My omnipotence and love, and thus I cannot make Myself known to them in the Word either, for in order to be able to hear My Word the human being's spirit has to be alive, but this is part of Me, and thus it cannot manifest itself in the Word where I Am not acknowledged, where faith in Me is insufficient. Yet those who hear My Word and to whom I can speak directly are needed by Me on earth, for they have to accomplish a great mission .... They shall let faith in Me arise anew amongst people, they shall strengthen those who are still weak in faith, they shall proclaim Me, speak of My love, omnipotence and wisdom, they shall bring Me close to people and refer them to the Word which they are able to hear themselves. And thus they shall speak on My behalf where My voice is no longer heard .... I Myself want to speak through them because divine activity is not acknowledged, but it is imperative that people should be informed of My will, that they are admonished to live

according to My order, that they are informed of the dangers which result in a way of life in opposition to My order, and that love is constantly preached to them so that they will reduce the distance from Me and thus become capable of believing and of hearing My Word themselves. The number of labourers in My vineyard is not large, for people seek earthly reward for their service; but those in My service have to work for spiritual reward and this remuneration does not appeal to the former. Yet the few who are of service to Me receive far more than they relinquish, for they are the servants of a Lord Who has all the treasures of heaven and earth at His disposal, Who has the power to give everything and Who, in His love, provides His Own with an abundance of everlasting gifts which outshine everything that the earth is able to show. Those who want to serve Me can be certain of My love, and I prove this love of Mine by speaking to them like a father who speaks to his child, yet in a way which benefits its soul. For not all people are capable of enduring My loving Word if I include My full abundance of love, not all are mature enough as to hear Me audibly; yet merely their will to help Me enables them to grasp My Word, regardless in which form I transmit it to them.

My Word is the token of My love, but My Word is also the evidence of My omnipotence for a person who is still weak in faith. For I, being invisible to you humans, manifest Myself through My Word which is eternal truth and will also be recognised as such as soon as you believe

in Me. But through My Word I also want to provide evidence for the unbelievers by predicting things they will experience and which will thus enable them to recognise My truth. At the same time, I will give them the evidence of My omnipotence too, because the forthcoming occurrence will not be accomplished by people but will be entirely My work and therefore will help many people to believe in Me. This is why I instruct My servants to mention My predictions far and wide, for My love applies to those who are incapable or weak in faith, and in order to help them I will visibly manifest Myself after announcing it in advance. I grant the grace of hearing My Word to those who want to receive it, who desire Me and My Word with all their heart and who humbly submit themselves to My will. This grace, however, enables the person to mature if he allows it to take effect in him .... And My Word is the most effective means of grace, since the soul of anyone who has My Word and lives accordingly is already bound to become fully mature on earth. You should therefore be grateful that you may hear Me through a person who allows Me to speak to him, i.e. who believes in Me, in My work, My love and omnipotence and who therefore listens within to what I say to him. You should not hear **him** but instead hear Me in every Word that reaches you, you should let the grace take effect in you, you should become strong in faith and try to motivate your fellow human beings to gain faith as well by informing them of the heavenly Father's concern for His children who have distanced themselves and are no longer able to hear His voice. But



you should receive My servants as My messengers who want to convey the grace of their Lord to you, who want to bring you peace if you are of good will .... Pay attention to their words and you will hear My voice, comply with it and submit yourselves to My will .... My servants, however, are blessed and prepared by Me for their work in My vineyard ....

Amen

**Self-knowledge ....**  
**Psychological work ....**  
**Grace .... Humility ....**

***B.D. 3244 from September 4th 1944,  
taken from Book No. 42***

The human being is at greatest risk if he indulges in self-satisfaction, if he deems himself psychologically highly developed and does not know himself. For he lacks humility which he, however, will have to demonstrate to God if he wants to receive His grace in order to continue maturing. Only someone who deems himself small will strive to ascend, only someone who feels weak will appeal for strength, and if he humbly approaches the heavenly Father in prayer strength can be given to him.

The human being should constantly work at improving himself and he can only do so if he considers himself imperfect, if he is aware of his faults and weaknesses and tries to discard them. Every step towards perfection must be laboriously fought for, since fighting one's own faults and weaknesses requires fighting against oneself, against one's cravings, one's leaning towards the world, towards material possessions, against one's evil instincts which make it difficult for the soul to release the spirit.

And this battle is an easy one as long as the body still makes demands which impede his psychological maturity. But first of all the human being must recognise himself; he must know what God wants and to what extent his will is still in opposition to God's will; he must know that God requires a complete transformation into love, and he must contemplate what this change into love means .... that no evil thought should arise in the person and thus no evil deed may be carried out, that every movement of the human heart must be virtuous and gentle, that all bad habits should be fought against and that the human being must train himself to become gentle, peaceful, patient, compassionate and humble. He must constantly observe himself, and time and again he will find weaknesses and flaws if he takes his work of improving himself seriously .... he will not be satisfied with himself as long as he lives on earth, for he will not become so perfect on earth that he would have nothing to criticise about himself anymore. He must strive for perfection as long as he lives, and he will only do so as long as he is aware of

his imperfection as a result of his stringent self-criticism and as long as he is absolutely determined to take the path of ascent .... And thus he has to remain profoundly humble and consider himself and his work small and even more sincerely request the gift of grace so that God's strength will flow to him and enable him to carry out the work of improving his soul, because God giveth grace to the humble ....

Amen

## **Needy souls .... Remorse .... Loving help ....**

***B.D. 3256 from September 15th 1944,  
taken from Book No. 42***

When you humans have concluded your earthly life and entered the spiritual realm, the time of your earthly life will appear like a mere moment as soon as the memory of the infinitely long time before your embodiment as a human being is returned to you. And then you will also understand that the last stage of your soul's development has been an great mercy, and anyone who has used it and achieved admission into the spiritual realm, anyone who need not reproach himself for having allowed the graces of earthly life pass him by, is blessed. The remorse in the

beyond is all the more painful when the soul realises that it is no longer able to put right what it had avoided or neglected on earth, when the soul becomes aware of the inconceivable suffering of the infinitely long earthly path and how easy the short life as a human being had been in comparison, which it did not value correctly .... The soul's regret of a wrongly lived earthly life is so agonising and depressing that this in itself causes the soul to do penance and worsens its painful situation; yet physical life with its many opportunities to mature is over now and the soul has to accept the consequences of its earthly way of life. It has to continue its process of development in the beyond but with far more difficulties than on earth as long as it is not allowed to enter the realm of light.

You humans do not know the distress of such a soul in darkness and the merciful love it requires to receive help. You all should have compassion on such souls, you should think of them with love or they can never be redeemed because they are too weak without help, because only love will give them strength and the souls hope and ask for this love from people .... since the spirits of light can only help these souls when they are willing to help other souls. But in order to awaken this willingness to help their will has to be strengthened, and only the strength given to them by people's love on earth can achieve that. Lost souls, i.e. those who have not used their earthly life correctly or who lived entirely without spiritual aspiration on earth are in greatest need because they have no strength whatsoever and entirely depleted

willpower. To help these souls is one of the greatest works of love which the human being can perform. He should constantly pray for such souls, he should mentally inform them that they ought to act with kindness even in the beyond, time and again he should urge them to love, he should mentally communicate with them and with his love give them strength, which is comforting to the soul as it alleviates its state of suffering. And the souls will be eternally grateful to people whose loving help will release them from their agonising situation as soon as they can take part in the redemption work themselves, as soon as they can reduce the suffering of other souls by bringing them spiritual knowledge which, however, they first have to acquire themselves.

Due to their will to help their greatest need is remedied and their remorse will lessen at the same rate as their willingness to help grows. For then the soul understands that it is needed in the spiritual realm and in its enthusiasm forgets its own suffering .... It strives to gather spiritual values in order to share them again; it has created for itself a new sphere of activity and tries to make up for what it had neglected to do on earth .... to give love .... And now it can continue its process of development in the spiritual realm, thanks to the help of people's loving thoughts on earth for which it will be eternally grateful ....

Amen

# **And lead us through the temptation ....**

***B.D. 3257 from September 16th 1944,  
taken from Book No. 42***

You should always pray .... And lead us through the temptation .... when the world tries to discourage you from your spiritual striving and you are at risk of succumbing to its attractions. Since this temptation comes upon you in order to strengthen your will, you will always be subject to this temptation in order to demonstrate your will and you will always be successful if you take refuge in God's protection, if you call upon Him for the strength to resist. Time and again the opponent will attempt to alienate you from God, and his ways of doing so are dangerous, because they appeal to people's senses and therefore the soul will always have to fight in order to resist him. Nevertheless, God's help is assured to you if you confide in Him and appeal for His guidance ....

Amen

## **Premature departure from the world ... Purpose ....**

## ***B.D. 3258 from September 16th 1944, taken from Book No. 42***

People are repeatedly reminded of the transience of earthly things, and they are constantly confronted by death when many people pass away prematurely and when they are helpless in the face of events which cause suffering and despair to human beings. Yet they will not change their mind nor think about the real reason for suffering and untimely death. Thus the suffering becomes ever more painful and humanity will observe world events with horror and turn numb at the size of the disaster that engulfs it. Humanity, however, is asking for it, since the despair of the time leaves people entirely indifferent and they derive no gain for their souls. And therefore God applies the harshest measures to disturb their lethargy, because in spite of people's earthly and bodily suffering their souls remain uncaring, they remain indifferent to the blows of fate or they would attempt to change in the knowledge that their spiritual attitude is the cause of the increased suffering on earth.

Hence many people have to depart prematurely from this life because a longer life would be detrimental rather than beneficial for their souls as they would lose their faith completely and only take care of their physical life. In spite of their inadequate state of maturity God therefore allows the loss of countless human lives to prevent their regression, to give them the opportunity to fully mature in the beyond, because the situation on

earth does not remain hidden from them, they can observe the developments and become aware that due to the neglect of their soul's salvation, due to their wrong way of life, due to their lack of faith and unkind thoughts, human beings themselves are responsible for the severe suffering on earth.

In addition, people who are called away by God prematurely can still become aware when faced with death, they can still truly unite with God, they can still become purified due to intense suffering, and thus achieve a higher degree of maturity which they would not have attained during a longer earthly life, and then a premature parting from earth is a blessing for them. And irrespective of how much earthly suffering exists, it is only a means for the benefit of souls .... yet few people understand this as such. The magnitude of hardship is intended to direct their path to God Who can and will banish every distress if the human being faithfully awaits His help. However, when even the immense suffering is unsuccessful, when human beings forget about Him and are in greatest danger to finally strive towards the abyss, God shall end many an earthly life and permit apparently inhuman disasters because He forever considers the human souls and aims to save these even though the body will perish as a result .... because God never does wrong but only what is good and a blessing for the human soul ....

Amen



# **Destiny ... Free will - God's will ....**

***B.D. 3259 from September 18th 1944,  
taken from Book No. 42***

The human being can derive a spiritual benefit from every situation if he tries to associate it with God's will and considers it to be in line with his development. No matter what happens to a person, God has known this person's will from the start, and thus he shapes his life according to His will, but He also always uses the person's own will as the basis of his destiny .... thus human will is in accordance with divine will insofar as God determines and directs the destiny of life such that the human will nevertheless comes into its own, or, in other words .... God gives His approval to anything the human being wants, yet the consequence of what human will accomplishes corresponds to His plan of eternity and serves the person as an opportunity for maturing, since the consequence of every thought, word and action cannot be enforced by the human being's will. Thus a person can apply his will at all times, he can want to shape his life's destiny according to this will but he can never predetermine the outcome with certainty, for then so-called destiny will come into force .... everything takes place according to

God's wise and predetermined plan of eternity ....  
Nevertheless, free will cannot be disputed, the human being will always remain an independently thinking and wanting being which also has the vital energy at its disposal to put his thoughts and intentions into action. Whereas the direction of his entire earthly life, which God reserves for Himself, only relates to the creation of opportunities for the maturing of the soul. For since the human being's meaning and purpose on earth concerns the transformation of his will, of his inner being, since earthly life was given to him for his soul to attain maturity, God, in His love, will also always show him the means and ways to achieve it, and He will place him into life so that he can always and from every event derive a benefit for his soul. However, if life on earth entirely corresponded to the person's will his soul would never mature, especially if he were materialistically minded and only looked to benefit the body.

Consequently, God has to reduce or redirect the effect of what the person deliberately strives for and puts into practise in order to launch a constant battle for the person, for the human being only matures through struggle. Even so, divine will adapts itself to the human being's will, He allows him to carry it out and does not curtail his independent thinking and activity, yet He helps where human will intends to accomplish something detrimental for his soul, so that this accomplishment will not result in the desired worldly success but that he, by his failures, should learn to recognise the will of a higher

Power, because recognition of This is already an advantage for the soul. However, in a spiritual respect God does not impose limitations on the human being's free will .... in a spiritual respect his will shall remain sacrosanct and the effect, too, will be accordingly. For the effect is already the maturity of soul, which is never raised or reduced through divine will but entirely depends on the human being's free will. Every earthly situation can be used by the human being to mature spiritually if only his will strives to gain an advantage for his soul. And then God will always grant him .... blessings upon blessings .... for if free will has turned to Him by striving to improve the shape of his soul first then God will only arouse this will increasingly more and also give him the strength to remain strong in the face of opposition. Thus, in a spiritual respect, human will is entirely free, but even in an earthly respect free will can be spoken of, even if destiny is shaped according to divine will, since God has known the human being's direction of will for eternity and, accordingly, how the course of his life will proceed. Wanting and accomplishing and effect must be distinguished .... the human being can want and accomplish according to his will, yet the effect is God's privilege, on account of which the human being subsequently believes himself to be constrained and subject to his destiny or he refuses to acknowledge a Controller of his destiny .... Yet all happenings in Heaven and on Earth are subject to the Guidance of the One Who upholds everything, Who is in charge of everything in His supreme wisdom ....

Amen

# **Early death .... God's mercy .... Old age ....**

***B.D. 3260 from September 18th 1944,  
taken from Book No. 42***

God's will determines in which degree of maturity a human being is called from his earthly life into the spiritual realm. This is also an apparent injustice which could further the opinion that God selects certain people to become blessed while others have to suffer being distant from God. And yet this attitude is totally wrong .... because divine love and wisdom always knows the human will and therefore cuts a life short when higher development on earth is doubtful.

During the state of constraint before embodiment as a human being there is only progressive development until the spiritual substance's degree of maturity is ready for this last embodiment. But now the human free will makes its own decisions and development can continue, remain static or even regress; and again it depends on whether the human being as such has already improved his initial degree of maturity and is in danger of coming to a standstill or whether he has remained on the same level

as at the beginning of his embodiment and is in danger of regressing. In that case it is always due to God's mercy that the human being is recalled when he has arrived at the highest level of his development on earth, i.e. when God's love protects him

from regressing or from failing to advance his soul during a longer lifetime .... because his guilt will increase the longer he uses his embodiment's time of grace without making proper use of it.

The human being can advance during his younger years and then stop, his development up till now comes to a halt, and then God will recall him and give him further opportunities to mature in the beyond .... But the human being can also change his will in later years and his yet inadequate development can experience a sudden improvement and thus he can attain a higher degree of maturity even though for a long time he had ignored his soul until then. In that case God will give him a long life, because God knows the human being's will since eternity and shapes his life accordingly .... For every human being's destiny is considered by God's love and wisdom and does not depend on God's arbitrary use of power ....

God would not withhold the opportunity to mature on earth from any human being if he is willing to use it. But people pay little attention to His mercy and are unwilling to accept the relevant information. And because God knows since eternity which humans are particularly resentful to Him, because He knows when a person has

reached the highest degree of development on earth, the duration of his earthly life has also been established since eternity and varies, depending on what divine wisdom deems best and most successful. God will never cut short an earthly life if the human being could still achieve higher maturity because God's love is forever concerned that the human being should attain highest possible maturity on earth; He would never withhold an opportunity from a human being which would result in complete maturity. But He knows since eternity the human will's every inclination and protects the soul from complete desertion, i.e. from certain regression if He would not end that earthly life.

For that reason anyone who constantly strives will reach old age while, at the same time, old age is proof of steady higher development even if this is not evident to other people. A long earthly life is always a mercy but even a short life is evidence of God's love, which is forever active although it is not always recognised by the human being ....

Amen

**New wonders of creation  
on the new earth ... Brittle  
matter ....**

## ***B.D. 3264 from September 22nd 1944, taken from Book No. 42***

Throughout every single phase of development the spiritual substance is kept in a constrained state until it has acquired the necessary maturity for its final embodiment as a human being, hence .... if it failed its previous phase of development as a human being it has to start in the confines of hard matter again and cover the path through the mineral, plant and animal world until it can become a human being once more. However, spiritual substance which has not reached the final stage in this period, but is nevertheless released by God due to the last destruction of earth, will be bound in outer forms which correspond to its maturity again, i.e. the interrupted process of development of the past period will continue in the new phase of development .... on the new earth .... For this reason the new earth will contain the most diverse creations again, however, they will be entirely new and different forms from those on the old earth. And thus new wonders of creation will come into being which the first people living on the new earth will undeniably acknowledge as miraculous, as a testimony of God's glory, as evidence of His love, omnipotence and wisdom. People will be extremely amazed at what the new earth has to offer and in admiration will praise God, love Him and give thanks to Him with all their heart. And the souls will continue with their development ....

But the substance constrained in solid matter is

tormented by its restriction and tries to escape. Depending on the resistance of its will it shall either succeed or fail, but God takes the will of the substance into account and thus the material of the new earth is of utmost solidity and stability in order to soften the inherent spirit's will that it should finally surrender its resistance. Consequently, the slightest change of will shall loosen the form .... in earthly terms this means that although the solid matter of the new earth is indeed exceptionally hard it is also very brittle and thus can easily break or shatter as soon as God's will intends a release from this captivity. Similarly, other creations will also have a shorter lifespan, because the transformation of the spirit substance shall proceed at a faster rate, which can indeed be possible but nevertheless depends on the spirits' willingness to serve. The spiritual substance is merely intended to achieve its final embodiment as a human being faster than in previous phases of development as long as its will is not entirely opposed to God. For this reason the first human beings on the new earth shall experience miracles upon miracles, they will be so affected by them that their love for God and their unity with Him will grow ever more and they will live in His grace, but they will also understand these miracles, they know that they are only the expression of God's infinite love Who wants to retrieve all spirit and offers it every opportunity to change its will.

And this shall continue for a long time until the initially constrained spirit substance within the plant and animal



world has reached the stage of embodiment as a human being .... Then people's understanding for the wonders of divine creation will gradually fade, the inclination towards matter will be awakened again and, due to their own longing for possessions which still contain immature spiritual substances, Satan's influence on people becomes stronger again. Subsequently, the unity with God will diminish and the battle between light and darkness, which in the beginning had disappeared because everything living on earth of its own free will was enlightened, will increase again .... For the evolutionary process of the spiritual substance is always the same during every period .... the spirit has to live within the hard form until it is willing to walk the path of service through the creations, which amounts to less constraint, and then it has to serve until it has achieved a certain degree of maturity which results in a condition where it should serve of its own free will but, unlike during the previous stages, it is no longer forced to do so. And at this stage it should not fail otherwise the whole earlier process of development has been in vain. The human being's volition determines whether this will be his last earthly embodiment or whether he has to repeat the evolutionary process, whether he will turn towards the light in the last stage or allow himself to be captured by dark forces and has to be banished again into hard matter for ages to come ....

Amen

# Calling .... Preparation .... Renunciation ....

***B.D. 3274 from September 28th 1944,  
taken from Book No. 42***

The task you have to accomplish will require all your strength, therefore you will be led through trials which are intended to strengthen you for this task; for only when you have overcome yourselves completely, when you have detached yourselves from everything dear to you on earth, will you become absorbed in your work for the kingdom of God. And you are assigned to accomplish this work. Consequently, do not let yourselves be misled or distracted by worldly events, work diligently and hand all your earthly worries over to the Father in Heaven, Who will remove them from you as soon as you work for Him. God expects a lot from you but He also gives you infinitely much .... He expects you to renounce everything that delights your senses, but He will give you what makes your soul happy .... He takes earthly possessions away from you and bestows upon you spiritual wealth, which makes up for all worldly possessions. And you must thank Him for every gift, because it is offered to you by His love. Yet even earthly suffering is a gift of love from God as soon as it matures your soul. For the task you are to accomplish requires undivided dedication, because it is spiritual work which does not tolerate earthly

hindrances. But then it is delectable, it delights the giver as well as the recipient .... The point in time when a general breakdown will occur is drawing ever closer, and good for the one who releases himself from earthly goods before they are forcibly taken from him, for his spirit can freely develop and occupy itself with things of eternal value. His life on earth will not last forever, yet what he takes over into the spiritual kingdom can be permanent and subsequently make him infinitely happy. But he will only attain it on earth if he relinquishes what belongs on earth. For this reason God will take the latter away from you, if He has called you to work for Him. You must feel your calling within yourselves as soon as you hear His voice, as soon as you receive His Word and are deemed worthy of the great grace of being instructed by Him directly. The conveyance of spiritual gifts should be your proof that God has chosen you to work for Him. And if you realise this, then you must humbly accept everything from His hand, for everything that comes upon you is necessary and determined by His wisdom. Then you will also feel yourselves called, you will feel yourselves as His servants and receive the instructions of your Lord .... Let Him reign alone, for His way will benefit your souls, and don't resist Him if He draws you to Himself, but follow His call instead .... Work for His kingdom and don't worry how you will survive on earth .... God will always find ways and means if you humans need something .... but you cannot protect yourselves from earthly worries if God Himself deems them necessary for you. If He needs you as servants, as labourers for His kingdom, He must

first make you capable of it, and for this He uses different means. And the fact that you are meant to work for Him is proven to you every day as His gift of grace flows to you, which teaches you to become His fighters, because He needs you during the last days .... Therefore wait patiently and don't fail, be tirelessly active and trustingly hand yourselves over to divine guidance, and you will accomplish your task on earth, you will be valiant fighters in the final battle, as it is His will.

Amen

## **Time of grace .... Speaker - Forerunner of the Lord ....**

***B.D. 3276 from October 1st 1944,  
taken from Book No. 43***

Listen to the message of God's spirit .... A time of grace has commenced, and if you are willing to strive for the kingdom of God you can feel its blessing. The beings of light are obviously and perpetually at work to impart gifts of grace from the spiritual kingdom to the human beings on earth; beings of light are embodied on earth to serve people as spiritual guides during the last days; the thoughts of people who strive towards God will be enlightened and thereby closer to the truth; God's love

will express itself in times of earthly hardship by bringing help wherever it is requested .... Devout people will accomplish extraordinary things and the power of faith will become evident .... And thus many blessings will manifest themselves, because the opposition will also use every means to cause spiritual distress to people and God wants to visibly help them.

And during this time of grace a man will appear whose spirit is from above, whose soul is totally united with the spirit within himself and who therefore speaks what the spirit reveals to him .... absolute truth in all clarity .... God Himself will speak through him, he will remind people to persevere or caution them not to abandon Him. And this speaker is the forerunner of the Lord. When he appears the coming of the Lord is close at hand. This man will considerably increase the extent of grace as he will be immensely supportive to the believers and offer unbelievers an opportunity to believe .... for he is alive with strength and might and will have considerable influence on people who listen to him. His words will ignite and spread like wildfire through the country where he will work. He will speak without fear and hesitation, he will inform people and draw their attention to the coming of the Lord in the clouds and to the Last Judgment. Yet not many people will believe him because most people no longer want to know God and the spirit, and thus their thinking is completely adverse. In short, they neither understand nor make use of the extraordinary gift of grace, consequently the end is inevitable, for the abyss

will open and devour everything that does not recognise God and rejects His Word.

God is forever giving, and whatever He gives is an undeserved gift of grace designed to help people to mature even during these times of suffering .... Whether He gives sorrow or joy, it always helps the person to lift his soul to God, it is always pointing to Him, it is always coaxing and guiding him onto the right path .... it is always grace .... And when this man arrives the amount of grace for people will also increase, because he is surrounded by and emanates light which flows to him from the spiritual kingdom .... He passes on knowledge, his word is utter wisdom and strength and can be easily accepted, because it is offered convincingly and can be understood by people if they listen to him carefully. God's love makes it easy for people to believe by sending them His messengers with unusual strength by which alone they can be known as messengers from heaven. But he will be attacked from all sides .... and only few understand his mission and stay with him, only few draw strength from his words; but they will receive strength and grace in abundance and be able to resist the world's confrontations, the hostilities which now take place openly ....

The last days will be extraordinary difficult but also extraordinary merciful, for God will reveal Himself wherever a heart in distress opens itself to receive His grace. And thus it will certainly be possible to be victorious in the final battle on this earth .... that the soul

can emerge from it unharmed, that it gains eternal life if it prematurely passes away from earth or, if it perseveres on earth until the end, that it will be physically removed from it by the Lord to begin a new life on the new earth ....

Amen

## **Did Jesus Christ redeem all people, or are all people redeemed? ....**

***B.D. 3277 from October 2nd 1944,  
taken from Book No. 43***

People read the Word but they do not understand its meaning, and thus misguided teachings due to false interpretations are given by those who want to serve Me, if they do not sincerely unite with Me and first ask for an explanation and, when they receive it, accept it without resistance. People single-mindedly adhere to My Word that I have delivered mankind from sin by My crucifixion .... But they do not comprehend the essence of the Word, they do not comprehend the significance of the act of Salvation. Consequently they do not understand what the human being has to do himself in order to join the flock of those who have been delivered from their guilt of sin by My blood.

I have died for all human beings .... providing they want to accept My act of Salvation .... I have not imposed any restrictions, but people set limitations when they do not acknowledge My act of Salvation. And these people exclude themselves from the circle of those for whom I have died on the cross. Consequently, only the sins of those can be forgiven who allow themselves to be saved through their faith in Me and My death on the cross, whereas the sins of those who reject Me and My act of Salvation are not forgiven, because they do not allow themselves to be purified by My blood, and because they do not want to belong to those for whom I have died. Once again human free will is decisive, and I abide by this free will. If people's guilt of sin were forgiven without faith in Me and My act of love, then the human being would be placed into a state of freedom against his own will .... But this is in opposition to My order because it counteracts My justice as well as My love, since the person will not use this state to bond with Me nor will he ever regret his sin ....

My Word is truth, and no untruth can ever be found in the fact that I have died for all human beings, that I have redeemed all people from their sins .... But their free will has to decide whether they want to be redeemed, whether they want to accept My work of love, because I do not determine the will .... Therefore all of humanity could be free of sin if it believed in My act of Salvation, just as it is and will remain in deepest darkness and subject to their sins if it rejects Me as Redeemer of



humanity. And for this reason most of humanity now lives in sin, it is without forgiveness because it no longer acknowledges Me, and thus My act of Salvation has become ineffective for humanity.

Hence the 'forgiveness of sin' should not be misunderstood, it is not applicable to those who are completely apart from Me; not that I Am pushing them away, instead they are distancing themselves from Me, they are fleeing from Me, Who is approaching them and constantly asks for their souls. I provide them with a gift of grace which liberates them from their sin and their guilt, but if they reject this it has no effect on them because they belong to those who are fighting on behalf of My adversary and who are therefore still controlled by him until they allow themselves to be saved by Me .... And thus it is wrong to describe My act of Salvation in a way which suggests that all people are beneficiaries of that which their free will could certainly acquire; but which free will can also throw away by rejecting it and by being totally without faith. Only the person who accepts My gift of grace will also become free of his sins, because I have carried his guilt for him, I have suffered for him and accepted the crucifixion.

Although I have died for everyone, not everyone accepts Me .... I took everyone's guilt upon My shoulders, but not everyone feels guilty and therefore does not place their burden upon Me. And thus they will also be unable to purge their guilt, since it is too immense to do so themselves, because now they are also adding the guilt

of rejecting My love .... But how can they hope for the forgiveness of their sins? How can people believe that they can become free of all guilt without their own contribution, without their own will? ....

My love's sacrifice for you, the purification of all sin through My blood is an incomprehensibly significant blessing for you humans. But you must also want to receive My love, you should not reject it, otherwise it cannot take effect on you, otherwise I cannot redeem the guilt of sin, otherwise your sins will stay with you until you change your mind and acknowledge Me as your divine Saviour, Who died on the cross to redeem you ....

Amen

## **Working for the kingdom of God ... Mission ...**

***B.D. 3284 from October 8th 1944,  
taken from Book No. 43***

People who are permeated by the spirit of truth are chosen to spread this truth, and this is a responsible mission on earth, for receiving the truth is also a commitment to pass it on. Constant activity is expected of them, activity for the kingdom of God which conveys the truth to earth through these people. Yet the hearts of

those chosen to do so are able to love, otherwise the spirit of God would be unable to take effect in them. And this ability to love lets the work of spreading the divine truth become a joyful task which they gladly and readily comply with. As soon as a person is imbued by divine truth he also loses the sense for the pleasures and goods of the world; he only derives joy from spiritual knowledge and therefore the spiritual work becomes his purpose in life. And yet it is a responsible task if he bears in mind that he has the opportunity to lead untold souls onto the right path, onto the path of realisation, and that he must make the most of this opportunity in every way .... As a representative of God he is placed into a field of activity where he can work exceedingly successfully; however, it requires a firm will, great love, patience and perseverance, it requires the keen activity of body and soul, both have to yield to the urging of the spirit, which constantly spurs them to do this work. Thus the human being must place himself entirely at God's disposal Who informs the human being through His spirit about what his work consists of. As long as the soul is still in two minds it cannot hear the voice of the spirit clearly enough and must try to banish this state by unreservedly handing itself over to God and appealing to Him for his correct guidance in every way .... It must not anxiously speculate and think but must completely and trustingly hand itself over to the spirit's guidance and it will always take the right path .... Then all events in life will approach a person so that he can accomplish his spiritual work, so that he can work for the kingdom of God.

This work is not obvious at first, for the time has not yet come for the working of the labourer's of the Lord .... As yet His labourers are prepared in silence, and their activity, too, is limited; however, they shall even be active in silence until the time comes when great activity will start for the salvation of the souls which will suffer great adversity. But the spirit in the human being will guide him to where his work is needed. For time and again souls will be prepared who will likewise be responsible for working for the kingdom of God, for many labourers will be required in the vineyard of the Lord. Prior to this the divine truth will be conveyed to them, so that they will become competent labourers and be able to work for God in the coming time. For they will be needed by countless souls who still linger in spiritual darkness and will not be able to find the path to the light .... but where divine truth exists that is where light is shining, and if the light is given to people in the right way, if the truth is offered to them with love, many a heart will open up and allow itself to become enlightened. Being able to save souls for eternity is a happiness-inducing mission, it is a mission which is constantly accompanied by God's blessing, and every labourer in the vineyard of the Lord can be assured of divine help by merely eagerly striving to speak on behalf of the kingdom of God on earth, for then he will always be supported by spiritual forces and his work will be blessed ....

Amen

# **Prayer and deeds of love are weapons against temptations ....**

***B.D. 3285 from October 8th 1944,  
taken from Book No. 43***

You can easily fall prey to the power of evil if you slow down in prayer and deeds of love. For he is lying in wait for every weakness in order to make you fall; he is using every opportunity to make you sinful, and he will certainly succeed if you lack the strength which you gain through prayer and deeds of love. You should therefore never allow yourselves to feel safe, for the enemy of your souls will also come to you in the disguise of a friend, he will try to win you over to have an easy game with you. And if you don't pay attention you will recognise him too late and will no longer be able to protect yourselves from his cunning and deceit. Prayer, however, will protect you from his power, for then you are establishing a connection with God, you are building an invincible barrier against evil.

This connection with God will equally be established through unselfish activities of love, which will give you the strength from God directly and then you will no longer need to fear the opponent. And this contact with

God through prayer and deeds of love should never be disregarded, even if a person apparently is in no need of strength. For the enemy of souls will not easily give up his shameful plans, and what he cannot achieve today he will try tomorrow, until the constant temptations have weakened the person and he surrenders with almost no resistance, if the strength from God is not flowing to Him. But the human being can send a heartfelt prayer to God at any time, and this will always be granted, for God will not leave a human soul to his adversary just like that, for He is likewise struggling for every soul, trying to win it over for Himself. Consequently, there will be no shortage of strength from Him, providing the will of the person accepts it. But if the person has a weak will of resistance, then the adversary will have won his game.

And the Lord cautions you not to let him gain power over you, not to hand yourselves over to him through unkind actions and not to forget to make contact with God through prayer, for then you will make your earthly life more difficult for yourselves, because you will constantly have to defend yourselves and lack the strength to do so .... Life is an endless struggle, for the light is constantly fighting against the darkness, and in order to defeat the darkness the human being requires divine help, divine strength, which he will receive in abundance through prayer and actions of love. And this is why you should always be on your guard, for Satan's game of deceit is dangerous, and he will be victorious if the human being slackens in striving to ascend. Therefore, be vigilant and

remain in prayer, and God's adversary will always meet with resistance, for then you will have God Himself as your most loyal protection, Who will never ever surrender you to the enemy of your souls ....

Amen

## **Filial love ... Paternal love ....**

***B.D. 3292 from October 13th 1944,  
taken from Book No. 43***

Become like little children, then you will be able to love Me like a child loves its Father. Don't oppose My will but let Me guide you; take hold of My Fatherly hand and follow Me without resistance and with total confidence that I will guide you correctly. In that case you will be absolved from all responsibility, for the Father will not hold His child to account if it always remains close to Him and, with childlike obedience, accepts the Father's will. Then I will care for My children with greater than great love, I will draw them to My heart and will never let them go from Me again, for then they will be My Own forever. I ask for nothing else but their love, and if you regard Me as your Father, if you feel like My children, love will indeed be kindled in you and you will want to belong to

Me and thus also fulfil My will. The child knows that it will find the right protection with its Father, it knows that it will be watched over and provided with everything it needs, for the Father's love will not leave its child in adversity, and because the child knows that it is loved by Him it will love Him in return .... This is why I want you to recognise Me as your Father, because I long for your love and want to win you over for Me. You have belonged to Me since the beginning, yet only when you hand yourselves over to Me will you be My children in truth, otherwise you will merely be My living creations, you certainly came forth from Me but you are not united with Me in love. Only love will turn you into My children to whom I want to be a real Father .... Only love for Me will establish the right relationship and this love is what I seek to attract for an infinitely long time. A child who loves Me with all its heart will find absolute bliss at My Fatherly heart, for this beats in ardent love for this child and anyone who possesses My love is happy beyond measure, even if the body does not feel it as yet while it still lives on earth. Nevertheless, the soul feels the strength of My love and, in constant longing, turns to Me. It strives towards Me and desires My Word .... For love seeks the union, and since the earthly child cannot see Me, it wants to hear Me and therefore attentively listens to My Word sounding in its heart. And I will speak Words of love and of comfort to My child, Words of strength and of grace .... I will give to it what it desires, light and strength .... so that it shall grow strong and its love shall burst into a bright flame. Then I will draw close to it and



pull it up to Me .... I will lift it from the realm of darkness into the kingdom of light as soon as it no longer desires anything else on earth other than My love .... then it will be ready for the spiritual kingdom, for if it has love, it will have become like Me and need never separate itself from Me again, because it will be united with Me for all eternity since it will have kindled its love for Me in its heart. And so you shall look up to Me like children, then you will also be able to love Me like children and desire Me with all your heart, and then My Fatherly love will belong to you and you will be blissfully happy ....

Amen

## **Remitting or retaining sins .... Jesus' disciples ....**

***B.D. 3297 from October 17th 1944,  
taken from Book No. 43***

'Whose soever sins ye remit, they are remitted unto them; and whose soever sins ye retain, they are retained ....'  
These, too, are Words of Mine which were frequently interpreted differently than I had intended them. Only a person with an awakened spirit who hears My voice and conveys My explanation to you is able to correct this, so that you can liberate yourselves from error and know the

truth .... My disciples were endowed with the power of working miracles in My name, of healing, of reviving the dead and thereby proving to people the strength of their undivided belief in Me. Their spiritual state allowed for all supernatural activity, for when My spirit poured into them it filled them with strength and light, with power and wisdom. Hence they were able to spread the truth because they knew it themselves, and by the mere voicing of words they were able to achieve things which exceeded all human ability. For they had been My disciples .... I had instructed them through the inner Word while I lived on earth, they lived in love and believed in Me, therefore they were also able to accept My spirit within themselves and work through it. These extraordinary acts were signs of their souls' maturity which, in turn, were intended to prove to people what extraordinary abilities a person can achieve if he lives according to My will, that is, if he shapes himself after My image .... into love .... For love is strength, consequently, a person who loves is also permeated by strength and light, because he can be permeated by the spirit of God, His emanation of strength. And I exemplified to people a life of love .... I demonstrated to them how much strength the human being can attain and after My death I left living examples behind which were meant to proclaim My teaching of love again to demonstrate their strength and thus make it easier for people to believe in Me .... Even if I was no longer visible, I Myself was in the midst of My disciples in spirit .... I guided them, since everything that is permeated by My spirit is subject to My divine

guidance .... because I Myself was subsequently able to take effect through those who were working in My name. Hence the disciples had the same power and the same right, because everything they accomplished was My will; they were enlightened by My spirit, which is the emanation of Myself. Consequently, they also had the power to forgive sins in My name, especially if illness was the result of sins and, in order to cure this illness, they had to remit the human being's sins as well. However, if they recognised a person's unworthiness, his unbelief and God-opposing will, they were just as entitled to leave him in his sinful state, for they were not governed by human understanding but by the divine spirit within them, My spirit, which knows everything and thus also a person's unworthiness and the futility of a merciful action on him. Thus I gave My disciples the right to grant to people according to their realisation, because My spirit was active in them and guaranteed that My disciples thought correctly ....

But now people assume the same right even though My spirit is not effective in them as yet .... They associated the right to forgive or retain sins with the person itself and not with the divine spirit in this person and thus conferred this right to all followers of the disciples according to the word and not according to the spirit and therefore misunderstood the meaning of My Word, although they would also think correctly if they realised who is really My disciple .... Not those who appoint themselves but those who I have appointed for their

teaching ministry on earth .... For I gave My disciples the instruction 'Go ye therefore, and teach all nations ....' But in order to teach, My spirit must be effective in them so that they will be able to distribute the pure truth to people and to spread My commandment of love in the world. Yet the truth can only be taken possession of through the working of the spirit. Therefore, it is imperative that My disciples must be enlightened by the spirit of God before they can count themselves as My disciples. In that case they will also be permeated by light and strength and able to accomplish extraordinary feats , the power of the spirit will enable them to heal the sick, thus to release people from sin and its consequences as soon as they believe in Me and My name .... To these spiritually enlightened people I gave the power of forgiving sins, since they also recognise in their spiritually mature state when a person deserves to have his sins forgiven, for then they will act on My behalf and it is I Who really forgives their sins. But if people feel themselves appointed to carry out the act of forgiveness of sin even though they have never been called by Me Myself, who are neither enlightened by My spirit nor hear My Word within themselves, their calling can rightfully be disputed, since this is already demonstrated by the fact that they are incapable of recognising their fellow human being in order to judge whether to remit his sins or to let him keep them. The assessment of this already presupposes the working of the spirit which, however, has to be denied to most of those who deem themselves called as servants of God as long as they do not possess

the inner Word. Only through My Word are they called to work for Me, for only My Word gives them knowledge, that is, it conveys the pure truth to them, and this is absolutely necessary in order to be able to work for Me. Anyone who knows the truth can also pass it on and thereby helps his fellow human being to achieve liberation. Anyone who has My Word will also have the competence of judgment when a person's will is inclined towards God. For the human being's spoken word is often deceptive, the heart need not be involved in what is voiced by the mouth. But a true disciple has the gift of recognising his fellow human being and therefore also knows which person is serious about the forgiveness of his sin and does not allow himself to be misled by many words which lack inner conviction. Therefore, the remission of sin cannot be a general act since it can only take place if it was preceded by profound repentance and recognised as such by My disciples. But in that case the judgment of the latter will be valid before Me, for he only acts on My instructions and his deed is according to My will. With those Words I gave My disciples the understanding that their activity and thinking will be in complete concordance with Me if they work for Me in My name, that they cannot think and want anything else but what is My will if the divine spirit is working in them which, however, characterises them as My disciples in the first place. For I Myself appoint My servants on earth because I truly know who is qualified for this ministry and upon whom I can endow those gifts which are required by a teaching ministry on earth .... And to them I will also

give the authority, for then they will only carry out My will ....

Amen

# **Destruction of works of creation and its consequences ....**

***B.D. 3300 from October 20th 1944,  
taken from Book No. 43***

Everything visible to your eyes testifies to God's love, it was created to help the fallen substance, to elevate it from its sunken state again, and therefore every work of creation should be seen as an emanation of divine love and be respected and valued accordingly. None of God's creations may be wilfully destroyed, for then its function, its intended purpose, will be prevented. And neither may human work be destroyed which also has a function .... the function to be helpful. For every work of creation that originated from God's will was given this function, otherwise it could not result in higher development of the substance. And human creations are also assessed in relation to their function .... As long as they have the task of being useful, as long as they somehow serve other people or even other creations, they contribute towards

the development of the substance and fulfil their purpose.

To destroy such creations results in the interruption of the spirit's progress of development and can never be justified before God .... as in fact all destruction of matter has to be motivated by love to be justifiable before God .... Consequently, if destruction takes place for the purpose of producing objects which are helpful to people, which serve a useful purpose, the destruction is justified for the love of other people. However, any other destruction is sacrilege .... sacrilege against other people and against God, Whose power created things which truly have another purpose than to fall victim to the human will of destruction .... And this sacrilege avenges itself badly ....

When the driving force of hatred and unkindness between people destroys matter then people also have to pay for it .... materially, because they lose things that had fulfilled a useful purpose, as well as spiritually, and the latter in a particularly painful way .... Because spirit has been freed against its will and before its time, and this spirit disturbs all substances in its environment but especially the human being by permanently appearing before his soul's eyes, that is, by constantly occupying his thoughts with the lost objects. This is extremely harmful to the soul since it inhibits its development. It is held back from spiritual aspiration, its senses are constantly directed towards material things and therefore the creations can quietly torment a human being when they

are unavailable to him, when they fall prey to the human will of destruction.

Every work of creation by God, or by a human being who just wants to work constructively, should be respected. The destructive principle denotes the actions of God's opponent .... And at this moment in time he is raging in the world .... He induces people to God-opposing behaviour against His creations, he has awakened the destructive urge in people because they lack love and no longer understand the meaning and purpose of creation. And this shall result in serious consequences. God will counteract the human work of destruction, which is the influence of the evil power, with a far greater work of destruction but which is entirely warranted in God' love ....

He shall liberate the spirit which is willing to walk the way of service on earth from endless long captivity .... He shall release the solid matter so that the human destructive will is stopped and human beings learn to see earthly creations for what they are: means for development as long as they can exercise their useful function. This divine destructive action will affect people even far more seriously; however, this is necessary so that they return to the right way of thinking, that they respect and appreciate every work of creation, that they understand its function and once again occupy themselves constructively. Because this and only this is divine order: that everything in existence shall progress and that every human work of creation shall also be a



guarantee for the development of spirit as long as it fulfils its useful purpose, as long as the human will to be of help has produced it ....

Amen

**Inner prompting is God's instruction ....**

**Subordination of will ....**

***B.D. 3308 from October 27th 1944,  
taken from Book No. 43***

God informs you of his instructions through your heart .... As soon as you feel prompted to do something, as soon as you are driven to it from within, you will always be instructed by the voice of God, providing you are making an effort to live according to God's will, that you thus strive towards Him and entrust yourselves to His guidance. Then you will be directed by His will such that you have the same will within yourselves because you have consciously submitted yourselves to His will; only then may you comply with the prompting of your heart and your actions will be right and in accordance with God's will. Yet you must seriously scrutinise yourselves as to which power you give the right to guide you .... Heartfelt prayer protects you from the opposing power;

however, whatever you do without having requested God's blessing, whatever you do purely to improve your body's well-being, whatever those of you do who are completely apart from God are not His instructions but His adversary's, and they will damage the soul. The person striving towards God need never be afraid of thinking and behaving wrongly, because his attitude towards God also allows him to be accessed by spiritual forces and entitles them to protectively walk by the person's side, thereby also averting the influences of evil forces. Only the desire for God guarantees divine protection for a person, and anyone being divinely guarded cannot go astray, he can only do what benefits his soul. He is guided by God Himself and every path taken by him is important and leads to the goal.

Although the person acts according to his own discretion, in as much as his will impels him to undertake this or that action, it is nevertheless God's will which manifests itself through his will as long as the person gives in to the inner prompting. If, however, he pays no attention to this urging then he resists it, he becomes undecided since his will has not yet entirely submitted itself to God's will. And this is what he has to beware of, for it is always the result of praying less often .... The more intimately he is in contact with God the more clearly he will see his delineated path and the more willingly he will follow the instructions revealed to him by God through his heart. Only the distance from God deprives him of the keen sense for the divine will, for in that case he has to rely on himself and

will be unsure as to what he should or should not do. And God's adversary makes use of such situations by tuning into a person's thoughts, by trying to impel him to base his every action on his own advantage. And then the person will have to fight, he will have to struggle in order to restore his connection with God again which will gain him clarity of thought so that he will be able to resist the temptations. Anyone looking for God will not go wrong; however, the path of anyone excluding Him will lead him astray. This is why nothing should be undertaken without a prayer for God's blessing, then people's thinking will be guided correctly and every activity shall incorporate God's will ....

Amen

## **Different spheres in the spiritual kingdom ....**

***B.D. 3316 from November 3rd 1944,  
taken from Book No. 43***

Immediately after physical death the soul leaves the body and moves into the spiritual kingdom which, depending on its maturity, can be close to or far away from earth. This should not be understood in a three-dimensional sense, the distance is the result of the

difference between the spheres which indeed belong to the spiritual kingdom because they are away from and outside of the earthly-material world and the immature soul has to travel a long path in time before it arrives in the spheres of light. By comparison, a mature soul arrives in these spheres as fast as lightening after its physical death since it requires neither time nor space to overcome the distance from earth into the light spheres. It only needs the strength which its state of maturity has acquired.

However, imperfect souls cannot separate themselves as swiftly from earth, partly because they are too weak to elevate themselves and partly because their senses are still attached to earthly matters. They do not want to leave earth and thus remain close to earth for a long time, mostly within the surroundings they used to occupy during their lifetime. Subsequently they cannot always feel their change from the earthly into the spiritual kingdom either. Their surrounding still appears earthly to them and the souls are frequently unaware that they are no longer physically alive. Nevertheless, they find it strange that they cannot establish a connection with the people on earth any longer, that they cannot make themselves heard and are ignored by people. This condition gradually makes them aware of their situation, they come to understand that they no longer live on earth but that they are beyond earth in the spiritual kingdom. But as long as the soul is still earthly minded it

cannot remove itself from this surrounding; it is still grounded and experiences this as a painful condition because everything it desires or believes to possess is unattainable.

And now it slowly has to overcome its desire for earthly possessions; only when it has succeeded in doing so will it gradually move away from earth, the spheres will take on a different appearance, and depending on the soul's maturity it will no longer see earthly but only spiritual creations, i.e. the spiritual vision of the soul will be able to see spiritual creations which the immature being cannot see even though they are present. But when a mature soul departs from earth it can instantly distinguish its surrounding in the spiritual realm since its maturity has acquired the ability of spiritual vision. Such a soul will also recognise the souls it meets in the beyond whilst immature souls are unable to do so, i.e. they only recognise souls who walk in darkness like themselves, who are in the same imperfect state. However, beings of light are invisible to them, and even when these disguise their light and come close to them they cannot perceive them .... Spiritual vision only develops during a certain state of maturity but then the souls are also surrounded by light, while those who are unable to see due to their undeveloped spiritual vision are surrounded by spiritual darkness.

However, the earthly items they desire are visible to them; nevertheless they are mere illusions which do not really exist but which appear due to the soul's longing,

only to disappear again like a mirage as soon as the soul wants to touch or use them, because their fleeting nature should make the soul understand that it ought to strive for higher values than temporary earthly possessions. Consequently, no beings of light will come close to the soul as long as it still desires such belongings, since earthly minded souls will not listen to the beings of light when they arrive in disguise to bring the Gospel. In this situation they can only be helped by the prayer of another human being, only then will they turn away from matter and look for an alternative in the spiritual realm. Then beings who are willing to help will meet them, instruct them and direct them to the path of ascent. And the more willingly they accept the light beings' instructions the sooner they will acquire spiritual vision and are thus delivered from darkness .... they have entered the spheres where they may receive and give light. They have travelled the path which can take a short but also a very long time, depending on the soul's determination for material possessions which keep it attached to earth until they lose their appeal, and are then introduced to the pure truth by the beings of light in order to work for the kingdom of God in the beyond by sharing the knowledge with needy souls who are still living in spiritual darkness ....

Amen

## **God's love determines**

# people's destiny ....

***B.D. 3317 from November 4th 1944,  
taken from Book No. 43***

My love constantly flows to My living creations with undiminished strength, and this love also directs people's destiny on earth. My goal for everything that happens is always spiritual maturing. Nevertheless, I play a part in every happening and its effect. I always and forever accompany the human being, perceptibly for him if he hands himself over to Me, or unnoticed, if he does not seek to be in touch with Me. My love for My living creations will never lessen, and thus you humans must always consider this love as the reason whether you encounter joy or sorrow on your earthly path, for I truly know best what helps your spiritual maturing. And therefore you should never feel despondent or be disappointed by your destiny, for since it was determined by My love it is good for you, even though you experience it painfully at times. My love applies to you for eternity, yet you fail to understand this as long as you have not changed yourselves into love; My love constantly remains the same, and the depth of My love expresses itself in My plan of Salvation, which forms the basis of every happening and every work of creation. If I did not want to save you from spiritual hardship, if I did not want to draw you to Me because I love you, the whole of Creation would not exist, for its only purpose is your approach to

Me. And just as the whole of Creation arose from My love for the spiritual beings which had deserted Me, just as I let inconceivable and incalculable works arise for you in order to regain these spiritual beings, so the earthly life of the spiritual being in the embodiment as a human being is directed by My love and every detail of life is predetermined, so that you will reach the final goal of uniting yourselves with Me again. Yet you must know and believe that you are always and forever surrounded by My love and must also recognise this love in suffering, in living conditions which you find difficult to bear, in earthly failure, in sickness and misfortune of all kinds.

Were My love not to recognise that this is beneficial for you it would truly not come upon you. But I use means which can be successful for you, because My love for you is greater than great but you are in danger of being lost to Me if I spare you whatever disheartens you on earth. Put your trust in Me and My love, which will never end .... And completely hand yourselves over to My guidance, let Me take care of you in every earthly adversity and only consider your soul's salvation. Work diligently for your soul, strive towards My kingdom which is not of this world, and leave every worry about your earthly existence to Me. It will not be much longer, and you should make use of every minute by striving spiritually. I alone know every person's course of life, and it will be travelled according to My will, thus every anxious worry is unnecessary, because you cannot change what I have determined, thus you cannot improve anything through



your anxious worry either. Just be kind-hearted to each other, help where you are able to help, and where your strength fails you put your trust in My help, for My help is always ready for you and will not leave you in trouble any longer than is beneficial for your soul. And even if you deem your destiny harsh, you should not doubt My love. After all, can anything come upon you without My will? And My will is determined by My wisdom and love, which forms the basis of everything that happens. Even evil is sent to you by My love for the good of your soul if you don't oppose My will and humbly accept and bear everything I send to you without resisting .... And therefore don't worry and don't despair, My love is always with you, because it can never ever become less than it was for eternity .... Just strive so that you will be able to feel this love by living a way of life according to My will, by practising love and thereby becoming capable of receiving My strength of love in you. For whether or not you make yourselves receptive to My illumination of love is entirely up to you .... However, your life will be far easier if you know yourselves to be guided and cared for by My love, if you feel Me and in everything recognise My love. Therefore remain united with Me through prayer and loving deeds, and you will receive strength on your earthly path of life and need not fear anything, regardless of what comes, for I Myself will guide you until the end of your life ....

Amen

# God's powerful voice ... The end of the battle ...

***B.D. 3318 from November 5th 1944,  
taken from Book No. 43***

God's voice will resound impressively and decide the fate of the nations, for God Himself will pass judgment through the forces of nature. And no-one will be able to oppose His verdict, for it will be fair and strike the people who are responsible for having caused great misery and don't want to admit their transgression. It will be an exceptionally sad event in which countless people will lose their lives, yet the event is unavoidable because people can no longer be shaken by anything that is accomplished by human will, consequently they will have to be disturbed by an event which cannot be averted or stopped by human will and which will generate enormous terror because everyone will be faced by death and has to brace himself for his demise. And this event draws ever closer, day after day passes by but humanity will not change, and God's forbearance still hesitates in order to continue granting people the opportunity of turning back before His voice resounds. Yet then worldly events will slowly come to an end because the natural disaster is in the making, because the earth's interior will be plunged into a state of turmoil and will only be waiting for God to liberate the forces of nature and allow them free reign.

For people cannot stop, thus God intervenes and puts an end to it.

Appalling activities will come to a halt but the consequences will be much worse, for people will experience dreadful adversity and be at a total loss in the face of the unleashed forces of nature. They can neither escape nor impede or lessen their raging, they are at their mercy and only have one Saviour to Whom they can entrust themselves in their urgent need, to Whom they can call for help and Who has the power to help them. Yet only a few acknowledge Him, only a few feel that they are guilty and humbly await His judgment in recognition of their sinfulness. And these few will also be taken care of by God in the hours of destruction, which are sent by divine will because there is no other way of removing the spiritual adversity and the earthly hardship is constantly increased by human will. And because people will not put an end to it God will determine the end of a battle which affects the whole world. And a cry of horror will resound across earth which will paralyse people, for the magnitude of the catastrophe will make everyone pay heed and tremble in fear of a repetition. It is God's intention that the whole of humanity shall take part in it, that it shall listen to His judgment, that it shall recognise those who are guilty and God's righteousness. For every fighting party still believes itself to be in the right, only power is being valued and not the law, and God's blessing cannot rest on actions which are detestable because they oppose the divine

commandment of love .... And God will punish people in the same way as they act themselves .... except that His work of destruction will be far more powerful so that they will thereby recognise Him. For even the still constrained spirits express outrage at being torn out of divine order and experience this state as painful, for although they were released through human will they are unable to enjoy their freedom since it is not the freedom of perfection, instead the spiritual substances will be deprived of the opportunity to be active and are incensed about it.

And they will work wherever the opportunity presents itself. But above all they will join other still constrained spirits and try to persuade them to also burst their shell and will help them with it. Thereby they want to force people into becoming constructively active again and provide them with the opportunity to enter new creations in order to continue their process of development. And God will not stop the spirits which will be released through human will; He will also give His consent when matter moves within the earth's interior, when the spiritual substances strive towards the light and try to burst their forms. God will briefly withdraw His will and give the spirits' will free reign which, however, due to their complete immaturity will mean a work of destruction on an enormous scale. And thus human resolve will be confronted by another will which is stronger than the former, which seemingly lacks all divine love and wisdom and finds God's full approval ....

Yet humanity will not bow down to God, it will not stop its battle of annihilation, it is possessed by demons and allows itself to be driven by them, it is more and more enslaved by the evil power and proves this by its works and actions. And in order to put a stop to this decline, God's will and omnipotence steps into obvious action. He will shake the earth and with it the human race so that it may come to its senses and change. For it is the last time which can still be used for the souls. And this is why God's voice will resound powerfully, and He calls to people: Stop your raging which drags your souls into ruin; change your ways before it is too late and remember the One Who rules over heaven and earth, Who is your Creator and Provider and Whose love you trample under your feet .... Consider your end, for it is soon about to happen ....

Amen

## **Concord of spiritual results .... Truth ....**

***B.D. 3328 from November 13th 1944,  
taken from Book No. 43***

The thoughts and words of all those who are enlightened by the spirit of God will be in complete concord, for they are all educated by God's spirit and can endorse the same

truth, because they received the latter from God through His spirit. But the concord of thoughts does not depend on people belonging to the same school of faith, they need merely spiritually be on the same path, i.e., their life must correspond to God's will by actively practising neighbourly love. This awakens the indwelling spirit to life which can subsequently instruct them, that is, guide them into truth. But people who are spiritually awakened by the spirit of God will mostly pursue different goals than those which are generally required by ecclesiastical organisations. They will not keep to external formalities so much but make the heart of the matter, Christ's teaching of love, their guiding principle of life, hence, they will live their life according to this teaching of love, although in their obedience to the church they belong to, they also fulfil its laws. But the fulfilment of ecclesiastical commandments does not help them to become spiritually awake, only the fulfilment of the divine commandments, which require love, does that, this is why someone not belonging to an external church community but living a life of love can also be spiritually enlightened. For he belongs to the church of Christ, which comprises the community of believers, to the church which was founded by Christ with the Words 'Thou art Peter, and upon this rock I will build My church ....' This community of believers can be composed of the most varied ecclesiastical organisations, for there will be truly devout people who practise love in each one and in whom the spirit of God can work. But they will be of like mind, they will endorse the same direction of thought,

muster the same understanding for spiritual problems, strive towards the same goal, because the spirit of God guides them into truth, and this can never contradict itself. And the hallmark, the characteristic of the church of Christ, rests in the fact that all members are of like mind, but that they do not advocate externally acquired spiritual knowledge imparted to them by fellow human beings; instead, they have received the truth themselves from within, for even externally imparted mental information must first become a person's possession through the working of the spirit before he can endorse it. However, earthly ecclesiastical organisations demand unconditional acceptance of teachings which were conveyed to them from external sources; they devise a code of belief the rejection of which they portray as sin, thus people are not permitted to voice any opinion.

This is not faith .... it is not spiritually attained mental knowledge, which can be endorsed with full conviction if the person has not formed an earnest opinion of it first. The spirit of God can therefore not work in those people, since due to their lack of serious deliberation they do not provide it with the opportunity to answer their questions, to instruct them and to correct errors .... Hence the working of God's spirit is made impossible; it cannot express itself because it is not approached for an explanation. Therefore, such people will also agree in their opinions and thoughts, nevertheless, they only dutifully repeat what is demanded of them but do not uphold personally gained thoughts which were born in

them of their profound desire for pure truth .... Thus it is not their own mental knowledge but is adopted from other people and therefore not their own spiritual spark's working .... Yet the working of the divine spirit is also credited to results which are far removed from truth, because people have no idea when and where the spirit of God is able to work .... because they associate the working of the spirit with a person of reputable position or distinction .... The spirit of God works wherever He wants .... but only where a heart willing and capable of love allows for this working, where God's prerequisites are fulfilled in order to be able to impart the pure truth to people through His spirit .... And these prerequisites can be fulfilled by all people, irrespective of which school of thought they belong to and what position they hold on earth .... Consequently, the truth can only be found where the spirit of God is at work, but it will always concur. As soon as different spiritual results and thoughts emerge, this cannot be considered the working of the spirit, and then there must be an investigation into where the preconditions had been disregarded. For the spirit of God always instructs people in the same truth, which is eternal and unchanging .... but which will, time and again, be conveyed to earth in purity where people, through a selfless life of love, awaken their spirit, which will then instruct them from within ....

Amen



# **Personal responsibility ....**

## **Dogma ....**

***B.D. 3329 from November 14th 1944,  
taken from Book No. 43***

Every human being is personally responsible for his soul, and thus he has to justify himself for every bad deed as well as for every omission of a good deed. He can neither blame other people for his guilt nor can he have it compensated by others, but he has to make

Amends himself on earth or in the beyond. And likewise, he alone is able to raise his state of maturity, it cannot be given to him as a gift, but he has to make an effort to live his life in accordance with God's will. Thus he has to accept the care for his soul's salvation himself, because no other human being can relieve him of this.

Subsequently, he also has to inform himself of God's will and accept His Word, which reveals the divine will to him. And then he has to let God's Word take effect on him. He therefore should not blindly believe what people want to present to him but first has to compare it with God's Word, and only if it completely corresponds to the latter may he submit himself to its influence.

If the human being is responsible for himself he is also responsible for his own mental concepts. Consequently he is duty-bound to scrutinise whatever is offered to him,

because this is precisely what he is answerable for. He cannot excuse himself with having been offered errors and thus he became unable to find the truth, but he has to make his own effort to discover the truth, which will also be offered to him if he asks for it. Since God will hold him to account one day He will first give him every opportunity to be able to recognise and live up to what is right. However, when the human being relies on what is given to him by other people he is bypassing all personal responsibility, he tries to unload it on the other person who has educated him. Yet God has given him intellect and the gift of thought, and by using this gift he can choose for himself what is right and wanted by God and act accordingly, consequently he can also be held to account ....

Therefore, academically imparted spiritual knowledge, thus including teachings accepted by the person in the form of formal education, cannot suffice to gain complete knowledge of God's will as long as it does not, by way of his own reflection, awaken and increase a sense of responsibility in the human being .... And on serious reflection the human being will realise which teachings were given by God to people and which teachings have been added to them by people. Thus, in order to be answerable in the future, the human being first has to deal with the received knowledge and in doing so, providing he has a desire for truth, he will also be able to distinguish between truth and error. Whereas a dogmatic teaching will stifle his sense of responsibility in him,

indeed it will have to stifle it, because the faith in it or the fulfilment of what is demanded will become a purely mechanical matter and the person no longer feels responsible for what he believes to do conscientiously. Because whatever he does is done by him with a certain amount of obligation since it is demanded of him .... It is not an act of free will, albeit he is also able to refuse or ignore the demand, but the inner urge is missing which should be the reason for every action, for everything demanded by God from people.

The human being should be conscious of the fact that God only values what he does for love, that his thinking and actions should therefore only be governed by love and that every lack of love is a sin against God, Who is love Himself, and that the human being has to be answerable for this. Thus, whatever he is ordered to do, whatever he is duty-bound to do, negates free thought and action. And the human being effectively only gives account to the world, i.e. to those who have imposed a duty on him. For this reason the soul cannot benefit greatly if the human being does not act and think from within. Consequently, since no person can ever assume responsibility for another person's soul but the human being has to accept this for himself, he is also obliged to scrutinise whether his thoughts and actions coincide with God's will, and therefore he has to know God's will, which is imparted to him through His Word. And thus God's Word has to be the foundation and not human interpretations and additions; and in order to examine

this, in order to be accountable one day, a deeply felt relationship with God is necessary, Who will then mentally reveal His will to the person who has the desire for truth ....

Amen

## **The cause of hard living conditions ....**

***B.D. 3334 from November 18th 1944,  
taken from Book No. 43***

You cannot expect changes for the better in your living conditions as long as you don't change your will as well as your conduct in life yourselves. Your perception of the purpose of your earthly life is completely wrong and you would never even think about it if you were given a carefree life of peaceful monotony or worldly pleasure. But you have to become aware of your true task on earth, and therefore you will be motivated by difficult conditions in life to think about it because only then can the knowing beings, who are responsible for your spiritual care, mentally suggest an answer to you. And these difficult conditions shall worsen if they don't succeed in stimulating your thinking because in that case you won't live consciously, i.e. you won't strive for spiritual

development, which is the purpose and aim of your earthly life. And therefore you shall have to endure worldly hard times and should not expect improvements as long as you don't improve yourselves, i.e. as long as you don't accept divine will as your guiding principle of conduct. Because God can only educate you such that your will becomes active by itself and you would only need a small amount of suffering if you thought of your own accord and shaped your life in accordance with its purpose. And you continue to be burdened by very hard conditions because you are not making any preparations for change.

The earth will see much suffering; hopelessness and anguish shall tire and exhaust the people, and yet they could provide themselves with an easier earthly life if they only recognised their suffering as a caution from God, who warns them in that manner to change their lives for their own sake. Because soul and body shall die on the path they are walking. God wants to save the soul and therefore puts the body under pressure, He wants to show you the right way if only you were willing to listen to Him, when you, because of a harder life, turn your thoughts to Him, when you question yourselves about the meaning and purpose of your existence and wish for a mental response ....

And if you listen to Him, if you heed His warnings and live accordingly, then He shall relieve you of your difficult living conditions .... He shall save you from all evil, spiritually as well as earthly, because He only asks you to

consider Him and carry out your true purpose in life .... to strive for progress and not just concern yourselves with earthly life .... Then He shall take your worries from you where it benefits your soul, because God does not want you to suffer if you consider your spiritual well-being first. He must save you from eternal destruction by all means which, however, you shall suffer if you live a carefree earthly life and achieve worldly fulfilment .... then your soul will be lost and you won't achieve your goal on earth, you won't strive upwards and therefore will have lived your life in vain ....

Amen

## **Natural disaster ... Good and bad people will fall prey ....**

***B.D. 3348 from November 27th 1944, taken from Book No. 43***

In their hour of greatest need many people will call upon God, yet not every call will come from the heart because the danger they are in will disable their ability to think, and thus they will merely address God with their lips and their prayer will fade away unheard. Only those who will be able to send their thoughts to Him, if only for a few

moments, will be supported by God, either by rescuing them from bodily adversity or by still offering blessings to their soul before the end. Death should not always be considered the greatest evil, for if a person facing death has found his way to God as a result, it will have been an effective means for his salvation, which is more valuable than the preservation of physical life in spiritual darkness. And this is why countless people will soon lose their lives, partly as a warning to their fellow human beings and partly for the sake of their own spiritual hardship. But righteous people, too, whose life has come to an end according to God's will, will also be recalled from this earth. For where God Himself is recognisable, where the forces of nature, which are subject to God, are in turmoil, that is where His will determines who shall fall prey to this event .... Mature and immature people will have to leave this earth, yet if a soul has recognised God before its death its spiritual progress in the beyond will be guaranteed and the finished earthly life will only be a blessing. And the earthly adversity will be severe and still offer everyone the option of finding God .... for the natural event will announce itself in advance .... Unusual signs will indicate an unusual event so that every human being can still change his mind ahead of time, and through fellow human beings he will also be informed of the highest Authority, the Controller of heaven and earth, so that he will still have time and opportunity to join Him through heartfelt prayer ....

Yet then humanity's distance from God will be revealed

for only a few will accept Him, only a few will turn to Him for protection and help in their fear and affliction. Most of them reject Him consciously and unconsciously; they watch the spectacle of nature only in hope of a speedy end and therefore the hour of adversity will hit them even more severely because they feel totally abandoned since they have no faith at all. However, even many of those who are distant from God will remain alive, to whom God will still offer the opportunity of gaining realisation afterwards .... Good and bad people will lose their lives, and good and bad people will stay alive, for this natural disaster is not a separation of the spirits as yet but only a last admonition prior to the final Judgment, from which all people shall derive psychological benefits. Even so, it is up to them how they will evaluate the last admonition .... they can gain realisation before or after the disastrous night but they can also keep their former frame of mind, and thus the big event will not have made any impression on their souls. And so, after that God-opposing people will actively aim to destroy all faith in God, and they will refer to this natural disaster as the strongest evidence of His non-existence, they will emerge as the greatest deniers of God from an event which was intended to lead them back to faith, and thus the battle will visibly erupt between those who became strong and faithful as a result of this event and those who survived it despite their unbelief; and thus everything will approach its end after the short time of grace granted to humanity before the last Judgment ....



Amen

# **Childship to God ....**

## **Tremendous suffering on Earth ....**

***B.D. 3352 from December 1st 1944,  
taken from Book No. 43***

In order to gain childship on earth the human being must shape himself into love and thereby enable himself to already establish union with God on earth, so that he will enter the spheres of light in a completely mature state when he passes away from earth. Hence his soul must have become so purified through kind-hearted activity that God Himself can take abode in it and his spirit unites with the Father-spirit. In that case the human being will have fulfilled his task on earth completely and achieved his goal and, as a being of light, will have found entry into the spiritual realm, where it will subsequently create and work. However, this degree of maturity necessitates a complete renunciation of material possessions .... This fusion with the eternal Deity is impossible as long as a person still clings to matter, since his heart is not entirely cleansed from cravings and therefore not yet prepared for the acceptance of the divine spirit. Then the human

being will have to accept much suffering in order to accomplish the soul's final refinement, and therefore much suffering will be imposed upon extremely benevolent and devout people so that the soul's refinement can take place. Where people are burdened by particularly harsh suffering and nevertheless profound faith is displayed, the soul might have chosen a particularly difficult life for itself in order to attain the final goal on earth, the childship to God. This goal must be aspired to and reached on earth and will always necessitate the most arduous living conditions, because the soul must enter the kingdom of the beyond completely pure and unadulterated and this calls for a particularly effective process of purification. Suffering is always the means of help in order to attain the spiritual goal .... It shall lead towards God if the soul is still disinclined towards God, or it shall purify and crystallise the soul, so that it can come close to God as the purest being in order to be able to enter into the most blissful union with Him. Suffering and love must always work together towards deifying a person on earth; consequently, a loving human being should not fear suffering but humbly take it upon himself bearing in mind the high goal he can reach on earth, for he has chosen his earthly path himself in realisation that it will help him attain highest maturity if his will does not offer resistance.

Nevertheless, the delights of the childship to God make up for all suffering in earthly life a thousand fold. And the

time on earth is short, it is like a moment in the span of eternity .... And as soon as a person is profoundly faithful he also can always receive the strength from God to endure everything that is imposed upon him, for then he will send his heartfelt prayer to God and God Himself will give him strength and make him a conqueror of life on earth .... God Himself will fetch His child if it has passed its test of earthly life and departs from earth as a pure being .... But his life on earth will always be characterised by love and suffering, because without it the soul will not be totally purified for admitting God into the human being's heart. This heartfelt bond with God must already take place on earth, otherwise the soul will not stand firm against the temptations of the world nor would it achieve total purification through suffering because it would lack the strength to bear the latter without complaining, and all grumbling or resisting still indicates a lack of complete submission to God's will. However, the soul must become as one with God .... It must have the most intimate bond with Him, it must want the suffering itself and also gratefully accept it as a gift from God in realisation that it pulls down the last barriers between God and itself and that only an overcoming of them will result in the highest bliss .... to become a child of God with all rights and duties .... This is every person's goal on earth but only a few attain it. Only a few are in such intimate contact with God through love that even in suffering they recognise His greater than great Fatherly love which would provide them with the most blissful fate in eternity .... Their fate on earth is not an enviable

one, yet in the kingdom of the beyond they occupy the highest level .... They are in God's immediate vicinity and therefore indescribably happy, for they can act independently according to their will, which is also always God's will .... They can create and shape and, time and again, contribute towards the redemption of that which, still being distant from God, requires the most varied creations in order to advance their development. And this is the most blissful fate which fully compensates and makes up for the suffering of earthly life and should therefore be all people's goal on earth ....

Amen

## **Mental influence by beings of light ....**

***B.D. 3354 from December 3rd 1944,  
taken from Book No. 43***

As soon as a bearer of light in the beyond, an enlightened being, has managed to be heard by a person it will always stay close to him in order to influence his every thought, thus in order to instruct him constantly. Yet the human being's will is always decisive as to whether the light being's endeavours are successful. For although the being is powerful and would be able to take complete

possession of the person's thoughts his freedom of will is not restricted, hence the information is never conveyed to him against his will. Consequently, the light beings' teaching activity requires extreme patience. Time and time again they have to direct a person's thoughts to a specific subject which they are ready to explain, and they may not become impatient when these thoughts digress. Their love for people has to be considerable in order to repeatedly muster understanding for their failings and not stop trying to arouse people's interest in spiritual knowledge. For this reason a person in intimate contact with the beings of light will also have a different mentality; despite the fact that he is not yet being instructed in an obvious manner he will spend much thought on spiritual subjects, and this contemplation will satisfy him since it will result in an agreeable answer. And then the beings of light will be able to move into action, they are always able to enter a person's train of thoughts, they are able to transfer their thoughts to people .... Yet it depends on the individual's receptiveness as to whether their effort and patience are successful, for the more willing he is the more attentively he listens within, that is, he takes notice of his thoughts, he will not discard them instantly but think them through, and only then can they become effective, thus move him into action .... to do what he was mentally advised to do.

If the human being has paid attention to these transmissions then the desire will also arise in him to tell his fellow human beings what he has heard, what he has

spiritually received, for whatever moves him will also urge him to pass it on. And this in turn prepares his fellow human beings for the light beings' work on them, for as soon as another person listens to what he is told he also starts to think about it, and the being of light will again be able to intervene and provide food for thought in the form of mental questions and explanations.

All people are entrusted to such beings of light, all people are surrounded by them, and they pay attention to every thought. And as soon as the thoughts turn to spiritual matters, hence to things which are unrelated to earthly life, which do not concern the body but the human soul, the beings of light try to direct the thoughts onto the right track .... by mentally whispering the correct information, the answer to questions raised, so that they, having arisen in themselves, will be considered and, with good will, also be assessed. For the thought only becomes valuable when it is put into practice, when the mental advice is implemented accordingly. Yet the light beings' efforts are often in vain with many people because they only aspire to purely earthly things and have no interest in spiritual work or spiritual knowledge. In that case the beings of light are grateful for every support by way of a human mouth .... For the beings of light can neither visibly appear nor introduce people to the right knowledge against their will, but it is always the person's own will which allows or rejects the light beings' work on him. And the beings of light are subject to laws, because the human being's free will has to remain unaffected as

not to make it impossible for the person to attain perfection.

For this reason the right knowledge can only be made accessible to people once they employ their own will, by willingly accepting the influence of the being which, as a representative of light, makes the knowledge available to them. Only then will the light beings surrounding a person be able to do their work, they will be able to instruct him mentally and provide him with information about every question that moves him. Then he will always be spiritually guided and looked after, and his thoughts will be led onto the right path, for the beings of light have much strength and authority at their disposal providing the human being's will does not resist their influence ....

Amen

## **Free will .... Knowledge of good and evil .... The new earth ....**

***B.D. 3359 from December 7th 1944,  
taken from Book No. 44***

The human being has free will .... But the use of this free

will necessitates a clear understanding of what it should as well as what it can strive for, since the will must be able to choose either direction in order to make a decision .... Hence it must be possible for the human being to distinguish between good and evil otherwise the freedom of his will would be futile or could be questioned. And for that reason God gave the human being intelligence .... Therefore, not to use intellect means to ignore the gift of free will, thus the human being has the duty to apply his intelligence or else he will be held responsible. And this results in the necessity to reflect on the meaning and purpose of life, because it also gives rise to all other questions which have to be considered in order to make a free decision.

In order to achieve spiritual growth it is absolutely essential for the human being to clarify his inner attitude towards God, towards righteousness, for him to learn to understand that a sincere relationship with God is the purpose of earthly life .... that his free will consciously strives towards God and affirms what is good. Hence he also has to know of the power of evil, he has to get to know it so that he can despise it and choose between one and the other. For this reason evil cannot be expelled from the world or the human being could never make a free decision of will. Evil has to be given some room to vent its fury .... And this is God's adversary's influence on human beings which is not denied to him because he can, at the same time, release the powers of good, i.e. the human will is prompted to aspire for good or for bad.



Consequently even evil forces are of service to God because they inadvertently help the soul to ascend if it uses its free will correctly.

However, they frequently use their influence beyond what is allowed .... in that they, whose actions are not refused by God, try to prevent good actions .... by making it impossible for people to freely choose between good and evil .... by withholding the knowledge of good, of God, and thus try to compel the human will. And for that reason God puts an end to their activities for a long time .... He confines the forces, who had a limited amount of freedom, for a long time, but at the same time also prevents people, who have not yet clearly decided or whose decision gave evil forces power over them, from using their free will. Only those who have chosen God of their own accord and in spite of the greatest temptations will stay alive because they need no further test of will since they have endured the most difficult trial.

In the coming period only people who have undertaken this test of will can live on earth, who knew the effects of the opposing forces, who were exposed to them and yet escaped them by virtue of their free will, because only they have attained the degree of maturity which allows them to live on earth without being influenced by God's adversary; while those who have failed must endure the long process of development again until they get at the stage once more when they can use their freedom of will .... Human beings always have to encounter good and evil and therefore the earth will remain a battlefield for

both powers as long as immature spirits are embodied on it .... In the beginning the new earth will only accommodate beings of light, i.e. mature human beings shall live on the new earth and keep in constant contact with the beings of light in the spiritual kingdom, and God's might and power will prevent evil from approaching the people. But the first people of the new earth don't need further trials and therefore negative forces need not be close to earth either, which manifests itself in the fact that earth is in a state of profound peace, in a condition of mutual understanding and with societies of people living in perfect harmony, because love rules and no God-opposing entity can exist in the presence of love.

But this condition will not last forever because later generations will once again give power to God's adversary over themselves, they will gladly give in to his temptations and distance themselves to the same extent from God, Who wanted to create a paradise for them on the new earth .... And thus the battle between light and darkness will start anew, and this shall again continue until the end of a redemption period, in order that human beings can decide of their own free will which Lord they acknowledge; and they will be judged in eternity in accordance with their free will .... they will have to suffer in darkness or approach eternal light until they are united with the primal light ....

Amen

# **New school of thought ....**

## **Human work ....**

***B.D. 3366 from December 13th 1944,  
taken from Book No. 44***

It will be the object of those who no longer recognise God, due to their heartless way of life, to coerce people into a completely new school of thought. They reject the old belief and will try to replace it with new teachings, their intention will be to confuse people's thought by seeking to disprove everything and, through objections, will awaken their doubts in order to introduce them to the new school of thought, to recruit them for it with guile and force. Because they do not shy away from achieving their aim by unfair means, they will rigorously proceed against people who remain faithful to their old belief and honour those who do their will and promote the spreading of the new teaching. These teachings are the work of human beings, they incorporate neither wisdom nor love; the aim of these teachings is to de-spiritualise people, to make people get the wrong idea about the purpose of earthly life, they do not originate from the spiritual realm but deny all spiritual concepts and only accept worldly goals.

And these teachings are offered to people in such a way

that no one may evade their influence, that daily life will more or less depend on the acceptance of these teachings so that people will have to make the serious decision to accept or reject them. This school of thought will find approval everywhere because it takes people's worldly attitude into account which is the key factor for most people, because humanity is becoming increasingly materialistic and has completely turned away from the spiritual kingdom. They accept what they are given by people but do not recognise spiritual gifts as such, they laugh at or mock God's Word and reject any truthful explanation. On the other hand, human structures and human ideas, which heartless people are trying to spread, meet the approval of most, and thus a school of thought will evolve which completely contradicts the pure truth. This is a school of thought which has nothing in common with Christ's teaching since Christ's teaching of love will be frowned upon. Since love is not taught first and foremost it will grow cold and wisdom, which is unthinkable without love, will also come to an end. People's thoughts will be ever more misguided, fewer and fewer people will take refuge in God as the source of all wisdom and it won't be possible, therefore, to give the pure truth to them anymore either. Nor will the truth be recognised any longer while error will assert itself, since humanity will no longer be able to distinguish truth from error due to its heartlessness. And thus it will allow itself to be encouraged and descend ever deeper into a state of ignorance. There will be spiritual darkness for humanity and no one will want to see the light .... And for this

reason the adversary will have an easy time .... The battle against faith will be carried out on all levels of society since unkindness dominates everywhere and prevents people's perception. However, human work will not last .... It will disintegrate, like everything that is not of God, after it has triggered an enormous chaos, because these things do not survive for long and will therefore be eliminated by God Himself when the time for the end has come ....

Amen

## **End of the battle ... Spatial separation ....**

***B.D. 3371 from December 17th 1944,  
taken from Book No. 44***

You will be informed of everything that is beneficial for you if you let yourselves be taught by Me and thus pay heed to My voice which gently yet perceptibly speaks to you within yourselves .... Your opinion about the forthcoming sequence of world events is extraordinarily misguided if you believe that one of the opposing powers will emerge victoriously from the struggle, for My will has decided otherwise, given that not the physical well-being but the salvation of souls shall be promoted and

this necessitates a complete change of their lives which can only take place once all earthly plans have become null and void and humanity is faced by an extraordinary event which will shock their way of thinking. A normal conclusion to the struggle between nations would not entail a change in their usual life, besides, none of the quarrelling powers are innocent and thus none of the powers are legitimately entitled to victory. Hence I will thwart people's plans, irrespective of which outcome they assume .... I will invalidate everyone's expectations and provide a solution which no-one expects and which is not welcome by anyone either, for I will end the battle such that it cannot be continued even if people were willing to do so. For I will spatially separate the fighting parties from each other, I will let natural obstacles arise which cannot so easily be overcome. And thus I will deprive people of every possibility to continue fighting each other.

And so the battle of the nations against each other will be brought to a halt, it will not be a decision, it will not be the defeat of one power but humanity will realise that its power has reached its limit and that the divine Power has to be acknowledged, which is only too distinctly recognisable in this outcome. I will bring about the end and yet severely punish the guilty parties in doing so, for they will realise that they were misled in their certainty of victory, they find themselves weakened and unsuccessful and are confronted by great misery and immense poverty. And this end was announced by Me a

long time ago, so that the truth of My Word would thereby be demonstrated to you who still doubt it. I will put a stop to it when people's cruelty has reached its peak, so that the world will realise that there is a God in heaven Who punishes the sin which so evidently comes to light .... so that it will realise that it is not people but I Myself who determines the outcome .... and this in a different way than people expect. And the hour is not far away .... Hence I reveal Myself to those who believe in My intervention and know My intention, whom I instruct to draw people's attention to it and whom I send as prophets amongst humanity. For it shall be warned in advance because I will never let such an event come upon people without informing them of it, so that they will sincerely consider their souls' and prepare themselves. For no-one knows who will be affected .... My intervention will claim countless victims wherever it happens ....

Amen

## **The purpose of God's revelations ....**

***B.D. 3377 from December 24th 1944,  
taken from Book No. 44***

God reveals Himself to people in order to make religious

truths available to them by availing Himself of a person through Whom He speaks to all people. He makes Himself known to them, that is, He so discernibly expresses Himself that a person, if he is willing, can attain profound belief in a Being Which is supremely perfect, full of love, omnipotence and wisdom and Which, as creative power, is in closest connection with Its living creations. His revelations make this perfectly clear, but it is up to the human being to believe it or not; and for this reason His revelations convey what he should believe, nevertheless it will never be proven to him such that he must believe it. It is entirely up to his will whether the knowledge conveyed to him becomes his inner conviction, whether he thereby becomes a believer. And therefore God's revelations are presented such that they will never signify religious compulsion. They can certainly be recognised as divine revelations if the human being sincerely desires truth, that is, God; but they can also be made out to be human work, to be human thinking, and a person is entirely at liberty to make up his own mind. But since faith in God is imperative in order to ascend, God will time and again reveal Himself in order to give people the knowledge about Himself, about His reign and activity. And He appeals to the human being's intellect to process this imparted knowledge mentally and thereby arrive at the right belief. For as soon as the person discovers correlations which harmonise with God's nature, that is, which show God's love, wisdom and omnipotence, he will accept what is offered to him as plausible. And then he will try to establish his own



connection with this supremely perfect Being.

And this is the purpose of God's revelations, so that people who are looking for Him will take the right path and thereby find Him. They should be able to believe as a matter of conviction and this entails that they have mentally processed the knowledge conveyed to them and subsequently acknowledge it as truth. For what God expects people to believe has to be made accessible to them in some form or other. But God Himself can never manifestly speak to them, because it would not be spiritual freedom but coercion, which would not enable people to gain a higher degree of maturity. Although it certainly would be convincing **proof**, it would nevertheless be worthless, for then the person would be forced into a God-pleasing way of life, but this has to be the result of profound love for God. For only love can lead to higher spheres, but love has to arise from the heart in absolute freedom of will, if it is to be divine and lead to God. Love is also the key to wisdom, that is, only a loving person recognises the truth, and this is why only a loving person will be able to attain true faith. But God preaches love through His Word, and everything He proclaims to people through His Word will therefore also be trustingly accepted if love is not excluded. Thus, God reveals Himself in order to educate people to love, in order to make them believe that He can come close to them with His gift of grace which intends to help them towards spiritual progress ....

Amen

**Living beings .... Activity ....  
State of compulsion .... Free  
will .... Being of service with  
love ....**

***B.D. 3378 from December 25th 1944,  
taken from Book No. 44***

All beings are animated by the will to live, that is, every spiritual being strives to be active, because in the very beginning it was full of strength and able to use its strength without restriction. The state of inactivity is therefore painful for the spiritual being because it completely contradicts the being's true nature and destiny. For this reason it will always be effectively impelled into activity, yet in its constrained state, particularly in hard matter, it is prevented from doing so, and this causes the spiritual being great pain.

Consequently, its weakness needs to be remedied first in order to make the being's state bearable, and the slightest flow of strength will spur it into becoming busily active and reveals life .... i.e., every living being, from the smallest plant to the highest evolved work of creation, the human being, is a recipient of strength and to various degrees capable of carrying out work, and thus life is

within them. Every living being's activity, with the exception of the human being, is determined by God, and the living beings comply with their assignment in a certain law of compulsion, that is, they subordinate themselves to the divine law of nature, according to which every work of creation is assigned a task it has to accomplish. However, the spiritual being's urge to live is so strong that it does not oppose this law but fulfils its vocation because in so doing it will be allowed to become increasingly more active. For this reason, everything in creation exhibits diligent activity, everything demonstrates life, apart from hard matter, which is apparently dead, yet it, too, shelters life which so imperceptibly manifests itself to the human eye that it is scarcely noticed and therefore hard matter is assumed to be lifeless, although it actually isn't.

Yet the more a spiritual being has evolved the more its activity, its life, can be recognised by the human being, and this life within every work of creation should make him ponder the purpose of the whole of creation .... After all, the human being as such is capable of reflecting on this, while all other living beings still lack this ability. The human being, however, can largely be active, and of his own free will. Vital energy flows to him incessantly which he can use to work constantly, and thus he has already come considerably closer to the state of the originally created being and he can take advantage of the last stage in order to gain complete freedom and immeasurable strength so as to be able to actively create and shape

again as it was his destiny in the very beginning. Yet the human being's activity on earth has to consist of being of service with love .... This alone determines whether the being will arrive at the true life. He can also misuse the ability to work in earthly life, by actively creating and shaping with unkindness, by using his vital energy to the detriment of his fellow human beings, for he has free will, he is no longer in the state of compulsion, coerced into a specific task, instead he has free choice but he will also have to be accountable for it and accept the consequences. A person misusing his strength will nevertheless not want to give it up, he will not want to end his earthly life; he senses that all strength will be taken away from him afterwards and is therefore afraid of dying, of losing his state of strength, whilst a person being of loving service is just as convinced that he will have even more strength at his disposal in the afterlife, so that he will gladly give up his earthly life for the sake of eternal life. The state of abundant strength always signifies life, but weakness always signifies death .... The spiritual being fears death and desires life .... Yet no life exists without God, and God is love .... Hence, the being has to love in order to be able to live. If, however, it ignores love then death, thus weakness, will be its fate ....

Amen

## **Life on earth is just a**

# **moment in eternity ....**

## **Suffering and pleasures ....**

***B.D. 3379 from December 25th 1944,  
taken from Book No. 44***

Earthly life is only of short duration, even if the human being reaches old age, for it is a phase of eternity which can be compared to an instant. And every pleasure and suffering the human being has to live through passes by like a fleeting moment leaving nothing behind but a memory. Yet every moment can affect the whole of eternity .... Every human being's fate, however, has been wisely considered by God and shaped by His love. Consequently, nothing will be without meaning and purpose, regardless of what the human being has to endure, it will be beneficial for the soul as soon as he completely entrusts himself to divine guidance and accepts his fate without grumbling. God wants to achieve the human being's total submission, since only then will He be able to fully work in him; He demands total dedication to Him in order to permeate the human being's soul with His love .... And therefore his heart has to abandon all longings which do not relate to Him ....

Earthly life is short and has to be made the most of, it has to be used to achieve complete union with God, and every day is lost if earthly goals preoccupy the human heart.

This is why God frequently takes from people what they refuse to give up by themselves, in order to then offer Himself as a substitute for what they had to relinquish. And then it will truly not be to the person's disadvantage, for he will exchange something worthless for something precious, and one day he will be very happy when he realises how loving God's guidance had been which wanted to help him reach eternal beatitude. For He demonstrates His love and grace by the fact that He rules with wisdom because He knows what benefits the human soul and what might damage it forever. He keeps His protective hand over His children who strive towards Him and are at risk of separating from Him because they are approached by the world with all its temptations .... Nevertheless, the human being should entrust himself completely to divine guidance, he should know that his life on earth has been determined by His love and that he will be grateful to Him one day when his short time on earth is over, which is just a moment in eternity ....

Amen

## **Eruptions ... Natural forces ... Divine Order ...**

***B.D. 3380 from December 27th 1944,  
taken from Book No. 44***

An event is in the making which was planned from the very beginning, which is based on God's will and will be caused by human will, but without the knowledge of the consequences of what people have devised. The point in time is coming ever closer when forces, which were set free through human will, will unite and, in unison, accomplish something with God's permission, Who carefully weighs up cause and effect and will support the spiritually immature forces when they come under pressure by human actions. Nothing in the universe happens without God's will or permission. As soon as the higher development of the spirits in the works of creation is prevented, God will give these spirits the right and the strength to defend themselves, and this will happen in a way that inconceivably powerful forces will begin to develop and rage by destroying the most solid matter and create chaos in order to avenge themselves for their interrupted process of development. What will take place inside the Earth as a result of destructions and annihilations through human will, shall very shortly become evident, for the eruptions which are inexorably in the making will break out with such force that people cannot possibly imagine it as yet. Any violation of the divine order is to the detriment of the human race and the earthly creations, because the purpose of God's law is the preservation or orderly development of what He has created. If this law is counteracted, it will result in a dissolution or termination of that which was created, yet to the horror of those who do not respect the divine law .... to those humans who, being distant from God, no

longer value anything that had emerged from the divine order. And people have reached such a low degree of maturity that they abandon themselves to the powers of darkness and comply with whatever these demand of them. They destroy creations in their blind hatred against their neighbour, and even the still banished spiritual substance is outraged, because it does not consider the unlawful liberation from its form a relief and so rages and runs riot in its freedom. Human will penetrates deep into the realm of the spiritual substance which is still at the beginning of its development, and this will take revenge. It is an act of huge spiritual turmoil which only seldom is permitted by God to the extent it will manifest itself. The activity of these forces will only last for a short time, yet it will cause inconceivable damage. God will banish the spiritual substance again which had liberated itself and thus prevent it from further raging and running wild. Nevertheless, He will grant it its freedom for as long as it is necessary to motivate the survivors to change their way of thinking. For it is the purpose of God's permitted work of destruction that they will recognise the sin of their violation against the divine order and try to improve themselves .... For everything that will happen is merely a means to regain the spiritual beings which strive away from Him, it is an admonition and indicator to God's omnipotence and, although not recognised, a confirmation of divine love, which wants to help those people who have gone astray in the deepest depths of vice and wickedness.



Amen

# The audible Word ....

***B.D. 3381 from December 27th 1944,  
taken from Book No. 44***

The inner Word certainly sounds clearly and audibly, yet only to someone who listens within and who, due to his way of life, has so shaped his heart that God Himself is able to express Himself through this heart. The human being's soul has to be so intimately connected with the spiritual spark within that it can hear its voice at all times and that the spiritual spark, which is an emanation of God, is able to express itself such that the person can hear its voice like spoken words, so that the Words sound in him and thus cannot be misunderstood. Just like people who speak to each other from person to person, God speaks to people through the heart. This process cannot be explained in any other way, yet it is only understandable to someone once he has heard the divine voice. He feels God's Words in his heart and is ecstatically happy to receive this grace, for then he will have no more doubt, no unbelief, no question which will not be refuted or answered to him once doubt or questions arise in him. The audible Word is the evidence for the person that everything he previously believed is true. And the audible Word reveals to the person the heavenly Father's

presence .... His proximity, which causes indescribable bliss.

However, it sounds so very gently and subtly in the heart that it can only be heard by paying utmost attention. The most heartfelt contact must be mentally established with God and then the listening will have to start, the awaiting of His grace, which then will noticeably flow into him. But only a person whose heart has changed into love will be able to hear the divine voice, for it is divine love which expresses itself to a person and this can only manifest itself where true love exists. Yet once a person has audibly perceived the divine Word he will never lose this gift of grace again, then he will be able to hear His voice at all times and in all places .... he will only need to remain in heartfelt contact with Him and he will clearly and distinctly hear the answer. He will not be overcome by doubt as to the truth of it because he feels God's nearness and it will also be understandable to him that God manifests Himself audibly. However, as long as the earthly child has not attained a specific degree of maturity as a result of a selfless life of love it will not be able to experience the happiness of this blissful union with God either. Nevertheless, it should always and forever listen within and from the bottom of its heart appeal for this grace, so that it will receive the strength to live according to God's will, and His eternal love will draw close to it .... so that it will clearly and distinctly hear His voice, so that He will speak to it through the heart and the earthly child will feel His love and be

abundantly happy while it is still on earth ....

Amen

# **God's love .... Suffering or happiness .... Granting of prayer ....**

***B.D. 3382 from December 28th 1944,  
taken from Book No. 44***

You humans don't understand with how much tender love I look after you or you would not so anxiously and fearfully look to the future. You are at all times well cared for by Me, I will not leave you on your own, and if you deem yourselves alone and abandoned you are merely unreceptive to My current of strength which flows to you continually. And then you will have to make an effort in order to feel Me .... you must think of Me in your heart and want to accept Me therein; like children you must take refuge in My arms with all your worries and troubles and ask Me to take them from you or help you to carry them, and My love will always gladly do so .... You came forth from My love, and this love can never ever diminish; and were you able to grasp the extent of My love you would live an entirely carefree earthly life because you would know that you are protected by My

love, for true love, which is united with might and strength, can and wants to do whatever is good and a blessing for its recipient.

However, My love embraces all My living creations and therefore I only want what benefits them .... I want to make them blissfully happy without end, and I want to enable them to feel My love because this denotes their beatitude. And if you humans believe that I Am love Itself and that I Am unable and unwilling to do anything other than what is good you should let go of all problems, for I watch over you in earthly and spiritual respect, and this increasingly more successfully the more you allow Me to influence you and the less you resist Me. And if your soul is anxious then it is still held captive by the world and has to free itself from it, it must entrust everything to Me and leave it up to Me as to how I direct your earthly life, it has to be willing to make sacrifices if I require a sacrifice, for then it will only be in the interest of its spiritual welfare. And I truly know what the soul needs, I know when it is at risk and I know the right remedy to protect it from danger. And yet, I Am also willing to grant your earthly wishes if you appeal to Me from the bottom of your heart and faithfully wait for the fulfilment of your prayers. For My love will not let you go short, it always gives and fulfils as long as you look upon Me as your Father and approach Me with childlike love .... as soon as you believe in My love .... For love does not deny itself but is always willing to give.

And what you occasionally regard as suffering is often

merely the bridge to happiness, yet to the kind of happiness which is permanent and can never be destroyed again. In order to reach a major goal you often must take cumbersome paths and not lose heart, for the goal is desirable and compensates for all previous disappointments and complications. But anyone who becomes weak and exhausted on the way will not reach the goal. And he is the one I want to encourage and provide with strength because My love cannot deny him help. Yet you have to believe in My love even if it is impossible for you to understand its entire magnitude .... Believe in it and try to be like Me by becoming love, you, too, should hand out what you own and thereby give Me the right to work in and through you, and you will be strengthened on your path through life, you will overcome all obstacles and gratefully and humbly accept whatever My hand gives you .... suffering and happiness .... For both are sent by Me to advance your soul's development .... If you always remain in contact with Me, if your heart constantly strives towards Me and confides its grief to Me I will comfort and strengthen you and relieve you of your grief. For My love will not leave you in distress if you want to be My Own and belong to Me for all eternity ....

Amen

## **Obligation to pass on**

# **spiritual knowledge ....**

***B.D. 3390 from January 3rd 1945,  
taken from Book No. 44***

You are constantly instructed to increase your knowledge, and strength is also constantly conveyed to you which you ought to use for spiritual work as well. Therefore you should make use of this strength by distributing what is conveyed to you through the spiritual instruction, use it by passing on what you have received yourselves. Spiritual strength should never rest, that is, a person with strength at his disposal should never remain inactive, and thus spiritual strength should also continuously be used or it will be taken away from the person who leaves it lying idle. Spiritual work, however, is everything which contributes towards another person's knowledge .... It is irrelevant in which way this knowledge is imparted to him, only the fact that it is imparted is important. And this task is given to you who receive the spiritual knowledge from God either directly or through His instruments. Everyone who is offered spiritual knowledge, who accepts it and, after deliberating on it, accepts it as his spiritual possession, will only benefit from it if he passes it on with love. For once it has become valuable to him he shall also share it with his fellow human being, otherwise he is still gripped by powerful selfish love and the blessing of God's grace will barely be felt by him. Spiritual knowledge should never

lie fallow if a person does not want to risk having it entirely withdrawn from him. For it is divine law that he who gives will receive, because unselfish neighbourly love is a prerequisite that the human being can receive. The spiritually striving aspirant should pay attention to his feelings .... his desires will be granted but it also obliges him to give the truth to the one who, like him, desires to know it. Furthermore, it also commits him to convey the truth to wherever error still exists, for the truth shall displace the error.

And therefore a bearer of truth must make an active effort to bring light to all places where darkness still exists. This is spiritual work which may never be excluded again if the human being is blessed to be educated by the spiritual kingdom. For the human being is only ever the organ of being's of light which want to bestow truth upon all people, especially those who are entrusted into their care to be spiritually guided by them. People themselves can only rarely hear the light beings' gentle voice; therefore they cultivate instruments for themselves which shall speak on their behalf .... This activity should never be ignored by a recipient of light, he should speak wherever the opportunity presents itself, he should communicate verbally and in writing, he should make use of every day and every hour and thus carry out the work he himself had offered to do for God, and constant achievement will be granted to him. He will be able to advance himself spiritually and likewise the people who are spiritually endowed by him. This admonition applies

to all who are being refreshed by the font of eternal life and draw strength and fortitude from the divine Word. Everyone moves within a field of duty where he can be very industrious, and he should not neglect this, otherwise he makes himself unworthy of receiving the truth that is offered to him from above. For it is precious knowledge and shall be passed on for the benefit of people, so that it will remedy the immense spiritual adversity which is the cause of humanity's spiritual decline and which also results in earthly adversity and suffering ....

Amen

## **Incarnated beings of light ... Mission of spiritual leaders ....**

***B.D. 3391 from January 3rd 1945,  
taken from Book No. 44***

Anyone who unites with God cannot eternally separate himself from Him .... And thus a being of light having incarnated on earth for the purpose of a mission cannot abandon Him and fall victim to the forces of darkness but will steadily strive towards God, even though as a human being on earth it is subject to all temptations and has to



progress like any other human being. But its soul longs for God and turns away in disgust from God's adversary. Such a person will be fundamentally good and accordingly develop abilities which identify him as an instrument of God. He will be a recipient of strength on earth and hence is able to guide and instruct other people, since his mission of earthly life is to serve people on earth as a spiritual guide. The close connection to God, which his soul had already established before his life on earth, constantly provides him with strength; it moves him towards his task in life which he fulfils joyfully and with devotion to God.

Nevertheless, he will be badly beleaguered by the forces of darkness which use every opportunity to weaken the light bearer's flesh, to bring him to fall, because in their delusion they are unaware of the light beings which protect the embodied being of light on earth. Nor are they aware of his inner strength and his profound love for God which constantly ensures God's protection of the human being. They can only see him as a human being whom they can seduce and try to weaken in every possible way. But he is surrounded by beings of light and since he is receptive to every emanation of strength from the spiritual world he also has the amount of strength and grace at his disposal to resist such temptations .... Humanity's spiritual poverty necessitates extraordinary help, therefore God sends His messengers to earth to influence them for the better, partly spiritually, partly living as human beings amongst others, and in particular

to inform them, to educate them in accordance with God's will. But they find little pleasure in earthly life because they are constantly drawn back to their eternal home.

Nevertheless, they first have to fulfil the mission for which they embodied themselves as a human being .... since their work for the kingdom of God is of utmost importance during the time of need .... It necessitates exceptional strength and perseverance and complete acceptance of God's will. Moreover, the living conditions during the last days are so difficult that people would easily fail without helpers and mentors by their side who, due to their closeness to God, receive their strength directly from Him. Their work on earth can be very beneficial and thus they will conscientiously complete their mission until they can return to the spiritual kingdom again, until they can closely unite with God once more, although they had never been separated from Him even though on earth they had not been aware of their close bond with God ....

Amen

**Period of grace until the  
divine intervention ....**

***B.D. 3396 from January 7th 1945,***

## ***taken from Book No. 44***

It will still take a little while before God will visibly manifest Himself, before the cycle is completed, before the hour has come when the extent of human atrocities has gone too far. Yet it will not be a long period of time, you humans are given only a very brief period of grace in order to distance yourselves from those behaving disgracefully before God because they violate their fellow human being in a most ruthless way .... However, God allows it to come to the worst so that people will still learn to recognise which way they are heading .... For only this realisation will motivate them to change. Every day is important as for many people it is the last one, it can be decisive for the whole of eternity, but many others will only have a few days left until their temporal end has come, and this is why God still hesitates although the event is inevitable and His plan has been determined from the beginning. However, people's low level gave rise to it much sooner, their heartlessness made the day overdue before its time, so that every day is a gift of grace by God bestowed upon humanity by His forbearance and mercy. And thus every day can still be utilised and offers many people the opportunity to change, if only they are of good will. Therefore they are constantly informed of the divine intervention, both through His Word as well as through people's exchange of ideas who are mentally advised from above about the forthcoming event. Everyone can form an opinion about that which is imparted to him, everyone can think about

the events in the world as well as the end of it, and the thought of a supernatural intervention in world events will not just occur to a few, and then a person will still be able to hold himself to account regarding his attitude towards good and evil.

Every human being will be warned, directly and indirectly, and if he heeds the warning he will be able to derive benefit for his soul. For then he will also recognise the divine intervention as such, he will learn to believe and be saved, even if he loses his earthly life. And because God still wants to open people's ears for His call He will not sound His voice prematurely .... Yet the designated period of time cannot be exceeded according to divine order .... And people should assume that every day is the announced one when He reveals Himself and His Power. For what He has proclaimed will happen without fail, God merely keeps the time concealed. Yet the day will come like a thief in the night .... unexpectedly and causing a large amount of material damage .... And only someone whose heart no longer clings to earthly goods, who has united himself with God and knows himself always and forever protected by Him will not be fearful. These, however, are instructed by Him to constantly refer people to the fact that He will manifest Himself, and to admonish them to choose the right path which leads to Him, so that they, too, will take refuge in Him in the hour of affliction and find protection and help in Him ....

Amen

# **The inner Word during the time of affliction ....**

***B.D. 3408 from January 17th 1945,  
taken from Book No. 44***

During the time of affliction, you will clearly and distinctly hear the voice of the spirit as long as you uphold your contact with God and desire to hear Him. He will not withdraw His gift of grace, He will convey it ever more abundantly for He knows what you require, He knows that you need comfort and support and that only He can offer these to you. The more closely you join Him the more He will endow you with His Word, with His love, which He manifests in the Word. And you will not be so harshly affected by the affliction, for God Himself will lift you up and above the misery. He can give you a joyful heart despite the external adversity, he will make you modest and patient, so that you will not miss anything and only desire that He will reveal Himself to you, that He will speak to you and that you receive His grace .... And He will grant you this desire, He will sharpen your spiritual ear and you will hear His voice wherever you are and at all times. And the spiritual nourishment will make you more profoundly happy than any earthly fulfilment. Your body will be content with little, you will no longer

pay attention to it, yet your soul will be abundantly cared for and will never need to starve.

And if you are faced by earthly adversity it will no longer discourage you, because you will be able to take it to the One Who promised His help to you because He loves you like a Father loves His children. The time of affliction need therefore not frighten you if you consider yourselves His children and communicate with Him from the bottom of your heart. He will answer you and you will hear His voice in your heart, and what He tells you will lift you up and make you happy, it will make you strong and confident, it will silence all your worries and troubles, for you will be able to gain profound and unshakable faith, because you will be taught by God's spirit and His voice will affect you like a fatherly word of encouragement which you will never ever doubt. And your heart will rejoice because you recognise the loving Father, Who deems you worthy of His voice. Your spiritual progress will let you forget everything, you will endure whatever suffering and deprivations the body has to put up with, for your body will become less sensitive the more spiritualised the soul becomes .... The soul, however, will rejoice once it has reached the goal of sensing God and hearing His voice as often as it desires ....

Amen

# **Receiving the divine Word**

# **is an act of utmost will of strength ....**

***B.D. 3419 from January 27th 1945,  
taken from Book No. 44***

Only a few people are in possession of the direct Word because only a few are so strong-willed that they consciously and attentively listen within and thus also believe in God's working in the human being through His spirit. This belief is a prerequisite; however, it will also have come alive through practising neighbourly love so that through the latter the person will have become a receiving vessel for the divine spirit. But he must also muster the will to carefully listen to the instructions through the divine spirit. And this requires love and effort .... Love for God and effort to overcome all weaknesses and faults. The human being must constantly work at improving himself and have the will to come close to God .... Hence he must place spiritual striving above earthly matters and therefore also conscientiously undertake the spiritual work, and this first involves the work of receiving the divine Word, which requires a particularly strong will, for the daily acceptance of the divine Word is an act of utmost strength of will, because time and again the latter must be activated anew, for only then can the divine gift of strength be offered to the person. Although the person is only a tool of which God

avails Himself in order to speak to people in a natural way the person's free will is nevertheless decisive, and thus he is not forced or obliged to write in a pathological state without his own will, but he can act completely freely and by no means needs to open his ears and heart. In that case, however, receiving divine spiritual knowledge will be impossible.

This is why only a few people can be found who completely voluntarily make themselves available and persistently listen within themselves every day .... who thus want and also put their will into action by withdrawing from the world, by establishing the heartfelt connection with God, appeal to Him and wait for the granting of their prayer. This requires time and the abandoning of demands made by the body. Anyone who loves his body too much, that is, who only seeks the purpose of earthly life in earthly well-being is totally incapable of mustering this will, for the body will always try to weaken the latter and the person will finally comply with the body's demand, he will become careless and sluggish, he will also have little faith in God's love and kindness and not appeal to Him for His gift of grace, and then it cannot be conveyed to him either .... Only few people are willing to hand their will over to God and to let themselves be guided by Him. But these few are true labourers in the vineyard of the Lord, they have proved themselves to be loyal followers of God and therefore they also constantly receive the strength in order to fortify their will, they are time and again willing to listen



to the voice within. And the result is divine spiritual knowledge which can have an inconceivably blessed effect if, in turn, a fellow human being musters the will to let himself be taught by them. The will always has to become active again, because God does not force anyone to turn towards His kingdom and thereby also towards His grace .... But anyone who musters this will is blessed by God, and he will be able to achieve great success, both for his own soul as well as for that of his fellow human being .... And he will be a successful labourer in the vineyard of the Lord and strength and grace will be abundantly at his disposal ....

Amen

## **Personification of God ....**

***B.D. 3443 from February 22nd 1945,  
taken from Book No. 44***

The belief in a spiritually tangible Deity by no means implies a personified Deity, for this reason the human being should not have a narrow idea of God, Who is omnipresent and beyond time and space. He permeates everything with His spirit, the whole universe, the whole spiritual kingdom .... and therefore He is not conceivable as a person who, according to human comprehension, is spatially limited. Instead, a personification of God must

be completely avoided if the human being wants to come anywhere near visualising God as the highest and most perfect Being of God. God has indeed made Himself visible to His living creations in a human form by permeating Jesus' body with His Divinity and showed Himself in His transfigured state to people, so that they were able to visualise the eternal Deity in Jesus Christ. Yet once the soul has discarded its body and enters the kingdom of light it will realise that the eternal Deity can never be grasped by human intellect and that the embodiment in Jesus Christ was intended to awaken or strengthen the belief in a spiritually tangible Deity in people during their earthly life, otherwise they would find it difficult to have faith which, however, it is necessary to have in order to establish a connection with God through prayer ....

Thus the eternal Deity became visible to people in Jesus Christ and in merciful love It tries to make Itself accessible to people in order to encourage them in establishing their contact with Itself. Jesus Christ was the form which sheltered the eternal Deity for the people on earth .... In the spiritual kingdom the same form will be spiritually visible by those beings which have attained the degree of maturity that enables them to behold God .... But this spiritually tangible Deity is present everywhere and therefore never expended in a limited form. Hence It cannot be addressed as a personal Deity either, because this concept is only used for earthly life, for the human being himself who, as an isolated individual being within

the universe, claims for himself the acknowledgment of being a personality, thus a person always has to be understood to be a human creature. That this concept can never be applied to the eternal Deity is due to the fact that God is a spirit .... but the spirit is never something restricted, something bound in a form, once it is perfect. The supreme Perfection is therefore limitless beyond all comprehension and permeates the whole of infinity; it is omnipresent because its fundamental substance is love which likewise is not restricted and therefore also not conceivable as a form. The human being's intellectual capacity is limited, he is unable to visualise anything but earthly things as long as he is still spiritually unenlightened. And therefore he tries to imagine the eternal Deity as a person as soon as he believes in a spiritually tangible God, in a God to Whom he can pray.

And God accommodated this purely human desire by embodying Himself in Jesus Christ, that is, by demonstrating how a human being living a God-pleasing life can unite with God on earth and thus become as one with Him .... He wanted to show people the path to achieve the final goal, the total unification with God. The emanation of the Divine Being completely permeated the man Jesus, consequently only the external frame, the physical form, was human, but His soul and spirit were divine, they had entirely united with God again from Whom they had come forth. Yet the eternal Deity did not expend Itself, because it is impossible for the most

perfect Being ever to be limited within a form. Nevertheless the eternal Deity is something spiritually tangible, that is, it is spiritual strength which has to be granted will and faculty of thought, thus existing as a being with Whom the human being can also make heartfelt contact by using his will and his thoughts. For the human being's will and thoughts are not tied to the external form either but are part of the spiritual essence which is embodied in the human form. Once the physical shell falls away, the soul, the spiritually tangible being, remains capable of thinking and wanting, but according to its state of maturity the ability can merely be weaker or stronger, whereas the eternal Deity, as the most perfect Being, executes Its will and Its thoughts in profound wisdom and inconceivable strength.

The human physical form is just the means to an end for the duration of his earthly life. Yet anyone believing in the immortality of the soul will also understand that the external form, the person, will not be required for the soul's continued existence. Nevertheless, the soul remains conscious of itself as an individual being, even when it has joined equally mature souls .... just as the eternal Deity will likewise remain the highest and most perfect Being for the most elevated beings of light which have entered into union with It .... which are totally united with God and yet are inexpressibly happy in their own existence because they always and forever receive and feel God's strength of love Who, as eternal Father, is in intimate contact with them ....

Amen

# **God's Word provides comfort and strength in greatest need ....**

***B.D. 3448 from February 25th 1945,  
taken from Book No. 44***

During fearful hours, when you believe to be cut off from the world and are only able to communicate with God in prayer, you will discover the strength and grace emanating from the Word which God's love sends to earth .... Then He will speak to you in His love and give you strength, He will care and provide for you and His Word will be ample food and drink until you receive help. No human being can give you the comfort which flows from His Word because you feel that He Himself is close to you in His Word and faithfully entrust yourselves to Him. And when you hear His Word your fear will leave you, His love will speak to you, His Fatherly hand will take hold of you and never let you fall again .... His Word is mild and kind, it gives you hope and you know it is truth, and thus all dread and worry comes to an end because you now have complete faith in Him.

The greater your earthly need the closer God is to you, if

only you call upon Him ....He will not leave you and conveys this in His Word which you, if you wish, may always hear directly or through mediators. Indeed, God will gladly fulfil this desire, He will not leave you without spiritual nourishment, He will not seal the well of living water .... He will protect it from destruction, He will not allow human will to obscure it, He will not allow the well to run dry which His great merciful love had opened for you who are hungry and thirsty, who suffer distress of body and soul and long for refreshment. And thus God Himself descends to earth in His Word to His Own when people prevent all access to you .... then He will be with you and you may receive precious gifts from His Fatherly hand, you will be strengthened in body and soul, and when you have abandoned all earthly hope and only give yourselves to God, He will take your fate into His hands Himself and deliver you from all danger .... because His love embraces you and all those who seek refuge with Him in prayer ....

Amen

**‘Blessed are the  
merciful ....’**

***B.D. 3460 from March 9th 1945,  
taken from Book No. 45***

Blessed are the merciful, who support their neighbour in adversity and hardship and help him overcome it .... My grace visibly rests upon them for they fulfil My commandments, they love Me Myself because they meet their neighbour, My living creation, with love .... Someone helpless and forsaken will feel grateful for the love offered to him; it will awaken reciprocated love, the significance of which cannot be assessed by you on earth .... the fact that every spark of love signifies a release from the opposing power, a change which starts the return to Me, which can only take place in love. Loving help will always be comforting for a person in any earthly and spiritual adversity. Love gives strength, after all, it originates from Me, the eternal love, and can only have a life-giving effect. Helping someone brings forth positive thoughts and feelings, it touches the other person's soul and encourages similar actions, and every activity of love distances a person from My adversary, hence it shortens his distance from Me. Carrying out merciful deeds are essential in times of trouble, when body and soul are ailing, when physical ailments must be the results of psychological adversity, so that people will come to their senses and find the path to Me. And you show this path to them if you practise mercy, if, in unselfish neighbourly love, you lift up your fellow human being in body and soul with kind deeds, comforting words of encouragement and loving care. Then body and soul will be able to recover, for the latter feels the strength of love and becomes strong and willing to strive towards Me .... Love will awaken love in return and where the

spark of love has been kindled I Myself can work, because I can be wherever love exists. And where I Am the adversity will ease .... according to the degree of love the person feels. Therefore, try eagerly to arouse reciprocated love and you will redeem the souls through your works of mercy .... Redeeming souls, however, will lead to a blissful fate in the beyond for you, where only love will be valued and the souls will forever be thankful to you that you showed them the right way ....

Amen

## **Contact with God ... Influx of strength ....**

***B.D. 3482 from May 17th 1945, taken from Book No. 45***

Take advantage of every opportunity to make contact with Me through prayer and loving activity and you will never lack in strength .... Whatever life situation you find yourselves in, you will always and forever need My influx of strength and you become receptive to it through heartfelt prayer. And if you do loving deeds My strength will likewise flow to you, for then you will draw Me Myself to you, since I Am Love Itself. And thus you need not fear anything, neither weakness nor loneliness, as long as you



are lovingly active and pray .... as long as your prayer rises up to Me from your heart, for then I will hear you and grant your wishes, as I have promised. Believe and trust when you pray, then the fulfilment of your prayer will be certain .... My will directs your destiny according to your faith, and My will is at all times able to banish hardship and suffering. But My love always considers My Own in an obvious way, so that they will recognise their Father when He expresses Himself. And I number all those as My Own who approach Me in prayer, who use every quiet hour to communicate with Me, who often send their thoughts to Me, who look for Me of their own accord and whose hearts love and yearn for My presence .... I will always give My assistance to them, so that their faith becomes strong, so that they ever more tangibly become aware of My strength and they recognise Me in every happening on their path of life. To remain in constant contact with Me ensures them My protection and My help at all times. For their connection with Me also relieves them from the spiritual hardship, because it enables My spirit to work in them. And My spirit guides them correctly, My spirit shows them every path, every Word and every action, and thus every person who is in constant contact with Me can travel his course of life without worry, for I will take him by his hand and guide him .... And his path will be blessed ....

Amen

# Work of love for misguided souls ....

***B.D. 3483 from May 18th 1945, taken from Book No. 45***

Have mercy on misguided souls, consider them to suffer an illness which needs help and do not let them starve in their spiritual distress. The difficulties of the body come to an end but the soul takes its problems into eternity, into the beyond. And this can be avoided if it finds the truth on earth, which you should bring to erring souls. Whenever you have the opportunity to help them, speak to them of God's love which longs for them, remind them of their lack of maturity which stops them from getting closer to God and show them the way to get better, the only way to the goal .... the way of love .... Make them aware that they cannot mature nor reach their goal without kindness and that they were only given their earthly life for the purpose of improving their souls. Guide their thoughts to spiritual matters, encourage them to think about the purpose of earthly life, explain to them the meaning and purpose of creation, the objective of suffering and earthly hardship, and try to persuade them to put an end to their spiritual poverty. This work of love, to have mercy on erring souls and to endeavour to help them, is of tremendous importance. Do not be discouraged by their initial rejection, bring the Word of

God to them and always remember your task which should be a redeeming one on earth.

Countless souls suffer spiritual hardship but they only take notice of earthly distress and do not take time for inner reflection which could enlighten them. They are only interested in improving their living conditions and don't know that these are primarily the consequences of spiritual poverty, that the former has to be resolved before an improvement of their earthly life can take place .... Give them this knowledge and help them walk the path of love, and their souls will be eternally grateful to you. Their hardship will increase as the last days approach because God's adversary is gaining power over the souls and his influence is tremendously damaging to them. The knowledge of their purpose of life can protect them from this influence and, with good will, the soul can free itself from his power since it recognises it to be evil and in opposition to God. But it has to be introduced to the knowledge, and you should accomplish this work of mercy whenever the opportunity presents itself, and your efforts shall not be in vain .... There is great need and the end draws ever closer, thus every hour should be used to work for the kingdom of God .... This is God's will which has to be observed if you want to be active workers and serve Him in His vineyard ....

Amen

# Comforting Fatherly Words ....

***B.D. 3485 from May 22nd 1945,  
taken from Book No. 45***

Bring all your worries to Me, I want to listen to you and help .... Prove your faith in Me by coming to Me and imploring Me for help .... Show your helplessness by humbly approaching Me in prayer, then you will acknowledge Me as your eternal Father Who wants to help and is able to do so. If you therefore believe that My love will not let you remain in adversity then I indeed can help you, for I require your faith in Me if My strength is to become effective in you. If you confide your worries to Me, you will be My children who I will look after like a Father .... Therefore, don't be frightened and disheartened if clouds cast a shadow over you but know that My sun of grace will always shine for you and you will never call upon Me in vain .... Just let Me be in control and meekly endure the place I have assigned to you; don't let any doubts in Me, or of My love, arise and only pay attention to My Word which comforts and strengthens you in every situation in life .... And nothing will be able to depress you, regardless of what comes upon you. Let Me speak to you in the Word by making heartfelt contact with Me and speaking to Me first, and then hand yourselves over to the influence of My Word .... And it will

always refresh and comfort you, it will answer your every question, it will make My presence perceptible to you and your faith will be strengthened, as I have promised, since My Word is blessed with My strength which flows to everyone who accepts it with a hungry heart and desires to hear Me ....

Amen

## **Comforting Fatherly Words ....**

***B.D. 3487 from May 26th 1945, taken from Book No. 45***

All those of you who view the future with concern have a strong Helper by your side to Whom you can faithfully entrust yourselves, providing you want to accept His help .... I Myself will guide and protect you from all danger of body and soul, if only you will choose Me as your Guide. Turn to Me, call upon Me in your adversity, take refuge in Me whenever you are in danger, and firmly believe that I will help you, that I will not leave you in distress and that I will direct everything such that it will be beneficial for you .... Then you will be able to look forward to every day without worry, all troubles will disappear into nothingness, a solution can always be

found and, time and again, My help will be recognisable. Don't hide yourselves from Me, instead, bring all your problems to Me .... look for Me so that I can let Myself be found .... Don't keep your distance from Me but desire My presence and I will always be with you and never leave you again, regardless of what happens. And believe that the Word I gave you is truth when I promised that no prayer will touch My ear without being granted if you profoundly believe in Me and have limitless trust in Me. Don't weaken in your faith, but time after time envisage that I love you like a father loves his children whom he will not deny any wish if it does not harm them .... Give yourselves to Me as My Own with everything that is dear to you and I will direct your destiny such that you will not go short, I will guide you through all dangers and shape your life on earth so that it will be endurable for you .... Just do not forget Me and My kingdom .... Let your thinking be spiritually inclined, lift your eyes up to Me and always carry Me in your heart; enter into dialogue with Me, remain so intimately connected to Me and I will tend to you, both in a spiritual and earthly way. Nothing shall trouble you, for I will look after you and this truly in the right way .... because My love for you is unchangeable and I always keep My protective hand over those of you who want to be My Own and strive to fulfil My will ....

Amen

## **Prayer in spirit and in**

# truth ....

## ***B.D. 3515 from August 16th 1945, taken from Book No. 45***

Every prayer rising up to Me in spirit and in truth will be granted. But who prays to Me in spirit and in truth? .... A thought arising from the bottom of your heart intended for Me will guarantee the right prayer. Anyone who speaks to Me without shyness and restraint just as if it came from the heart, anyone who does not look for Me in the distance but feels Me close to himself, who does not recite formal prayers but rather has thoughts which come forth from himself, that is, thoughts which arise from his own heart, who speaks to Me without falsehood and dishonesty .... thus anyone who completely opens his heart to Me without wanting to hide anything, who therefore speaks to Me like a child to its father .... sends his prayer to Me in spirit and in truth, because the spiritual spark has been kindled in him already. His spirit has awakened to life, and this places heartfelt thoughts into a person's heart .... Anyone who can pray to Me like that is already on the right path and he will be guided along by his spirit in the right way. However, this is the kind of prayer I expect in order to hear it. I pay no attention to formal prayers because they do not arise from a person's own heart and can therefore never be felt with the same depth as the heart's own language can express. Anyone who prays to Me must call upon Me in

spirit and his voice will be heard by the Father-Spirit. Anyone who calls upon Me must drop all inhibitions, he must step in front of Me without hiding anything and speak plainly and frankly, it must not be accompanied by the least insincere thought, he must pray with absolute truthfulness .... For I know every thought and nothing remains concealed from Me. Anyone who prays to Me like that .... in spirit and in truth .... does not need a special place for prayer, he can send his spirit to Me always and in all places, he will always pray 'in his closet' if he withdraws into himself and seeks mental contact with Me and I will answer his prayer. I Am waiting for such a call, and I Am perceptively close to anyone who calls upon Me in spirit and in truth, and he will feel the presence of My Father- Spirit around himself, he will not send his prayer into the distance but speak to Me in the certainty that I Myself Am close to Him and hear him. And whatever My child asks for will be granted. For its indwelling spirit instructs it to pray in the right way, and this prayer will always more relate to his spiritual than to his physical well-being. But I will also help My child physically, because it subordinates its will to Mine as soon as it prays in the right way, that is, in spirit and in truth. He knows the goal of his life on earth and aims to attain it, for the right prayer also guarantees higher knowledge .... Anyone who calls upon Me as I want to be called upon, need not fear any want .... But first I will consider his spirit, so that his soul shall be imbued with knowledge, so that his soul need not live in want. Then the human being will also know that physical suffering is not inevitable, that it is



beneficial for the soul and he will humbly subordinate himself to My will. Nevertheless, I will also guide him unscathed through his earthly life, because I will grant My child every help. A right prayer therefore also guarantees the fulfilment of earthly requests, and no such prayer will ever remain unheeded. My love will always fulfil a sincere desire for Me and My help, for My grace and strength, for spiritual and earthly care, because anyone praying to Me in spirit and in truth lives up to My will, and I will be a loving Father on earth and in eternity for anyone striving to fulfil My will.

Amen

## **End of the world ... Judgment Day ...**

***B.D. 3519 from August 22nd 1945,  
taken from Book No. 45***

The end will come when no-one expects it .... It will be a time when God-rejecting people are enjoying life to the full while God's faithful are anxiously awaiting the coming of the Lord. The former, however, don't spend a single thought on the forthcoming end, they live for the moment without scruples or tempering their earthly pleasures, they indulge themselves, commit sins and are

totally subject to Satan's influence. It will be a time when an apparent improvement of living conditions has been achieved, when earthly hardship has diminished for people complying with the demands of the ruling power, when only those people have to suffer who are excluded on account of their faith. And in the midst of this euphoria the Judgment will come .... surprising even God's faithful since nothing before will have given the impression that a change of their sad situation might occur. Humanity is rife with guilt of sin, it has completely detached itself from God and turned to His adversary, it has received his share on earth, earthly pleasures in abundance, and people's intentions and endeavours get increasingly worse and demonstrate themselves in their actions against the faithful, who are mercilessly bullied and helpless against their power and brutal aggression. They do a first class job for Satan and humanity is ready for destruction. And thus the end will come as it is proclaimed in Word and Scripture .... It will be a horrendous day for people, the earth will split open, fires will break through the earth's crust and all elements will be in uproar .... And people trying to flee will break into indescribable panic, yet wherever they turn they will find the same everywhere, certain destruction ....

The end has come for all whose mind is turned away from God .... and the deliverance from greatest danger for His Own, who will be removed alive and thus escape physical death. God has already announced this time long in advance, yet no-one appreciates His predictions, and thus

people will suddenly find themselves in a dreadful situation from which there is no escape. The destruction of the old earth has been decided since eternity, but when it will happen remains hidden from people, and thus they will experience it at a time when they believe themselves safe and masters of the world, when they try to get as much enjoyment as possible out of life, when they are totally captivated by the world and therefore exclude God from their thoughts.

And thus God reminds people of Himself .... He calls to account those who sin against Him because they refuse to acknowledge Him .... He sits in Judgment over humanity and separates people by lifting His Own into His kingdom and banishing the others once again .... by leaving them to lose their lives in an appalling way and imprisoning their souls once more, i.e. by constraining the soul's will so that it will have to take the path of development through the new creation again. This is a cruel act and yet one of divine justice, for people's sinfulness will have reached its climax. They are of service to Satan and have become sheer devils themselves; nothing else can be given to them but physical destruction and spiritual captivity so that God's faithful will be released from them and able to lead a life of peace and harmony on the new earth.

And although God is ever forgiving and patient while the sinfulness keeps growing .... the end will come without fail and at a time when it is least expected. For even the believers will be shocked, because everything worldly

appears to prevail, because the increasing power of the world's representatives has rendered the faithful helpless and without rights. And thus the world appears stable and yet is so close to its destruction .... until the day comes, which God has determined since eternity, which no-one is able to predetermine and which, according to God's plan, will nevertheless bring the final disintegration of everything on earth. Only God knows the day, people shall always expect it and prepare themselves for it so that they will belong to those who will be taken away by God in advance, so that they will not belong to those who will be condemned on the Day of Judgment, as it is proclaimed in Word and Scripture ....

Amen

## **Fatherly Words of love ....**

***B.D. 3532 from September 1st 1945,  
taken from Book No. 45***

You have a powerful Helper by your side, and yet you still want to lose heart? You may approach Me in prayer at all times by merely using this grace and you will call Me to your side and you will assuredly receive support.

Regardless of the danger you find yourselves in .... My power is greater and can banish every calamity in an instant. Bear this in mind if you are at risk of feeling

anxious and fainthearted. Your Father in Heaven will not abandon you, in a crisis He is closer to you than ever as long as you consider yourselves His children and trustingly call upon Him for help. Time and again I assure you of My protection, time and again I lift you up through My Word, and time and again I impart upon you the strength to resist evil. And My love will embrace you more closely than ever if you suffer adversity of body and soul and take refuge in Me in full confidence that I will help you. You may always consider yourselves safe and secure when the world around you runs riot, when earthly measure frighten you and make you tremble .... Then you need simply stretch out your hand to Me so that I will guide you, and I will take you along a path that leads away from disaster .... For I will walk beside you, and the power of evil will truly not come close to Me. He avoids Me and chooses people who walk in darkness like himself and ignores those who walk by My side in the light and who are therefore out of reach for him. Believe and trust in Me and don't allow earthly adversities to get you down. Only pay attention to your souls and let Me worry about your earthly life .... and give Me the right to take care of you by totally handing your will over to Me. And your life on earth will be bearable for you .... For I Am always with you as long as you send your thoughts up to Me and desire to be in contact with Me. I will call My little sheep when I have found them, when they have returned to their shepherd, I will not let them go astray again, I will stay with all those who want to stay with Me and will never ever leave them again. So if I give you this

assurance, why are you still worried? My Word is truth and will remain truth for all eternity. I always draw close to My children with all My love as soon as the slightest call reaches Me, and therefore you should always come to Me if you labour and are heavily laden .... My love is always willing to give, My love is always willing to help, I can help you and I want to help you, I only require your faith, your trust, so that My strength of love can take effect ....

Amen

## **Scrutinising the source of spiritual knowledge ....**

***B.D. 3544 from September 10th 1945,  
taken from Book No. 45***

By lacking the right knowledge the human being often endorses deceptive knowledge, and thereby demonstrates such tenacity which only the representative of true knowledge is entitled to. Yet this, too, is an effect of the lower forces which endeavour to spread error throughout the world and avail themselves of any person who, due to his low state of maturity, is willing to accept their thoughts. It is an endless battle between light and darkness, between truth and untruth. And the more people are inclined towards one or the

other, the more violently it is waged. However, during the end time the battle will rage in a way which will manifestly point to the end. For under the guise of spiritual aspiration many representatives of misguided teachings will deem themselves called to convey their knowledge to their fellow human beings, and it will require an excessive amount of work on part of the spiritual world of light to invalidate this knowledge and to make the pure truth accessible to people instead. The spiritual influx of the right knowledge will always be recognisable in the representatives themselves, for true knowledge can only be found where a life a love is lived according to God's commandments, Who requires selfless neighbourly love from people, and this will always result in an influx of divine wisdom. And attention must be paid to whether their actions are entirely unselfish, for all selfish love presents a welcome target for God's adversary, the prince of lies, who influences a person's thoughts and lets him believe in his own value, thereby adding to his selfish love and making him unsuitable to recognise truth and error. The human being must exercise strictest self criticism; he must constantly strive for perfection and, with profound humility, pray to God for grace and strength, for protection from misguided thinking .... But if he is taken in by his mental information, then he must seriously question the source it comes from .... whether it was gained intellectually or flowed to him without intellectual activity, for pure truth will illuminate a person like a flash, often without pondering and researching, in that case he will be touched by

emanations of pure spirits, if he deeply and sincerely desires the truth without any selfish thought. On the other hand, clearly comprehensible knowledge, which is manifestly offered to a person without his own mental activity, ought to be accepted as absolute truth, for then the transfer to the human being is a process of emanation of strength which only beings of light, thus the bearers of truth, have at their disposal, whereas mental knowledge gained through intellectual activity can also be an influence of beings of darkness, and this necessitates strict scrutiny. Light and darkness will constantly fight each other. Light, however, is recognisable to anyone who wants to recognise it. However, the dark forces seek to weaken a person's will for the pure truth and to increase his selfish love, so that he will tenaciously hold on to his endorsed mental knowledge because he believes it to be the product of his superior intelligence, of his ability to solve profound spiritual problems. This is a sign of arrogance; it displaces the heart's profound humility and allows the forces of darkness to enter the human being's heart. For this reason the source of spiritual knowledge should be carefully scrutinised and God should be called upon for enlightenment of spirit, if a person is offered information which lays claim to being the truth. And God will help the person to recognise what is right, He will help him to separate the truth from error, if he truly desires the truth ....

Amen



# **Explaining the process of transcription ... Truth ...**

***B.D. 3547 from September 13th 1945,  
taken from Book No. 45***

The bestowal of My Word is a purely spiritual process which can only be achieved by a person who establishes heartfelt contact with Me and then consciously listens within. Since the person does not actively need to think but is merely the recipient of thought emanations he must place himself into a state which enables him to be affected by these emanations, and this state is one of being totally detached from the earthly world and immersed in the spiritual realm, i.e., it is a conscious turning away from all earthly things and a focussing of the senses on My kingdom, which is not of this world. The spiritual emanations then touch the person's heart in the form of thoughts which subsequently can be written down by the recipient. The easier a person can detach himself from his earthly surroundings the more unimpeded will the imparting of spiritual knowledge proceed. The disputed question as to the spiritual origin of the thought transference is answered by the substance of the latter. Wherever love is taught, wherever My act of Salvation is thoroughly dealt with, only I Myself can be the origin and the mental transmission will have to be recognised as My Word. Heartfelt prayer has to precede

every bestowal of My Word, otherwise the process cannot take place, otherwise the person would have to accomplish a purely earthly work which, however, even then would still be free from error because the person's thoughts are also guided by the beings of light in order to prevent the endangering of the Word which is intended to be conveyed to the person. This only applies in instances where contact with Me is less profound, for a person who is called by Me to work for My kingdom, who is appointed as a mediator between Me and people who don't strive towards Me, has been vetted by Me and his thinking will not go astray because he is of good will and thus wants to be of service to Me. I will prevent lying and deceptive spirits availing themselves of his will and his hand, just as every ignorant being will be stopped from accessing him if he wants to work for Me. And every reception is an act of freedom of will, it is the evidence of his will to be of service to Me, and thus I take hold of his will and guide him so that he will only accomplish My will.

This spiritual knowledge is not comparable to human mental concepts which are acquired through a person's own thinking without the conscious submission of his will to My will. After all, the human being has free will and can think in any direction of his liking. He is not compelled by Me to think correctly, just as he is not stopped from thinking wrongly either. Consequently, he can be accessed by all spiritual forces which he then favours through his will. However, if the person

consciously submits his will to Mine he can only have My will within himself, for I will never leave him at the mercy of forces which are still opposed to My will. I will take possession of that which desires Me and will never ever let go of it again. And only if a person consciously offers himself to Me, if he thus hands his will to Me, can I appoint him to an office on earth in which he can work for Me. But then he will also be protected from misguided thinking, from evil spiritual influence, for it is important to receive and spread My Word ... which My love conveys to earth, and I will truly protect My Word from impure and untrue content which the opposite side wants to present to people. Wherever My Word is being received that is where truth exists and misguided teachings are excluded, because misguided thinking is the influence of evil forces which cannot affect a person who wants to serve Me as long as he is working for Me. A purely spiritual process can only take place in a purely spiritual way, a transference of thought absolutely has to take place because a person's own thinking, i.e., the use of intellectual activity, requires more time in order to produce results of this nature. Hence there is a recognisable expression of strength which can only ever come forth from those who provide strength, that is, from beings of light which are recipients of strength. And this also guarantees pure truth, for all illuminated beings know the truth, and I Am the Eternal Truth Myself ...

Amen

# **Coming in the clouds ....**

## **Rapture ....**

***B.D. 3557 from September 24th 1945,  
taken from Book No. 45***

An unusual roar will fill the air as the Day of Judgment arrives. And this will be the last sign for people, yet it will only be recognised as such by the believers, which will cause them great joy. For then they will be anticipating the coming of the Lord .... It requires a strong faith to expect God to be coming in the clouds, for this is such an extraordinary process that godless people just ridicule and make fun of it when it is mentioned to them. They will indeed hear the sound, too, yet they won't see the Lord in the clouds and thus take little notice of the unusual noise in the air and won't let themselves be distracted from their lives .... exuberantly and without scruples they will continue to enjoy themselves. The faithful, however, will get together and, with a happy heart, prepare themselves to receive the Lord. They will have reached the limit of their physical endurance and know that their time of suffering has come to an end, and in the final hour they will unanimously profess their faith in God although it will mean the loss of their earthly life, because they will be mercilessly attacked by the world. Yet the appearance of the Lord will thwart the plans of their godless pursuers .... For suddenly they will see the

believers being lifted off the ground and rising into the air .... At the same time there will be a sound of dreadful thunder and people will realise with dismay that something dreadful is going to happen. Paralysed by the unusual process of the rapture they will be unable to think, they will try to flee and see the same everywhere .... flames of fire bursting through the earth from which there is no escape. And their life will end in a most dreadful way, for the people who rage on earth like devils and are rife with sin cannot be saved.

But the flock of the faithful will witness the end of the old earth; the divine work of destruction will take place before their eyes, while they will have escaped and will be safe and secure in a place of peace, as promised by God. This will be the end of one period of Salvation and the start of a new one as soon as the old earth is shaped anew through God's will. Then the faithful will continue to live as the root of the new human race and the new period of Salvation will begin. The process of rapture is only understandable and therefore credible to a knowing and profoundly enlightened person, yet it will be the culmination of an anxious time of hardship and suffering, it will be the conclusion and the evidence of God's glory, Who will also prepare a fate for His Own which testifies of His glory .... It will be an act of profoundly divine love for His living creations who will recognise in Him their Father of eternity, who will have returned to Him and become as one with Him through love .... with whom He will then be able to stay because divine love meets with

no obstacle once the human being has become love himself ....

Amen

# Knowing the time of the end ....

***B.D. 3560 from September 27th 1945,  
taken from Book No. 45***

It is exceptionally misguided to state that the time of the breakdown will be in the distant future; this error is detrimental for the souls because they will pay no attention to the admonitions and warnings of the last days. But it is equally misguided trying to determine the point in time, for this knowledge is concealed from people. God always refers to the near end through seers and prophets in order to encourage people to live according to a quickly occurring end, in order to make them aware of their responsibility towards their souls and to constantly prepare themselves for the end. The end is near, yet no-one but God knows the day. The signs of the time point towards the end, nevertheless, it will come suddenly and unexpectedly for all people including the faithful who are knowledgeable and make an effort to live in accordance with the approaching end. Human

mind and human intellect will never be able to penetrate the divine plan of eternity and therefore never be able to determine the time nor the manner of the end. Only where the spirit of God is at work He will instruct people as to how the end will take place, yet always leaving the day and the hour open when it happens. For this knowledge is God's prerogative and therefore concealed to people. The faithful will be able to recognise the time of the end by the low level of spiritual development, and if they expect the coming of the Lord every day and enter into heartfelt contact with God they will also sense when the Day of Judgment is approaching.

But anyone who wants to calculate the time in advance, anyone who deems himself to know without the obvious working of the spirit, will be mistaken in his announcement, people should not believe him for he only contributes towards increasing the unbelief in the end. Even the forerunner of the Lord, who will be sent to Earth by God Himself in order to save the still undecided, even he will not specify a day .... He, too, will proclaim the imminent end and admonish people to expect it daily and hourly. He will be enlightened by the spirit of God, and the Father-Spirit, Who speaks in and through him, truly knows the day and the hour. And yet he, too, will still keep it secret from people because the knowledge of it will be of no use to them. And thus the hour will come suddenly and unexpectedly, as it was proclaimed by God .... His voice will resound in the midst of the euphoria of the world, to the horror of the unbelievers but to the comfort

and joy of those who are faithful ....

Amen

## **Fatherly Words of comfort ....**

***B.D. 3565 from October 2nd 1945,  
taken from Book No. 45***

He who feels weak in spirit should come to Me, I will give him strength .... he whose faith is in danger of wavering should call upon Me and I will revive his faith again .... I want to lift him up again through My Word so that he will become spiritually and physically so strong that he will overcome all obstacles which discourage him. I will nourish and refresh him and he will certainly feel the strength of My manna from Heaven in him by confidently fulfilling his earthly duties and lifting his heart up to Me in prayer more often. Taking refuge in Me will always lift him up, for no-one comes to Me in vain, no-one knocks at My door without it being opened, and no-one who desires a gift will walk away from Me with empty hands. But I especially consider the spiritual hardship and in order to resolve it I often let people take difficult paths so that they will learn to recognise Me and request My help. However, anyone who comes to Me of his own accord,



who accepts Me as his daily Advisor, who does not start anything without having prayed for My blessing first, who opens himself for My influx of strength through prayer and kind-hearted activity daily and hourly, who therefore lives consciously and works at improving his soul, will constantly be cared for by Me and be able to confidently leave his spiritual and earthly wellbeing to Me .... he will not be harmed, even if he is assailed by earthly adversity in order to test his faith. The path to Me is always open and the bridge is, at all times, the prayer, the heartfelt contact with Me and the call upon My name .... Then you will always receive an answer, your adversity will always be remedied as soon as you merely believe firmly and confidently and place your trust in Me. I Am aware of your every problem and worry and always know how to remedy the situation, yet you should believe in order to recognise the strength of faith when you receive help. Let Me be in control and only consider your souls so that they won't live in want, for this is entirely up to your own will, whereas I will take care of the body if you believe in Me and consciously strive towards Me. And therefore, always come to Me if you labour and are heavily laden, I will give you rest .... I have given you this promise and I will truly keep it, you will never call upon Me in vain if you suffer adversity of body and soul, I Am always willing to help because I love you for all eternity ....

Amen

# **Battle of faith ... The coming of the Lord ...**

***B.D. 3569 from October 6th 1945,  
taken from Book No. 45***

Anyone professing the church of Christ will be treated by the world with hostility and his fate on earth will be difficult, albeit only for a short time, for as soon as the adversity seems beyond endurance, God will rescue His Own and all adversity will end. And God always points out the end to the believers, so that they will bear up against the external onslaught, so that they will faithfully persevere until God delivers them. He will inform them long in advance how Satan will rage and He will promise His Own His protection, so that they recognise the truth of His Word and remain firm in their resistance. If the believers therefore recognise the truth of the divine Word by the progression of world events, by the progression of the battle of faith and the earthly ruling powers' brutal disposition, they will defend His Word even more eagerly, because it will deepen their faith to such an extent that human measures will no longer be able to shake it. And they will receive strength from God, according to their will and their faith, and thus endure the difficult time, for God will not let those down who want to remain faithful to Him unless He still recalls someone into His realm before the end of this earth, if his

physical end has come in accordance with divine purpose. However, He needs staunch representatives of the church of Christ during the last days, so that the separation of the spirits can take place. He requires people who proclaim His Word and preach Christ's doctrine of love to the unbelievers, and this without fear and inhibition, so that the unbelievers shall recognise the strength of faith and be shaken up from their spiritual lethargy once more, so that they will still be able to change their mind in the last hour and take the path to Christ, Who alone can bring them salvation, Who alone can redeem them by strengthening their will to liberate themselves from evil and to strive towards God. The fact that the strength of faith is visibly pointed out to the unbelievers are the final means of grace; even so, very little use is made of them because humanity is entangled in Satan's web of lies, because it pays excessive homage to the world and sees its goal of life in exuberant pleasure. And therefore the end will soon happen to you .... and you can recognise this by the fact that faith is being fought against in a way which can truly be called satanic. Then the followers of Christ should unite and together wait for the Lord's help and His coming, for every day and every hour could be the last one, because earthly adversity will become so severe that it will necessitate God's immediate appearance, so that the promises will come true which God gave to people through His Word .... that He will deliver His Own from utmost adversity ....

Amen

# **My voice will resound from above ....**

***B.D. 3571 from October 8th 1945,  
taken from Book No. 45***

And My voice will resound from above .... It will be mighty and people will have to listen to it even if they otherwise pay no attention to Me. Depending on the state of their souls they will either willingly or unwillingly have to raise their eyes towards heaven. For they will find themselves exposed to a force they can no longer avoid. Admittedly, it will only touch the hearts of a few, yet these will have been helped even if physical help fails to materialise. But as the rule, fear and worry about physical life will predominate and My voice will not suffice to accept it and return to Me despite utmost hardship and affliction. They will not want to realise that My voice applies to those who are still distant from Me and, being obstinate-hearted, they will only try to save themselves and yet will be powerless against the forces of nature.

They will lose all footing, for the ground will sway, a roaring storm will fill the air and everyone will have to rely on himself as no-one will be able to help the other. And My voice will resound from above .... I will speak with a voice of thunder and all elements of nature will obey

My will, they will speak on My behalf and testify to My might. I will manifestly confront people and won't force them to believe, for it will still be up to them to accept natural forces but to deny Me as the Being Which also governs the natural forces according to His will. And thus the final means of teaching before the end will not force people to believe either, even though it should speak clearly enough for Me and can also be recognised by people of good will not entirely enslaved by My adversary who wants to separate them from Me forever.

What I have proclaimed through My spirit will fulfil itself .... The earth will tremble and the elements of nature will cause incalculable damage and claim countless victims. Yet this has been determined since eternity, because even this occurrence is a means of help used by Me in order to still win people over to Me, since other forms of adversity and distress are not enough to let them find their way back to Me and I have to brandish a sharp rod over the hardened human race. And it is absolutely true that I will not rest until I have regained all My living creations. And thus My love, which wants to save them from their downfall, will never end even if this love is not recognisable in My activity. Yet anyone who takes notice of My voice will also feel My love and he will be grateful to Me for all eternity ....

Amen

# **Time of trials ... Jesus, the bearer of the cross ...**

***B.D. 3573 from October 10th 1945,  
taken from Book No. 45***

If God puts you to the test, humbly accept His trials and faithfully wait for His help .... For the suffering and trials will not end until the last day has come. It is still necessary to purify and to reform souls until their physical death or to gain souls which still stand apart from God's love. And the time left until the end of the old earth is only short. Hence, it needs to be used in every way. Only adversity and afflictions of the body will still bring the soul's transformation about. And these adversities will also affect those people who strive towards God. Yet they, too, can gain the greatest blessings from these adversities if they are recognised as means used by God's love in order to reduce the distance between Himself and people within a short time, so as to enable the soul to receive God's illumination of love directly, which signifies eternal life for the soul. Endure your destiny without complaining, for it is determined by God's love for your soul's speedier maturing. And know that He will never leave you without the strength to pass the tests; know that He will always help you carry your cross if you, in faith of the divine Redeemer, appeal to Him for it. Know that all adversity will come to an end

when you leave the earthly valley in order to enter the spiritual kingdom. It is only a short time of trial, nevertheless it is a blessing for you if you recognise divine will therein and don't grumble and complain. That which has been destined for you since eternity serves you, who believe, to benefit your soul, or to transform those of you who are still distant from God. Therefore bow down to divine will and carry your small cross, and if you deem it to be heavy let yourselves be helped by Jesus, the bearer of the cross, Who took the crucifixion upon Himself for the sake of your adversity and Who suffered on your behalf out of greater than great love. Call upon Him and His help will be assured to you. His love is always on hand for you, and your earthly adversity will be endurable, you will overcome the trials and stand firm in faith. The whole of humanity needs the adversities and sufferings, and therefore God pours them upon the earth in order to gain its inhabitants for the spiritual kingdom. And even if His Own must suffer too, they nevertheless still attain even greater perfection, and they will be eternally thankful to their Creator and Provider, their Father of eternity, Who, in His love, uses the right means to shape their souls into bearers of light while they are still on earth. And therefore don't despair and don't let yourselves be disheartened by the adversities of the time .... The end is near and with it the time of your deliverance and your entry into the spiritual kingdom, where all suffering comes to an end ....

Amen

# **Last days .... Future - Present ....**

***B.D. 3579 from October 16th 1945,  
taken from Book No. 46***

God has foretold people what will happen to earth in accordance with His eternal plan of Salvation .... He does not want them to experience the last day unprepared, He does not want to surprise them suddenly in their imperfection but give them ample opportunity beforehand to achieve perfection. He wants to urge them to become spiritual, He wants to warn them of the consequences if they ignore His reminders, and He wants to inform His Own of all events which shall come to pass during the last days in order to strengthen their faith and to give them hope and trust for their deliverance. He will not allow anything to happen to earth without informing people first, so that they should recognise Him in all forthcoming events. But He will never divert from His eternal plan of Salvation which He has wisely considered in knowledge of its effectiveness. The end may well take its time but it will irrevocably arrive, and for that reason all prophecies concerning earth and the signs of the last days should be taken literally. And thus the human being can expect the end at any hour, he should always



anticipate that the end could occur in the present time, and therefore attach great importance of improving himself, his soul, so that it can emerge unharmed and stand before God on Judgment Day. As soon as the human being believes the end to be in the future he becomes indifferent and slow in the work on himself.

However, if he anticipates that God's prophecies could fulfil themselves in the present time he takes the transformation of his nature seriously, and this is God's intention from the start, and He urges people to change their nature. But yet one day His proclamations will become the present and shall fulfil themselves word for word. And just prior to the events people will least believe the prophecies and this itself will demonstrate that the last days have arrived. When no-one anticipates the transformation of earth any longer, when people reject all relevant information, when they look at all events from an entirely earthly and material point of view and ignore the divine Creator, i.e. when they negate every connection between humanity's fate and divine will .... then the hour is not far, because then humanity has reached the degree of maturity which causes the end. And then God's proclamations shall fulfil themselves literally, to the horror of those who do not believe and hence are completely unprepared, and to the joy and comfort of the few who are waiting for the last hour as the hour of deliverance from greatest earthly distress. Because one day even the future will become the present, and although God's love is infinitely great,

one day God's justice will take its place and end a condition which is disastrous for the still imperfect spiritual substances in the universe. And for that reason people should be repeatedly reminded of the end, they should be informed of the Word of God Who uses His prophets to warn and remind people and hence speaks to them through mediators .... The end is close at hand and blessed is he who believes the prophecies and prepares himself. The day will come unexpectedly and take all living beings from earth to lead them either into eternal life or into death, as God has proclaimed in Word and Scripture ....

Amen

## **Miracles ... False prophets ....**

***B.D. 3580 from October 18th 1945,  
taken from Book No. 46***

Don't allow yourselves to be deceived, because the adversary constantly seeks to keep you in darkness and to obscure the light from above. He tries to trap you with lies and falsehoods and thereby render you unreceptive to the absolute truth. He is always plotting to obscure your vision, to confuse your senses and to shroud the

essence of the eternal Deity, and uses means which are difficult to discern as Satan's work of deception if the sincere will for pure truth does not exist. He feigns piety towards people, his appearance is that of an angel of light because the people themselves desire radiance and splendour and can only imagine divine glory as external magnificence. He feigns the illusion of God's glory when he finds gullible people who derive pleasure from it. And through them he spreads lies and misleading notions and thus obscures the thoughts of human beings. They accept the falsehood and reject the pure truth which God Himself sends in plain form to earth .... And thus the lies and fallacies spread much faster than the truth, because this is what people themselves want and because those who spread falsehoods work in the guise of being a representative of Christ's teachings and hence find approval everywhere. Satan works with cunning and force .... He uses human beings who do not sincerely desire the truth, and they are his slaves because they do not sincerely desire God either, Who is the eternal truth Himself. And thus Satan, the lord of falsehood, has an easy time.

Human establishments can only be of lasting value when God's support is called upon. And God wants to be called upon in spirit and in truth, otherwise He will not listen. This excludes every outer formality; all kinds of ceremony, splendour and grandeur prevent the right kind of prayer, prayer in spirit and in truth .... He who takes notice of external events will find making an inner

connection with God very difficult, because the adversary will always step between him and God, divert his attention and capture his senses with external impressions. And therefore do not look for God in grandeur and splendour, do not look for him in surroundings where earthly matter has its greatest effect .... This is the field of God's adversary and he works it with success. God reveals Himself in secret, He reveals Himself in people who are lowly and humble. He reveals Himself in those who shall speak on His behalf because His revelations apply to all of humanity and the individual person merely serves as His tool through which He speaks to the people Himself. His revelations primarily aim to spread the truth and to proclaim His will, adherence to which results in eternal bliss for the human being. Through seers and prophets He will also announce the end of the world and draw attention to the signs of the last days. It is His will that humanity be given the relevant information, that no one shall claim that they have not been reminded and warned when the end takes them by surprise. These seers and prophets will always be human beings with profound faith and love, otherwise God's adversary will choose people to work for him and find their approval. Consequently particular attention has to be paid to the conduct of those who call themselves God's servants, whether it complies with God's will, with His commandments. But then the revelations should also be believed.

God works in silence, albeit in a clear and remarkable

way, yet not in miracles which would force people to believe, just as He excludes all outward show because He is not trying to win over the people of the world with splendour and grandeur, but He wants to turn their hearts away from that worldly light of deceit. Worldly people have to be able to explain unnatural events by natural means, otherwise they would be forced into believing, which God would never sanction. And thus only profoundly devout human beings will have extraordinary revelations when God's love wants to award those and He wants to reveal Himself to them. However, public miracles compel people to believe and they would not progress spiritually because fear of God can never take the place of love which the human being has to feel for Him in order to join Him. But miracles only cause fear in the immature person and never love .... Nevertheless Satan does use such means; in this manner he wants to prevent human beings from loving God, and his work shall be unhindered where there is a lot of sinfulness and where human beings are seldom introspective but worldly-minded instead. But even there he appears under the cover of piety. He pulls the wool over people's eyes, stopping them from seeing clearly and thus exercises his influence. This is further aided by false representatives of Christ, who deem themselves destined to spread His teachings but who are not sufficiently living in truth themselves to separate lie and falsehood as such and to exclude them. Because he works with cunning and power .... God, however, is love, and only love flows from His revelations and cultivates love. And thus you should

apply this standard .... Truth is where love is taught and practised because there is God Himself .... But where the light of the world shines too brightly God's adversary makes himself known .... And his activity is falsehood and opposes God even if he tries to appear in a disguise of light. Anyone whose will is turned towards God knows him in spite of his disguise, and he is destined to warn his fellow human beings of the false prophets who will always appear when people are in need but who will even worsen spiritual hardship instead of reducing it. And God calls out to people: Beware of false prophets because the last days will be used to work against God, against the eternal truth ....

Amen

## **'The gates of hell ....' Church of Christ ....**

***B.D. 3589 from October 29th 1945,  
taken from Book No. 46***

The quintessence of Christ's teaching is the commandment of love for God and one's neighbour. Hence, wherever this is taught and practiced, there is true Christianity, there is the church of Christ, which has its foundation in its firm faith in Him and which therefore

will continue when all else comes to an end. His church comprises believers who live according to His commandment of love and who are therefore permeated by His spirit which manifests itself openly or in secret, depending on what is best for the individual soul. And Jesus Christ guaranteed that this church will last forever with the Words 'The gates of hell shall not prevail against it ....' At the same time His Words indicated that it will be attacked by the forces of hell .... And His Word is truth and will come to pass at the end of the time granted by God for the souls' redemption. Then the church of Christ will be assailed by forces which are hostile to God, yet it will remain victorious and be recognised as everlasting by its followers, by the community of believers who practise true Christianity, abide by the teachings of Christ and live a life of love.

However, this church of Christ will be small, only a small group will belong to it and yet, it will be represented all over the world .... truly lovingly active people and therefore true Christians will live all over the world. Their love will gain them wisdom, and thus they will also be profoundly devout and acknowledge the God of love Who embodied Himself on earth in Jesus Christ and consciously strive towards Him. They were all promised by God that He would remain with them until the end, He promised them His spirit because they belong in truth to His church which He Himself founded. And thus He will protect them until the end from spiritual and earthly ruin, because they live according to Christ's teaching .... with

love for God and their neighbour .... and belong to those who will be shielded from death, who will be taken by God into the kingdom of peace before the immense destruction takes place .... The small group constituting His church will be the foundation again on the new earth, Christ's teaching will be proclaimed once more, love will be cultivated and the people of the new earth will live in deep faith, for God's love had revealed itself to them, He Himself will stay in their midst because they fulfil His commandment of love for God and their neighbour .... And thus God's church will continue, it will survive all times because it will always be followed by people whose faith in the Redeemer of the world fills them with love and whose activity consists of a constant service in love .... because nothing can cease to exist which originates in God, which accepts love as its basic principle and therefore is divine ....

Amen

## **The spiritual and material world oppose each other ....**

***B.D. 3593 from November 3rd 1945,  
taken from Book No. 46***

The material world and the spiritual kingdom oppose



each other, consequently their demands on the human being are also of a conflicting nature, and no human being can ever do justice to both but unconditionally has to meet the requirements of one world. Understandably, the spiritual kingdom can only give spiritual wealth and this under conditions which disagree with worldly longings, while the world offers human beings earthly wealth which meets their needs. However, worldly longing is in opposition to the demands of the spiritual kingdom insofar as it puts physical pleasures and physical well-being into the forefront and aggravates or makes it entirely impossible for the soul to strive for the spiritual kingdom .... because the soul has to fulfil the demands of the spiritual kingdom and persuade the body to share the same desire which, however, necessitates the surrender of earthly longings. Thus two worlds are facing each other and the human being has to decide which world to choose. And at all times one world will demand the rejection of the other world, at all times either the body or the soul has to speak, to be precise, the soul has to decide whether its own development is more important than the body's well-being during its life on earth as a human being. The spiritual kingdom bestows the most delightful gifts upon the soul and although as human being it cannot understand their true value they are nevertheless eternal and denote a wealth which the soul will be able to use in the spiritual kingdom for its own happiness.

The world also offers treasures for the body but these are

short-lived and cannot be taken across into the spiritual kingdom. They will disintegrate like the body disintegrates when the soul moves from the physical world into the spiritual kingdom. And since the soul on earth can only receive from one kingdom it will be poor in the spiritual kingdom if it has only paid homage to the world. Voluntary surrender of earthly goods inevitably results in the possession of spiritual wealth because the soul only abandons the former due to love, or the desire for earthly goods will be predominant. And where love has awakened, the soul will unconsciously strive towards the spiritual kingdom and disregards earthly wealth. And thus the human soul has to decide during its life on earth whether to make the earthly world or the spiritual kingdom the goal of its aspiration. And its fate in the spiritual kingdom, to where it will proceed after its time of earthly trial has come to an end, will depend on this decision .... Prosperity or poverty, bliss or a pitiful state .... but bliss will necessitate the surrender of everything that is earthly and thus temporary ....

Amen

**Duration of shaping the  
new Earth ... Paradise ....**

***B.D. 3595 from November 5th 1945,***

## ***taken from Book No. 46***

The time it will take to shape the new Earth would astonish people if they knew about it. Yet their concept of time will have been taken from them while they stay away from Earth in the kingdom to which God's love will lead His faithful followers in order to complete the act of destruction of the old Earth. They will live in bliss and peace, no longer being subjected to the enemy of their body and soul, they completely hand themselves over to God's reign because their love and faith is so deep that they will be in heartfelt contact with God. And thus God proceeds with His work of shaping a new Earth which is to serve God's faithful followers as an abode. He will not need the time which any other earthly creation usually requires; instead, He creates new forms which are to shelter the still immature spiritual substances for the purpose of their higher development in an instant. And, since the people will have lost all sense of time during their rapture from the old Earth until their return to the new Earth, they will certainly be able to appreciate the marvellous creations but not the great miracle of their sudden emergence. Countless creations will arise in an instant from God's love and strength which will delight the human eye and exponentially increase their love and gratitude towards God. Then people will start a new life which will completely deviate from their life on the old Earth, for there will be profound peace on earth, people will live together in love and harmony, each one helping the other with love, and all people's eyes and thoughts

will be turned upwards, for they are in heartfelt contact with God, God Himself will dwell in their midst, teaching them and distributing spiritual wealth and they will glorify and praise Him without end. And so only short periods of time, judged by human standards, will be enough to result in a complete change, and the people of this earth will have the opportunity to marvel at the new creations and compare them with the old ones. These will be the people who possess the knowledge of God's Word and who are therefore also acquainted with God's plan of salvation for the spiritual beings. They will consciously expect the Day of Judgment, the rapture and the destruction of the old Earth, yet prior to this they will go through anxious times of adversity in order to then be allowed to populate the new Earth as victors, as God has promised. Therefore people should be informed in order to offer them the opportunity to pay attention to the progression of world events and thereby recognise that the time of the end has come, so that they will endeavour to belong to those who will not perish with the old Earth but, as God's faithful confessors, may find His love and grace and be permitted to start the paradise-like life on the new Earth instead .... People ought to know what time they live in. Nevertheless, the knowledge conveyed to them does not oblige them to believe .... They are at liberty to form a mental opinion about it, yet it is one more opportunity to find God and to ensure the soul's life. For everything will come to pass as God proclaimed a long time before, because His Word is and will remain truth for all eternity.

Amen

# **God is the Word .... God's presence .... Different conveyance of the Word ....**

***B.D. 3596 from November 7th 1945,  
taken from Book No. 46***

And thus I Am in the midst of you in the Word as I have promised. I won't leave you on your own and you shall also feel My presence, and so I draw near to you in the Word, for I Myself Am the Word and anyone who has My Word can also speak of My presence and feel protected near to Me. I Myself Am a Spirit Which is not bound to any material form but is strength and light to the highest degree and Which, due to Its will and Its thinking ability, has to be addressed as a Being, Which takes effect with love and wisdom and therefore emanates love and wisdom into eternity. And My love expresses the strength and the light in a form which you humans can become aware of, as you are not yet mature enough in order to receive strength and light in its fundamental substance .... And this expression is My Word, which I convey to you so that you shall gain maturity .... A Spirit which is light and strength in itself can in fact only be

present in the form of light and strength, and thus My Word, the emanation of Myself, has to incorporate light and strength within itself, and this characterises My closeness. And therefore I gave you the promise that I will stay with you until the end of the world .... by the fact that My spirit is always with you who want to receive light and strength .... by the fact that My directly emanated Word is constantly conveyed to you in order to make My presence known to you. I Am with you .... and even if I don't visibly dwell among you, you nevertheless have the evidence of My presence in your hands if you recognise Me in the Word. For I Myself Am the Word .... and you will constantly receive it as soon as you desire Me and My being close to you.

Thus anyone who recognises Me in the Word will also be profoundly happy that I Am close to him, and all doubt, all fear and all worry will leave him because he knows that the One is beside him Who will helpfully support him in every adversity of body and soul. Consequently, My will grants strength and grace, for anyone desiring My Word will open the door to his heart through which I can enter in order to take abode in it. And I will never ever leave him again once his will applies to Me and he has recognised Me in the Word.

For the Word is the medium through which I express Myself, through which the most perfect Spirit of eternity reveals Himself to the imperfect beings in order to lead them to perfection .... I Am close to you .... So why do you who have My Word, who receive it directly or through the

mouth of the recipient, still hesitate and worry .... I Am with all of you, because your desire for My Word demonstrates your love for Me .... And remember that only the flow of My Word to you gives you the certain proof that I Myself Am with you. Anyone who does not desire to hear Me does not desire My presence, his heart does not strive towards Me, for it would long for the expression of My love, for proof of My presence. Admittedly, the desire for My Word can certainly vary .... the human being can want to be comforted and strengthened through spiritual consolation, he can want to enrich his knowledge of spiritual spheres, he can also think of Me with gratitude and therefore want to express it by desiring My presence, he can want to remain with Me in intimate dialogue and accept My Word in his thoughts .... yet he must always be spiritually minded, then I will also let Myself be found and his call will draw Me to himself, and I will reveal Myself through My Word, since otherwise the human being would be unable to endure My presence. And likewise My Word will be conveyed to him in different ways .... through the direct working of the spirit within him so that he will be able to hear My Word himself .... through receiving it from a direct recipient who proclaims My Word on My instructions, or by way of mental transmission of knowledge from the spiritual kingdom .... through reading the Word I convey to earth .... through spiritual conversations with fellow human beings .... I will always look after a heart which desires Me, I will always be with those who want to hear Me, for I Myself Am the Word, and

thus I Myself dwell amongst people if they listen to My Word with the sincere will to let Me speak to them. Then I will offer them the bread of heaven, My flesh and My blood .... And if they thus eat and drink Me Myself they have to be most intimately united with Me .... if they accept My Word in profound faith that I Am the Word Itself they will accept Me in their hearts and I will constantly please them with My presence .... For I gave you the promise that I will stay with you until the end of the world, and every Word of My promise will come true, because My Word is and will remain the truth for all eternity ....

Amen

## **Appeal for inner enlightenment ....**

***B.D. 3597 from November 8th 1945,  
taken from Book No. 46***

Every human being can appeal for the grace of inner enlightenment and he will receive from God what he desires. Correct thinking and the right kind of conduct will result if God enlightens the person's spirit, and thus anyone who prays for the grace of inner enlightenment will lead a way of life corresponding to God's will, for if



God's spirit determines the person's thoughts and actions he will only accomplish what is good and need not fear to do wrong. Yet he will have to pay attention to the inner voice, he must hand himself over to the working of the spirit, that is, he must open his heart in order to let the thoughts conveyed to him from the benevolent spiritual side influence him. The human being's will determines the spiritual beings' influence on him. If he desires to become enlightened by God then God will assign beings to his side which will guide his thinking correctly, providing he does not oppose them. Opposition, however, would be an unbending will which cannot be guided, which, prior to the appeal for inner enlightenment, has had goals in mind and is afterwards unwilling to let go of them in order to entrust himself to God's guidance without resistance. Anyone appealing to God for spiritual enlightenment must be willing to meekly hand himself over to His guidance, he must only ever listen within himself and give in to the prompting of his heart which will urge him to do or not to do this or that. He must let himself be guided by his feeling, for this is God's voice as soon as the person seriously strives to do what is right. The more he lets his own will become active the less audible will be the spirit's voice, God requires a relinquishing of will, a subordination to divine will in order to be able to work in the person through His spirit.

God's spirit will speak audibly and clearly in all who unconditionally hand themselves over to God .... He will lead them through all dangers, He will guide their

thinking right, and what they should then do or not do will correspond to divine will. Admittedly, this does not comply with human requirements which only consider it sensible to pursue a designated goal, which are thus intended to activate a person's own will and regard a relinquishing of will as a shortcoming. As long as the human being deems himself strong enough and believes himself able to master everything solely through his determination he will undoubtedly be able to achieve earthly success but never progress spiritually, for his thinking and activity will not always comply with God's will because he fails to appeal for God's spirit .... for inner enlightenment. For God's adversary interferes quite often with his thinking and activity; the person listens to suggestions made by the beings which are subject to the opposing power and his way of life will be lived accordingly. Therefore pray for the grace of inner enlightenment, pray for the working of the divine spirit within you, and then let yourselves be guided by the thoughts flowing into you .... comply with the urging of your heart and you won't have to be afraid to think or act wrongly, for God will answer your prayer and He Himself will work through His spirit in people who entrust themselves to Him .... as He has promised ....

Amen

## **Stormy times before the**

# **Last Judgment ....**

## **Paradise ....**

***B.D. 3606 from November 20th 1945,  
taken from Book No. 46***

The Last Judgment will put an end to all abominations and peace will be on Earth for a long time. There will be a state of divine order on earth where only peace will reign, where love will unite all people, where the individual person's love will also guarantee God's working through His spirit, where everyone will be able to hear God's voice and be exceedingly happy to know God is so close to him .... where God will also visibly dwell amongst His Own in an as yet inconceivable way for present-day people .... People on the new earth will live in paradise again, in harmony of soul, in yearning for God and His love and in constant fulfilment of their longing. And all evil will be banished for a long time .... Yet before this state can come to pass on Earth a storm must sweep across it with a purifying and devastating effect, a storm which only people with profound faith and loyalty to God will stand up to. They will suffer great distress yet their later time on the new earth will amply compensate them for all previous adversities and afflictions. For as soon as evil has lost its power they will no longer be harassed and most blissful peace on Earth will be their fate .... This is why the final stormy time should not be dreaded by the

believers, for God's will is above all happenings, God's love will work amongst His Own and His power will overcome Satan's power at the right time. And regardless of what will threaten the believers, worldly power, human hatred and unkindness will be unable to prevent the coming bliss on Earth or in the kingdom of the beyond for those who will remain loyal to God ....

They cannot kill the soul although they want to kill the body. Yet God will even prevent this because He wants His Own to inhabit the paradise of the new earth .... because they are intended to form the root of the new generation and because they shall be compensated for their previous time of distress as a sign of God's greater than great love which wants to provide His Own with a blissful fate on Earth. Therefore they will also be endowed by God with extraordinary strength with which they will be able to overcome all evil and which will enable them to stand up to the worst hostility. For the bulwark of their faith will be most violently shaken .... And only in those who have overcome their desire for the earthly world will the strength arise to offer resistance. But anyone who will still allow himself to be captivated by the appeal of the world will relinquish all resistance, he does not belong to the flock of those faithful to God, he will sell his soul for ill-reward, for whatever he believes himself to have gained will crumble on the Day of Judgment .... And all atrocities will come to an end on this day .... all God-opposing spirits will be banished and a state of calm will ensue in the whole of the universe, a

state of peaceful activity which is incomparable to the peace of death. The latter is the fate of the banished spirits which will be bound in utter weakness within solid matter and for an infinitely long time be unable to become active .... And this is the time you humans are approaching, and you don't have much time left. If you want to be successful during the last days before the day of Judgment you must still diligently work at improving yourselves, you must contact God increasingly more sincerely, you must draw strength for yourselves daily and hourly and constantly remain in prayer in order to always receive strength as soon as you open your heart and desire God's grace and strength. And He will be and remain with His Own until the end, He will dwell with them in the paradise of the new earth and stay inextricably united with them for all eternity ....

Amen

## **Cause, purpose and aim of suffering ... Awareness ... Transience ....**

***B.D. 3610 from November 22nd 1945,  
taken from Book No. 46***

Worldly minded people are so far removed from the truth

that they are unaware of how much strength they can draw from faith and a heartfelt bond with God, and thus they only ever take notice of world events and do not realise that this wrong attitude towards God is the cause of every world event which results in human suffering. And as long as human beings lack this insight, the state of suffering cannot change either. Time and again the suffering will merely adopt different shapes, so that the diversity of their hardship and sorrow will eventually make people understand that a power other than human will is behind the sorrow, that human will alone is not the cause but that the will of a higher power simultaneously steps into action, and that they will develop a certain opinion about this higher power. The knowledge of pure truth explains everything; it makes the immense hardship comprehensible because its cause, purpose and objective are identifiable. Change is only possible when people adapt themselves to the purpose and objective, i.e. when they try to solve the cause of sorrow and hardship which, however, is and remains incomprehensible to the worldly minded person as long as the world is his priority, as long as he provides his body with all privileges and starves the soul.

The knowledge of truth can only be given to the person who detaches himself from the world, for if the knowledge is conveyed to the worldly minded person he will not recognise it as truth and reject it. Thus increased suffering will put him into a situation which will make him receptive to truth .... by learning to understand

through suffering and hardship the worthlessness of worldly goods and reducing the longing for those same goods .... The desire for truth will increase accordingly, providing he is not influenced by negative forces who completely confuse his reasoning and attempt to divert him from the truth, who incite hatred in the person the more the world and its joys disappoint him. But such people will not find the connection to God on earth anymore, and every means employed by God is in vain. Nevertheless it is an advantage for the human soul to recognise the transience of earthly values while it is still on earth, where it can learn to despise them and is no longer excessively bound by them to earth when it departs, even if it enters the beyond with a low degree of maturity. In that case, overcoming matter in the spiritual kingdom will not be quite so difficult and the process of higher development in the spiritual kingdom can progress faster once it has finally started. The soul will then accept the truth more readily in the spiritual kingdom, it will not oppose God as much as on earth.

Consequently, the fate of the departed souls is not as hopeless if intense suffering on earth had made them aware of the transience of earthly possessions even if they lose their earthly lives as apparent victims in times of hardship. And thus even suffering and hardship caused by evil human will is of benefit for the souls who are still very distant from God, hence God allows human beings to rage against each other of their own free will until He Himself commands an end when it fulfils His plan of

eternity. And as long as people live in ignorance, as long as they do not want to hear the truth, He will allow them to mature through their own actions and experience untold perils and suffering, because this is what they want and therefore they are the instigators of their own suffering ....

Amen

## **Consciously listening within .... The voice of the spirit ....**

***B.D. 3612 from November 24th 1945,  
taken from Book No. 46***

To consciously listen within oneself furthers spiritual development to a great extent, for this enables the direct acceptance of strength from the spiritual kingdom. It demonstrates the will to make contact with the spiritual sphere, that is, with God, and where this will exists there is also the guarantee that God will draw close to a person, that He will reveal Himself, mentally or through the voice of the spirit which, however, can only be heard by a person who has prepared himself for receiving spiritual gifts. But he will be greatly blessed .... A source will be opened up to him from which he can constantly draw a



delectably refreshing drink, God Himself will offer him a gift which is bound to advance his higher development because it originates from God and acts as a means to totally unite the person with God. An incredible wealth of grace will be made accessible to him, everlasting treasures which come from the spiritual kingdom and which the person will be able to take across into the spiritual kingdom in order to work with them there for his own happiness and for the salvation of innumerable souls in need. The spiritual wealth accepted by a person through the inner voice is often so extensive that he is unable to fully understand and use it, nevertheless, he will be inconceivably happy in the spiritual kingdom, for the extent of his wealth also determines his activity and the degree of his bliss. He accepted the divine gift of his own free will, he has voluntarily worked at shaping himself into a receiving terminal for the strength of the spirit, and this will is blessed by God .... He lets His spirit take effect in the person, He imbues him with strength and grace, He grants him unlimited knowledge and guides him into eternal truth .... But He can never ever offer this delectable gift to a human being who does nothing in order to make himself receptive, who neglects to work at improving himself or who refrains from consciously listening within .... For imparting spiritual wealth to him would signify compulsory faith and the soul's maturing against his will, but this would contradict the divine law of order.

To someone who remains in private communication with

God, who asks Him and waits for the answer and thus also consciously listens within, He will speak mentally, He will steer the person's train of thought in the right direction, He will instruct him according to his faith and his spiritual maturity. For every connection with God through prayer or thoughts inclined towards Him opens the heart to the influx of strength from the spiritual kingdom, and the person can always be endowed with strength and grace, he becomes a receiving vessel for the divine spirit as soon as he believes in the working of the spirit, in God's working within the human being. This faith is the prerequisite in order to become receptive; otherwise, the human being will not consciously listen to that which the voice of the spirit proclaims. And this faith is only rarely to be found, consequently, the working of the spirit manifests itself only rarely too. This is also the reason for humanity's spiritual hardship, because it ignores the source of life from which it would always be able to refresh and fortify itself. The human being cannot mature without a spiritual flow of strength, he cannot advance but instead remains at the same stage of development. However, spiritual strength can only be conveyed to earth from the spiritual kingdom and therefore requires a connection between the spiritual kingdom and earth, which needs to be voluntarily established. Where this will is absent humanity is weak, the souls suffer spiritual hardship and cannot receive help .... For this reason God avails Himself of a human being who fully consciously makes himself available as a mediator between the spiritual kingdom and Earth .... who, with profound faith in

God's working through the spirit, attunes himself as a receiving terminal, who prepares himself as a receiving vessel for the divine spirit due to his will to help his fellow human beings and to be of service to God. And thus divine gifts of grace flow to him without measure .... the spring of divine wisdom pours into this vessel for the benefit of all who drink from it, who do not bypass the source of eternal life but refresh and strengthen themselves on their journey through life. Their path of ascent will be an easy one, they will travel it by holding on to God's hand and thus safely reach the goal, for His gift is delectable and guarantees spiritual success for everyone who accepts it from His hand ....

Amen

## **Conditions for the working of the spirit ....**

***B.D. 3615 from November 28th 1945,  
taken from Book No. 46***

Your knowledge is patchy for as long as you are not taught by the spirit within yourselves .... and all your pondering and searching will not suffice if you do not contact Me first .... in order to appeal to My spirit for enlightened thinking. Anyone having gained his

knowledge without appealing for My help first can certainly speak of human insight but never claim to possess divine wisdom .... knowledge which relates to the spiritual kingdom and corresponds to the truth .... For I alone distribute this knowledge, certainly to anyone who desires it, nevertheless only providing the conditions I ask for are met so that My spirit is able to work in a person. Consequently, the knowledge, the pure spiritual truth, will only be guaranteed if the petitioner completely submits himself to My will, if he lives according to My teaching .... with love for Me and his neighbour .... This is the first condition a person will have to fulfil if he wants to become worthy of My gift of grace, of receiving the pure truth through My spirit ....

Additionally, he must have a profound desire for truth .... This is another condition I expect to be met but which is rarely considered. For in order to receive the knowledge which complies with the truth the human being must first give up his humanly imparted knowledge, that is, he must not assume to be already knowledgeable .... otherwise he will hardly be open to the influx of pure truth if it is not in line with his previous knowledge. He must be willing to abandon his acquired knowledge in order to receive the pure truth .... And this will can only be mustered by a person who is as yet not convinced of the truth of his own knowledge. However, if he believes that he knows the truth he will hardly appeal for it, therefore it cannot be imparted to him either, his misguided knowledge cannot be disclosed and eradicated. To completely voluntarily

submit himself to Me and to attentively listen to that which I reveal to him through My spirit .... is the only way in order to arrive at the truth ....

And thus the person must have profound faith, he must be firmly convinced that I Am able to convey the truth to him and will do so .... He must be convinced of the working of the spirit within him, of My direct activity in the human being, or he will not enter into solitude and carefully listen to that which My spirit reveals to him. To consciously listen within is therefore another condition which has to be met in order to hear Me. For the spirit's voice is gentle and delicate and can only be heard by someone who completely withdraws himself from the world, who listens within, thus who establishes contact with the spiritual kingdom, with Me as the Giver of truth, as the Father-Spirit Whose share rests as a spiritual spark in his soul .... He must allow the spirit within himself to speak and prior to this shape his soul such that it becomes receptive to the outpouring of the spirit .... And any person will partake in an abundance of knowledge if he fulfils these conditions, if he sincerely strives for the truth and requests it from Me as the eternal Truth. For it is My will to convey the truth to people, I do not want them to live in spiritual darkness, I want to draw them into the spiritual realm, and this is only possible by imparting and receiving the pure truth, which alone leads to Me because it also originates from Me. And anyone who searches in this way will have the right thoughts, he will penetrate profound knowledge, the spiritual sphere

which will remain closed to all those who search elsewhere, because this is My will. The prayer for enlightenment of the spirit alone is no guarantee for its working if the other conditions are not observed as well of which I, however, will not let go because one depends on the other .... because a spiritual gift can only be offered if My law is complied with, which is fixed for eternity ....

Amen

## **Severe hardship before the last rescue mission ....**

***B.D. 3620 from December 5th 1945,  
taken from Book No. 46***

And thus I guide you along a path which, although indeed hard and stony, will definitely come to an end at the goal which you should reach on earth. You will yet experience fearful hours and have to come ever closer to Me, you will witness much misery in your environment and often ask yourselves why I allow such despair .... you will experience serious hardship yourselves and call upon Me fearfully, but your call shall not be in vain. I will always be ready to help when the hardship has reached its limit, as I have promised you, because I protect you from the worst,

since you are My Own and want to serve Me and therefore, as My workers, also have the benefit of My assured protection. Come what may, do not give up, because whatever My will allows to happen is necessary for the soul of people who are near to you and cannot find Me. But when the time is right I will intervene .... I will leave no stone unturned in order to win over more souls before I start the last rescue mission before the end, because many will lose their earthly lives and I still want to preserve the lives of their souls so that they can enter the spiritual realm with a glimmer of awareness.

This is the purpose of the severe hardship before the end. And you will have to witness it, if only up to an endurable extent for you. Hatred and human unkindness are the initiators of adversity, they cannot be content, they do not want to live in peace, they incite hatred by any means and thus force people into severe difficulties. They are ruled by Satan and are his willing servants. No house will remain unaffected by hostile actions, no human being will be spared suffering, and blessed is he who takes his refuge in Me .... He will be helped and time and again he will be guided by My strong hand, time and again his path will light up and the goal become visible, which will give him joyous hope to courageously overcome all adversity. Whoever takes My hand and lets himself be guided by it need not fear no matter how severe the hardship may be .... Whoever calls upon Me I will hear and not leave him without assistance. Because I gave you My Word that I will protect and look after you, thus you may

trust Me with blind faith and accept everything that happens to you. Because My will shall end all hardship at the right time ....

Amen

**‘Whoever sees Me sees the Father ....’**

***B.D. 3621 from December 6th 1945,  
taken from Book No. 46***

Whoever sees Me sees the Father, because the Father and I are one .... I brought the Word to people but they did not recognise it as God’s Word, as the expression of His infinite love for His living creations. They looked at it as human word, given to them by Me from Myself, because they were dark inside and did not know about God’s working within the human being .... Hence they could no longer hear God’s voice themselves, which could have provided evidence to them of God’s presence, of His essence and his close relationship with people. I, however, wanted to return this knowledge to them, I wanted to introduce them to the strength of love and faith, so that they might become noticeably aware of God’s presence if they heeded My teaching .... I came to them as a mediator sent by God to proclaim His Word to



people of good will in accordance with His instruction. The eternal Father-Spirit took abode in Me to visibly work through Me .... Everything I said and did was His work, His will, His strength and His love .... I was merely the form through which God expressed Himself, or His presence would have been unbearable for the people who were living in profound spiritual darkness .... And the form which veiled the Father-Spirit also belonged to Him, for everything within Me aspired towards the Father-Spirit, albeit it was a mortal shell like any other human being .... But because of the spirit within Itself It became immortal ....

I was Jesus, the man, but only in My external appearance, because everything in and about Me was spiritualised by love, it was united with the eternal love to which I was inseparably connected since eternity. God as a spirit is not visible to human beings, nevertheless He made Himself visible to them in Me as a person, He adopted My physical garment and showed Himself in it to people, identifying Himself as wisdom, love and omnipotence. And to those who believed in Me My work on earth gave evidence of the Deity through miracles, which were only possible to God and which My will could accomplish because God was in Me, and thus His will, wisdom and strength permeated Me .... Hence there was no further separation between God and My mortal body, It had become one with Him, He occupied it completely, He Himself walked on earth in My external form, which in turn was a work of His love in order to make Himself

accessible to people .... And I brought His Word to them .... He Himself spoke through Me, He, the eternal Word Himself, had become flesh in order to make Himself heard by people. Because they no longer knew the mystery of eternal love, the eternal Father-Spirit, Whose Word establishes the bond with people ....

They no longer knew about the strength of the Word which draws everything towards Itself when it can become effective in a person .... They did not know that every human being could hear the divine Word Itself in himself if he shaped himself to love in accordance with God's will, in order to receive the divine love Itself .... For this reason God came to earth Himself, and He brought them the knowledge again which should release the people from their darkness .... And people did not recognise Him, they pursued Me, Who sheltered the Divine inside of Me, as a human being .... And I had to allow it to happen in order to safeguard their free will. I brought the Word to them but they did not accept it, and they did not recognise in Me the One Who permeated Me completely .... They saw Me but not God in Me, Who did not conceal Himself from their view but performed signs and miracles in order to make the blind see again .... But to those who believed He revealed Himself in His love, wisdom and omnipotence .... And they saw Him rise to heaven in full glory, they saw His shell spiritualising itself before their eyes and in radiating light ascend to the kingdom which had been its home since eternity ....

Amen

# **The Ascension of Christ .... Transfiguration ....**

***B.D. 3622 from December 7th 1945,  
taken from Book No. 46***

My life on earth was a path of love which I concluded with My death on the cross .... My body was on earth, that is, it was subject to all natural laws, My soul was with God, it lived a spiritual life and thereby became powerful enough to conquer the body, to likewise make it strive towards God which subsequently spiritualised soul and body, so that the external form sheltering God, the eternal Father in all fullness, was no longer an obstacle for His working. The external form could therefore no longer succumb to physical death, because only matter sheltering immature spiritual substances is mortal, i.e. changeable within itself, but not completely spiritualised substance. Hence soul and body were able to enter the spiritual kingdom in a perfect state, they were translucent and, being permeated by light and strength, were able to leave Earth, which was a process My disciples were allowed to witness as it occurred before their eyes, so that they were able to behold God's glory in order to receive strength for their mission on earth which subsequently commenced for the sake of humanity's

redemption. Their task was to inform people of My act of Salvation, of My way of life, My teaching, of My excruciating suffering and death on the cross and of My resurrection and ascension .... And for this mission they had to be prepared, they had to live a life of love themselves, they had to be profoundly faithful, having recognised in Me the Father of eternity, they had to accept My teaching wholeheartedly within themselves in order to be able to pass it on; they had to be guided into truth in order to comprehend My sacrificial death, and thus they had to be living followers and able to preach with innermost conviction. And for this reason they were also allowed to witness My ascension on earth, the last sign of My glory, My divinity, I was able to give to them as a human being, which completed My life on earth but which must remain alive for My Own for as long as the world exists. For My transfiguration, as the fulfilment of My teaching, was indeed comprehensible to My disciples yet only understandable to people if they followed Me, lived a life of selfless love and thereby became able to grasp the truth and accept profoundly divine wisdom. When they know that the purpose of earthly life is the spiritualisation of soul and body and the result of it is brightest permeation by light they will also find My ascension credible. For this reason My only purpose of earthly life was the preaching of love, for this reason the Word became flesh, in order to show people the right way, to exemplify a life of love and to encourage them to follow Me .... Only love achieves a spiritualisation, and only love delivers the human race from death and

awakens it to eternal life ....

Amen

## **‘Become as little children ....’**

***B.D. 3624 from December 10th 1945,  
taken from Book No. 46***

Become as little children and take refuge with Me in every adversity .... and don't be afraid, for your heavenly Father does not allow anything to happen that is not beneficial for you. Have faith and trust in Me, your Father of eternity, that I will hold My hands protectively over you and simply regard every ailment of the body as a caring way of helping your soul. However, you should know that the body's adversity, too, will be cured by Me if you firmly believe in it and recognise My Fatherly love in everything, regardless of what happens. Be as carefree as children and leave it to the Father to take care of you, just make sure you fulfil your heavenly Father's will and My Fatherly love will take hold of you and draw you to My heart. Don't ask and speculate fearfully what might become of you, but remain calm and simply wait for the Father's help if adversity weighs you down. Totally rely on Me Who guides you wherever you go. Your strength rests in your childlike

trust and humble prayer, for I will not disappoint this and grant your prayer at all times. Yet do not worry and doubt .... My Fatherly love will save you from every danger and the call of My child will never go unheeded .... But in order to become as children you must relinquish all resistance, you must only ever want Me to lead you by the hand and you must follow Me willingly and never want to take different paths .... And thus you must pray with faithful trust and devotedly rely on Me and then regard every happening as My will .... For it is My will, nothing happens against My will if you commend your problems to Me. Only someone who acts on his own, without having appealed for My blessing and My support, activates his will with appropriate results, yet not always in his favour. I cannot grant My help to him because he would not recognise it as My help but regard it as his own merit. Yet for My children I will even out their every path, even if it appears difficult to travel. Just hand yourselves over to My guidance with complete trust and you will always feel a loving Fatherly hand which will guide you safe and sound through every calamity of this world. And always draw comfort and strength from My Word .... Let the Father speak to His children, and accept every Word of love so that it will impel you to love in turn. Never let the Father's voice go unheeded but be glad that you may hear it, that the Father thereby reveals His love for you, and follow Him and His Word with joyful zest .... And you will gain My approval, you will feel My Fatherly love increasingly more, you will no longer fear any adversity and be safe and secure in My heart ....

Amen

# **The end is determined by people themselves .... Low level ....**

***B.D. 3625 from December 12th 1945,  
taken from Book No. 46***

My eternal decision included the end, and thus it will come without fail when people's low spiritual level demands it .... The end will therefore be preceded by a time when people distance themselves from Me of their own free will, so that I can no longer influence them with My strength of love because they will prevent it themselves. But where My strength of love stops, i.e. where it is no longer able to affect the spirit, that is where life .... activity .... will also come to an end. The spiritual being will descend into a state of solidification. This will be the result of insufficient strength, to which it will have shut itself off. The human being as such will still be in possession of vital energy, but since he will be using it in a completely wrong way during the last days, since he, instead of striving towards Me, will strive away from Me completely of his own free will, I will also have to take his vital energy away from him, which will therefore

signify the physical end of countless spiritual beings which are embodied as human beings on earth and which, deprived of their final form of development, will subsequently completely solidify again, thus descend into weakness and darkness, until My love gives them a form once again in which their process of development can start anew. The spiritual being cannot live, thus be active, without an influx of strength, yet this strength will not flow to it against its will while it is in a state of free will. At the start of its incarnation as a human being the latter is certainly weak-willed, or his will is still undecided, and he can use the vital energy he is granted as a gift of grace in any way .... But once people have reached the lowest point when they no longer make use of this vital energy in order to attain spiritual strength, when they consciously resist the influx of strength from Me, I will also withdraw the energy of life from them .... They will have to repeat the process of development once more, which starts again with an utterly weak state in the most solid form, in hard matter, the overcoming of which takes an infinitely long time again .... I would like to spare the spiritual beings this long captivity, and therefore all conceivable means will be used by My love beforehand, yet people are beyond learning ....

If My servants explain their spiritual hardship to them, if they are reminded of the serious consequences of their unbelief, if their attention is drawn to the shortly approaching end, they close their ears. They don't believe in My eternal plan of Salvation, they don't believe in Me



and My never-ending love and thus they precipitate the end themselves .... They not only remain on their low spiritual level but continue to descend ever further .... Their own will hastens the dissolution of that which shelters spirits, just as their own will lets the human being return to that which his soul had already overcome long before .... It is not My but people's own will which determines the end, yet I have foreseen this will for eternity and thus will constrain it once again because freedom of will is being misused. Anyone who has My Word knows about My love, he knows about My plan of Salvation to redeem the souls and he also foresees the end, for he recognises the spiritual hardship. Yet anyone who does not recognise this hardship is not imbued by My love, he is still in spiritual darkness and can hardly step out from this into the light of day. For he needs My Word to do so, the light which illuminates him and enriches his knowledge .... And he will understand the physical adversity of the time, which is caused by the immense spiritual hardship. Anyone who has My Word will expect the end with profound faith, for everything will come to pass as I proclaimed in Word and Scripture. Therefore, pay attention to My Word when it is imparted to you through My messengers .... pay attention to the Word which is conveyed to you from above, which guarantees you the absolute truth which originates from Me, the Giver of truth, and which I impart to you with all My love, so that you will find the path to Me through the Word, so that you will not be lost to My kingdom, so that you need not go through the process of development again, which

would mean indescribable agony for your souls .... Pay attention to the Word so that you will belong to My Own, who will be spared at the end in order to enter the kingdom of peace, as I have promised ....

Amen

## **The souls' purification process in the beyond ....**

***B.D. 3627 from December 15th 1945, taken from Book No. 46***

The departed soul's purification process in the beyond starts immediately after the decease of the body but in accordance with the soul's will. Spiritually completely dark souls experience the darkness as agony, and this right from the start of the process, because it is intended to contribute towards the change of the soul's will. Although the duration of this varies, it is always the principle of the purification process. God's love constantly gives the soul the opportunity to change its will, but in the beyond it does not always recognise these methods as the working of God's love, and yet they can soon lead to the goal providing the soul is not too obstinate. It has to purify itself completely before it can accept light, and until it can receive light it is in a state of

torment, and thus the fate of an immature soul is lamentable. It can never receive too much help from people by means of loving intercession or mental instructions and advice to act with love. However, if the soul is not too obstinate it will constantly progress in its development, every torment melts the hard cover, it becomes receptive to help and will try to liberate itself, although occasionally it can take a very long time before the purification process is completed and the soul, as a recipient of light, is able to act with kindness.

But even more mature souls will still have to become more receptive to light, because the light can touch a soul at various degrees of intensity, depending on its state of perfection, which can reach an increasingly higher level. On entry into the spiritual realm the soul can already be so advanced in knowledge that it no longer needs to linger in dark surroundings, it is able to see and understand everything, it finds itself in a more or less brighter pool of light and thus is also able to work accordingly. And yet it still has to shape itself to receive more light. It still has to crystallise itself to utmost clarity and this again through loving work with needy souls, because devoted love for those unhappy souls will purify the soul and make it progressively more receptive to light, while due to its redeeming activity its own happiness intensifies at the same rate. As soon as a soul has the will to ascend it becomes diligently and untiringly active, and because of its will to help other suffering souls it constantly receives strength for its own

happiness and sustained helpfulness. Always providing, of course, that it has overcome its weakness of will, that its engulfing impenetrable darkness is broken, that it is receptive to the merciful rays of light which God sends into the darkness, and that it wants to escape its dark state. Its struggle towards ascent, its torments and the darkness of its surrounding are taken into account as purifying factors, its layers dissolve, it becomes receptive to light and its ascent towards the light is assured. In accordance with the soul's own will God's continuous help enables it to ascend until, penetrated by light, it can work in the spiritual kingdom as is its destiny ....

Amen

## **Thoughts from the spiritual kingdom ....**

***B.D. 3628 from December 16th 1945,  
taken from Book No. 46***

Thoughts flow to you from the spiritual kingdom, if you are spiritually minded and therefore also look for contact with the enlightened beings of the spiritual kingdom. Consequently, every thought can be a blessing for you provided you sincerely want to become enlightened, thus to know the truth. Yet in order to be taken care of by

helpful spiritual beings it is also always necessary for you to conduct your life in accordance with God's will, since you are also surrounded by forces of darkness which seek to lead your thoughts astray. And you yourselves reject or allow their access to you, depending on your conduct in life, on your will and your attitude towards God and towards good.

And therefore you have to seriously scrutinise yourselves whether you strive to live in keeping with God's will, whether you want the truth. You must know that thoughts are the activity of spiritual beings in the beyond which they try to convey to you, and that you allow yourselves to be influenced by forces which you draw to yourselves by your way of life and your will. For this reason you have to observe your thoughts whether they lead towards God or divert you from believing in God. Every good thought teaching love and referring to God is the activity of good spiritual forces, and you should take it up and let yourselves be affected by it, for as soon as you pay attention to it, it will also shape your way of life and be beneficial for your soul.

But as soon as you pray to God for correct thinking, good spiritual beings will always be your teachers and guides, they will influence your thoughts and also try to transmit spiritual concepts which will heighten your maturity of soul; they will provide you with power of perception which will enable you to render the activity of evil forces ineffective by instantly recognising it as error and rejecting it. If you unite yourselves with God, if you live

intending to please Him, then you will not have to fear evil spiritual forces which deceive your thoughts, for you give yourselves into the hands of good spiritual beings which will take loving care of you and direct your thoughts such that they will correspond to the truth and promote your spiritual development, because you strive for it yourselves ....

Amen

